

# CubeSuite+ V2.01.00

Integrated Development Environment

User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Coding

Target Device

RL78 Family

78K0R Microcontroller

All information contained in these materials, including products and product specifications, represents information on the product at the time of publication and is subject to change by Renesas Electronics Corp. without notice. Please review the latest information published by Renesas Electronics Corp. through various means, including the Renesas Electronics Corp. website (<http://www.renesas.com>).

## Notice

1. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
  2. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.
  3. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
  4. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from such alteration, modification, copy or otherwise misappropriation of Renesas Electronics product.
  5. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following two quality grades: "Standard" and "High Quality". The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below.  
"Standard": Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots etc.  
"High Quality": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; and safety equipment etc.  

Renesas Electronics products are neither intended nor authorized for use in products or systems that may pose a direct threat to human life or bodily injury (artificial life support devices or systems, surgical implantations etc.), or may cause serious property damages (nuclear reactor control systems, military equipment etc.). You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for which the product is not intended by Renesas Electronics.
  6. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.
  7. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or systems manufactured by you.
  8. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
  9. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. When exporting the Renesas Electronics products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations.
  10. It is the responsibility of the buyer or distributor of Renesas Electronics products, who distributes, disposes of, or otherwise places the product with a third party, to notify such third party in advance of the contents and conditions set forth in this document, Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties as a result of unauthorized use of Renesas Electronics products.
  11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
  12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.
- (Note 1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.
- (Note 2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

# How to Use This Manual

This manual describes the role of the CubeSuite+ integrated development environment for developing applications and systems for RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, and provides an outline of its features.

CubeSuite+ is an integrated development environment (IDE) for RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, integrating the necessary tools for the development phase of software (e.g. design, implementation, and debugging) into a single platform.

By providing an integrated environment, it is possible to perform all development using just this product, without the need to use many different tools separately.

**Readers** This manual is intended for users who wish to understand the functions of the CubeSuite+ and design software and hardware application systems.

**Purpose** This manual is intended to give users an understanding of the functions of the CubeSuite+ to use for reference in developing the hardware or software of systems using these devices.

**Organization** This manual can be broadly divided into the following units.

**CHAPTER 1 GENERAL**  
**CHAPTER 2 FUNCTIONS**  
**CHAPTER 3 COMPILER LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS**  
**CHAPTER 4 ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS**  
**CHAPTER 5 LINK DIRECTIVE SPECIFICATIONS**  
**CHAPTER 6 FUNCTION SPECIFICATIONS**  
**CHAPTER 7 STARTUP**  
**CHAPTER 8 ROMIZATION**  
**CHAPTER 9 REFERENCING COMPILER AND ASSEMBLER**  
**CHAPTER 10 CAUTIONS**  
**APPENDIX A ROMIZATION PROCESSOR**  
**APPENDIX B WINDOW REFERENCE**  
**APPENDIX C INDEX**

**How to Read This Manual** It is assumed that the readers of this manual have general knowledge of electricity, logic circuits, and microcontrollers.

**Conventions**

Data significance:	Higher digits on the left and lower digits on the right
Active low representation:	XXX (overscore over pin or signal name)
Note:	Footnote for item marked with Note in the text
Caution:	Information requiring particular attention
Remark:	Supplementary information
Numeric representation:	Decimal ... XXXX Hexadecimal ... 0xXXXX

**Related Documents**

The related documents indicated in this publication may include preliminary versions. However, preliminary versions are not marked as such.

Document Name		Document No.
CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual	Start	R20UT2682E
	RX Design	R20UT2683E
	V850 Design	R20UT2134E
	R8C Design	R20UT2135E
	RL78 Design	R20UT2684E
	78K0R Design	R20UT2137E
	78K0 Design	R20UT2138E
	RH850 Coding	R20UT2584E
	RX Coding	R20UT2470E
	V850 Coding	R20UT0553E
	Coding for CX Compiler	R20UT2659E
	R8C Coding	R20UT0576E
	RL78,78K0R Coding	This manual
	78K0 Coding	R20UT2141E
	RH850 Build	R20UT2585E
	RX Build	R20UT2472E
	V850 Build	R20UT0557E
	Build for CX Compiler	R20UT2142E
	R8C Build	R20UT0575E
	RL78,78K0R Build	R20UT2623E
	78K0 Build	R20UT0783E
	RH850 Debug	R20UT2685E
	RX Debug	R20UT2702E
	V850 Debug	R20UT2446E
	R8C Debug	R20UT0770E
	RL78 Debug	R20UT2445E
	78K0R Debug	R20UT0732E
78K0 Debug	R20UT0731E	
Analysis	R20UT2686E	
Message	R20UT2687E	

**Caution** The related documents listed above are subject to change without notice. Be sure to use the latest edition of each document when designing.

All trademarks or registered trademarks in this document are the property of their respective owners.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CHAPTER 1 GENERAL ... 10

- 1.1 Overview ... 10
  - 1.1.1 C compiler and assembler ... 10
  - 1.1.2 Position of C compiler and assembler ... 13
  - 1.1.3 Processing flow ... 14
  - 1.1.4 Basic structure of C source program ... 15
- 1.2 Features ... 17
  - 1.2.1 Features of C compiler ... 17
  - 1.2.2 Features of assembler ... 18
  - 1.2.3 Limits ... 18

## CHAPTER 2 FUNCTIONS ... 21

- 2.1 Variables (Assembly Language) ... 21
  - 2.1.1 Defining variables with no initial values ... 21
  - 2.1.2 Defining const constants with initial values ... 21
  - 2.1.3 Defining 1-bit variables ... 21
  - 2.1.4 1/8 bit access of variable ... 22
  - 2.1.5 Allocating to sections accessible with short instructions ... 23
- 2.2 Variables (C Language) ... 24
  - 2.2.1 Allocating data only of reference in ROM ... 24
  - 2.2.2 Allocating to sections accessible with short instructions ... 24
  - 2.2.3 Allocating in near areas ... 25
  - 2.2.4 Allocating in far areas ... 25
  - 2.2.5 Allocating addresses directly ... 26
  - 2.2.6 Defining 1-bit variables ... 27
  - 2.2.7 Empty area of the structure is stuffed ... 27
- 2.3 Functions ... 28
  - 2.3.1 Allocating to sections accessible with short instructions ... 28
  - 2.3.2 Allocating in near areas ... 28
  - 2.3.3 Allocating in far areas ... 29
  - 2.3.4 Allocating addresses directly ... 29
  - 2.3.5 Inline expansion of function ... 30
  - 2.3.6 Embedding assembly instructions ... 30
- 2.4 Using Microcontroller Functions ... 31
  - 2.4.1 Accessing special function registers (SFR) from C ... 31
  - 2.4.2 Interrupt functions in C ... 32
  - 2.4.3 Using CPU control instructions in C ... 33
- 2.5 Startup Routine ... 35
  - 2.5.1 Deleting unused functions and areas from startup routine ... 35
  - 2.5.2 Allocating stack area ... 36
  - 2.5.3 Initializing RAM ... 37

- 2.6 Link Directives ... 38
  - 2.6.1 Partitioning default areas ... 38
  - 2.6.2 Specifying section allocation ... 38
- 2.7 Reducing Code Size ... 39
  - 2.7.1 Using extended functions to generate efficient object code ... 39
  - 2.7.2 Calculating complex expressions ... 42
- 2.8 Compiler and Assembler Mutual References ... 43
  - 2.8.1 Mutually referencing variables ... 43
  - 2.8.2 Mutually referencing functions ... 45

## **CHAPTER 3 COMPILER LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS ... 47**

- 3.1 Basic Language Specifications ... 47
  - 3.1.1 Processing system dependent items ... 47
  - 3.1.2 Internal representation and value area of data ... 58
  - 3.1.3 Memory ... 62
- 3.2 Extended Language Specifications ... 63
  - 3.2.1 Macro names ... 64
  - 3.2.2 Reserved words ... 64
  - 3.2.3 #pragma directives ... 65
  - 3.2.4 Using extended functions ... 67
  - 3.2.5 C source modifications ... 179
- 3.3 Function Call Interface ... 180
  - 3.3.1 Return values ... 180
  - 3.3.2 Ordinary function call interface ... 180
- 3.4 List of saddr Area Labels ... 184
- 3.5 List of Segment Names ... 185
  - 3.5.1 List of segment names ... 186
  - 3.5.2 Segment allocation ... 188
  - 3.5.3 C source example ... 188
  - 3.5.4 Example of output assembler module ... 189

## **CHAPTER 4 ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS ... 198**

- 4.1 Description Methods of Source Program ... 198
  - 4.1.1 Basic configuration ... 198
  - 4.1.2 Description method ... 204
  - 4.1.3 Expressions and operators ... 214
  - 4.1.4 Arithmetic operators ... 217
  - 4.1.5 Logic operators ... 225
  - 4.1.6 Relational operators ... 230
  - 4.1.7 Shift operators ... 237
  - 4.1.8 Byte separation operators ... 240
  - 4.1.9 Word separation operators ... 243
  - 4.1.10 Special operators ... 248
  - 4.1.11 Other operator ... 252
  - 4.1.12 Restrictions on operations ... 254
  - 4.1.13 Absolute expression definitions ... 258
  - 4.1.14 Bit position specifier ... 259

4.1.15	Identifiers ...	260
4.1.16	Operand characteristics ...	261
4.2	Directives ...	269
4.2.1	Overview ...	269
4.2.2	Segment definition directives ...	270
4.2.3	Symbol definition directives ...	288
4.2.4	Memory initialization, area reservation directives ...	295
4.2.5	Linkage directives ...	305
4.2.6	Object module name declaration directive ...	312
4.2.7	Branch instruction automatic selection directives ...	314
4.2.8	Macro directives ...	319
4.2.9	Assemble termination directive ...	334
4.3	Control Instructions ...	336
4.3.1	Overview ...	336
4.3.2	Assemble target type specification control instruction ...	337
4.3.3	Debug information output control instructions ...	339
4.3.4	Cross-reference list output specification control instructions ...	344
4.3.5	Include control instruction ...	349
4.3.6	Assembly list control instructions ...	353
4.3.7	Conditional assembly control instructions ...	376
4.3.8	Kanji code control instruction ...	402
4.3.9	RAM area allocation-specification control instruction ...	404
4.3.10	Other control instructions ...	406
4.4	Macros ...	407
4.4.1	Overview ...	407
4.4.2	Using macros ...	407
4.4.3	Symbols in macros ...	410
4.4.4	Macro operators ...	412
4.5	Reserved Words ...	413
4.6	Instructions ...	414
4.6.1	Differences from 78K0 microcontrollers ...	414
4.6.2	Memory space ...	416
4.6.3	Registers ...	419
4.6.4	Addressing ...	424
4.6.5	Instruction set ...	434
4.6.6	Explanation of instructions ...	466
4.6.7	Pipeline ...	589

## **CHAPTER 5 LINK DIRECTIVE SPECIFICATIONS ... 592**

5.1	Coding Method ...	592
5.1.1	Link directives ...	592
5.2	Reserved Words ...	597
5.3	Coding Examples ...	597
5.3.1	When specifying link directive ...	597
5.3.2	When using the compiler ...	598

## **CHAPTER 6 FUNCTION SPECIFICATIONS ... 600**

6.1	Distribution Libraries ...	600
6.1.1	Standard library ...	601
6.1.2	Runtime library ...	606
6.2	Interface Between Functions ...	614
6.2.1	Arguments ...	614
6.2.2	Return values ...	614
6.2.3	Saving registers used by separate libraries ...	614
6.3	Header Files ...	615
6.3.1	ctype.h ...	615
6.3.2	setjmp.h ...	616
6.3.3	stdarg.h ...	616
6.3.4	stdio.h ...	616
6.3.5	stdlib.h ...	616
6.3.6	string.h ...	617
6.3.7	error.h ...	617
6.3.8	errno.h ...	617
6.3.9	limits.h ...	618
6.3.10	stddef.h ...	618
6.3.11	math.h ...	619
6.3.12	float.h ...	619
6.3.13	assert.h ...	621
6.4	Re-entrant ...	622
6.5	Use of Arguments/Return Values Suitable for Standard Library ...	622
6.6	Character/String Functions ...	624
6.7	Program Control Functions ...	644
6.8	Special Functions ...	647
6.9	Input and Output Functions ...	652
6.10	Utility Functions ...	670
6.11	String and Memory Functions ...	702
6.12	Mathematical Functions ...	725
6.13	Diagnostic Function ...	772
6.14	Library Stack Consumption List ...	774
6.14.1	Standard libraries ...	774
6.14.2	Runtime libraries ...	779
6.15	List of Maximum Interrupt Disabled Times for Libraries ...	786
6.16	Batch Files for Update of Startup Routine and Library Functions ...	789
6.16.1	Using batch files ...	790

## **CHAPTER 7 STARTUP ... 794**

7.1	Function Overview ...	794
7.2	File Organization ...	794
7.2.1	"bat" folder contents ...	795
7.2.2	"lib" folder contents ...	796
7.2.3	"src" folder contents ...	798
7.3	Batch Files ...	799
7.3.1	Batch files for creating startup routines ...	799
7.4	Startup Routines ...	800
7.4.1	Preprocessing ...	801

7.4.2	Initial settings ...	803
7.4.3	main function startup and postprocessing ...	807
7.5	ROMization Processing in Startup Routine for Flash Area ...	809
7.6	Coding Examples ...	810
7.6.1	Essential points about revising startup routine ...	810
7.6.2	When using RTOS ...	811

## **CHAPTER 8 ROMIZATION ... 812**

## **CHAPTER 9 REFERENCING COMPILER AND ASSEMBLER ... 813**

9.1	Accessing Arguments and Automatic Variables ...	813
9.2	Storing Return Values ...	813
9.3	Calling C Language Routines from Assembly Language ...	813
9.3.1	Calling C language routine from assembly language program ...	813
9.4	Calling Assembly Language Routines from C Language ...	815
9.4.1	C language routine calling procedure ...	815
9.4.2	Saving data from assembly language routine and returning ...	816
9.5	Referencing Variables Defined in C Language from Assembly Language ...	818
9.6	Referencing Variables Defined in Assembly Language from C Language ...	819
9.7	Points of Caution for Calling Between C Language Routines and Assembler Functions ...	819

## **CHAPTER 10 CAUTIONS ... 821**

## **APPENDIX A ROMIZATION PROCESSOR ... 839**

A.1	Overview ...	839
A.2	Procedure for Creating ROMization Load Module ...	840

## **APPENDIX B WINDOW REFERENCE ... 841**

B.1	Description ...	841
-----	-----------------	-----

## **APPENDIX C INDEX ... 861**

## CHAPTER 1 GENERAL

This chapter explains the roles of the RL78,78K0R C compiler package (called "CA78K0R") in system development, and provides an outline of their functions.

## 1.1 Overview

RL78,78K0R C compiler is a translation program that converts source programs written in traditional C or ANSI C into machine language. RL78,78K0R C compiler can produce either object files or assembly source files.

RL78,78K0R assembler is a language processing program that converts source programs written in assembly language into machine language.

### 1.1.1 C compiler and assembler

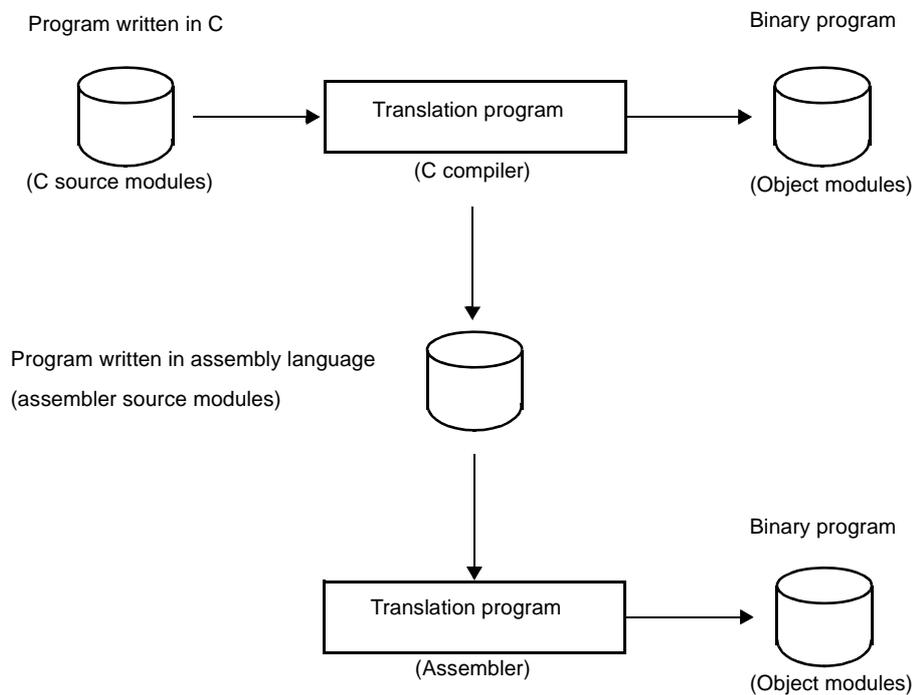
#### (1) C language and assembly language

A C compiler takes C source modules as input and produces either object modules or assembly source modules as output. This means that you can develop your programs in C and use assembly language as required to make fine adjustments.

An assembler takes assembly source modules as input and produces object modules as output.

The following figure shows the flow of program development with a C compiler and an assembler.

**Figure 1-1. Flow of Development with C Compiler and Assembler**



**(2) Relocatable assemblers**

The machine language translated from assembly source files by the assembler is written to the memory of the microcontroller before use. To do this, the location in memory where each machine language instruction is to be written must already be determined.

Therefore, information is added to the machine language assembled by the assembler, stating where in memory each machine language instruction is to be located.

Depending on the method used to allocate machine language instructions to memory addresses, assemblers can be broadly divided into absolute assemblers and relocatable assemblers. RA78K0R is a relocatable assembler.

- Absolute assembler

An absolute assembler allocates machine language instructions assembled from the assembly language at absolute addresses.

- Relocatable assembler

In a relocatable assembler, the addresses determined for the machine language instructions assembled from the assembly language are tentative

Absolute addresses are determined subsequently by the linker.

In the past, when programs were created with absolute assemblers, programmers normally had to write the entire program as a single large block. However, when all the components of a large program are contained in a single block, the program becomes complicated, making it harder to understand and maintain.

To avoid this, large programs are now usually developed by dividing them into several subprograms, called modules, one for each functional unit. This programming technique is called modular programming.

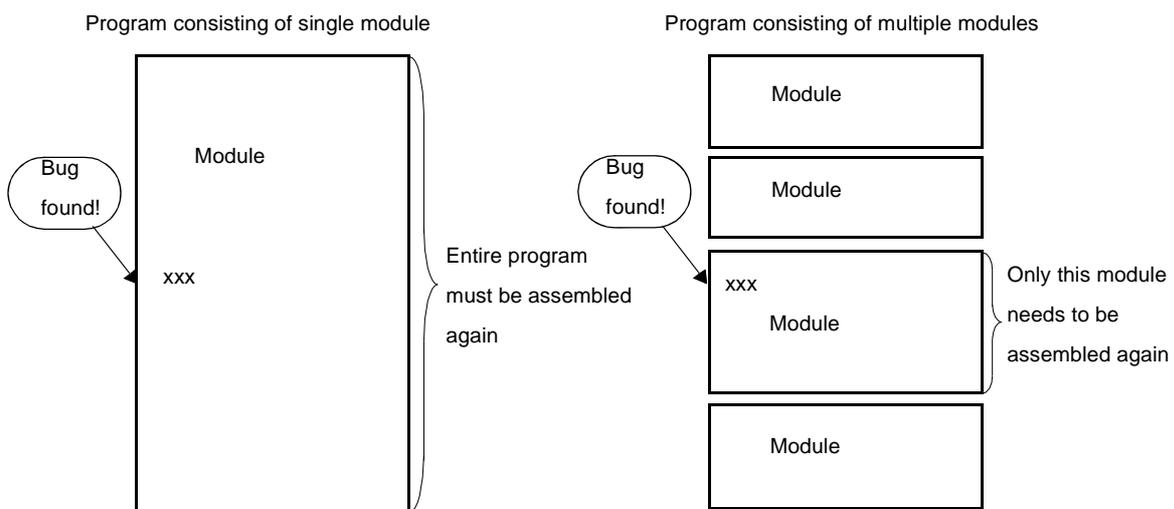
Relocatable assemblers are well suited for modular programming, which has the following advantages:

**(a) Greater development efficiency**

It is difficult to write a large program all at the same time. In such cases, dividing the program into modules for individual functions enables two or more programmers to develop subprograms in parallel to increase development efficiency.

Moreover, when bugs are found, only the module that contained the bugs needs to be corrected and assembled again, instead of needing to assemble the entire program. This shortens debugging time.

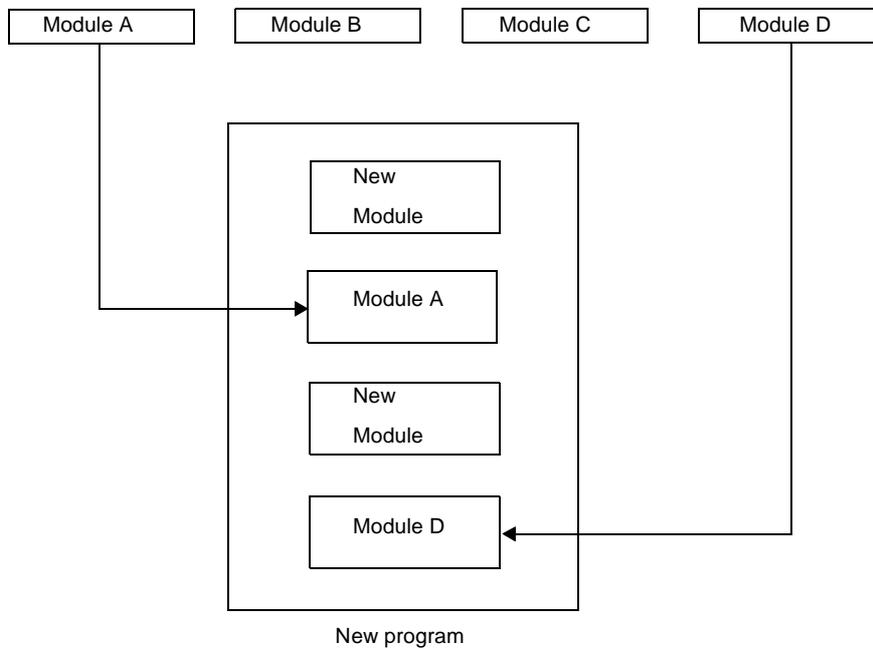
**Figure 1-2. Division into Modules**



(b) Utilization of resources

Reliable and versatile modules from previous development efforts are software resources that can be reused in new programs. As you accumulate more of these resources, you save time and labor in developing new programs.

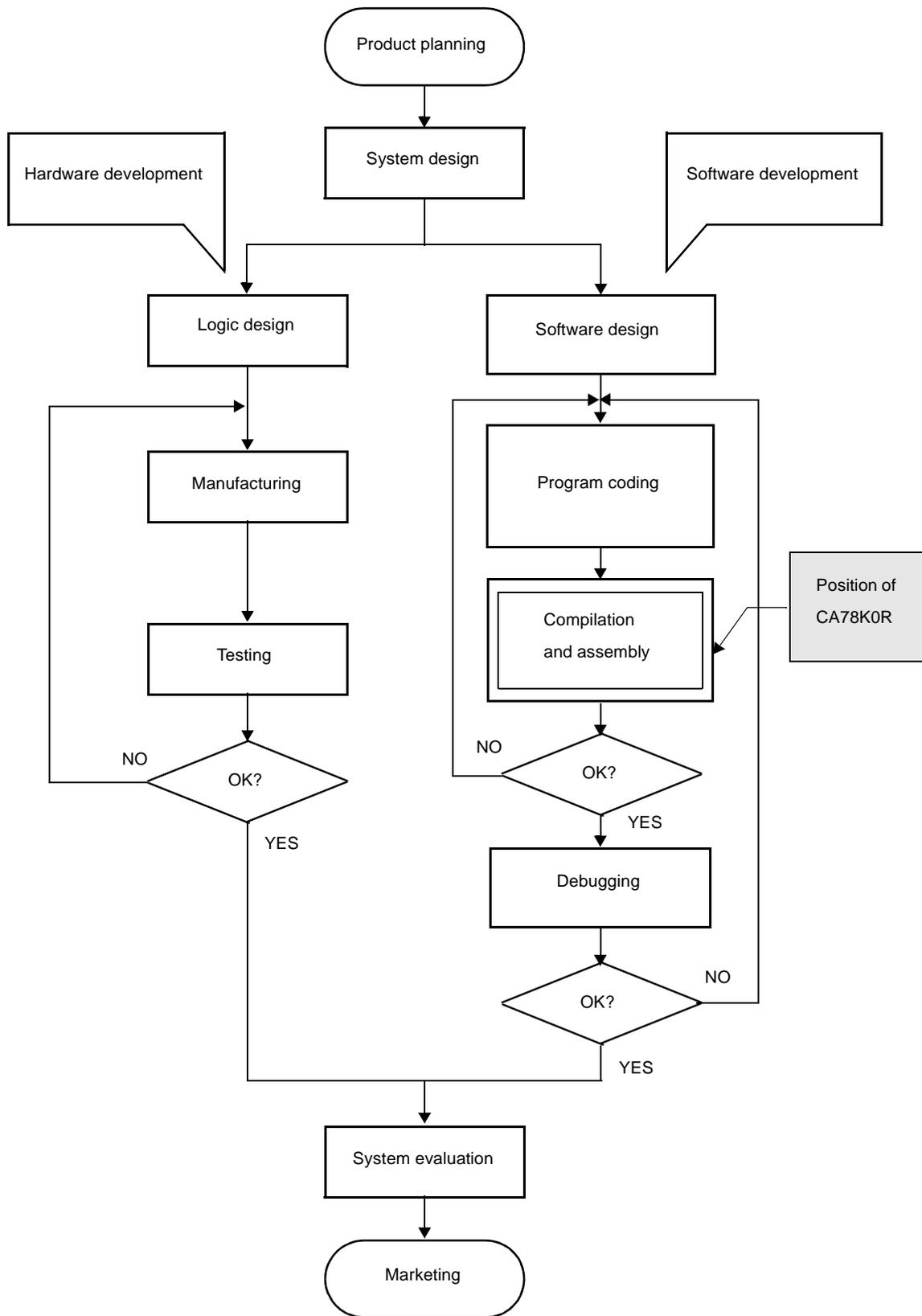
Figure 1-3. Resource Utilization



1.1.2 Position of C compiler and assembler

The following figure shows the position of compiler and assembler in the flow of product development.

Figure 1-4. Flow of Microcontroller Application Product Development



1.1.3 Processing flow

This section explains the flow of processing in program development.

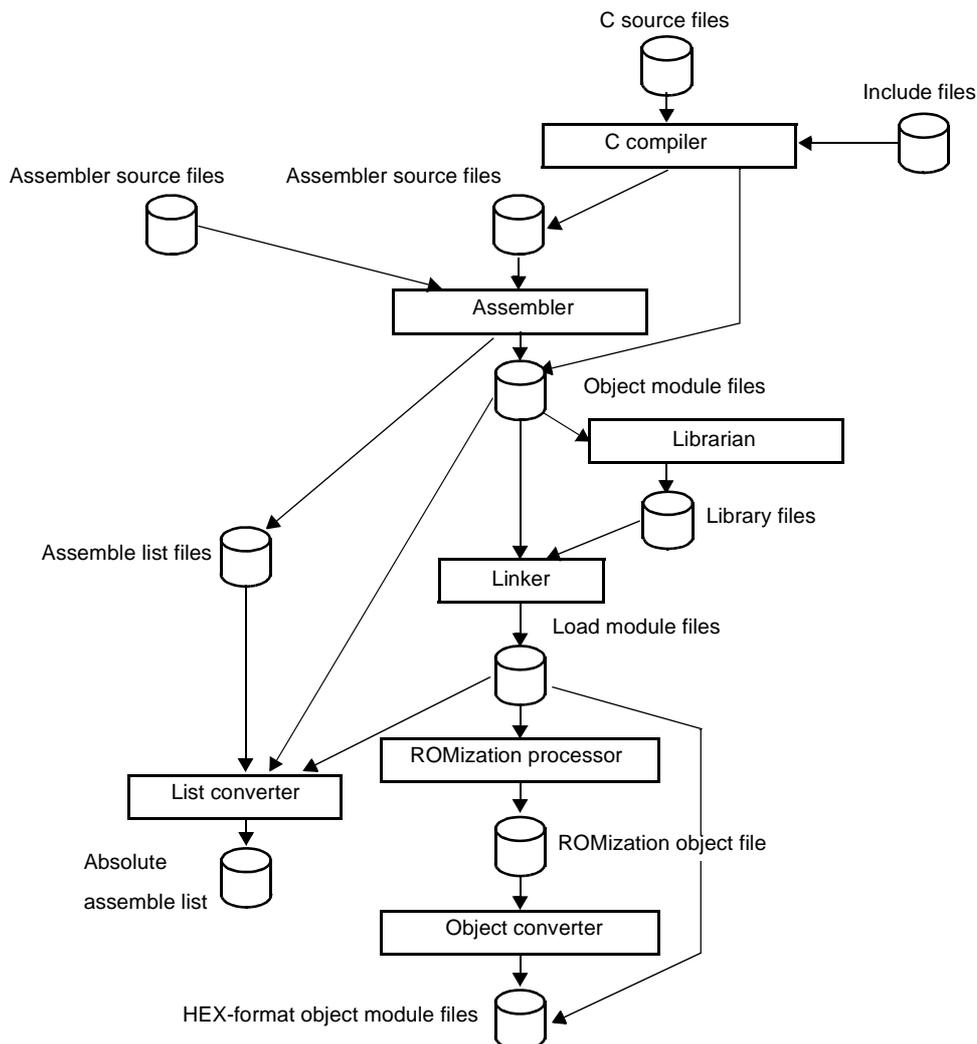
The C compiler compiles C source module files and generates object files or assembly source module files. By hand optimizing the generated assembly source module files, you can create more efficient object module files. This is useful when the program must perform high-speed processing and when compact modules are desirable.

The following programs are involved in the processing flow.

Table 1-1. Programs Involved in Processing Flow

Program	Function
Compiler	Compiles C source module files
Assembler	Assembles assembly language source module files
Linker	Links object module files Determines addresses of relocatable segments
Object converter	Converts to HEX-format object module files
Librarian	Creates library files
List converter	Generates absolute assemble list files

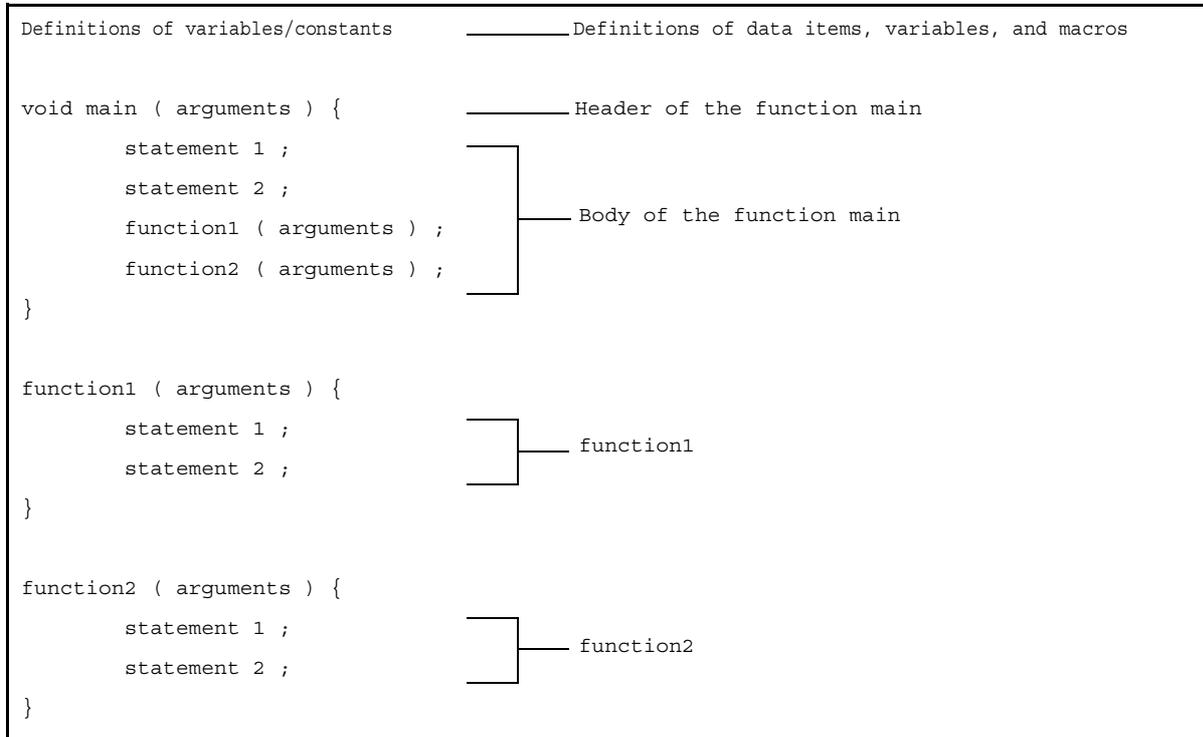
Figure 1-5. Flow of Compiler and Assembler Processing



1.1.4 Basic structure of C source program

A program in C is a collection of functions. A function is an independent unit of code that performs a specific action. Every C language program must have a function "main" which becomes the main routine of the program and is the first function to be called when execution begins.

Each function consists of a header part, which defines its function name and arguments, and a body part, which consists of declarations and statements. The format of C programs is shown below.



An actual C source program looks like this.

```

#define TRUE    1        /* #define xxx xxx Preprocessor directive (macro definition) */
#define FALSE  0        /* #define xxx xxx Preprocessor directive (macro definition) */
#define SIZE   200      /* #define xxx xxx Preprocessor directive (macro definition) */

void displaystring ( char * , int ) ;      /* xxx xxxx ( xxx, xxx )
                                           Function prototype declaration */
void displaychar ( char ) ;               /* xxx xxxx ( xxx )
                                           Function prototype declaration */

char mark[SIZE + 1] ;                     /* char xxx
                                           Type declaration, External definition */
                                           /* xx[xx] Operator */

void main ( void ) {
    int i, prime, k, count ;               /* int xxx Type declaration */

    count = 0 ;                            /* xx = xx Operator */
    
```

```

for ( i = 0 ; i <= SIZE ; i ++ )    /* for ( xx ; xx ; xx ) xxx ; Control structure */
    mark[i] = TRUE ;
for ( i = 0 ; i <= SIZE ; i ++ ) {
    if ( mark[i] ) {
        prime = i + i + 3 ;                /* xxx = xxx + xxx + xxx   Operator */
        displaystring ( "%6d", prime ) ;    /* xxx ( xxx ) ;           Operator */

        count ++ ;
        if ( ( count%8 ) == 0 )
            displaychar ( '\n' ) ;        /* if ( xxx ) xxx ; Control structure */
        for ( k = i + prime ; k <= SIZE ; k += prime )
            mark[k] = FALSE ;
    }
}
displaystring ( "\n%d primes found.", count ) ;    /* xxx ( xxx ) ;           Operator */
}

void    displaystring ( char *s, int i ) {
    int    j ;
    char    *ss ;

    j = i ;
    ss = s ;
}

void    displaychar ( char c ) {
    char    d ;

    d = c ;
}

```

**(1) Declaration of type and storage class**

Declares the data type and storage class of an object identifier.

**(2) Operator or expression**

Performs arithmetic, logical, or assignment operations.

**(3) Control structure**

Specifies the flow of the program. C has a number of instructions for different types of control, such as conditional control, iteration, and branching.

**(4) Structure or union**

Declares a structure or union. A structure is a data object that contains several subobjects or members that may have different types. A union is like a structure, but allows two or more variables to share the same memory.

**(5) External definition**

Declares a function or external object. A function is an independent unit of code that performs a specific action. A C program is a collection of functions.

**(6) Preprocessor directive**

An instruction to the compiler. The #define directive instructs the compiler to replace any instances of the first operand that appear in the program with the second operand.

**(7) Declaration of function prototype**

Declares the types of the return value and arguments of a function.

**1.2 Features**

This section explains the features of the CA78K0R.

**1.2.1 Features of C compiler****(1) Conforms to ANSI C**

The compiler conforms to the ANSI standard for the C language.

**Remark** ANSI: American National Standards Institute

**(2) Designed for efficient use of ROM and RAM memory**

External variables can be allocated to short direct addressing memory. Function arguments and auto variables can be allocated to short direct addressing memory or registers.

Bit instructions enable definitions and operations on data in units of 1 bit.

**(3) Interrupt control features**

Peripheral hardware of RL78,78K0R can be controlled directly from C.

Interrupt handlers can be written directly in C.

**(4) Supports extended functions of RL78,78K0R**

RL78,78K0R C compiler supports the following extended functions, which are not defined in the ANSI standard. Some of these functions allow special-purpose registers to be accessed in C, while others enable more compact object code and higher execution speed.

The following table lists extended functions that reduce the size of object code and improve execution speed.

**Table 1-2. Methods to Improve Execution Speed**

Method	Extended Function
Allocate variables to registers	Register variables
Allocate variables to the saddr area	sreg/___sreg
Use sfr names.	sfr area
Embed assembly language statements in C source programs.	ASM statements
Accessing the saddr or sfr area can be made on a bit-by-bit basis.	bit type variables, boolean/___boolean type variables
Specify bit fields using the unsigned char type.	Bit field declarations
The code to multiply can be directly output with inline expansion.	Multiplication function

Method	Extended Function
The code to rotate can be directly output with inline expansion.	Rotation functions
Specific data and instructions can be directly embedded in the code area.	Data insertion function
memcpy and memset are directly expanded inline and output.	Memory function

See "[3.2 Extended Language Specifications](#)" for detailed information about the extended functions of the RL78,78K0R C compiler.

### 1.2.2 Features of assembler

The RL78,78K0R assembler has the following features.

#### (1) Macro function

When the same group of instructions occurs in a source program over and over again, you can define a macro to give a single name to the group of instructions.

Macros can increase your coding efficiency and make your programs more readable.

#### (2) Optimized branching directives

The RL78,78K0R assembler provides the BR and CALL ([Branch instruction automatic selection directives](#)).

A characteristic of programs that make efficient use of memory is selection of the appropriate branching instructions, using only the number of bytes required by the branch destination range. But it is a burden for the programmer to need to be conscious of the branch destination range for every branch. The BR and CALL directives are automatic solutions to this problem. They facilitate memory-efficient branching by instructing the assembler to generate the most appropriate branching instruction for the branch destination range. This function is called branch instruction optimization.

#### (3) Conditional assembly

Conditional assembly allows you to specify conditions that determine whether or not specific sections of the source program are assembled.

For example, when the source contains debugging statements, a switch can be set to determine whether or not they should be translated into machine language. When they are no longer needed, they can be excluded from the output with no major modifications to the source program.

#### (4) 78K0 compatibility macro function

The assembly of the assembler source file made by the assembler for 78K0 is enabled.

When assemble 78K0 instructions that cannot be used on RL78,78K0R without changing the description of the source, specify the -compat option.

78K0 instructions that cannot be used on RL78,78K0R: DIVUW/ROR4/ROL4/ADJBA/ADJBS/CALLF/DBNZ

### 1.2.3 Limits

#### (1) Compiler limits

See "[\(9\) Translation Limit](#)" for the limits of the compiler.

**(2) Assembler limits**

The maximum values for the assembler are shown below.

**Table 1-3. Assembler Translation Limits**

Description	Limit
Number of symbols (local + public)	65,535
Number of symbols for which cross-reference list can be output	65,534 <sup>Note 1</sup>
Maximum size of macro body for one macro reference	1 Mbyte
Total size of all macro bodies	10 Mbyte
Number of segments in one file	256
Number of macro and include specifications in one file	10,000
Number of macro and include specifications in one include file	10,000
Number of relocation data items <sup>Note 2</sup>	65,535
Line number data items	65,535
Number of BR/CALL directives in one file	32,767
Character length of source line	2,048 <sup>Note 3</sup>
Character length of symbol	256
Character length of name definition <sup>Note 4</sup>	1,000
Character length of switch name <sup>Note 4</sup>	31
Character length of segment name	8
Character length of module name (NAME directive)	256
Number of parameters in MACRO directive	16
Number of arguments in macro reference	16
Number of arguments in IRP directive	16
Number of local symbols in macro body	64
Total number of local symbols in expanded macro	65,535
Nesting levels in macro (macro reference, REPT directive, IRP directive)	8 levels
Number of characters in TITLE control instruction (-lh option)	60 <sup>Note 5</sup>
Number of characters in SUBTITLE control instruction	72
Include file nesting levels in 1 file	16 levels
Conditional assembly nesting levels	8 levels
Number of include file paths specifiable by -i option	64
Number of symbols definable by -d option	30

**Notes 1.** Excluding the number of module names and section names.

Available memory is used. When memory is insufficient, a file is used.

**2.** Information passed to the linker when a symbol value cannot be resolved by the assembler.

For example, when an externally referenced symbol is referenced by the MOV instruction, two items of relocation information are generated in a .rel file.

3. Including CR and LF codes. If a line is longer than 2048 characters, a warning message is output and the 2049th and following characters are ignored.
4. Switch names are set to true/false by the SET and RESET directives and are used by constructs such as \$If.
5. If the maximum number of characters that can be specified in one line of the assemble list file ("X") is 119, this figure will be "X - 60" or less.

**(3) Linker limits**

The maximum values for the linker are shown below.

**Table 1-4. Linker Limits**

Description	Limit
Number of symbols (local + public + internally generated symbols <sup>Note 1</sup> )	2,147,483,647
Line number data items in 1 segment	1,048,575
Number of segments	65,535 <sup>Note 2</sup>
Number of input modules	1,024
Character length of memory area name	256
Number of memory areas	100 <sup>Note 2</sup>
Number of library files specifiable by the -b option	64
Number of include file paths specifiable by the -i option	64

- Notes**
1. Symbols internally generated by individual programs (including those for use in debugging information).
  2. Including those defined by default.

## CHAPTER 2 FUNCTIONS

This chapter explains programming technique to use CA78K0R more effectively and use of extended functions.

## 2.1 Variables (Assembly Language)

This section explains techniques for using variables in assembly language.

### 2.1.1 Defining variables with no initial values

Allocate memory area in a data segment.

Use the DSEG quasi directive to define a data segment, and use the DS quasi directive to allocate memory area.

**Example** Define an 10-byte variable with no initial values.

```

                DSEG
_table :      DS      10

```

**Remark** See "DSEG" and "DS".

### 2.1.2 Defining const constants with initial values

Initialize memory area in a code segment.

Use the CSEG quasi directive to define a code segment, and use the DB (1 byte), DW (2 bytes), or DG (4 bytes) quasi directive to initialize memory area.

**Example** Defining constants with initial values

```

                CSEG
_val1 :      DB      0F0H      ; 1 byte
_val2 :      DW      1234H     ; 2 bytes
_val3 :      DG      56789H    ; 4 bytes (20 bits)

```

**Remark** See "CSEG", "DB", "DW", and "DG".

### 2.1.3 Defining 1-bit variables

Allocate 1 bit memory area in a bit segment.

Use the BSEG quasi directive to define a bit segment, and use the DBIT quasi directive to allocate 1 bit memory area.

**Example** Define bit variables with no initial values.

```

                BSEG
_bit1         DBIT
_bit2         DBIT
_bit3         DBIT

```

**Remark** See "BSEG" and "DBIT".

### 2.1.4 1/8 bit access of variable

In assembly language source code, give two symbols for the address in the saddr area. To use the symbol name respectively for the bit access and for byte access, specify saddr as the relocation attribute of a DSEG segment, define bit name of a symbol for byte access as a symbol name for bit access by a EQU quasi directives.

**Example** Byte access symbol name: FLAGBYTE  
Bit access symbol name: FLAGBIT

- smp1.asm

```

NAME      SMP1
PUBLIC    FLAGBYTE, FLAGBIT

FLAGS     DSEG    SADDR          ; The relocation attribute of DSEG is SADDR
FLAGBYTE :    DS (1)              ; Define FLAGBYTE
FLAGBIT   EQU    FLAGBYTE.0      ; Define FLAGBIT
END

```

- smp2.asm

```

NAME      SMP2

EXTRN    FLAGBYTE
EXTBIT   FLAGBIT          ; FLAGBIT declared as EXTBIT

CSEG
C1 :
MOV      FLAGBYTE, #0FFH
CLR1    FLAGBIT
END

```

**Remark** See "DSEG" and "EQU".

### 2.1.5 Allocating to sections accessible with short instructions

Compared to other data memory areas, the short direct addressing area can be accessed with shorter instructions. Improve the memory efficiency of programs by efficiently using this area.

To allocate in the short direct addressing area, specify `saddr` or `saddrp` as the relocation attribute of a DSEG quasi directive.

The following examples explains use in assembly source code.

#### - Module 1

```
PUBLIC  TMP1, TMP2
WORK   DSEG saddrp
TMP1 : DS 2 ; word
TMP2 : DS 1 ; byte
```

#### - Module 2

```
EXTRN  TMP1, TMP2
SAB    CSEG
MOVW   TMP1, #1234H
MOV    TMP2, #56H
:
```

**Remark** See "[DSEG](#)".

## 2.2 Variables (C Language)

This section explains Variables (C language).

### 2.2.1 Allocating data only of reference in ROM

#### (1) Allocating variables with initial values in ROM

Specify the const qualifier to allocate variables with initial values only of a reference in ROM.

**Example** Allocating variable "a" with initial values only of a reference in ROM

```
const int    a = 0x12 ;    /* Allocating ROM */
int         b = 0x12 ;    /* Allocating ROM/RAM */
```

Variable "a" is allocated in ROM.

For variable "b", the initializing value is allocated in ROM and the variable itself is allocated in RAM (areas is required in both ROM and RAM).

Startup routine ROMization, an initial value of ROM is copied in a variable of RAM.

ROMization requires areas in both ROM and RAM.

#### (2) Allocating table data in ROM

If allocating table data in ROM only, define type qualifier const, as follows.

```
const unsigned char  table_data[9] = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 } ;
```

### 2.2.2 Allocating to sections accessible with short instructions

Compared to other data memory areas, the short direct addressing area can be accessed with shorter instructions. Improve the memory efficiency of programs by efficiently using this area.

The use example is shown below.

External variables defined sreg or \_\_sreg, and static variables within functions (called sreg variables) are automatically allocated in relocatable in short direct addressing area [FFE20H to FFEB3H]

```
extern sreg int hsmm0 ;
extern sreg int hsmm1 ;
extern sreg int *hsptr ;

void main ( void ) {
    hsmm0 -= hsmm1 ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[How to use the saddr area \(sreg/\\_\\_sreg\)](#)".

### 2.2.3 Allocating in near areas

Using the small model, the compiler generates code with 16-bit address lengths.

When knowing in advance that code and data are into 64 KB, obtain more compact code by using the small model instead of the large model.

Specify the small model ( -ms option) with the compiler option. Data and functions are allocated in near areas.

Or add the `__near` type qualifier to variable and function declarations.

```
__near int          func ( void ) ; /* Allocating in near area */
__near const int   a = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in near area */
__near int         b = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in near area */

__near int func ( void ) {          /* Allocating in near area */
    /* Function processing */
    return 0 ;
}
```

**Remark** See to "near/far area specification (`__near/__far`)".

### 2.2.4 Allocating in far areas

Using the large model, the compiler generates code with 20-bit address lengths.

If data are into 64 KB and code are into 1MB, use the medium model.

Specify the medium model ( -mm option) with the compiler option. Data are allocated in near areas and functions are allocated in far areas.

Or add the `__near` and `__far` type qualifier to variable and function declarations.

```
__far int          func ( void ) ; /* Allocating in far area */
__near const int   a = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in near area */
__near int         b = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in near area */

__far int func ( void ) {          /* Allocating in far area */
    /* Function processing */
    return 0 ;
}
```

If code and data are into 1 MB, use the large model.

Specify the large model ( -ml option) with the compiler option. Data and functions are allocated in far areas.

Or add the `__far` type qualifier to variable and function declarations.

```
__far int          func ( void ) ; /* Allocating in far area */
__far const int   a = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in far area */
__far int         b = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in far area */

__far int func ( void ) {          /* Allocating in far area */
    /* Function processing*/
    return 0 ;
}
```

**Remark** See to "near/far area specification (`__near/__far`)".

### 2.2.5 Allocating addresses directly

#### (1) directmap

External variable declared `__directmap` and the initializing value of static variable in functions are allocation address, the variable is mapped to the specified address. Specify the allocation address as an integral number.

`__directmap` variables in C source files are handled as well as static variables.

Make the `__directmap` declaration in the module which defines the variable that to map to an absolute address.

```
__directmap char      c = 0xffe00 ;
__directmap __sreg char d = 0xffe20 ;
__directmap __sreg char e = 0xffe21 ;

__directmap struct x {
    char    a ;
    char    b ;
} xx = { 0xffe30 } ;

void main ( void ) {
    c = 1 ;
    d = 0x12 ;
    e.5 = 1 ;
    xx.a = 5 ;
    xx.b = 10 ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[Absolute address allocation specification \(`\_\_directmap`\)](#)".

#### (2) Using section names

Change the compiler output section name and specify a starting address.

Use the `#pragma` directive to specify the name of the section to be changed, a new name, and the starting address of the new section.

The following example changes the section name from `@CODEL` to `CC1`, and specifies `2400H` as the starting address.

```
#pragma section @CODEL CC1 AT 2400H

void main ( void ) {
    /* Function definition */
}
```

**Remark** See "[Changing compiler output section name \(`#pragma section`\)](#)".

### 2.2.6 Defining 1-bit variables

The variable is made bit and boolean type, are handled as 1-bit data, and are allocated in the short direct addressing area.

bit and boolean type variables are handled in the same way as external variables with no initial values (irregularity). The compiler generates the following bit manipulation instructions to this bit variables.

- MOV1, AND1, OR1, XOR1, SET1, CLR1, NOT1, BT, BF

The bit access to the short direct addressing area becomes possible in C source code.

```
#define ON      1
#define OFF    0

extern bit     data1 ;
extern bit     data2 ;

void main ( void ) {
    data1 = ON ;
    data2 = OFF ;
    while ( data1 ) {
        data1 = data2 ;
        testb ( ) ;
    }
    if ( data1 && data2 )
        chgb ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[bit type variables \(bit\)](#), [boolean type variables \(boolean/\\_\\_boolean\)](#)".

### 2.2.7 Empty area of the structure is stuffed

Specify the -rc option to deselect alignment of structure members on 2-byte boundaries.

However, there is no support for deselecting alignment of non-structure variables.

## 2.3 Functions

This section explains functions.

### 2.3.1 Allocating to sections accessible with short instructions

Using callt function calls, obtain code that is more compact than the code for normal function calls.

A callt instruction stores the address of the called function in the area [80H - 0BFH] called a callt table. And possible to call the function by a short code than the function is called directly.

```
__callt void    func1 ( void ) ;

__callt void    func1 ( void ) {
    /* Function definition */
}
```

**Remark** See "[callt functions \(callt/\\_\\_callt\)](#)".

### 2.3.2 Allocating in near areas

Using the small model, the compiler generates code with 16-bit address lengths.

When knowing in advance that code and data are into 64 KB, obtain more compact code by using the small model instead of the large model.

Specify the small model ( -ms option) with the compiler option. Functions are allocated in near areas.

Or add the \_\_near type qualifier to function declarations.

```
__near int      func ( void ) ; /* Allocating in near area */
__near const int a = 0 x 12 ; /* Allocating in near area */
__near int      b = 0 x 12 ; /* Allocating in near area */

__near int func ( void ) { /* Allocating in near area */
    /* Function processing */
    return 0 ;
}

void main ( void ) {
    int a ;
    a = func ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See to "[near/far area specification \(\\_\\_near/\\_\\_far\)](#)".

### 2.3.3 Allocating in far areas

If data are into 64 KB and code are into 1MB, use the medium model.

Specify the medium model ( -mm option) with the compiler option. Functions are allocated in far areas.

If code and data are into 1 MB, use the large model.

Specify the large model ( -ml option) with the compiler option. Data and functions are allocated in far areas.

Or add the `__far` type qualifier to function declarations.

```
__far int          func ( void ) ; /* Allocating in far area */
__near const int  a = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in near area */
__near int        b = 0 x 12 ;    /* Allocating in near area */

__far int func ( void ) {          /* Allocating in far area */
    /* Function processing */
    return 0 ;
}

void main ( void ) {
    int      a ;
    a = func ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See to "[near/far area specification \(\\_\\_near/\\_\\_far\)](#)".

### 2.3.4 Allocating addresses directly

#### (1) Using section names

Change the compiler output section name and specify a starting address.

Use the `#pragma` directive to specify the name of the section to be changed, a new name, and the starting address of the new section.

```
#pragma section @@DATA ??DATA AT 0FDE00H

int          a1 ;                // ??DATA
int          a2 ;                // ??DATA

#pragma section @@DATS ??DATS AT 0FFE30H

sreg int     b1 ;                // ??DATS
sreg int     b2 ;                // ??DATS
```

**Remark** See "[Changing compiler output section name \(#pragma section\)](#)".

### 2.3.5 Inline expansion of function

#pragma inline instructs to generate inline expansion code for memory operation standard library memcpy and memse, instead of calling functions.

If to make the execution faster by expanding other functions inline, there are no instructions which can be inline expansive every function. If the function except memcpy and memset being inline-expansive, define a macro in function format, as shown below.

```
#define MEMCOPY ( a, b, c ) \
    { \
        struct st { unsigned char d[ ( c ) ]; } ; \
        * ( ( struct st * ) ( a ) ) = * ( ( struct st * ) ( b ) ) ; \
    }
```

**Remark** See "[Memory manipulation function \(#pragma inline\)](#)".

### 2.3.6 Embedding assembly instructions

Embedding assembly instructions in the assembler source file output by the compiler.

#### (1) #asm - #endasm

#asm marks the start of an assembly source code block, and #endasm marks its end. Write assembly source code between the #asm and #endasm.

```
#asm
: /* Assembly source */
#endasm
```

[Output assemble file] by [Compile Options] tab of Property panel, set it as "Yes." (See "CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build" for a setting method.)

**Remark** See "[ASM statements \(#asm - #endasm/ \\_\\_asm\)](#)".

#### (2) \_\_asm

Described by the next form in the C source.

```
__asm ( string literal ) ;
```

Characters in the string literal are interpreted according to the ANSI conventions. Escape sequences, the line continues on the next line by '\ ' character, and concatenate strings can be described.

[Output assemble file] by [Compile Options] tab of Property panel, set it as "Yes." (See "CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build" for a setting method.)

**Remark** See "[ASM statements \(#asm - #endasm/ \\_\\_asm\)](#)".

## 2.4 Using Microcontroller Functions

This section explains using microcontroller functions.

### 2.4.1 Accessing special function registers (SFR) from C

#### (1) Setting each register of SFR

The SFR area are a area of group of special function registers, such as mode and control registers for the peripheral hardware of RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers (PM1, P1, TMC80, etc.).

To use the SFR area from C, place the `#pragma sfr` at the start of C source file. This declares the name of each SFR register. The `sfr` keyword can be either uppercase or lowercase.

```
#pragma sfr
```

The following error message appears if attempt to use the SFR area without declaring the register names.

```
E0711 Undeclared 'variable-name' ; function 'function-name'
```

The symbols made available by the `#pragma sfr` directive are the same as the abbreviations given in the list of special function registers.

The following items can be described before `#pragma sfr`:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

In the C source, simply use the `sfr` names supported by the target device. The `sfr` names do not need to be declared individually.

SFR names are external variables with no initial values (irregularity).

A compiler error occurs if assign invalid constant data to an SFR name.

**Remark** See "[How to use the sfr area \(#pragma sfr\)](#)".

#### (2) Specifying bits in SFR registers

As shown below, specify bits in SFR registers by using reserved names or by using the "register-name.bit-position".

##### Examples 1. Starting TM1

```
TCE1 = 1 ;
or
TMC1.0 = 1 ;
```

##### 2. Stopping TM1

```
TCE1 = 0 ;
or
TMC1.0 = 0 ;
```

## 2.4.2 Interrupt functions in C

### (1) Interrupt function

The following two directives are provided when the interrupt function is specified.

- #pragma interrupt
- #pragma vect

Either can be used. And the vector table is generated, which can check in the assembler source list output.

Place the #pragma directive at the start of the C source file.

The following items can be described before #pragma directives:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

**Example** Processing for input to INTPO pin

```
#pragma interrupt INTPO inter rbl

void inter ( void ) {
    /* Processing for input to INTPO pin*/
}
```

**Remark** See "[Interrupt functions \(#pragma vect/interrupt\)](#)".

### (2) RTOS interrupt handlers

RTOS interrupt handlers are described by use the #pragma rtos\_interrupt, as shown below.

Place the #pragma directive at the start of the C source file.

The following items can be described before #pragma directives:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt INTPO inthdr1

#include "kernel.h"
#include "kernel_id.h"

void inthdr1 ( void ) {
    /* Handle the interrupt */
    return ;
}
```

**Remark** See to "[Interrupt handler for RTOS \(#pragma rtos\\_interrupt\)](#)".

### (3) Allocating stack area

When using the extended functions for interrupt functions, and do not specify stack switching, the compiler uses the default stack. It does not allocate any extra stack space that be required.

### 2.4.3 Using CPU control instructions in C

#### (1) halt instruction

The halt instruction is one of the standby functions of the microcontroller. To use it, use the #pragma HALT as shown below.

Place the #pragma directive at the start of the C source file.

The following items can be described before #pragma directives:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

In the form similar to the function call, describes it by the uppercase letter in C source as follows.

#### Example Using the halt instruction

```
#pragma HALT
:

void func ( void ) {
:
    HALT ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[CPU control instruction \(#pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP\)](#)".

#### (2) stop instruction

The stop instruction is one of the standby functions of the microcontroller. To use it, use the #pragma STOP as shown below.

Place the #pragma directive at the start of the C source file.

The following items can be described before #pragma directives:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

In the form similar to the function call, describes it by the uppercase letter in C source as follows.

#### Example Using the stop instruction

```
#pragma STOP
:

void func ( void ) {
:
    STOP ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[CPU control instruction \(#pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP\)](#)".

**(3) brk instruction**

To use software interrupt of a microcontroller, use the #pragma BRK as shown below.

Place the #pragma directive at the start of the C source file.

The following items can be described before #pragma directives:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

In the form similar to the function call, describes it by the uppercase letter in C source as follows.

**Example** Using the brk instruction

```
#pragma BRK
:

void func ( void ) {
:
    BRK ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[CPU control instruction \(#pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP\)](#)".

**(4) nop instruction**

The nop instruction advances the clock without operating a microcontroller. To use it, use the #pragma NOP as shown below.

Place the #pragma directive at the start of the C source file.

The following items can be described before #pragma directives:

- Comments
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

In the form similar to the function call, describes it by the uppercase letter in C source as follows.

**Example** Using the nop instruction

```
#pragma NOP
:

void func ( void ) {
:
    NOP ( ) ;
}
```

**Remark** See "[CPU control instruction \(#pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP\)](#)".

## 2.5 Startup Routine

This section explains startup routine.

### 2.5.1 Deleting unused functions and areas from startup routine

#### (1) Deleting the exit function

Delete the exit function by setting the EQU symbol EXITSW in the startup routine to 0.

#### (2) Deleting unused areas

An unused area about the area such as `_@FNCTBL` that a standard library uses can be deleted by confirming the library used, and changing the value of the EQU symbol such as EXITSW in startup routine `cstart.asm`.

The following table lists the controlling EQU symbols and the affected library function names and symbol names.

EQU Symbol	Library Function Name	Symbol Name
BRKSW	brk sbrk malloc calloc realloc free	_errno _@MEMTOP _@MEMBTM _@BRKADR
EXITSW	exit atexit	_@FNCTBL _@FNCENT
RANDSW	rand srand	_@SEED
DIVSW	div	_@DIVR
LDIVSW	ldiv	_@LDIVR
STRTOKSW	strtok	_@TOKPTR
FLOATSW	atof strtod strtol strtoul Math functions Floating point runtime library	_errno

**Remark** See "7.4 Startup Routines".

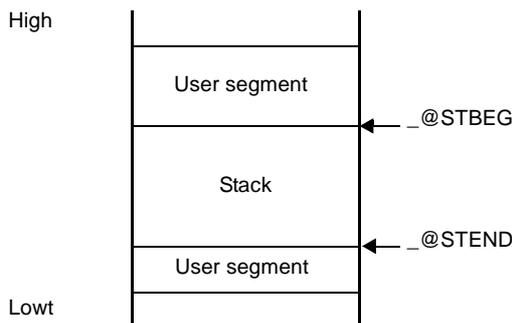
2.5.2 Allocating stack area

(1) Stack setting

If specify the stack resolution symbol option -s when linking, the symbol `__STEND` is generated to mark the lowest address in the stack, and the symbol `__STBEG` is generated to mark the highest address + 1.

```
MOVW    SP, #LOWW    __STBEG
```

Figure 2-1. Stack Setting



In this case, set the stack pointer as follows.

```
MOVW    SP, #LOWW    __STBEG
```

(2) Checking stack area

To check the stack area, specify the linker -kp option to output the public symbol list in the link list file. The stack area is between the `__STEND` symbol and the `__STBEG` symbol.

Example Public symbol list

```
*** Public symbol list ***
MODULE  ATTR   VALUE   NAME
        NUM    0FFE20H  __STBEG
        NUM    0FFB7EH  __STEND
```

### 2.5.3 Initializing RAM

The following areas are initialized by the startup routine.

- The saddr area (except for the general register area)
- The stack area between symbols "\_@STEND" and "\_@STBEG"

In the default startup routine, initial values are copied to the following areas.

- @@INIT segment
- @@INITL segment
- @@INIS segment

The following areas are zero cleared.

- saddr area (0FFE20H to 0FFEDFH)
- @@DATA segment
- @@DATAL segment
- @@DATS segment

If to initialize areas other than the above, add the appropriate initialization processing code to the startup routine.

**Remark** See "[7.4 Startup Routines](#)".

## 2.6 Link Directives

This section explains link directives.

### 2.6.1 Partitioning default areas

Link directives allow to specify names for memory areas that define. However, care is required regarding the location of the special function register (SFR) area.

For example, if define two areas in RAM and specify 1) the name "RAM", which is defined by default, and 2) the user-defined name "STACK", then should make sure that the SFR area is contained within the area named RAM.

#### Example Link directives

```
MEMORY STACK : ( 0FEF00H, 00100H )
MEMORY RAM : ( 0FF000H, 01000H )
```

**Remark** See "5.1.1 Link directives".

### 2.6.2 Specifying section allocation

#### (1) Specifying areas

When specifying the allocation of a section, can specify a memory area.

Use the MERGE quasi directive to allocate the target section in a memory area.

**Example** Allocate input segment SEG1 to memory area MEM1.

```
MEMORY ROM : ( 0000H, 1000H )
MEMORY MEM1 : ( 1000H, 2000H )
MERGE SEG1 : = MEM1
```

**Remark** See "5.1.1 Link directives".

#### (2) Specifying addresses

When specifying the allocation of a section, can specify addresses.

Use the MERGE quasi directive to specify the allocation address of the target section.

**Example** Allocate input segment SEG1 to address 500H.

```
MEMORY ROM : ( 0000H, 10000H )
MERGE SEG1 : AT ( 500H )
```

**Remark** See "5.1.1 Link directives".

## 2.7 Reducing Code Size

This section explains techniques for reducing the code size.

### 2.7.1 Using extended functions to generate efficient object code

When RL78,78K0R application product is developed, RL78,78K0R C compiler generates efficient object code by using the saddr and callt areas in the device.

Using external variables

- └─ if (saddr area available)
  - └─ use sreg/\_\_sreg variables/  
or compiler's -rd option

Using 1 bit data

- └─ if (saddr area available)
  - └─ use bit/boolean/\_\_boolean type variables

Function definitions

- └─ if (frequently called function)
  - └─ if (callt area available)
    - └─ define as \_\_callt/callt function (for smaller code size)
- └─ if (use automatic variables && saddr area available)

#### (1) Using external variables

If available in the saddr area when defining external variables, define external variables as sreg/\_\_sreg variables. sreg/\_\_sreg variables are shorter instruction code than the instructions to memory. Object code will be smaller and execution speed will be faster. (Instead of the sreg variables, can use the compiler -rd option.)

```
sreg/__sreg variable define :  extern sreg int  variable-name ;
                               extern __sreg int variable-name ;
```

**Remark** See "[How to use the saddr area \(sreg/\\_\\_sreg\)](#)".

#### (2) Using 1 bit data

When using only 1 bit of data, define a bit type (or boolean/\_\_boolean type) variable. The compiler generates bit operation instructions to manipulate bit/boolean/\_\_boolean type variables. Like sreg variables, they are stored in the saddr area for smaller code and faster execution speed.

```
bit/boolean type variable define : bit      variable-name ;
                                   boolean  variable-name ;
                                   __boolean variable-name ;
```

**Remark** See "[bit type variables \(bit\), boolean type variables \(boolean/\\_\\_boolean\)](#)".

**(3) Function definitions**

Frequently called functions can be registered in the callt table when callt area can be used.

callt functions are called by using the callt areas of the device, so they can be called by code that is shorter than normal function calls.

```
callt function define : callt int tsub ( ) {
                    :
                    }
```

**Remark** See "[callt functions \(callt/\\_\\_callt\)](#)".

-qx3 reduces the code size by "subroutine-ization of a common code" and calling "library for the stack access" in addition to -qx2. Therefore the execution speed has the possibility of slowing compared with -qx2.

**(4) Using extended functions**

Function definitions

```
├── if (use automatic variables && saddr area available)
│   └── Register definitions
└── if (use internal static variable) && (saddr area available)
    └── __sreg definitions
```

**(a) Functions that use automatic variables**

When the function for which an automatic variable is used can use saddr area, define register. A register definitions allocates a defined object to a register.

Programs that use registers are shorter object and faster execution than programs that use memory.

**Remark** About defining register variables (register int i ; ...), see "[Register variables \(register\)](#)".

**(b) Functions that use internal static variables**

When the function for which an internal static variables is used can use saddr area, define \_\_sreg or specify the -rs option. Like sreg variables, they are possible to shorter object and faster execution.

**Remark** See "[How to use the saddr area \(sreg/\\_\\_sreg\)](#)".

**(5) Other functions**

Other extended functions allow to generate faster execution or more compact code.

**(a) Use SFR names (or SFR bit names)**

```
#pragma sfr
```

**Remark** See "[How to use the sfr area \(#pragma sfr\)](#)".

**(b) \_\_sreg definitions for bit fields of 1-bit members (members can also use unsigned char type)**

```
__sreg struct bf {  
    unsigned char a : 1 ;  
    unsigned char b : 1 ;  
    unsigned char c : 1 ;  
    unsigned char d : 1 ;  
    unsigned char e : 1 ;  
    unsigned char f : 1 ;  
} bf_1 ;
```

**Remark** See "[How to use the saddr area \(sreg/\\_\\_sreg\)](#)".

**(c) Use register bank switching for interrupt routines**

```
#pragma interrupt INTP0 inter RB1
```

**Remark** See "[Interrupt functions \(#pragma vect/interrupt\)](#)".

**(d) Use of multiplication, division embedded function**

```
#pragma mul  
#pragma div
```

**Remark** See "[Multiplication function \(#pragma mul\)](#)", "[Division function \(#pragma div\)](#)".

**(e) Described by assembly language to be faster modules.**

### 2.7.2 Calculating complex expressions

The following example shows the most reasonable way to calculate an expression whose result will always fit into byte type, even when intermediate results require double word type.

**Example** Find the rounded percentage  $c$  of  $b$  in  $a$ .

$$c = ( a \times 100 + b / 2 ) / b$$

In a function like the following, the variable for the result  $c$  must be defined as a long int, requiring 4 bytes of area when a single byte would have been enough.

```
void  _x ( ) {  
    c = ( ( unsigned long int ) a * ( unsigned long int ) 100 + ( unsigned long int ) b  
    / ( unsigned long int ) 2 ) / ( unsigned long int ) b ;  
}
```

This can be written as follows, if using double word type for intermediate results only.

```
#pragma mul  
#pragma div  
  
unsigned int    a, b ;  
unsigned char   c ;  
  
void  _x ( ) {  
    c = ( unsigned char ) divux ( ( unsigned long ) ( b / 2 ) + muluw ( a, 100 ), b ) ;  
}
```

## 2.8 Compiler and Assembler Mutual References

This section explains compiler and assembler mutual references.

### 2.8.1 Mutually referencing variables

#### (1) Reference a variable defined in C language

To reference a extern variable defined in a C program from an assembly language routine, define extern. Prefix the name of the variable with an underscore (\_) in the assembly language module.

#### Example C source

```
extern void    subf ( void ) ;
char    c = 0 ;
int     i = 0 ;

void main ( void ) {
    subf ( ) ;
}
```

#### Example Assembly source

```
$PROCESSOR ( F1166A0 )

    PUBLIC    _subf
    EXTRN    _c
    EXTRN    _i

@@CODE CSEG
_subf :
    MOV     !_c, #04H
    MOVW   AX, #07H
    MOVW   !_i, AX
    RET
    END
```

**Remark** See ["9.5 Referencing Variables Defined in C Language from Assembly Language"](#).

**(2) Reference a variable defined in assembly language**

To reference an extern variable defined in an assembly language program from a C routine, define extern. Prefix the name of the variable with an underscore (\_) in the assembly language routine.

**Example** C source

```
extern char    c ;
extern int     i ;

void    subf ( void ) {
    c = 'A' ;
    i = 4 ;
}
```

**Example** Assembly source

```
NAME ASMSUB
                PUBLIC  _i
                PUBLIC  _c
ABC DSEG        BASEP
_i : DW         0
_c : DB         0
                END
```

**Remark** See "[9.6 Referencing Variables Defined in Assembly Language from C Language](#)".

## 2.8.2 Mutually referencing functions

### (1) Reference a function defined in C language

The following procedure is used to call functions written in C from assembly language routines.

- (a) Save the work registers (AX, BC, DE)
- (b) Push the arguments on the stack
- (c) Call the C function
- (d) Adjust the stack pointer (SP) by the byte length of the arguments
- (e) Reference the return value of the C function (BC, or DE, BC)

**Example** Assembly language

```
$PROCESSOR ( F1166A0 )
    NAME     FUNC2
    EXTRN    _CSUB
    PUBLIC   _FUNC2
@@CODE CSEG
_FUNC2 :
    movw    ax, #20H           ; Set 2nd argument ( j )
    push   ax
    movw    ax, #21H           ; Set 1st argument ( i )
    call   !_CSUB             ; Call "CSUB ( i, j )"
    pop    ax
    ret
END
```

**Remark** See "[9.3 Calling C Language Routines from Assembly Language](#)".

### (2) Reference a function defined in assembly language

Functions defined in assembly language to be called from C functions perform the following processing.

- (a) Save the base pointer and saddr area for register variables
- (b) Copy the stack pointer (SP) to the base pointer (HL)
- (c) Perform the processing of the function FUNC
- (d) Set the return value
- (e) Restore the saved registers
- (f) Return to the function main

**Example** Assembly language

```
$PROCESSOR ( F1166A0 )

    PUBLIC _FUNC
    PUBLIC _DT1
    PUBLIC _DT2

@@DATA DSEG BASEP
_DT1 : DS ( 2 )
_DT2 : DS ( 4 )

@@CODE CSEG
_FUNC :
    PUSH    HL            ; Save base pointer
    PUSH    AX
    MOVW    HL, SP        ; Copy stack pointer
    MOVW    AX, [HL]      ; arg1
    MOVW    !_DT1, AX     ; Move 1st argument ( i )
    MOVW    AX, [HL + 10] ; arg2
    MOVW    !_DT2 + 2, AX
    MOVW    AX, [HL + 8]  ; arg2
    MOVW    !_DT2, AX    ; Move 2nd argument ( l )
    MOVW    BC, #0AH     ; Set return value
    POP     AX
    POP     HL            ; Restore base pointer
    RET
    END
```

**Remark** See "9.4 [Calling Assembly Language Routines from C Language](#)".

## CHAPTER 3 COMPILER LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS

This chapter explains the language specifications supported by RL78,78K0R C compiler.

### 3.1 Basic Language Specifications

The C compiler supports the language specifications stipulated by the ANSI standards. These specifications include items that are stipulated as processing definitions. This chapter explains the language specifications of the items dependent on the processing system of the micro processors for RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.

The differences between when options strictly conforming to the ANSI standards are used and when those options are not used are also explained.

See "3.2 [Extended Language Specifications](#)" for extended language specifications explicitly added by RL78,78K0R C compiler.

#### 3.1.1 Processing system dependent items

This section explains items dependent on processing system in the ANSI standards.

##### (1) Data types and sizes

The byte order in multibyte data types is "from least significant to most significant byte" Signed integers are expressed by 2's complements. The sign is added to the most significant bit (0 for positive or 0, and 1 for negative).

- The number of bits of 1 byte is 8.
- The number of bytes, byte order, and encoding in an object files are stipulated below.

**Table 3-1. Data Types and Sizes**

Data Types	Sizes
char	1 byte
int, short	2 bytes
long, float, double	4 bytes
pointer	near : 2 bytes far : 4 bytes

##### (2) Translation stages

The ANSI standards specify eight translation stages (known as "phases" ) of priorities among syntax rules for translation. The arrangement of "non-empty white space characters excluding line feed characters" which is defined as processing system dependent in phase 3 "Decomposition of source file into preprocessing tokens and white space characters" is maintained as it is without being replaced by single white space character.

However, tabs are replaced by the space character specified with the -lt option.

##### (3) Diagnostic messages

When syntax rule violation or restriction violation occurs on a translation unit, the compiler outputs as error message containing source file name and (when it can be determined) the number of line containing the error.

These error messages are classified into three types: "alarm", "fatal error", and "other error" messages.

**(4) Free standing environment**

- (a) The name and type of a function that is called on starting program processing are not stipulated in a free-standing environment<sup>Note</sup>. Therefore, it is dependent on the user-own coding and target system.

**Note** Environment in which a C Language source program is executed without using the functions of the operating system.

In the ANSI Standard two environments are stipulated for execution environment: a free-standing environment and a host environment. The RL78,78K0R C compiler does not supply a host environment at present.

- (b) The effect of terminating a program in a free-standing environment is not stipulated. Therefore, it is dependent on the user-own coding and target system.

**(5) Program execution**

The configuration of the interactive unit is not stipulated.

Therefore, it is dependent on the user-own coding and target system.

**(6) Character set**

The values of elements of the execution environment character set are ASCII codes.

**(7) Multi-byte characters**

Multi-byte characters are not supported by character constants and character strings.

However, Japanese description in comments is supported.

**(8) Significance of character display**

The values of expanded notation are stipulated as follows.

**Table 3-2. Expanded Notation and Meaning**

Expanded Notation	Value (ASCII)	Meaning
\a	07	Alert (Warning tone)
\b	08	Backspace
\f	0C	Form feed (New Page)
\n	0A	New line (Line feed)
\r	0D	Carriage return (Restore)
\t	09	Horizontal tab
\v	0B	Vertical tab

**(9) Translation Limit**

The limit values of translation are explained below.

**Table 3-3. Translation Limit Values**

Contents	Limit Values
Number of nesting levels of compound statements, repetitive control structures, and selective control structures (However, dependent on the number of "case" labels)	45

Contents	Limit Values
Number of nesting levels of condition embedding	255
Number of pointers, arrays, and function declarators (in any combination) qualifying one arithmetic type, structure type, union type, or incomplete type in one declaration	12
Number of nesting levels of an expression enclosed by parentheses in a complete expression	1024
Valid number of first characters in a macro name	256
Valid number of first characters of an external identifier	249
Valid number of first characters in an internal identifier	249
Number of identifiers having an external identifier in one translation unit	1024 <sup>Note1</sup>
Number of identifiers having the valid block range declared in one basic block	255
Number of macro identifiers simultaneously defined in one translation unit	60000
Number of dummy arguments in one function definition and number of actual arguments in one function call	39 <sup>Note1</sup>
Number of dummy arguments in one macro definition	31
Number of actual arguments in one macro call	31
Number of characters in one logical source line	32767 <sup>Note1</sup>
One character string constant after concatenation, or number of characters in a wide character string constant	509 <sup>Note1</sup>
Object size of 1-file (Data is indicated)	65535
Number of nesting levels for include (#include) files	50
Number of "case" labels for one "switch" statement (including those nested, if any)	1024
Number of source lines per compilation unit	65535 <sup>Note1</sup>
Number of nested function calls	40 <sup>Note1</sup>
Number of label in one function	33
Total size of code, data, and stack segments in a single object module	by memory model <sup>Note2</sup>
Number of members of a single structure or single union	1024
Number of enumerate constants in a single enumerate type	255
Number of nesting levels of a structure or union definition in the arrangement of a single structure declaration	15
Nesting of initializer elements	15
Number of function definitions in a single source file	4095
Number of nesting levels enclosed by parentheses in a complete declarator	591 <sup>Note1</sup>
Macro nesting	10000
Number of include file paths	64

- Notes 1.** The values marked with Note1 are guaranteed values. These values may be exceeded in some cases, but the operation is not guaranteed.
- 2.** The following table lists the maximum values for each memory model when extended functions are not used.

Memory Model	Maximum Values
Small model	Code 64KB, Data 64KB, Total 128KB
Medium model	Code 1MB, Data 64KB, Total 1MB
Large model	Code 1MB, Data 1MB, Total 1MB

**(10) Quantitative limit****(a) The limit values of the general integer types (limits.h file)**

The limits.h file specifies the limit values of the values that can be expressed as general integer types (char type, signed/unsigned integer type, and enumerate type).

Because multibyte characters are not supported, MB\_LEN\_MAX does not have a corresponding limit.

Consequently, it is only defined with MB\_LEN\_MAX as 1.

If a -qu option is specified, CHAR\_MIN is 0, and CHAR\_MAX takes the same value as UCHAR\_MAX. The limit values defined by the limits.h file are as follows.

**Table 3-4. Limit Values of General Integer Type (limits.h File)**

Name	Value	Meaning
CHAR_BIT	+8	The number of bits (= 1 byte) of the minimum object not in bit field
SCHAR_MIN	-128	Minimum value of signed char
SCHAR_MAX	+127	Maximum value of signed char
UCHAR_MAX	+255	Maximum value of unsigned char
CHAR_MIN	-128	Minimum value of char
CHAR_MAX	+127	Maximum value of char
SHRT_MIN	-32768	Minimum value of short int
SHRT_MAX	+32767	Maximum value of short int
USHRT_MAX	+65535	Maximum value of unsigned short int
INT_MIN	-32768	Minimum value of int
INT_MAX	+32767	Maximum value of int
UINT_MAX	+65535	Maximum value of unsigned int
LONG_MIN	-2147483648	Minimum value of long int
LONG_MAX	+2147483647	Maximum value of long int
ULONG_MAX	+4294967295	Maximum value of unsigned long int

**(b) The limit values of the floating-point type (float.h file)**

The limit values related to characteristics of the floating-point type are defined in float.h file.

The limit values defined by the float.h file are as follows.

Table 3-5. Definition of Limit Values of Floating-point Type (float.h File)

Name	Value	Meaning
FLT_ROUNDS	+1	Rounding mode for floating-point addition. 1 for the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers (rounding in the nearest direction).
FLT_RADIX	+2	Radix of exponent (b)
FLT_MANT_DIG	+24	Number of numerals (p) with FLT_RADIX of floating-point mantissa as base
DBL_MANT_DIG		
LDBL_MANT_DIG		
FLT_DIG	+6	Number of digits of a decimal number <sup>Note 1</sup> (q) that can round a decimal number of q digits to a floating-point number of p digits of the radix b and then restore the decimal number of q
DBL_DIG		
LDBL_DIG		
FLT_MIN_EXP	-125	Minimum negative integer ( $e_{\min}$ ) that is a normalized floating-point number when FLT_RADIX is raised to the power of the value of FLT_RADIX minus 1.
DBL_MIN_EXP		
LDBL_MIN_EXP		
FLT_MIN_10_EXP	-37	Minimum negative integer $\log_{10} b^{e_{\min}-1}$ that falls in the range of a normalized floating-point number when 10 is raised to the power of its value.
DBL_MIN_10_EXP		
LDBL_MIN_10_EXP		
FLT_MAX_EXP	+128	Maximum integer ( $e_{\max}$ ) that is a finite floating-point number that can be expressed when FLT_RADIX is raised to the power of its value minus 1.
DBL_MAX_EXP		
LDBL_MAX_EXP		
FLT_MAX_10_EXP	+38	Maximum value of finite floating-point numbers that can be expressed $(1 - b^{-p}) * b^{e_{\max}}$
DBL_MAX_10_EXP		
LDBL_MAX_10_EXP		
FLT_MAX	3.40282347E + 38F	Maximum value of finite floating-point numbers that can be expressed $(1 - b^{-p}) * b^{e_{\max}}$
DBL_MAX		
LDBL_MAX		
FLT_EPSILON	1.19209290E - 07F	Difference <sup>Note 2</sup> between 1.0 that can be expressed by specified floating-point number type and the lowest value which is greater than 1. $b^{1-p}$
DBL_EPSILON		
LDBL_EPSILON		
FLT_MIN	1.17549435E - 38F	Minimum value of normalized positive floating-point number $b^{e_{\min}-1}$
DBL_MIN		
LDBL_MIN		

- Notes 1.** DBL\_DIG and LDBL\_DIG are 10 or more in the ANSI standards but are 6 in the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers because both the double and long double types are 32 bits.
- 2.** DBL\_EPSILON and LDBL\_EPSILON are 1E-9 or less in the ANSI standards, but 1.19209290E-07F in the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.

**(11) Identifier**

The initial 249 characters of identifiers are recognized.  
Uppercase and lowercase characters are distinguished.

**(12) char type**

A char type with no type specifier (signed, unsigned) specified is treated as a signed integer as the default assumption.  
However, a simple char type can be treated as an unsigned integer by specifying the -qi option of the C compiler.  
The types of those that are not included in the character set of the source program required by the ANSI standards (escape sequence) is converted for storage, in the same manner as when types other than char type are substituted for a char type.

```
char    c = '\777';    /* Value of c is -1 */
```

**(13) Floating-point constants**

The floating-point constants conform to IEEE754<sup>Note</sup>.

**Note** IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers  
Moreover, IEEE754 is a standard to unify specifications such as the data format and numeric range in systems that handle floating-point operations.

**(14) Character constants**

- (a) Both the character set of the source program and the character set in the execution environment are basically ASCII codes, and correspond to members having the same value.
- (b) The last character of the value of an integer character constant including two or more characters is valid.
- (c) A character that cannot be expressed by the basic execution environment character set or escape sequence is expressed as follows.

<1> An octal or hexadecimal escape sequence takes the value indicated by the octal or hexadecimal notation

\077	63
------	----

<2> The simple escape sequence is expressed as follows.

\'	'
\"	"
\?	?
\\	\

<3> Values of \a, \b, \f, \n, \r, \t, \v are same as the values explained in "(8) Significance of character display".

- (d) Character constants of multi byte characters are not supported.

**(15) Header file name**

The method to reflect the string in the two formats (<> and " ") of a header file name on the header file or an external source file name is stipulated in "(32) Loading header file".

**(16) Comment**

A comment can be described in Japanese. The default character code set for Japanese is Shift JIS.

The character code set of the input source file can be specified by the compiler's -z option, or by an environmental variable. An option specification takes priority over an environment variable specification. However, character codes are not guaranteed when "none" is specified.

**(a) Option specification**

```
-ze | -zn | -zs
```

**(b) Environment variable**

```
LANG78K [euc | none | sjis]
```

To set environment variables, use the standard procedure for environment.

**(17) Signed constants and unsigned constants**

If the value of a general integer type is converted into a signed integer of a smaller size, the higher bits are truncated and a bit string image is copied.

If an unsigned integer is converted into the corresponding signed integer, the internal representation is not changed.

**(18) Floating-points and general integers**

If the value of a general integer type is converted into the value of a floating-point type, and if the value to be converted is within a range that can be expressed but not accurately, the result is rounded to the closest expressible value.

When the result is just a middle value, it can be rounded to the even number (with the least significant bit of the mantissa being 0).

**(19) double type and float type**

In the RL78,78K0R C compiler, a double type is expressed as a floating-point number in the same manner as a float type, and is treated as 32-bit (single-precision) data

**(20) Signed type in operator in bit units**

The characteristics of the shift operator conform to the stipulation in "(26) Shift operator in bit units".

The other operators in bit units for signed type are calculated as unsigned values (as in the bit image).

**(21) Members of structures and unions**

If the value of a member of a union is stored in a different member, it is stored according to an alignment condition. Therefore, the members of that union are accessed according to the alignment condition (see "(b) Structure type" and "(c) Union type").

In the case of a union that includes a structure sharing the arrangement of the common first members as a member, the internal representation is the same, and the result is the same even if the first member common to any structure is referred.

**(22) sizeof operator**

The value resulting from the "sizeof" operator conforms to the stipulation related to the bytes in an object in "(1) [Data types and sizes](#)".

For the number of bytes in a structure and union, it is byte including padding area.

**(23) Cast operator**

When a pointer is converted into a general integer type, the required size of the variable is the same as the following table lists. The bit string is saved as is as the conversion result.

Any integer can be converted by a pointer. However, the result of converting an integer smaller than an int type is expanded according to the type.

- near: 2 bytes
- far: 4 bytes

When a near pointer or int is cast to a far pointer, and when a near pointer is cast to a long, the operation behaves as follows.

- For variable pointers, 0xf is added at the most significant position (0 is an exception and the pointer is zero-extended).
- Function pointers are zero-extended.

**(24) Division/remainder operator**

The result of the division operator ("/") when the operands are negative and do not divide perfectly with integer division, is as follows: If either the divisor or the dividend is negative, the result is the smallest integer greater than the algebraic quotient.

If both the divisor and the dividend are negative, the result is the largest integer less than the algebraic quotient.

If the operand is negative, the result of the "%" operator takes the sign of the first operand in the expression.

**(25) Addition and subtraction operators**

If two pointers indicating the elements of the same array are subtracted, the type of the result is int type, and the size is 2 bytes.

**(26) Shift operator in bit units**

If E1 of "E1 >> E2" is of signed type and takes a negative value, an arithmetic shift is executed.

**(27) Storage area class specifier**

The storage area class specifier "register" is declared to increase the access speed as much as possible, but this is not always effective.

**(28) Structure and union specifier**

- (a) int type bit field sign** Simple int type bit fields without a signed or unsigned specifier are treated as unsigned.
- (b) To retain a bit field, a storage area unit to which any address with sufficient size can be assigned can be allocated. If there is insufficient area, however, the bit field that does not match is packed into to the next unit according to the alignment condition of the type of the field.**
- (c) The allocation sequence of the bit field in unit is from lower to higher.**  
However, the -rb option can be specified for the allocation sequence is from higher to lower.

**(d) Each member of the non-bit field of one structure or union is aligned at a boundary as follows**

- char and unsigned char types, and arrays of char and unsigned char types: Byte boundary
- Other (including pointers): 2-byte boundary

**(29) Enumerate type specifier**

The type of an enumeration is the first type from among the following which is capable of expressing all of the enumeration constants.

- signed char
- unsigned char
- signed int

**(30) Type qualifier**

The configuration of access to data having a type qualified to be "volatile" is dependent upon the address (I/O port, etc.) to which the data is mapped.

**(31) Condition embedding**

- (a) The value for the constant specified for condition embedding and the value of the character constant appearing in the other expressions are equal.**
- (b) The character constant of a single character must not have a negative value.**

**(32) Loading header file****(a) A preprocessing directive in the form of "#include <character string>"**

Unless "filename" begins with the character '\', <sup>Note</sup> the #include <filename> preprocessor directive instructs the preprocessor to search for the file specified between the angle brackets (<..>) in the following locations: 1) the folder specified by the -i option, 2) the folder specified by the INC78K0R environment variable, and 3) the ..\inc78k0r folder relative to the bin folder where cc78k0r.exe resides.

If a header file uniformly identified is searched with a character string specified between delimiters "<" and ">", the whole contents of the header file are replaced.

**Note** Both "\" and "/" are regarded as the delimiters of a folder.

**Example**

```
#include <header.h>
```

The search order is as follows.

- The folder specified by the -i option
- The folder specified by the INC78K0R environment variable
- The standard folder

**(b) A preprocessing directive in the form of "#include "character string""**

Unless "character string" begins with the character \"<sup>Note</sup>, the #include "character string" preprocessor directive instructs the preprocessor to search for the file specified between the quotation marks (".") in the following locations: 1) the folder that contains the source file, 2) the folder specified by the -i option, 3) the folder specified by the INC78K0R environment variable, and 4) the ..\inc78k0r folder relative to the bin folder where cc78k0r.exe resides.

If the file specified between the quotation mark delimiters is found, the #include directive line is replaced with the entire contents of the file.

**Note** Both "\" and "/" are regarded as the delimiters of a folder.

**Example**

```
#include      "header.h"
```

The search order is as follows.

- The folder that contains the source file
- The folder specified by the -i option
- The folder specified by the INC78K0R environment variable
- The standard folder

**(c) The format of "#include preprocessing character phrase string"**

The format of "#include preprocessing character phrase string" is treated as the preprocessing character phrase of single header file only if the preprocessing character phrase string is a macro that is replaced to the form of <character string> or "character string".

**(d) A preprocessing directive in the form of "#include <character string>"**

Between a string delimited (finally) and a header file name, the length of the alphabetic characters in the strings is identified,

```
And the file name length valid in the compiler operating environment is valid.
```

The folder that searches a file conforms to the above stipulation.

**(33)#pragma directive**

#pragma directives are one of the preprocessing directive types defined by the ANSI standard. The string that follows #pragma the compiler to translate in an implementation-defined manner.

When a #pragma directive is not recognized by the compiler, it is ignored and translation continues. If the directive adds a keyword, then an error occurs if the C source contains that keyword. To avoid the error, delete the keyword from the source or exclude it with #ifdef.

**(34)Predefined macro names**

All the following macro names are supported.

Macros not ending with "\_\_" are supplied for the sake of former C language specifications (K&R specifications).

To perform processing strictly conforming to the ANSI standards, use macros with "\_\_" before and after.

Table 3-6. List of Supported Macros

Macro Name	Definition
__LINE__	Line number of source line at that point (decimal).
__FILE__	Name of assumed source file (character string constant).
__DATE__	Date of translating source file (character string constant in the form of "Mmm dd yyyy" ). Here, the name of the month is the same as that created by the asctime function stipulated by ANSI standards (3 alphabetic characters with only the first character is capital letter) (The first character of dd is blank if its value is less than 10).
__TIME__	Translation time of source file (character string constant having format "hh:mm:ss" similar to the time created by the asctime function).
__STDC__	Decimal constant 1, indicating conformance to the ANSI standard. <sup>Note</sup>
__K0R__	Decimal constant 1
__K0R_SMALL__	Decimal constant 1 (When small model is specified.)
__K0R_MEDIUM__	Decimal constant 1 (When medium model is specified.)
__K0R_LARGE__	Decimal constant 1 (When large model is specified.)
__CHAR_UNSIGNED__	Decimal constant 1 (When the -qu option was specified.)
__RL78__	Decimal constant 1 (When device classification of RL78 family is specified.)
__RL78_1__	Decimal constant 1 (When device classification of RL78 non-mounted multiply/divide/multiply & accumulate instructions with register banks is specified.)
__RL78_2__	Decimal constant 1 (When device classification of RL78 mounted multiply/divide/multiply & accumulate instructions is specified.)
__RL78_3__	Decimal constant 1 (When device classification of RL78 non-mounted multiply/divide/multiply & accumulate instructions without register banks is specified.)
__CA78K0R__	Decimal constant 1
CPUmacro	Decimal constant 1 of a macro indicating the target CPU. A character string indicated by "product type specification" in the device file with "__ _" prefixed and suffixed is defined.

**Note** Defined when the -za option is specified

### (35) Definition of special data type

NULL, size\_t, and ptrdiff\_t defined by stddef.h file are as follows.

Table 3-7. Definition of NULL, size\_t, ptrdiff\_t (stddef.h File)

NULL/size_t/ptrdiff_t	Definition
NULL	((void *) 0)
size_t	unsigned int
ptrdiff_t	int

### 3.1.2 Internal representation and value area of data

This section explains the internal representation and value area of each type for the data handled by the RL78,78K0R C compiler.

#### (1) Basic types

The basic types, also called arithmetic types, consist of the integer types and the floating point types.

The integer types can be classified into the char type, signed integer types, unsigned integer types, and enumeration type.

#### (a) Integer types

Integer types can be divided into 4 categories, as follows. Integer types are expressed as binary 0s and 1s.

- char type
- signed integer types
- unsigned integer types
- enumeration types

##### <1> char type

The char type is large enough to store any member of the execution character set.

If a member of the basic execution character set is stored in a char object, its value is guaranteed to be nonnegative.

Objects other than characters are treated as signed integers.

If an overflow occurs when a value is stored, the overflow part is ignored.

##### <2> Signed integer types

There are four signed integer types, as follows.

- signed char
- short int
- int
- long int

An object defined as signed char type occupies the same amount of area as a "plain" char.

A "plain" int has the natural size suggested by the CPU architecture of the execution environment.

For each of the signed integer types, there is a corresponding unsigned integer type that uses the same amount of area.

The positive number of a signed integer type is a subset of the the unsigned integer type.

##### <3> Unsigned integer types

Unsigned integer types are designated by the keyword "unsigned".

A computation involving unsigned integer types can never overflow, because a result that cannot be represented by the resulting unsigned integer type is reduced modul the number that is one greater than the largest value that can be represented by the resulting type.

##### <4> Enumeration types

An enumeration comprises a set of named integer constant values.

Each distinct enumeration constitutes a different enumerated type.

Each enumeration constitutes a enumerated type.

**(b) Floating point types**

There are three real floating types, as follows.

- float
- double
- long double

Like the float type, the double and long double types of RL78,78K0R C compiler are supported as floating point representations of the single-precision normalized numbers defined in ANSI/IEEE 754-1985. This means that the float, double, and long double types have the same value range.

**Table 3-8. Value Ranges by Type**

Type	Value Range
(signed) char	-128 to +127
unsigned char	0 to 255
(signed) short int	-32768 to +32767
unsigned short int	0 to 65535
(signed) int	-32768 to +32767
unsigned int	0 to 65535
(signed) long int	-2147483648 to +2147483647
unsigned long int	0 to 4294967295
float	1.17549435E - 38F to 3.40282347E + 38F
double	1.17549435E - 38F to 3.40282347E + 38F
long double	1.17549435E - 38F to 3.40282347E + 38F

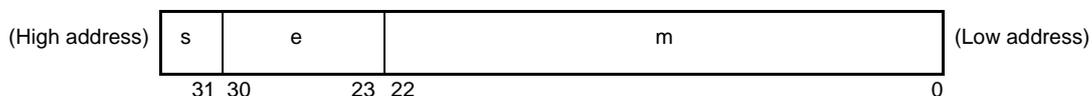
- Remarks 1.** The "signed" type specifier may be omitted. However, when it is omitted for the char type, a compiling condition (option) determines whether the type is the signed char or unsigned char type.
2. The short int and int types have the same value range, but they are treated as different types.
  3. The unsigned short int and unsigned int types have the same value range, but they are treated as different types.
  4. The float, double, and long double types have the same value range, but they are treated as different types.
  5. The ranges of the float, double, and long double types are ranges of absolute values.

The following show the specifications of floating point numbers (float type).

**<1> Format**

The floating point number format is shown below.

**Figure 3-1. Floating Point Number Format**



Numerical values in this format are as follows.

$$\left( -1 \right)^{\text{(Value of sign)}} \times \left( \text{Value of exponent} \right) \times \left( \text{Value of mantissa} \right) \times 2$$

s	<p>Sign (1 bit)</p> <p>0 for a positive number and 1 for a negative number.</p>																		
e	<p>Exponent (8 bits)</p> <p>A base-2 exponent is expressed as a 1-byte integer (expressed by 2's complement in the case of a negative), after the further addition of a bias of 7FH. These relationships are shown in the table below.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">Exponent (Hexadecimal)</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Value of Exponent</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">FE</td> <td style="text-align: center;">127</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">:</td> <td style="text-align: center;">:</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">81</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">80</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">7F</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">7E</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-1</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">:</td> <td style="text-align: center;">:</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">01</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-126</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Exponent (Hexadecimal)	Value of Exponent	FE	127	:	:	81	2	80	1	7F	0	7E	-1	:	:	01	-126
Exponent (Hexadecimal)	Value of Exponent																		
FE	127																		
:	:																		
81	2																		
80	1																		
7F	0																		
7E	-1																		
:	:																		
01	-126																		
m	<p>Mantissa (23 bits)</p> <p>The mantissa is expressed as an absolute value, with bit positions 22 to 0 equivalent to the 1st to 23rd places of a binary number.</p> <p>Except for when the value of the floating point is 0, the value of the exponent is always adjusted so that the mantissa is within the range of 1 to 2 (normalization). The result is that the position of 1 (i.e. the value of 1) is always 1, and is thus represented by omission in this format.</p>																		

**<2> Expression of zero**

When exponent = 0 and mantissa = 0, ± 0 is expressed as follows.

$$\left( -1 \right)^{\text{(Value of sign)}} \times 0$$

**<3> Expression of infinity**

When exponent = FFH and mantissa = 0, ± ∞ is expressed as follows.

$$\left( -1 \right)^{\text{(Value of sign)}} \times \infty$$

**<4> Denormalized values**

When exponent = 0 and mantissa ≠ 0, the denormalized value is expressed as follows.

$$\left( -1 \right)^{\text{(Value of sign)}} \times 2^{-126} \times \left( \text{Value of mantissa} \right) \times 2$$

**Remark** The mantissa value here is a number less than 1, so bit positions 22 to 0 of the mantissa express the 1st to 23rd decimal places.

**<5> Expression of NaN (Not-a-number)**

When exponent = FFH and mantissa  $\neq$  0, NaN is expressed, regardless of the sign.

**<6> Rounding of computation results**

Numerical values are rounded down to the nearest even number. If the computation result cannot be expressed in the above floating point format, round to the nearest expressible number.

If there are 2 values that can express the differential of the prerounded value, round to an even number (a number whose least significant binary bit is 0).

**<7> Exceptions**

There are 5 types of exceptions, as shown in the table below.

**Table 3-9. Numerical Exception**

Exception	Return Value
Underflow	Denormalized number
Inexact	$\pm 0$
Overflow	$\pm \infty$
Division by zero	$\pm \infty$
Invalid operation	NaN

When an exception occurs, calling the matherr function causes a warning to appear.

**(2) Character types**

There are 3 char data types.

- char
- signed char
- unsigned char

**(3) Incomplete types**

There are 4 incomplete data types.

- Arrays with indefinite object size
- Structures
- Unions
- void type

**(4) Derived types**

There are 5 derived data types.

- Array type
- Structure type
- Union type
- Function type
- Pointer type

**(a) Array type**

An array type describes a contiguously allocated set of objects with a particular member object type, called the element type.

All member objects have the area of the same size. Array types and individual elements can be specified. It is not possible to create an incomplete array type.

**(b) Structure type**

A structure type describes a sequentially allocated set of member objects, each of which has an optionally specified name and possibly a distinct type.

**Remark** Array and structure types are collectively called aggregate types. The member objects in aggregate types are allocated sequentially.

**(c) Union type**

A union type describes an overlapping set of member objects.

Each member of a union has an optionally specified name and possibly a distinct type. Union members can be specified individually.

**(d) Function type**

A function type describes a function with the return value of the specified type.

A function type is characterized by its return value type and the number and types of its parameters.

If its return value type is T, the function is called a "function returning T".

**(e) Pointer type**

A pointer type may be derived from a function type, an object type, or an incomplete type, called the referenced type.

A pointer type describes an object whose value provides a reference to an entity of the referenced type.

A pointer type derived from the referenced type T is sometimes called a "pointer to T".

### 3.1.3 Memory

This section explains memory.

**(1) Memory models**

The memory model is determined by the memory space of the target device.

The following memory models are available.

**Table 3-10. Memory Models**

Memory Model	Maximum Values
Small model (-ms option)	Code 64KB, Data 64KB, Total 128KB
Medium model (-mm option)	Code 1MB, Data 64KB, Total 1MB
Large model (-ml option)	Code 1MB, Data 1MB, Total 1MB

Data sections include ROM data. The above table lists maximum values when expanded functions are not used.

**(2) Register banks**

- The current register bank is set to "RB0" by the RL78,78K0R C compiler startup routine. Unless it is changed, it remains set to register bank 0.
- It's set as a specified register bank at the start of the interrupt function where register bank change designation was done.

**(3) Memory space**

RL78,78K0R C compiler utilizes the following memory space.

**Figure 3-2. Usage of Memory Space**

Address		Use	Size (bytes)	
00	080 - 0BFH	CALLT table	64	
FF	E20 - EB3H	sreg variables, boolean variables	148	
FF	EB4 - EC3H	Register variables	16	
FF	EC4 - ED3H	Compiler reserved area	16	
FF	ED4 - ED7H	Segment information	4	
FF	ED8 - EDFH	Runtime library arguments	8	
FF	EE0 - EF7H	RB3 - RB1	Work registers <sup>Note 1</sup>	24
	EF8 - EFFH	RB0	Work registers	8
FF	F00 - FFFH	sfr variables	256	
F0	000 - 7FFH	2nd sfr variables	Max. 2048 <sup>Note 2</sup>	

**Notes 1.** Used when a register bank is specified.

**2.** Varies depending on the device used.

**3.2 Extended Language Specifications**

This section explains extensions unique to the RL78,78K0R C compiler, which are not specified by the ANSI (American National Standards Institute) standard.

The RL78,78K0R C compiler extensions allow to generate code that makes the most effective use of the target device. These extensions are not necessarily useful in every situation, so recommended to use only those which are useful for purposes. For more information about effective use of the RL78,78K0R C compiler extensions, see "[CHAPTER 2 FUNCTIONS](#)".

Use of the RL78,78K0R C compiler extensions introduces microcontroller dependencies into C source programs, but compatibility on the C language level is maintained. Even if using the RL78,78K0R C compiler extensions in C source programs, can still port the programs to other microcontrollers with a few easy-to-make modifications.

**Remark** In this section, "RTOS" stands for the RL78,78K0R real-time OS.

### 3.2.1 Macro names

RL78,78K0R C compiler defines a macro name to indicate the microcontroller name of the target device and a macro name to indicate the device name. These device names are specified by a compiling option to generate object code for the target device or by device classification in the C source code. The following examples define the macro names `__K0R__` and `__F1166A0__`.

See "(34) [Predefined macro names](#)" for more information about macro names.

Compiling option:

```
>cc78k0r -cf1166a0 prime.c ...
```

### 3.2.2 Reserved words

RL78,78K0R C compiler defines the following reserved words to enable the extended functions. Like ANSI C keywords, these reserved words cannot be used as labels or variable names.

All of these reserved words are in lowercase. Any token that contains an uppercase character is not regarded as a reserved word.

In the following table of reserved words added by RL78,78K0R C compiler, reserved words that do not begin with "`__`" can be undefined by specifying the strict ANSI C conformance option (`-za`).

**Table 3-11. Reserved Words Added by RL78,78K0R C Compiler**

Additional Reserved Word		Purpose
Always Defined	Undefined When <code>-za</code> Option Is Specified	
<code>__callt</code>	<code>callt</code>	Call functions via <code>callt</code> table
<code>__callf</code>	<code>callf</code>	For 78K0 compatibility
<code>__sreg</code>	<code>sreg</code>	Allocate variables in <code>saddr</code> area
-	<code>noauto</code>	For 78K0 compatibility
<code>__leaf</code>	<code>norec</code>	For 78K0 compatibility
<code>__boolean</code>	<code>boolean</code>	Bit access to <code>saddr</code> and <code>sfr</code> area
-	<code>bit</code>	Bit access to <code>saddr</code> and <code>sfr</code> area
<code>__interrupt</code>	-	Hardware interrupt
<code>__interrupt_brk</code>	-	Software interrupt
<code>__asm</code>	-	ASM statements
<code>__rtos_interrupt</code>	-	RTOS interrupt handlers
<code>__pascal</code>	-	For 78K0 compatibility
<code>__flash</code>	-	Firmware ROM functions
<code>__flashf</code>	-	<code>__flashf</code> functions
<code>__directmap</code>	-	Absolute address mapping
<code>__temp</code>	-	For 78K0 compatibility
<code>__near</code> , <code>__far</code>	-	Memory area specification
<code>__mxcall</code>	-	For 78K0 compatibility

**(1) Functions**

The `callt`, `__callt`, `__interrupt`, `__interrupt_brk`, `__rtos_interrupt`, `__flash`, `__flashf` reserved words are attribute qualifiers that may be added to the start of function descriptions.

The syntax is shown below.

```
attribute-qualifier ordinary-declarator function-name (parameter-type-list/identifier-list)
```

Following is an example description .

```
__callt int func ( int ) ;
```

Valid attribute qualifiers are limited to the following.

Note that `callt` and `__callt` are regarded as the same specification. However, the qualifier that begins with "`__`" is defined even when the `-za` option is specified.

`callt`, `__interrupt`, `__interrupt_brk`, `__rtos_interrupt`, `__flash`, `__flashf`

**Caution** The compiler issues a warning when it encounters the `callf`, `__callf`, `noauto`, `__pascal`, `__mxcall`, `norec`, and `__leaf` keywords, but otherwise ignores them.

**(2) Variables**

`sreg` and `__sreg` follow the same rules as the "register" of the C language (See "[How to use the saddr area \(sreg/ \\_\\_sreg\)](#)" for more information about the `sreg` reserved words).

The `bit`, `boolean`, and `__boolean` type specifiers follow the same rules as the "char" and "int" type specifiers of the C language. However, they can be applied only to variables declared outside functions (external variables).

The `__directmap` qualifier follows the same rules as the qualifiers of the C language (See "[Absolute address allocation specification \( \\_\\_directmap\)](#)" for details).

The `__near` and `__far` qualifiers follow the same rules as the type qualifiers of the C language (See "[near/far area specification \( \\_\\_near/ \\_\\_far\)](#)" for details).

**Caution** The compiler issues a warning when it encounters the `__temp` keyword, but otherwise ignores it.

**3.2.3 #pragma directives**

`#pragma` directives are one of the types of preprocessing directives supported by the ANSI C standard. A `#pragma` directive instructs the compiler to translate in a specific way, depending on the string that follows the `#pragma`.

When a compiler encounters a `#pragma` directive that it does not recognize, it ignores the directive and continues compiling. If the function of the unrecognized `#pragma` was to define a keyword, then an error will occur when that keyword is encountered in the C source. To avoid this, the undefined keyword should be deleted from the C source or excluded by `#ifdef`.

RL78,78K0R C compiler supports the following `#pragma` directives, which allow extended functions.

The keyword after `#pragma` may be specified in either uppercase or lowercase.

See "[3.2.4 Using extended functions](#)" for more information about using these directives to enable extended functions.`#pragma` directive list.

Table 3-12. #pragma List

#pragma Directive	Purpose
#pragma sfr	Use SFR names in C source files. -> See " <a href="#">How to use the sfr area (#pragma sfr)</a> ".
#pragma vect #pragma interrupt	Write interrupt service routines in C. -> See " <a href="#">Interrupt functions (#pragma vect/interrupt)</a> ".
#pragma di #pragma ei	Disable and enable interrupts in C. -> See " <a href="#">Interrupt functions (#pragma DI/EI)</a> ".
#pragma halt #pragma stop #pragma brk #pragma nop	Write CPU control instructions in C. -> See " <a href="#">CPU control instruction (#pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP)</a> ".
#pragma section	Change the compiler output section name and specify the section location. -> See " <a href="#">Changing compiler output section name (#pragma section)</a> ".
#pragma name	Change the module name. -> See " <a href="#">Module name changing function (#pragma name)</a> ".
#pragma rot	Use the inline rotation functions. -> See " <a href="#">Rotate function (#pragma rot)</a> ".
#pragma mul	Use the inline multiplication function. -> See " <a href="#">Multiplication function (#pragma mul)</a> ".
#pragma div	Use optimized division functions. -> See " <a href="#">Division function (#pragma div)</a> ".
#pragma mac	Use optimized sum-of-products calculation functions. -> See " <a href="#">Sum-of-products calculation function (#pragma mac)</a> ".
#pragma opc	Insert data at the current code address. -> See " <a href="#">Data insertion function (#pragma opc)</a> ".
#pragma rtos_interrupt	Write RI78V4 (real-time OS) interrupt handlers in C. -> See " <a href="#">Interrupt handler for RTOS (#pragma rtos_interrupt)</a> ".
#pragma rtos_task	Write RI78V4 (real-time OS) tasks in C. -> See " <a href="#">Task for RTOS (#pragma rtos_task)</a> ".
#pragma ext_func	Call flash area functions from boot area. -> See " <a href="#">Function of function call from boot area to flash area (#pragma ext_func)</a> ".
#pragma inline	Inline expansion of the standard library functions memcpy and memset. -> See " <a href="#">Memory manipulation function (#pragma inline)</a> ".

## 3.2.4 Using extended functions

The following lists the extended functions of RL78,78K0R C compiler.

Table 3-13. Extended Function List

Extended Function	Description
callt functions (callt/ __callt)	Allocated the address of a called function in the callt table area. It's possible to reduce an object code compared with usual calling instruction call..
Register variables (register)	Instructs the compiler to place a variable in a register or the saddr area, for greater execution speed. Object code is also more compact.
How to use the saddr area (sreg/ __sreg)	Allocated a external variable of specified sreg or specified __sreg, and a static variable in a function in the saddr area. Variables in the saddr area can be faster execution speed than normal variables. Object code is also more compact. Variables can be allocated in the saddr area by compiler options.
Usage with saddr automatic allocation option of external variables/external static variables (-rd)	Allocated a external variable and a external static variable in the saddr area. Variables in the saddr area can be faster execution speed than normal variables. Object code is also more compact. Variables can be allocated in the saddr area by compiler options.
Usage with saddr automatic allocation option of internal static variables (-rs)	Allocated a internal static variable in the saddr area. Variables in the saddr area can be faster execution speed than normal variables. Object code is also more compact. Variables can be allocated in the saddr area by compiler options.
How to use the sfr area (#pragma sfr)	The #pragma sfr directive declares sfr names, which can use to manipulate special function registers (sfr) from C source files.
bit type variables (bit), boolean type variables (boolean/ __boolean)	Generate variables having 1-bit memory area. bit and boolean/ __boolean type variables allow bit access to the saddr area. boolean and __boolean type variables are functionally identical to bit type variables, and can be used in the same way.
ASM statements (#asm - #endasm/ __asm)	The #asm and __asm directives allow to use assembly language statements in C source code. The statements are embedded in the assembly source code generated by the C compiler.
Kanji (2-byte character) (/* kanji */, // kanji)	C source comments can contain kanji (multibyte Japanese characters). Select the kanji encoding from Shift-JIS, EUC, or none.
Interrupt functions (#pragma vect/interrupt)	Generate the interrupt vector table, and output object code required by interrupt. This allows to write interrupt functions in C..
Interrupt function qualifier (__interrupt/ __interrupt_brk)	It's possible to describe a vector table setting and an interrupt function definition in another file.
Interrupt functions (#pragma DI/EI)	Embed instructions to disable/enable interrupts in object code.
CPU control instruction (#pragma HALT/STOP/ BRK/NOP)	Embed the following instruction in object code. halt instruction stop instruction brk instruction nop instruction
Bit field declaration (Extension of type specifier)	Defining bit fields of unsigned char, signed char, signed int, unsigned short, signed short type can save memory and make object code shorter and faster execution speed.

Extended Function	Description
Bit field declaration (Allocation direction of bit field)	The -rb option changes the bit-field allocation order.
Changing compiler output section name (#pragma section)	Allows to change the compiler output section name and instruct the linker to locate that section independently.
Binary constant (0b)	Allows specifying binary constants in C source code.
Module name changing function (#pragma name)	The module name of an object can be changed to any name in C source code.
Rotate function (#pragma rot)	Outputs the code that rotates the value of an expression to the object with direct inline expansion.
Multiplication function (#pragma mul)	Outputs the code that multiplies the value of an expression to the object with direct inline expansion. The resulting object code is smaller and faster execution speed.
Division function (#pragma div)	Output instructions using the data size of the input/output of a division instruction. The code is compatible with the 78K0 compiler. It is object code is smaller and faster execution speed than description division expressions.
Sum-of-products calculation function (#pragma mac)	It is object code is smaller and faster execution speed than description sum-of-products calculation expressions.
BCD operation function (#pragma bcd)	Outputs the code that performs a BCD operation on the expression value in an object by direct inline expansion. BCD operation is the calculation to express 1 digit of decimal number by 4 bits of binary number.
Data insertion function (#pragma opc)	Inserts constant data into the current address. Specific data and instruction can be embedded in the code area without using the ASM statement.
Interrupt handler for RTOS (#pragma rtos_interrupt)	The interrupt handler for RI78V4 can be described..
Interrupt handler qualifier for RTOS (__rtos_interrupt)	The setting of the vector and the description of the interrupt handler for RI78V4 can be described in separate files.
Task for RTOS (#pragma rtos_task)	The function names specified with #pragma rtos_task are interpreted as the tasks for RI78V4. This allows to write efficient code of real-time OS task in C.
Flash area allocation method (-zf)	By compiling with the -zf option, allows programs to be allocated to the flash area, and allows those programs to be linked to object code (compiled without the -zf option) in the boot area.
Flash area branch table and flash area allocation (-zt/-zz)	Specifies the start address of the flash area branch table by -zt option, allowing the startup routine and interrupt functions to be allocated in the flash area, and allowing flash area functions to be called from the boot area.
Function of function call from boot area to flash area (#pragma ext_func)	The #pragma instruction specifies the function name and ID value in the flash area called from the boot area, allowing flash area functions to be called from the boot area.
Mirror source area specification (-mi0/-mi1)	Compiling with the -mi0/-mi1 option, instructs the compiler to generate code for a specified mirror source area.
Method of int expansion limitation of argument/return value (-zb)	Compiling with the -zb option, to generate smaller object code and faster execution speed.

Extended Function	Description
Memory manipulation function (#pragma inline)	An object file is generated by the output of the standard library functions memcpy and memset with direct inline expansion. The resulting code is faster execution speed.
Absolute address allocation specification (__directmap)	Declare __directmap in the module in which the variable to be allocated in an absolute address is to be defined. One or more variables can be allocated to the same arbitrary address.
near/far area specification (__near/__far)	An allocating place of the function and a variable can be designated specifically by adding the __near or __far type qualifier when a function or variable declared.
Memory model specification (-ms/-mm/-ml)	An allocating place of the function and a variable can be specifying by a memory model by specifying the -ms, -mm, or -ml option when compiling.
Allocating ROM data specification (-rf/-rn)	An allocating place of the ROM data can be designated specifically near or far area.
Specifying RAM allocation destinations with self-programming (-zx)	An allocating place of the code and ROM data can be designated RAM area.

**callt functions (callt/ \_\_callt)**

The address of the called function is allocate in the callt table area, and the function is called.

**[Function]**

- The callt instruction stores the address of a function to be called in an area [80H to BFH] called the callt table, so that the function can be called with a shorter code than the one used to call the function directly.
- To call a function declared by the callt (or \_\_callt) (called the callt function), a name with ? prefixed to the function name is used. To call the function, the callt instruction is used.
- The function to be called is not different from the ordinary function.

**[Effect]**

- The object code can be shortened.

**[Usage]**

- Add the callt/ \_\_callt attribute to the function to be called as follows (described at the beginning):

```
callt    extern type-name    function-name
__callt extern type-name    function-name
```

**[Restrictions]**

- The callt functions are allocated to the area within [C0H to 0FFFFH], regardless of the memory model.
- The address of each function declared with callt/ \_\_callt will be allocated to the callt table at the time of linking object modules. For this reason, when using the callt table in an assembler source module, the routine to be created must be made "relocatable" using symbols.
- A check on the number of callt functions is made at linking time.
- When the -za option is specified, \_\_callt is enabled and callt is disabled.
- When the -zf option is specified, callt functions cannot be defined. If a callt function is defined, an error will occur.
- The area of the callt table is 80H to BFH.
- When the callt table is used exceeding the number of callt attribute functions permitted, a compile error will occur.
- The callt table is used by specifying the -ql option. For that reason, the number of callt attributes permitted per 1 load module and the total in the linking modules is as shown below.

Option	-ql1	-ql2 to -ql3
number of callt attribute functions	32	30

- Cases where the -ql option is not used and the defaults are as shown in the table below.

callt Function	Restriction Value
Number per load module	32 max.
Total number in linked module	32 max.

[Example]

<pre>(C source) ===== ca1.c ===== __callt extern int      tsub ( void ) ;  void main ( void ) {     int      ret_val ;     ret_val = tsub ( ) ; }</pre>	<pre>===== ca2.c =====  __callt int      tsub ( void ) {     int val ;     return val ; }</pre>
<pre>(Output object of compiler)  ca1 module     EXTRN  ?tsub          ; Declaration     callt  [?tsub]       ; Call  ca2 module     PUBLIC _tsub          ; Declaration     PUBLIC ?tsub         ; @@CALT  CSEG  CALLT0     ; Allocation to segment ?tsub : DW      _tsub @@BASE  CSEG  BASE _tsub :                  ; Function definition       :       ; Function body       :</pre>	

The callt attribute is given to the function tsub ( ) so that it can be stored in the callt table.

[Compatibility]

(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- The C source program need not be modified if the reserved word callt/\_\_callt is not used.
- To change functions to callt functions, observe the procedure described in the Usage above.

(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- #define must be used. For details, see "3.2.5 C source modifications".

**Register variables (register)**

A variable is allocated to a register and saddr area.

**[Function]**

- Allocates the declared variables (including arguments of function) to the register (HL) and saddr area (\_@KREG00 to \_@KREG15). Saves and restores registers or saddr area during the preprocessing/ postprocessing of the module that declared a register.
- For the details of the allocation of register variables, see "3.3 Function Call Interface".
- Register variables are allocated to register HL or the saddr area (FFEB4H to FFEC3H), in the order of reference frequency. Register variables are allocated to register HL only when there is no stack frame, and allocated to the saddr area only when the -qr option is specified.

**[Effect]**

- Instructions to the variables allocated to the register or saddr area are generally shorter in code length than those to memory. This helps shorten object and also improves program execution speed.

**[Usage]**

- Declare a variable with the register storage class specifier as follows:

```
register      type-name      variable-name
```

**[Restrictions]**

- If register variables are not used so frequently, object code may increase (depending on the size and contents of the source).
- Register variable declarations may be used for char/int/short/long/float/double/long double and pointer data types.
- The char type uses half as much area as the int type does. The long, float, double, long double, and far pointers use twice as much area as the int type does. Between chars there are byte boundaries but in other cases, there are word boundaries.
- In the cases of int, short and near pointers, up to eight variables can be used for each function. The ninth and subsequent variables are allocated to the normal memory.
- In the case of a function without a stack frame, a maximum of 9 variables per function is usable for int, short and near pointers. The 10th and subsequent variables are allocated to the normal memory.

**[Example]**

<C source>

```
void    func ( ) ;

void main ( ) {
    register int    i, j ;
    i = 0 ;
    j = 1 ;
    i += j ;
    func ( ) ;
}
```

**(1) Example of register variable allocation to register HL and the saddr area**

The following labels are declared in the startup routine (see to "3.4 List of saddr Area Labels").

<Output object of compiler>

```

        EXTRN    @_KREG00        ; References the saddr area to be used
@@CODEL CSEG
_main :
        push    hl                ; Saves the contents of the register at the beginning of
                                ; the function
        movw    ax, @_KREG00     ; Saves the contents of the saddr at the beginning of
                                ; the function
        push    ax
; line 3 :    register int i, j ;
; line 4 :    i = 0 ;
; line 5 :    j = 1 ;
        movw    hl, #00H        ; The following codes are output in the middle of the
                                ; function
        onew    ax
        movw    @_KREG00, ax    ; j
; line 6 :    i += j ;
        addw    ax, hl
        movw    hl, ax
; line 7 :
        pop     ax                ; Restores the contents of the saddr at the end of the
                                ; function
        movw    @_KREG00, ax
        pop     hl                ; Restores the contents of the register at the end of
                                ; the function
        ret
        END

```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The C source program need not be modified if the other C compiler supports register declarations.
- To change to register variables, add the register declarations for the variables to the program.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- The C source program need not be modified if the other compiler supports register declarations.
- How many variable registers can be used and to which area they will be allocated depend on the implementations of the other C compiler.

### How to use the saddr area (sreg/ \_\_sreg)

External variables that the sreg or \_\_sreg is declared and static variables declared within functions are allocated in the saddr area.

#### [Function]

- The external variables and in-function static variables (called sreg variable) declared with reserved word sreg or \_\_sreg are automatically allocated to saddr area [FFE20H to FFEB3H] and with relocatability. When those variables exceed the area shown above, a compile error will occur.
- The sreg variables are treated in the same manner as the ordinary variables in the C source.
- Each bit of sreg variables of char, short, int, and long type becomes boolean type variable automatically.
- sreg variables declared without an initial value take 0 as the initial value.
- Of the sreg variables declared in the assembler source, the saddr area [FFE20H to FFF1FH] can be referred to. The area [FFEB4H to FFEDFH] are used by compiler so that care must be taken (see [Figure 3-2. Usage of Memory Space](#)).

#### [Effect]

- Instructions to the saddr area are generally shorter in code length than those to memory. This helps shorten object code and also improves program execution speed.

#### [Usage]

- Declare variables with the reserved words sreg and \_\_sreg inside a module and a function which defines the variables. Only the variable with a static storage class specifier can become a sreg variable inside a function.

sreg	type-name	variable-name/	sreg	static	type-name	variable-name
__sreg	type-name	variable-name/	__sreg	static	type-name	variable-name

- Declare the following variables inside a module which refers to sreg external variables. They can be described inside a function as well.

extern sreg	type-name	variable-name/	extern __sreg	type-name	variable-name
-------------	-----------	----------------	---------------	-----------	---------------

#### [Restrictions]

- If const type is specified, or if sreg/ \_\_sreg is specified for a function, a warning message is output, and the sreg declaration is ignored.
- char type uses a half the space of other types and long/float/double/long double/far pointer types use a space twice as wide as other types.
- Between char types there are byte boundaries, but in other cases, there are word boundaries.
- When the -za option is specified, only \_\_sreg is enabled and sreg is disabled.
- In the case of int/shortt, and near pointer and pointer, a maximum of 74 variables per load module is usable (when saddr area [FFE20H to FFEB3H] is used).

Note that the number of usable variables decreases when bit and boolean type variables, boolean type variables are used.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
extern sreg    int    hsmm0 ;
extern sreg    int    hsmm1 ;
extern sreg    int    *hsptr ;

void main ( ) {
    hsmm0 -= hsmm1 ;
}
```

The following example shows a definition code for sreg variable that the user creates. If extern declaration is not made in the C source, the RL78,78K0R C compiler outputs the following codes. In this case, the ORG quasi-directive will not be output.

```
    PUBLIC _hsmm0 ; Declaration
    PUBLIC _hsmm1
    PUBLIC _hsptr

@@DATS DSEG    SADDRP ; Allocation to segment
    ORG    0FE20H

_hsmm0 :    DS    ( 2 )
_hsmm1 :    DS    ( 2 )
_hsptr :    DS    ( 2 )
```

The following codes are output in the function.

```
movw    ax, _hsmm0
subw    ax, _hsmm1
movw    _hsmm0, ax
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modifications are not needed if the other compiler does not use the reserved word sreg/\_\_sreg. To change to sreg variable, modifications are made according to the method shown above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Modifications are made by #define. For the details, see "3.2.5 C source modifications". Thereby, sreg variables are handled as ordinary variables.

**Usage with saddr automatic allocation option of external variables/external static variables (-rd)**

The -rd option to automatically allocate external variables and external static variables in the saddr area.

**[Function]**

- External variables/external static variables (except const type) are automatically allocated to the saddr area regardless of whether sreg declaration is made or not.
- Depending on the value of *n* and the specification of *m*, the external variables and external static variables to allocate can be specified as follows.

Specification of <i>n,m</i>	Variables Allocated to saddr Area
<i>n</i>	(1) When <i>n</i> = 1 Variables of char and unsigned char types  (2) When <i>n</i> = 2 Variables for when <i>n</i> = 1, plus variables of short, unsigned short, int, unsigned int, enum, and near pointer type  When <i>n</i> = 4 Variables for when <i>n</i> = 2, plus variables of long, unsigned long, float, double, and long double, far pointer type
<i>m</i>	Structures, unions, and arrays
When omitted	All variables

- Variables declared with the reserved word sreg are allocated to the saddr area, regardless of the above specification.
- The above rule also applies to variables referenced by extern declaration, and processing is performed as if these variables were allocated to the saddr area.
- The variables allocated to the saddr area by this option are treated in the same manner as the sreg variable. The functions and restrictions of these variables are as described in [\[How to use the saddr area \(sreg/\\_sreg\)\]](#).

**[Usage]**

- Specify the -rd[*n*][*m*] (*n* = 1, 2, or 4) option.

**[Restrictions]**

- In the -rd[*n*][*m*] option, modules specifying different *n*, *m* value cannot be linked each other.

### Usage with `saddr` automatic allocation option of internal static variables (`-rs`)

The `-rs` option to automatically allocate internal static variables in the `saddr` area.

#### [Function]

- Automatically allocates internal static variables (except `const` type) to `saddr` area regardless of with/ without `sreg` declaration.
- Depending on the value of  $n$  and the specification of  $m$ , the internal static variables to allocate can be specified as follows.

Specification of $n, m$	Variables Allocated to <code>saddr</code> Area
$n$	(1) When $n = 1$ : Variables of <code>char</code> and unsigned <code>char</code> types (2) When $n = 2$ : Variables for when $n = 1$ , plus variables of <code>short</code> , unsigned <code>short</code> , <code>int</code> , unsigned <code>int</code> , <code>enum</code> , and near pointer type (3) When $n = 4$ : Variables for when $n = 2$ , plus variables of <code>long</code> , unsigned <code>long</code> , <code>float</code> , <code>double</code> , and long <code>double</code> , far pointer type
$m$	Structures, unions, and arrays
When omitted	All variables (including structures, unions, and arrays in this case only)

- Variables declared with the reserved word `sreg` are allocated to the `saddr` area regardless of the above specification.
- The variables allocated to the `saddr` area by this option are handled in the same manner as the `sreg` variable. The functions and restrictions for these variables are as described in [[How to use the `saddr` area \(`sreg/ \_\_sreg`\)](#)].

#### [Usage]

- Specify the `-rs[n][m]` ( $n = 1, 2, \text{ or } 4$ ) option.

**Remark** In the `-rs[n][m]` option, modules specifying different  $n, m$  value can also be linked each other.

**How to use the sfr area (#pragma sfr)**

The #pragma sfr directive declares sfr names, which can use to manipulate special function registers (sfr) from C source files.

**[Function]**

- The sfr area refers to a group of special function registers such as mode registers and control registers for the various peripherals of the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.
- By declaring use of sfr names, manipulations on the sfr area can be described at the C source level.
- sfr variables are external variables without initial value (undefined).
- A write check will be performed on read-only sfr variables.
- A read check will be performed on write-only sfr variables.
- Assignment of an illegal data to an sfr variable will result in a compile error.
- The sfr names that can be used are those allocated to an area consisting of addresses [FFF00H to FFFFFH, and F0000H to F07FFH<sup>Note</sup>].

**Note** Varies depending on the device used.

**[Effect]**

- Manipulations to the sfr area can be described in the C source level.
- Instructions to the sfr area are shorter in code length than those to memory. This helps shorten object code and also improves program execution speed.

**[Usage]**

- Declare the use of an sfr name in the C source with the #pragma preprocessor directive, as follows (The keyword sfr can be described in uppercase or lowercase letters.):

```
#pragma sfr
```

The #pragma sfr directive must be described at the beginning of the C source line.

The following statement and directives may precede the #pragma sfr directive:

- Comment
- Preprocessor directives which do not define nor see to a variable or function
- In the C source program, describe an sfr name that the device has as is (without change). In this case, the sfr need not be declared.

**[Restrictions]**

- All sfr names must be described in uppercase letters. Lowercase letters are treated as ordinary variables.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```

#ifdef __K0R__
#pragma sfr
#endif

void main ( void ) {
    PL0 -= ADCR ;
    /* ADCR = 10 ; ==> error */
}

```

Codes that relate to declarations are not output and the following codes are output in the middle of the function.

```

mov    a, PL0
sub    a, ADCR
mov    PL0, a

```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Those portions of the C source program not dependent on the device or compiler need not be modified.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Delete the "#pragma sfr" statement or sort by "#ifdef" and add the declaration of the variable that was formerly a sfr variable.

The following shows an example.

```

#ifdef __K0R__
#pragma sfr
#else

unsigned char  P0 ;    /*Declaration of variables*/
#endif

void main ( void ) {
    P0 = 0 ;
}

```

- In case of a device which has the sfr or its alternative functions, a dedicated library must be created to access that area.

**bit type variables (bit), boolean type variables (boolean/ \_\_boolean)**

The bit, boolean, and \_\_boolean type specifiers generate variables having 1-bit of memory area.

**[Function]**

- A bit or boolean type variable is handled as 1-bit data and allocated to saddr area.
- This variable can be handled the same as an external variable that has no initial value (or has an unknown value).
- To this variable, the C compiler outputs the following bit manipulation instructions:

```
MOV1, AND1, OR1, XOR1, SET1, CLR1, NOT1, BT, BF
```

**[Effect]**

- Programming at the assembler source level can be performed in C, and the saddr and sfr area can be accessed in bit units.

**[Usage]**

- Declare a bit or boolean type inside a module in which the bit or boolean type variable is to be used, as follows:
- \_\_boolean can also be described instead of bit.

```
bit          variable-name
boolean      variable-name
__boolean    variable-name
```

- Declare a bit or boolean type inside a module in which the bit or boolean type variable is to be used, as follows:

```
extern bit          variable-name
extern boolean      variable-name
extern __boolean    variable-name
```

- char, int, short, and long type sreg variables (except the elements of arrays and members of structures) and 8-bit sfr variables can be automatically used as bit type variables.

```
variable-name.n (where n = 0 to 31)
```

**[Restrictions]**

- An operation on 2 bit or boolean type variables is performed by using the CY (Carry) flag. For this reason, the contents of the carry flag between statements are not guaranteed.
- Arrays cannot be defined or referenced.
- A bit or boolean type variable cannot be used as a member of a structure or union.
- This type of variable cannot be used as the argument type of a function.
- A bit type variable cannot be used as a type of automatic variable
- With bit type variables only, up to 1184 variables can be used per load module (when saddr area [FFE20H to FFE33H] is used) (normal model)
- The variable cannot be declared with an initial value.
- If the variable is described along with const declaration, the const declaration is ignored.
- Only operations using 0 and 1 can be performed by the operators and constants shown in the table below.

Classification	Operator
Assignment	=
Bitwise AND	&, &=
Bitwise OR	,  =
Bitwise XOR	^, ^=
Logical AND	&&
Logical OR	
Equal	==
Not Equal	!=

- \*, & (pointer reference, address reference), and sizeof operations cannot be performed.
- When the -za option is specified, only \_\_boolean is enabled.
- In the case that sreg variables are used or if -rd, -rs (saddr automatic allocation option) options are specified, the number of usable bit type variables is decreased.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```

#define ON      1
#define OFF    0

extern bit     data1 ;
extern bit     data2 ;

void main ( void ) {
    data1 = ON ;
    data2 = OFF ;
    while ( data1 ) {
        data1 = data2 ;
        testb ( ) ;
    }

    if ( data1 && data2 )
        chgb ( ) ;
}

```

This example is for cases when the user has generated a definition code for a bit type variable. If an extern declaration has not been attached, the compiler outputs the following code. The ORG quasi-directive is not output in this case.

```
PUBLIC  _data1          ; Declaration
PUBLIC  _data2

@@BITS  BSEG          ; Allocation to segment
        ORG    0FE20H
_data1  DBIT
_data2  DBIT
```

The following codes are output in a function

```
set1   _data1          (Initialized)
clr1   _data2          (Initialized)
bf     data1, $?L0004  (Judgment)
mov1   CY, _data2      (Assignment)
mov1   _data1, CY      (Assignment)
bf     _data1, $?L0005 (Logical AND expression)
bf     _data2, $?L0005 (Logical AND expression)
```

### [Compatibility]

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- The C source program need not be modified if the reserved word bit, boolean, or \_\_boolean is not used.
- To change variables to bit or boolean type variables, modify the program according to the procedure described in Usage above.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- #define must be used. For details, see "[3.2.5 C source modifications](#)" (As a result of this, the bit or boolean type variables are handled as ordinary variables.).

**ASM statements (#asm - #endasm/ \_\_asm)**

The #asm and \_\_asm directives allow to use assembly language statements in C source code. The statements are embedded in the assembly source code generated by the C compiler.

**[Function]****(1) #asm - #endasm**

- The assembler source program described by the user can be embedded in an assembler source file to be output by the RL78,78K0R C compiler by using the preprocessor directives #asm and #endasm.
- #asm and #endasm lines will not be output.

**(2) \_\_asm**

- An assembly instruction is output by describing an assembly code to a character string literal and is inserted in an assembler source.

**[Effect]**

- To manipulate the global variables of the C source in the assembler source
- To implement functions that cannot be described in the C source
- To hand-optimize the assembler source output by the C compiler and embed it in the C source (to obtain efficient object)

**[Usage]****(1) #asm #endasm**

- Indicate the start of the assembler source with the #asm directive and the end of the assembler source with the #endasm directive. Describe the assembler source between #asm and #endasm.

```
#asm
:      /* Assembler source */
#endasm
```

**(2) \_\_asm**

- The ASM statement is described in the following format in the C source:

```
__asm ( string-literal ) ;
```

- The description method of character string literal conforms to ANSI, and a line can be continued by using an escape character string (\n: line feed, \t: tab) or \, or character strings can be linked.

**[Restrictions]**

- Nesting of #asm directives is not allowed.

If ASM statements are used, no object module file will be created. Instead, an assembler source file will be created.

[Output assemble file] by [Compile Options] tab of Property panel, set it as "Yes." (See "CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build" for a setting method.)

- Only lowercase letters can be described for \_\_asm. If \_\_asm is described with uppercase and lowercase characters mixed, it is regarded as a user function.

- When the -za option is specified, only `__asm` is enabled.
- `#asm - #endasm` and `__asm` block can only be described inside a function of the C source. Therefore, the assembler source is output to CSEG of segment name `@@CODE`, or `@@CODEL`.

**[Example]****(1) #asm - #endasm**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
void main ( void ) {
#asm
    callt [init]
#endasm
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
@@CODEL CSEG
_main :
    callt [init]
    ret
    END
```

In the above example, statements between `#asm` and `#endasm` will be output as an assembler source program to the assembler source file.

**(2) \_\_asm**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
int    a, b ;

void main ( void ) {
    __asm ( "\tmovw ax, !_a \t ; ax <- a" ) ;
    __asm ( "\tmovw !_b, ax \t ; b <- ax" ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
@@CODEL CSEG
_main :
    movw    ax, !_a        ; ax <- a
    movw    !_b, ax        ; b <- ax
    ret
    END
```

**[Compatibility]**

- With the C compiler which supports #asm, modify the program according to the format specified by the C compiler.
- If the target device is different, modify the assembler source part of the program.

**Kanji (2-byte character) (*/\* kanji \*/*, *// kanji*)**

C source comments can contain kanji (multibyte Japanese characters).

**[Function]**

- Kanji code can be described in comments in C source files.
- Kanji code in comments is handled as a part of comments, so the code is not subject to compilation.
- The kanji code to be used in comments can be specified by using an option or the environment variable.  
If no option is specified, the code set in the environment variable LANG78K is set as the kanji code.
- If the kanji code is specified by both the option and environment variable LANG78K, specification by the option takes precedence.
- If "SJIS" is set in the environment variable LANG78K, the type of kanji in comments is interpreted as shift JIS code.
- If "EUC" is set in the environment variable LANG78K, the compiler interprets this as meaning that the type of kanji in comments is EUC code.
- If "NONE" is set in the environment variable LANG78K, the compiler interprets this as meaning that comments do not contain kanji codes.
- SJIS code is specified by default.

**[Effect]**

- The use of kanji code allows Japanese programmers to describe easier-to-understand comments, which makes C source management easier.

**[Usage]**

- Set the kanji code by using a compiler option or environment variable (Setting is not needed if the default setting is used).

**(1) Setting by compiler option**

Set any of the options listed in the following table.

Option	Explanation
-zs	SJIS (shift JIS code)
-ze	EUC (EUC code)
-zn	NONE (kanji code not used)

**(2) Setting by environment variable LANG78K**

- Set "SJIS", "EUC" or "NONE".
- Specification of SJIS, EUC or NONE is not case-sensitive.
- Describe kanji characters in comments in C source files, in accordance with the one specified in LANG78K.

```
SET    LANG78K = SJIS ; shift JIS code
SET    LANG78K = EUC  ; EUC code
SET    LANG78K = NONE ; kanji code not used
```

**[Restrictions]**

- Only shift JIS code and EUC code can be described in comments. Only the characters of 0x7f or lower ASCII codes can be described for places other than comments. Neither full-size characters nor half-size katakana (including half-size punctuation marks) can be described for any place other than comments. If any of these characters is described, the expected code may not be output.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
// main function
void main ( void ) {
    /* Comment */
}
```

Kanji type information is output to the assembler source.

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
$KANJI CODE SJIS
```

When the C source contents are output to the assembler source, kanji characters in the comment are also output.

```
; line      1 : // main function
; line      2 : void main ( void ) {
@@CODEL CSEG
_main :
; line      3 :          /* Comment */
; line      4 : }
```

**[Description]**

- Kanji code can be described only in comments in C source files.
- When using the format "// comment", specify compiler option -zp.

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- If there is kanji in the the area that comment cannot be described (the area other than "/\* ... \*/", or "// newline" ), the source files must be modified.
- If the kanji code differs from the one specified in the CC78K0R, the kanji code must first be converted.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- The C source need not be modified for a C compiler that supports kanji characters to be described in comments.
- Kanji characters in the C source must be deleted if the C compiler does not support kanji characters to be described in comments.

**Interrupt functions (#pragma vect/interrupt)**

Generate the interrupt vector table, and output object code required by interrupt.

**[Function]**

- The address of a described function name is registered to an interrupt vector table corresponding to a specified interrupt request name.
- An interrupt function outputs a code to save or restore the following data (except that used in the ASM statement) to or from the stack at the beginning and end of the function (after the code if a register bank is specified):
  - Registers
  - saddr area for register variables
  - saddr area for work
  - saddr area for run time library
  - saddr area for storing segment information
  - ES and CS registers

Note, however, that depending on the specification or status of the interrupt function, saving/restoring is performed differently, as follows:

- If no change is specified, codes that change the register bank or saves/restores register contents, and that saves/restores the contents of the saddr area are not output regardless of whether to use the codes or not.
  - If a register bank is specified, a code to select the specified register bank is output at the beginning of the interrupt function, therefore, the contents of the registers are not saved or restored.
  - If no change is not specified and if a function is called in the interrupt function, however, the entire register area is saved or restored, regardless of whether use of registers is specified or not.
- If the -qr option is not specified for compilation, the saddr area for register variables and the saddr area for work are not used; so the saving/restoring code is not output.

If the size of the saving code is smaller than that of the restoring code, the restoring code is output. The table below summarizes the above and lists the saving/restoring areas.

Save/Restore Area	NO BANK	Function Called				Function Not Called			
		Without -qr		With -qr		Without -qr		With -qr	
		Stack	RBn	Stack	RBn	Stack	RBn	Stack	RBn
Register used	-	-	-	-	-	OK	-	OK	-
All registers	-	OK	-	OK	-	-	-	-	-
saddr area for runtime library used, ES, CS register, saddr area for storing segment information	-	-	-	-	-	OK	OK	OK	OK
saddr area for all runtime libraries, ES, CS register, saddr area for storing segment information	-	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-
saddr area for register variable used	-	-	-	OK	OK	-	-	OK	OK
saddr area for compiler reserved area	-	-	-	OK <sup>Note</sup>	OK <sup>Note</sup>	-	-	-	-

- Stack : Use of stack is specified
- RBn : Register bank is specified
- OK : Saved
- : Not saved

**Note** Not saved when speed is given priority (-ql not specified).

### [Effect]

- Interrupt functions can be described at the C source level.
- Because the register bank can be changed, codes that save the registers are not output; therefore, object codes can be shortened and program execution speed can be improved.
- You do not have to be aware of the addresses of the vector table to recognize an interrupt request name.

### [Usage]

- Specify an interrupt request name, a function name, stack switching, registers used by the compiler, and whether the saddr area is saved/restored, with the #pragma directive. Describe the #pragma directive at the beginning of the C source. The #pragma directive is described at the start of the C source (for the interrupt request names, see the user's manual of the target device used). For the software interrupt BRK, describe BRK\_I.
- The following items can be described before this #pragma directive:
  - Comments
  - Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

```
#pragma vect(or interrupt) interrupt-request-name function-name
```

```

[Stack-change-specification] [ Stack-usage-specification
                               No-change-specification
                               Register-bank-specification ]

```

#### - Interrupt request name

Described in uppercase letters.

See the user's manual of the target device used (Example: NMI, INTPO, etc.).

For the software interrupt BRK, describe BRK\_I.

#### - Function name

Name of the function that describes interrupt processing

#### - Stack change specification

SP = array name [+ offset location] (Example: SP = buff + 10)

Define the array by unsigned short (Example: unsigned short buff [5];).

Specify for the offset location an even value of the buff size or lower (Example: In the case of unsigned short buff[5], the buff size is 10 bytes, so an even value of 10 or lower should be specified).

#### - Stack use specification

STACK (default)

#### - No change specification

NOBANK

#### - Register bank specification

RB0/RB1/RB2/RB3

- Cautions 1.** Since the RL78,78K0R C compiler startup routine is initialized to register bank 0, be sure to specify register banks 1 to 3.
- 2.** When speed is given priority (-ql not specified), the saddr area for the compiler reserved area is not saved when saving or restoring an interrupt function with a function call, even if -qr is specified.

### [Restrictions]

- When the -zf option is not specified, interrupt functions are allocated to the area between C0H and 0FFFFH, regardless of the memory model.  
When the -zf option is specified, interrupt functions are allocated in accordance with the memory model. In addition, specification of allocation area by specifying \_\_near or \_\_far is also enabled.
- Arrays in an area other than the near area cannot be specified for stack change. If specified, an error will occur.
- A value other than an even value cannot be specified for the offset location. If specified, an error will occur.
- Unlike other microcontrollers, the unsigned short type array is reserved for changing the stack pointer.
- An interrupt request name must be described in uppercase letters.
- A duplication check on interrupt request names will be made within only 1 module.
- The contents of a register may be changed if the following three conditions are satisfied, but the compiler cannot check this.  
If it is specified to change the register bank, set the register banks so that they do not overlap. If register banks overlap, control their interrupts so that they do not overlap.  
When NOBANK (no change specification) is specified, the registers are not saved. Therefore, control the registers so that their contents are not lost.
  - If two or more interrupts occur
  - If two or more interrupts that use the same BANK are included in the interrupt that has occurred
  - If NOBANK or a register bank is specified in the description #pragma interrupt -.
- The specifiable number of register banks depends on the actual number of register banks in the device.  
However, the number of register banks is not specifiable for RL78 8-bit CPUs because each chip only has one register bank.
- As the interrupt function, callt/\_\_callt/\_\_rtos\_interrupt/\_\_flash/\_\_flashf cannot be specified.  
\_\_far can be specified only when the -zf option is specified.
- An interrupt function is specified with void type ( example: void func ( void ); ) because it cannot have an argument nor return value.
- Even if an ASM statement exists in the interrupt function, codes saving all the registers and variable areas are not output. If an area reserved for the compiler is used in the ASM statement in the interrupt function, therefore, or if a function is called in the ASM statement, the user must save the registers and variable areas.
- If leafwork 1 to 16 is specified, a warning is output and the specification is ignored.
- When stack change is specified, the stack pointer is changed to the location where offset is added to the array name symbol. The area of the array name is not secured by the #pragma directive. It needs to be defined separately as global unsigned short type array.
- The code that changes the stack pointer is generated at the start of a function, and the code that sets the stack pointer back is generated at the end of a function.
- When reserved words sreg/\_\_sreg are added to the array for stack change, it is regarded that two or more variables with the different attributes and the same name are defined, and a compile error will occur. It is possible to allocate an array in saddr area by the -rd option, but code and speed efficiency will not be improved because the array is used as a stack. It is recommended to use the saddr area for purposes other than a stack.
- The stack change cannot be specified simultaneously with the no change. If specified so, an error will occur.
- The stack change must be described before the stack use/register bank specification. If the stack change is described after the stack use/register bank specification, an error will occur.

- If a function specifying no change, register bank, or stack change as the saving destination in #pragma vect/ #pragma interrupt specification is not defined in the same module, a warning message is output and the stack change is ignored. In this case, the default stack is used.
- Coding a "#pragma vect" or "#pragma interrupt" when -zx is specified will cause an error. Use the "\_\_interrupt" or "\_\_interrupt\_brk" modifier when defining an interrupt function. RL78 family use the self-programming library to allocate interrupt vector tables in self-programming.

**[Example]****(1) When register bank is specified**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma interrupt INTP0 inter rbl

void inter ( void ) {
    /* Interrupt processing to INTP0 pin input*/
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
@@VECT08      CSEG  AT      0008H ; INTP0
__vect08 :
      DW      __inter
@@BASE      CSEG  BASE
__inter :

      ; Switching code for the register bank
      ; Saving code of the saddr area for use by the compiler
      ; Saves ES and CS registers
      ; Interrupt processing to INTP0 pin input (function body)
      ; Restores ES and CS registers
      ; Restoring code of the saddr area used by the compiler
      reti
```

**(2) When stack change and register bank are specified**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma interrupt INTP0 inter sp = buff + 10 rb2

unsigned short buff[5] ;
void func ( void ) ;

void inter ( void ) {
    func ( ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler (When code size prioritized)&gt;

```

@@BASE      CSEG      BASE
_inter :
    sel      RB2          ; Changes register bank
    movw    ax, sp        ; Changes stack pointer
    movw    sp, #_buff + 10 ;
    push    ax           ;
    movw    c, #0CH       ; Saves saddr used by the compiler
    dec     c            ;
    dec     c            ;
    movw    ax, @_SEGAX[c] ;
    push    ax           ;
    bnz    $$ - 6        ;
    mov     a, ES         ; Saves ES and CS registers
    mov     x, a         ;
    mov     a, CS        ;
    push    ax           ;
    call   !!_func
    pop     ax           ; Restores ES and CS registers
    mov     CS, a        ;
    mov     a, x         ;
    mov     ES, a        ;
    movw    de, @_SEGAX  ; Restores saddr used by the compiler
    mov     c, #06H      ;
    pop     ax           ;
    movw    [de], ax     ;
    incw    de           ;
    incw    de           ;
    dec     c            ;
    bnz    $$ - 5        ;
    pop     ax           ; Returns the stack pointer to its original position
    movw    sp, ax       ;
    reti

@@VECT08    CSEG      AT      0008H
_@vect08 :
    DW      _inter

```

&lt;Output object of compiler (When speed prioritized)&gt;

```

@@BASE      CSEG      BASE
_inter :
    sel      RB2          ; Changes register bank
    movw    ax, sp        ; Changes stack pointer
    movw    sp, #_buff + 10 ;

```

```

push    ax                ;      :
movw    ax, @_RTARG6      ; Saves saddr used by the compiler
push    ax                ;      :
movw    ax, @_RTARG4      ;      :
push    ax                ;      :
movw    ax, @_RTARG2      ;      :
push    ax                ;      :
movw    ax, @_RTARG0      ;      :
push    ax                ;      :
movw    ax, @_SEGDE       ;      :
push    ax                ;      :
movw    ax, @_SEGAX       ;      :
push    ax                ;      :
mov     a, ES              ; Saves ES and CS registers
mov     x, a               ;      :
mov     a, CS              ;      :
push    ax                ;      :
call    !!_func
pop     ax                 ; Restores ES and CS registers
mov     CS, a              ;      :
mov     a, x               ;      :
mov     ES, a              ;      :
pop     ax                 ; Restores saddr used by the compiler
movw    @_SEGAX, ax        ;      :
pop     ax                 ;      :
movw    @_SEGDE, ax        ;      :
pop     ax                 ;      :
movw    @_RTARG0, ax       ;      :
pop     ax                 ;      :
movw    @_RTARG2, ax       ;      :
pop     ax                 ;      :
movw    @_RTARG4, ax       ;      :
pop     ax                 ;      :
movw    @_RTARG6, ax       ;      :
pop     ax                 ; Returns the stack pointer to its original position
movw    sp, ax             ;      :
reti

@@VECT08    CSEG    AT    0008H
_@vect08 :
            DW     _inter

```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The C source program need not be modified if interrupt functions are not used at all.
- To change an ordinary function to an interrupt function, modify the program according to the procedure described in Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- An interrupt function can be used as an ordinary function by deleting its specification with the #pragma vect, #pragma interrupt directive.
- When an ordinary function is to be used as an interrupt function, change the program according to the specifications of each compiler.

### Interrupt function qualifier (`__interrupt/ __interrupt_brk`)

It's possible to describe a vector table setting and an interrupt function definition in another file.

#### [Function]

- A function declared with the `__interrupt` qualifier is regarded as a hardware interrupt function, and execution is returned by the return RETI instruction for non-maskable/maskable interrupt function.
- By declaring a function with the `__interrupt_brk` qualifier, the function is regarded as a software interrupt function, and execution is returned by the return instruction RETB for software interrupt function.
- A function declared with this qualifier is regarded as (non-maskable/maskable/software) interrupt function, and saves or restores the registers and variable areas (1) and (6) below, which are used as the work area of the compiler, to or from the stack.

If a function call is described in this function, however, all the variable areas are saved to the stack.

#### (1) Registers

#### (2) `saddr` area for register variables

#### (3) `saddr` area for work

#### (4) `saddr` area for run time library

#### (5) `saddr` area for storing segment information

#### (6) ES and CS registers

**Remark** If the `-qr` option is not specified (default) at compile time, save/restore codes are not output because areas (2) and (3) are not used.

#### [Effect]

- By declaring a function with this qualifier, the setting of a vector table and interrupt function definition can be described in separate files.

#### [Usage]

- Describe either `__interrupt` or `__interrupt_brk` as the qualifier of an interrupt function.

#### (1) For non-maskable/maskable interrupt function

```
__interrupt void func ( ) { processing }
```

#### (2) For software interrupt function>

```
__interrupt_brk void func ( ) { processing }
```

**[Restrictions]**

- When the `-zf` option is specified, the interrupt functions are allocated to the area within [C0H to 0FFFFH], regardless of the memory model.  
When the `-zf` option is specified, interrupt functions are allocated in accordance with the memory model. In addition, specification of allocation area by specifying `__near` or `__far` is also enabled.
- The interrupt function cannot specify `callt/__callt/__rtos_interrupt/__flash/__flashf`.
- When `-zx` is specified, the interrupt function is allocated at [C0H - FFEFFH], regardless of whether the `-zf` option was specified, or the memory model. In self-programming mode, an interrupt vector table is allocated using the self-programming library.

**[Example]**

- Declare or define interrupt functions in the following format. The code to set the vector address is generated by `#pragma interrupt`.

```
#pragma interrupt      INTP0   inter   RB1   /*The interrupt request name of*/
#pragma interrupt      BRK_I   inter_b RB2   /*The software interrupt is "BRK_I"*/

__interrupt void      inter ( ) ;           /*Prototype declaration*/
__interrupt_brk void  inter_b ( ) ;        /*Prototype declaration*/
__interrupt void      inter ( ) { processing } ; /*Function body*/
__interrupt_brk void  inter_b ( ) { processing } ; /*Function body*/
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The C source program need not be modified unless interrupt functions are supported.
- Modify the interrupt functions, if necessary, according to the procedure described in Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- `#define` must be used to allow the interrupt qualifiers to be handled as ordinary functions.
- To use the interrupt qualifiers as interrupt functions, modify the program according to the specifications of each compiler.

**[Cautions]**

- The vector address is not set by merely declaring this qualifier. The vector address must be separately set by using the `#pragma vect/interrupt` directive or assembler description.
- The `saddr` area and registers are saved to the stack.
- Even if the vector address is set or the saving destination is changed by `#pragma vect` (or `interrupt`) ..., the change in the saving destination is ignored if there is no function definition in the same file, and the default stack is assumed.
- To define an interrupt function in the same file as the `#pragma vect` (or `interrupt`) ... specification, the function name specified by `#pragma vect` (or `interrupt`) ... is judged as the interrupt function, even if this qualifier is not described. For details of `#pragma vect/interrupt`, see Usage of "[Interrupt functions \(#pragma vect/interrupt\)](#)".

**Interrupt functions (#pragma DI/EI)**

Embed instructions to disable/enable interrupts in object code.

**[Function]**

- Codes DI and EI are output to the object and an object file is created.
- If the #pragma directive is missing, DI ( ) and EI ( ) are regarded as ordinary functions.
- If "DI ( );" is described at the beginning in a function (except the declaration of an automatic variable, comment, and preprocessor directive), the DI code is output before the preprocessing of the function (immediately after the label of the function name).
- To output the code of DI after the preprocessing of the function, open a new block before describing "DI ( );" (delimit this block with "{" ).
- If "EI ( );" is described at the end of a function (except comments and preprocessor directive), the EI code is output after the post-processing of the function (immediately before the code RET).
- To output the EI code before the post-processing of a function, close a new block after describing "EI ( );" (delimit this block with "}" ).

**[Effect]**

- A function disabling interrupts can be created.

**[Usage]**

- Describe the #pragma DI and #pragma EI directives at the beginning of the C source.  
However, the following statement and directives may precede the #pragma DI and #pragma EI directives:
  - Comment
  - Other #pragma directives
  - Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or function
- Describe DI ( ); or EI ( ); in the source in the same manner as function call.
- DI and EI can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters after #pragma.

**[Restrictions]**

- When using these interrupt functions, DI and EI cannot be used as function names.
- DI and EI must be described in uppercase letters. If described in lowercase letters, they will be handled as ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

```
#ifdef __K0R__
#pragma DI
#pragma EI
#endif
```

<C source>

```
#pragma DI
#pragma EI

void main ( void ) {
    DI ( ) ;
    ; Function body
    EI ( ) ;
}
```

<Output object of compiler>

```
_main :
    di
    ; Preprocessing
    ; Function body
    ; Postprocessing
    ei
    ret
```

**(1) To output DI and EI after and before preprocessing/post-processing**

<C source>

```
#pragma DI
#pragma EI

void main ( void ) {
    {
        DI ( ) ;
        ; Function body
        EI ( ) ;
    }
}
```

<Output object of compiler>

```
_main :
    ; Preprocessing
    di
    ; Function body
    ei
    ; Postprocessing
    ret
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The C source program need not be modified if interrupt functions are not used at all.
- To change an ordinary function to an interrupt function, modify the program according to the procedure described in Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Delete the #pragma DI and #pragma EI directives or invalidate these directives by separating them with #ifdef and DI and EI can be used as ordinary function names (Example: #ifdef \_\_K0R\_\_ ... #endif).
- When an ordinary function is to be used as an interrupt function, modify the program according to the specifications of each compiler.

**CPU control instruction (#pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP)**

The #pragma HALT/STOP/BRK/NOP directives declare functions that embed CPU control instructions.

**[Function]**

- The following codes are output to the object to create an object file:
- Instruction for HALT operation (HALT)
- Instruction for STOP operation (STOP)
- BRK instruction
- NOP instruction

**[Effect]**

- The standby function of a microcontroller can be used with a C program.
- A software interrupt can be generated.
- The clock can be advanced without the CPU operating.

**[Usage]**

- Describe the #pragma HALT, #pragma STOP, #pragma NOP, and #pragma BRK instructions at the beginning of the C source.
- The following items can be described before the #pragma directive:
  - Comment
  - Other #pragma directive
  - Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or function
- The keywords following #pragma can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters.
- Describe as follows in uppercase letters in the C source in the same format as function call:

```
HALT ( ) ;  
STOP ( ) ;  
BRK ( ) ;  
NOP ( ) ;
```

**[Restrictions]**

- When this feature is used, HALT, STOP, BRK, and NOP cannot be used as function names.
- Describe HALT, STOP, BRK, and NOP in uppercase letters. If they are described in lowercase letters, they are handled as ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma HALT
#pragma STOP
#pragma BRK
#pragma NOP

void main ( void ) {
    HALT ( ) ;
    STOP ( ) ;
    BRK ( ) ;
    NOP ( ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
@@CODEL CSEG
_main :
    halt
    stop
    brk
    nop
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The C source program need not be modified if the CPU control instructions are not used.
- Modify the program according to the procedure described in Usage above when the CPU control instructions are used.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- If "#pragma HALT", "#pragma STOP", "#pragma BRK", and "#pragma NOP" statements are delimited by means of deletion or with #ifdef, HALT, STOP, BRK, and NOP can be used as function names.
- To use these instructions as the CPU control instructions, modify the program according to the specifications of each compiler.

**Bit field declaration (Extension of type specifier)**

It's possible to declare bit-fields of type unsigned char, signed char, unsigned int, signed int, unsigned short, and signed short.

**[Function]**

- The bit field of unsigned char, signed char type is not allocated straddling over a byte boundary.
- The bit field of unsigned int, signed int, unsigned short, signed short type is not allocated straddling over a word boundary, but can be allocated straddling over a word boundary when the -rc option is specified.
- The bit fields that the types are same size are allocated in the same byte units (or word units).  
If the types are different size, the bit fields are allocated in different byte units (or word units).
- unsigned short, signed short type is handled similarly with unsigned int, signed int type respectively.

**[Effect]**

- The memory can be saved.

**[Usage]**

- As a bit field type specifier, unsigned char, signed char, signed int, unsigned short, signed short type can be specified in addition to unsigned int type.

Declare as follows.

```
struct tag-name {  
    unsigned char    field-name : bit-width ;  
    unsigned char    field-name : bit-width ;  
    :  
    unsigned int     field-name : bit-width ;  
};
```

**[Example]**

```
struct tagname {  
    unsigned char    A : 1 ;  
    unsigned char    B : 1 ;  
    :  
    unsigned int     C : 2 ;  
    unsigned int     D : 1 ;  
    :  
};
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The source program need not be modified.
- Change the type specifier to use unsigned char, signed char, unsigned short, signed short as the type specifier.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- The source program need not be modified if unsigned char, signed char, signed int, unsigned short and signed short is not used as a type specifier.
- Change into unsigned int, if unsigned char, signed char, signed int, unsigned short and signed short is used as a type specifier.

**Bit field declaration (Allocation direction of bit field)**

The -rb option changes the bit-field allocation order.

**[Function]**

- The direction in which a bit field is to be allocated is changed and the bit field is allocated from the MSB side when the -rb option is specified.
- If the -rb option is not specified, the bit field is allocated from the LSB side.

**[Usage]**

- Specify the -rb option at compile time to allocate the bit field from the MSB side.
- Do not specify the option to allocate the bit field from the LSB side.

**[Example]**

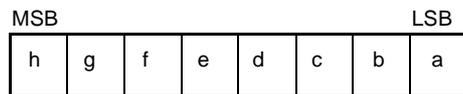
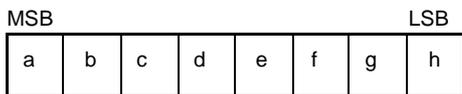
**(1) Bit field declaration 1**

```
struct t {
    unsigned char a : 1 ;
    unsigned char b : 1 ;
    unsigned char c : 1 ;
    unsigned char d : 1 ;
    unsigned char e : 1 ;
    unsigned char f : 1 ;
    unsigned char g : 1 ;
    unsigned char h : 1 ;
};
```

Because a through h are 8 bits or less, they are allocated in 1-byte units.

Bit allocation from MSB  
with the -rb option specified

Bit allocation from LSB  
without the -rb option specified



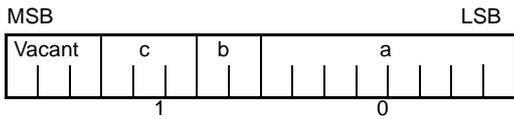
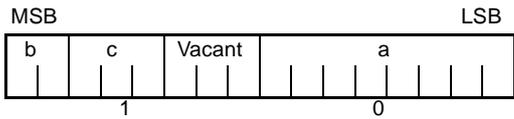
(2) Bit field declaration 2

```

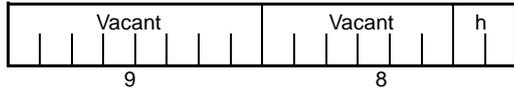
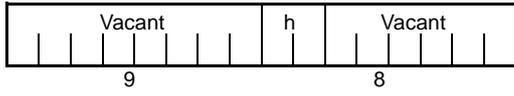
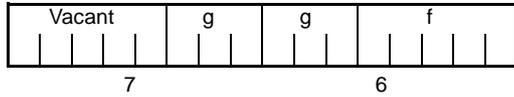
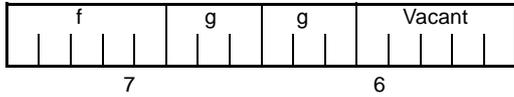
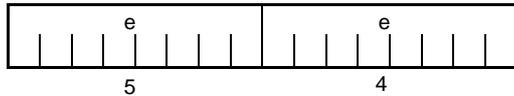
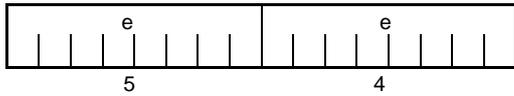
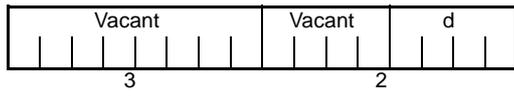
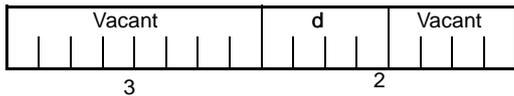
struct t {
    char          a ;
    unsigned char b : 2 ;
    unsigned char c : 3 ;
    unsigned char d : 4 ;
    int           e ;
    unsigned int  f : 5 ;
    unsigned int  g : 6 ;
    unsigned char h : 2 ;
    unsigned int  i : 2 ;
};
    
```

Bit field allocated from the MSB side when the -rb option is specified

Bit field allocated from the LSB side when the -rb option is not specified

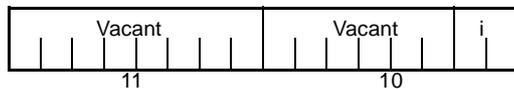
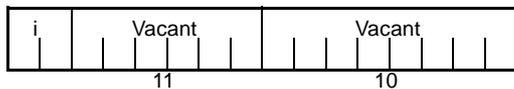


Member a of char type is allocated to the first byte unit. Members b and c are allocated to subsequent byte units, starting from the second byte unit. If a byte unit does not have enough space to hold the type char member, that member will be allocated to the following byte unit. In this case, if there is only space for 3 bits in the second byte unit, and member d has 4 bits, it will be allocated to the third byte unit.



Since member g is a bit field of type unsigned int, it can be allocated across byte boundaries.

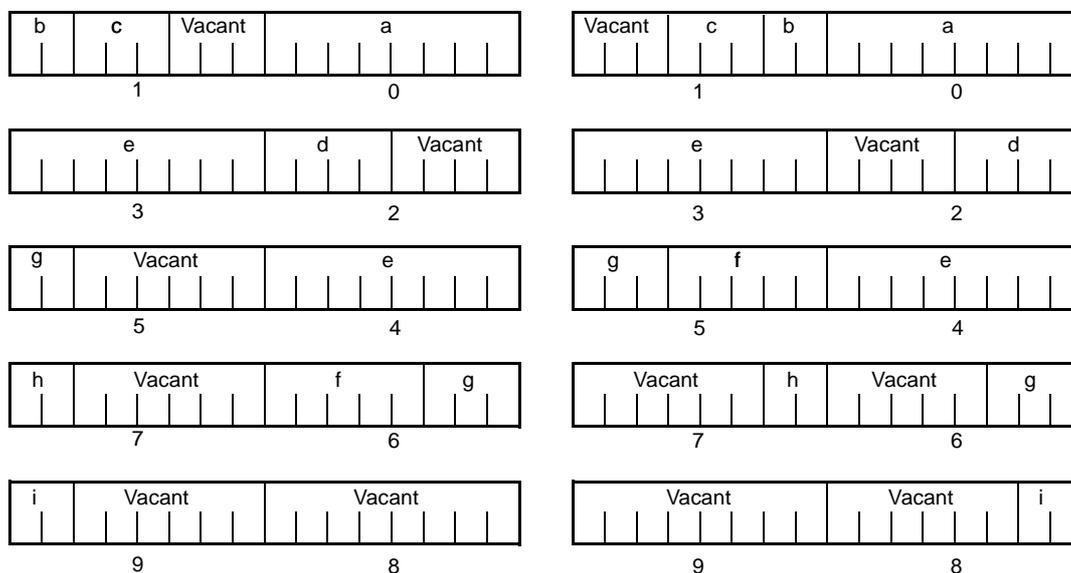
Since h is a bit field of type unsigned char, it is not allocated in the same byte unit as the g bit field of type unsigned int, but is allocated in the next byte unit.



Since i is a bit field of type unsigned int, it is allocated in the next word unit.

When the -rc option is specified (to pack the structure members), the above bit field becomes as follows.

In addition, since the compiler is processing the data of array as a pointer, it becomes byte access at the time of "-rc" specification.



**Remark** The numbers below the allocation diagrams indicate the byte offset values from the beginning of the structure.

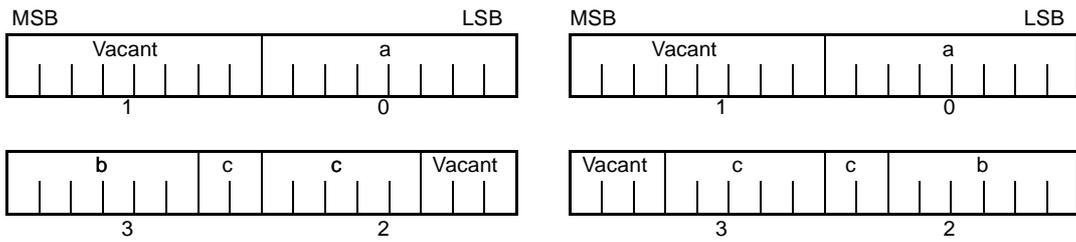
**(3) Bit field declaration 3**

```

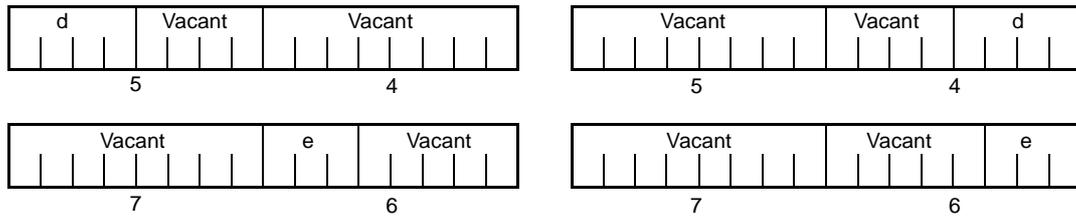
struct t {
    char          a ;
    unsigned int  b : 6 ;
    unsigned int  c : 7 ;
    unsigned int  d : 4 ;
    unsigned char e : 3 ;
    unsigned int  f : 10 ;
    unsigned int  g : 2 ;
    unsigned int  h : 5 ;
    unsigned int  i : 6 ;
} ;
    
```

Bit field allocated from the MSB side when the -rb option is specified

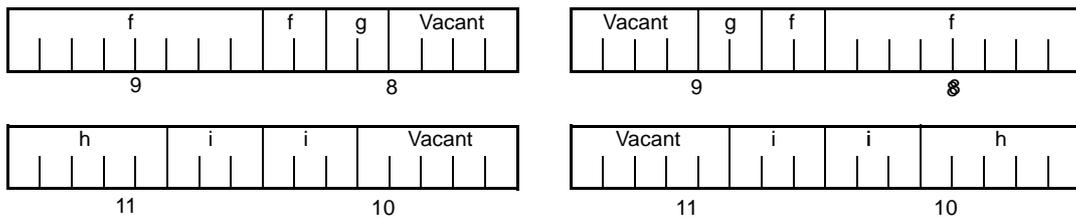
Bit field allocated from the LSB side when the -rb option is not specified



Since b and c are bit fields of type unsigned int, they are allocated from the next word unit.  
 Since d is also a bit field of type unsigned int, it is allocated from the next word unit.

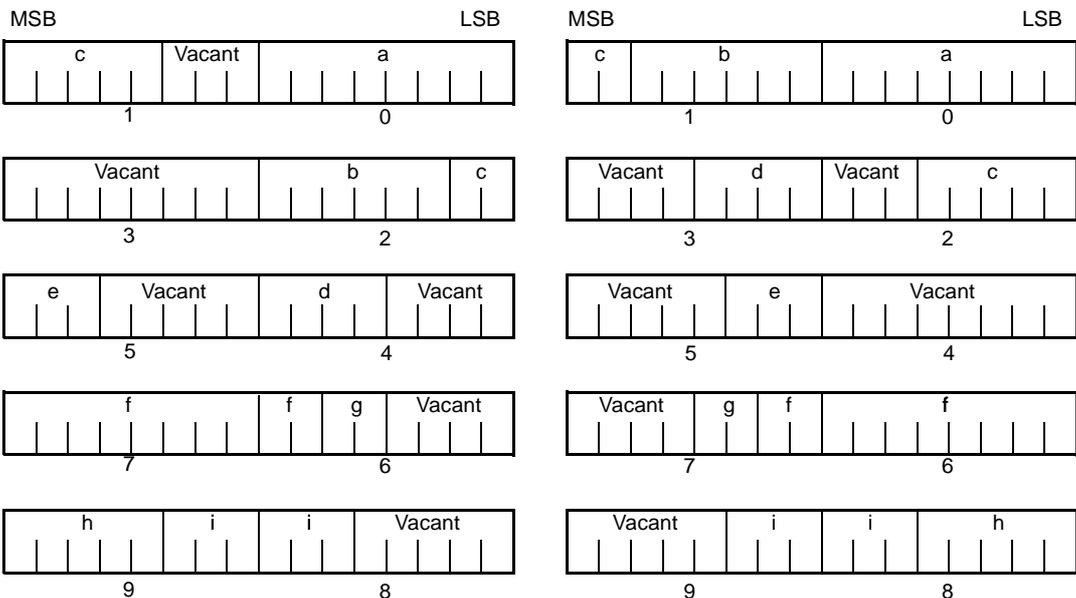


Since e is a bit field of type unsigned char, it is allocated to the next byte unit.



f and g, and h and i are each allocated to separate word units.

When the -rc option is specified (to pack the structure members), the above bit field becomes as follows.  
 In addition, since the compiler is processing the data of array as a pointer, it becomes byte access at the time of "-rc" specification.



**Remark** The numbers below the allocation diagrams indicate the byte offset values from the beginning of the structure.

**[Compatibility]**

**(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The source program need not be modified.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- The source program must be modified if the -rb option is used and coding is performed taking the bit field allocation sequence into consideration.

### Changing compiler output section name (#pragma section)

Changing compiler output section name, and specifying the starting address.

#### [Function]

- A compiler output section name is changed and a start address is specified.  
If the start address is omitted, the default allocation is assumed. For the compiler output section name and default location, see "[3.5 List of Segment Names](#)".  
In addition, the location of sections can be specified by omitting the start address and using the link directive file at the time of link. For the link directives, see "[5.1.1 Link directives](#)".
- To change section names @@CALT with an AT start address specified, the callt functions must be described before or after the other functions in the source file.
- If data are described after the #pragma instruction is described, those data are located in the data change section. Another change instruction is possible, and if data are described after the recharge instruction, those data are located in the recharge section.  
If data defined before a change are redefined after the change, they are located in the recharged section. Furthermore, this is valid in the same way for static variables (within the function).

#### [Effect]

- Changing the compiler output section repeatedly in 1 file enables to locate each section independently, so that data can be located in data units to be located independently.

#### [Usage]

- Specify the name of the section which is to be changed, a new section name, and the start address of the section, by using the #pragma directive as indicated below.

Describe this #pragma directive at the beginning of the C source.

The following items can be described before this #pragma directive:

- Comment
- Preprocessor directive which does neither define nor see to a variable or a function

However, all sections in BSEG and DSEG, and the @@CNST, @@CNSTL section in CSEG can be described anywhere in the C source, and recharge instructions can be performed repeatedly. To return to the original section name, describe the compiler output section name in the changed section.

Declare as follows at the beginning of the file:

```
#pragma section compiler-output-section-name new-section-name [AT startaddress]
```

- Of the keywords to be described after #pragma, be sure to describe the compiler output section name in uppercase letters.  
section, AT can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters, or in combination of those.
- The format in which the new section name is to be described conforms to the assembler specifications (up to 8 letters can be used for a segment name).
- Only the hexadecimal numbers of the C language and the hexadecimal numbers of the assembler can be described as the start address.

**(1) Hexadecimal numbers of C language**

```
0xn/0xn ... n
0Xn/0Xn ... n
( n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, F )
```

**(2) Hexadecimal numbers of assembler**

```
nH/n ... nH
nh/n ... nh
( n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, F )
```

The hexadecimal number must start with a numeral.

To example, to express a numeric value with a value of 255 in hexadecimal number, specify zero before F. It is therefore 0FFH.

- For sections other than the @@CNST, @@CNSTL section in CSEG, that is, sections which locate functions, this #pragma instruction cannot be described in other than the beginning of the C source (after the C source is described). If described, a warning is output and the description is ignored.
  - If this #pragma instruction is executed after the C text is described, an assembler source file is created without an object module file being created.
  - If this #pragma instruction is after the C text is described, a file which contains this #pragma instruction and which does not have the C text (including external reference declarations for variables and functions) cannot be included. This results in an error (see "CODING ERROR EXAMPLE1").
  - #include statement cannot be described in a file which executes this #pragma instruction following the C text description. If described, it causes an error (see "CODING ERROR EXAMPLE2").
  - If #include statement follows the C text, this #pragma instruction cannot be described after this description. If described, it causes an error (see "CODING ERROR EXAMPLE3").
- But, when a body of C is in the header file, it isn't cause an error.

```
d1.h
    extern int      a ;

d2.h
    #define VAR 1

d.c
    #include "d1.h"           // When there is a body of C and it's in #include,
    #include "d2.h"           // #pragma instruction of d.c isn't an error.
    #pragma section @@DATA ??DATA1
```

**[Restrictions]**

- A section name that indicates a segment for vector table (e.g., @@VECT02, etc.) must not be changed.
- If two or more sections with the same name as the one specifying the AT start address exist in another file, a link error will occur.
- Specify the address within the range from FFE20H to FFE3BH for compiler output section names @@DATS, @@BITS and @@INIS, from 0x80 to 0xbf for @@CALT, from 0x0 to 0xffff for @@CODE and @@BASE, from mirror area for @@CNST, and from 0x0 to 0xffef for other sections.

**[Example]**

Section name @@CODEL is changed to CC1 and address 2400H is specified as the start address.

<C source>

```
#pragma section @@CODEL CC1      AT      2400H

void main ( void ) {
    ; Function body
}
```

<Output object of compiler>

```
CC1      CSEG      AT      2400H
_main :
    ; Preprocessing
    ; Function body
    ; Postprocessing
    ret
```

The following is a code example in which the main C code is followed by a #pragma directive.

The contents are allocated in the section following "//".

**(1) EXAMPLE1**

```
#pragma section @@DATA          ??DATA

int          a1 ;                // ??DATA
sreg int     b1 ;                // @@DATS
int          c1 = 1 ;            // @@INIT and @@R_INIT
const int    d1 = 1 ;            // @@CNST
#pragma section @@DATS          ??DATS

int          a2 ;                // ??DATA
sreg int     b2 ;                // ??DATS
int          c2 = 1 ;            // @@INIT and @@R_INIT
const int    d2 = 1 ;            // @@CNST
#pragma section @@DATA          ??DATA2
// ??DATA is automatically closed and ??DATA2 becomes valid
int          a3 ;                // ??DATA2
sreg int     b3 ;                // ??DATS
int          c3 = 3 ;            // @@INIT and @@R_INIT
const int    d3 = 3 ;            // @@CNST
#pragma section @@DATA          @@DATA
// ??DATA2 is closed and processing returns to the default @@DATA
#pragma section @@INIT          ??INIT
#pragma section @@R_INIT        ??R_INIT
```

```

int          a4 ;                      // @@DATA
sreg int     b4 ;                      // ??DATS
// ROMization is invalidated unless both names (@@INIT and @@R_INIT) are changed. This
// is the user's responsibility.
int          c4 = 1 ;                  // ??INIT and ??R_INIT
const int    d4 = 1 ;                  // @@CNST
#pragma section @@INIT                @@INIT
#pragma section @@R_INIT              @@R_INIT
// ??INIT and ??R_INIT are closed and processing returns to the default setting
#pragma section @@BITS                ??BITS

__boolean e4 ;                        // ??BITS
#pragma section @@CNST                ??CNST

char         *const p = "Hello" ;     // p and "Hello" are both ??CNSTT

```

**(2) EXAMPLE2**

```

#pragma section    @@INIT    ??INIT1
#pragma section    @@R_INIT  ??RINIT1
#pragma section    @@DATA    ??DATA1

char      c1 ;
int       i2 ;
#pragma section    @@INIT    ??INIT2
#pragma section    @@R_INIT  ??RINIT2
#pragma section    @@DATA    ??DATA2

char      c1 ;
int       i2 = 1 ;
#pragma section    @@DATA    ??DATA3
#pragma section    @@INIT    ??INIT3
#pragma section    @@R_INIT  ??RINIT3

extern char c1 ;                      // ??DATA1
int       i2 ;                        // ??INIT1 and ??RINIT1
#pragma section    @@DATA    ??DATA4
#pragma section    @@INIT    ??INIT4
#pragma section    @@R_INIT  ??RINIT4

```

Restrictions when this #pragma directive has been specified after the main C code are explained in the following coding error examples.

## (3) CODING ERROR EXAMPLE1

```

a1.h
    #pragma section @@DATA ??DATA1      // File containing only the #pragma
                                        // section

a2.h
    extern int      func1 ( void ) ; s
    #pragma section @@DATA ??DATA2      // File containing the main C code
                                        // followed by the #pragma directive.

a3.h
    #pragma section @@DATA ??DATA3      // File containing only the #pragma
                                        // section

a4.h
    #pragma section @@DATA ??DATA3
    extern int      func2 ( void ) ;      // File that includes the main C code.

a.c
    #include "a1.h"
    #include "a2.h"
    #include "a3.h"      // <- Error
                        // Because the a2.h file contains the main C code
                        // followed by this #pragma directive, file a3.h, which
                        // includes only this #pragma directive, cannot be
                        // included.

    #include "a4.h"

```

## (4) CODING ERROR EXAMPLE2

```

b1.h
    const int i ;

b2.h
    const int j ;

    #include "b1.h"      // This does not result in an error since it is not
                        // file (b.c) in which the main C code is followed by
                        // this #pragma directive.

b.c
    const int      k ;
    #pragma section @@DATA ??DATA1
    #include "b2.h"      // <- Error
                        // Since an #include statement cannot be coded afterward
                        // in file (b.c) in which the main C code is followed by

```

```
// this #pragma directive.
```

**(5) CODING ERROR EXAMPLE3**

```
c1.h
extern int    j ;
#pragma section @@DATA ??DATA1 // This does not result in an error since the
                                // #pragma directive is included and
                                // processed before the processing of c3.h.

c2.h
extern int    k ;
#pragma section @@DATA ??DATA2 // <- Error
                                // This #include statement is specified after
                                // the main C code in c3.h, and the #pragma
                                // directive cannot be specified afterward.

c3.h
#include "c1.h"
extern int    i ;
#include "c2.h"
#pragma section @@DATA ??DATA3 // <- Error
                                // This #include statement is specified after
                                // the main C code, and the #pragma directive
                                // cannot be specified afterward.

c.c
#include "c3.h"
#pragma section @@DATA ??DATA4 // <- Error
                                // This #include statement is specified after
                                // the main C code in c3.h, and the #pragma
                                // directive cannot be specified afterward.

int    i ;
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The source program need not be modified if the section name change function is not supported.
- To change the section name, modify the source program according to the procedure described in Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Delete or delimit #pragma section ... with #ifdef.
- To change the section name, modify the program according to the specifications of each compiler.

**[Cautions]**

- A section is equivalent to a segment of the assembler.
- The compiler does not check whether the new section name is in duplicate with another symbol. Therefore, the user must check to see whether the section name is not in duplicate by assembling the output assemble list.
- When the -zf option has been specified, each section name is changed so that the second "@" is replaced with "E".
- If a section name<sup>Note</sup> related to ROMization is changed by using #pragma section, the startup routine must be changed by the user on his/her own responsibility.

**Note** ROMization-related section name

@@R\_INIT, @@R\_INIS, @@RLINIT, @@INITL, @@INIT, @@INIS

Here are examples of changing the startup routine (cstart.asm or cstartn.asm) and termination routine (rom.asm) in connection with changing a section name related to ROMization.

<C source>

```
#pragma section @@R_INIT      RTT1
#pragma section @@INIT       TT1
```

If a section name that stores an external variable with an initial value has been changed by describing #pragma section indicated above, the user must add to the startup routine the initial processing of the external variable to be stored to the new section.

To the startup routine, therefore, add the declaration of the first label of the new section and the portion that copies the initial value, and add the portion that declares the end label to the termination routine, as described below.

RTT1\_S and RTT1\_E are the names of the first and end labels of section RTT1, and TT1\_S and TT1\_E are the names of the first and end labels of section TT1.

**(1) Changing startup routine cstartx.asm****(a) Add the declaration of the label indicating the end of the section with the changed name**

```
:
EXTRN  RTT1_E, TT1_E          ; Adds EXTRN declaration of RTT1_E and TT1_E
:
```

Add the #pragma section directives to the C source code.

```
:
#pragma section @@R_INIT     RTT1
#pragma section @@INIT      TT1
:
```

- (b) Add a section to copy the initial values from the RTT1 section with the changed name to the TT1 section.

```

:
LDATS1 :
    MOVW    AX, HL
    CMPW    AX, #LOW _?DATS
    BZ      $LDATS2
    MOV     [HL + 0], #0
    INCW    HL
    BR      $LDATS1

LDATS2 :
    MOV     ES, #HIGH RTT1_S
    MOV     HL, #LOWW RTT1_S
    MOV     DE, #LOWW TT1_S

LTT1 :
    MOVW    AX, HL
    CMPW    AX, #LOWW RTT1_E
    BZ      $LTT2
    MOV     A, ES : [HL]
    MOV     [DE], A
    INCW    HL
    INCW    DE
    BR      $LTT1

LTT2 :
;
    CALL    !!_main                ; main ( ) ;
    CLRW    AX
    CALL    !!_exit                ; exit ( 0 ) ;
    BR      $$
;

```

Adds section to copy the initial values from the RTT1 section to the TT1 section

(c) Set the label of the start of the section with the changed name.

```

:
@@R_INIT      CSEG      UNIT64KP
_@R_INIT :
@@R_INIS      CSEG      UNIT64KP
_@R_INIS :
@@INIT        DSEG
_@INIT :
@@DATA        DSEG
_@DATA :
@@INIS        DSEG      SADDRP
_@INIS :
@@DATS        DSEG      SADDRP
_@DATS :

RTT1          CSEG      UNIT64KP      ; Indicates the start of the RTT1 section
RTT1_S :      ; Adds the label setting
TT1           DSEG      BASEP        ; Indicates the start of the TT1 section
TT1_S :      ; Adds the label setting

@@CODEL       CSEG
@@CALT        CSEG      CALLT0
@@CNST        CSEG      MIRRORP
@@BITS        BSEG
;
END
```

## (2) Changing termination routine rom.asm

**Caution** Don't change the object module name "@rom" and "@rome".

## (a) Add the declaration of the label indicating the end of the section with the changed name

```

NAME          @rom
;
PUBLIC        _?R_INIT, _?R_INIS
PUBLIC        _?INIT, _?DATA, _?INIS, _?DATS

PUBLIC        RTT1_E, TT1_E          ; Adds RTT1_E and TT1_E

;
@@R_INIT      CSEG      UNIT64KP
_?R_INIT :
@@R_INIS      CSEG      UNIT64KP
_?R_INIS :
@@INIT        DSEG
_?INIT :
@@DATA        DSEG
_?DATA :
@@INIS        DSEG      SADDRP
_?INIS :
@@DATS        DSEG      SADDRP
_?DATS
:

```

## (b) Setting the label indicating the end

```

:
RTT1      CSEG      UNIT64KP          ; Adds the label setting indicating the end of the
                                           ; RTT1 section.
RTT1_E :                               ; Adds the label setting

TT1       DSEG      BASEP            ; Adds the label setting indicating the end of the
                                           ; TT1 section.
TT1_E :                               ; Adds the label setting

;
END

```

**Binary constant (0b)**

The compiler supports the 0bxxx notation for expressing binary constants in C source code.

**[Function]**

- Describes binary constants to the location where integer constants can be described.

**[Effect]**

- Constants can be described in bit strings without being replaced with octal or hexadecimal number. Readability is also improved.

**[Usage]**

- Describe binary constants in the C source.
- The following shows the description method of binary constants.

```
0b      binary-number
0B      binary-number
```

**Remark** Binary number: either "0" or "1".

- A binary constant has 0b or 0B at the start and is followed by the list of numbers 0 or 1.
- The value of a binary constant is calculated with 2 as the base.
- The type of a binary constant is the first one that can express the value in the following list.

Subscripted binary number:	int, unsigned int, long int, unsigned long int
Subscripted u or U:	unsigned int, unsigned long int
Subscripted l or L:	long int, unsigned long int
Subscripted u or U and subscripted l or L with:	unsigned long int

**[Example]**

<C source>

```
unsigned      i ;
i = 0b11100101 ;
```

Output object of compiler is the same as the following case.

```
unsigned      i ;
i = 0xe5 ;
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modifications are not needed.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Modifications are needed to meet the specification of the compiler if the compiler supports binary constants.
- Modifications into other integer formats such as octal, decimal, and hexadecimal are needed if the compiler does not support binary constants.

**Module name changing function (#pragma name)**

The module name of an object can be changed to any name in C source code.

**[Function]**

- Outputs the first 254 letters of the specified module name to the symbol information table in a object module file.
- Outputs the first 254 letters of the specified module name to the assemble list file as symbol information (MOD\_NAME) when the -g2 option is specified and as NAME pseudo instruction when the -ng option is specified.
- If a module name with 255 or more letters are specified, a warning message is output.
- If unauthorized letters are described, an error will occur and the processing is aborted.
- If more than one of this #pragma directive exists, a warning message is output, and whichever described later is enabled.

**[Effect]**

- The module name of an object can be changed to any name.

**[Usage]**

- The following shows the description method.

```
#pragma name    module-name
```

A module name must consist of the characters that the OS authorizes as a file name except "(", ")", and kanji (2-byte character).

Upper/lowercase is distinguished.

**[Example]**

```
#pragma name    module1
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modifications are not needed if the compiler does not support the module name changing function.
- To change a module name, modification is made according to Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- #pragma name ... is deleted or sorted by #ifdef.
- To change a module name, modification is needed depending on the specification of each compiler.

**Rotate function (#pragma rot)**

Outputs the code that rotates the value of an expression to the object with direct inline expansion.

**[Function]**

- Outputs the code that rotates the value of an expression to the object with direct inline expansion instead of function call and generates an object file.
- If there is not a #pragma directive, the rotate function is regarded as an ordinary function.

**[Effect]**

- Rotate function is realized by the C source or ASM description without describing the processing to perform rotate.

**[Usage]**

- Describe in the source in the same format as the function call.

There are the following 4 function names.

rorb, rolb, rorw, rolw

**(1) unsigned char rorb ( x, y ) ;**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Rotates x to right for y times.

**(2) unsigned char rolb ( x, y ) ;**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Rotates x to left for y times.

**(3) unsigned int rorw ( x, y ) ;**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Rotates x to right for y times.

**(4) unsigned int rolw ( x, y ) ;**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Rotates x to left for y times.

- Declare the use of the function for rotate by the #pragma rot directive of the module.

However, the followings can be described before #pragma rot.

- Comments
- Other #pragma directives
- Preprocessing directives which do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/reference of functions
- Keywords following #pragma can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters.

**[Restrictions]**

- The function names for rotate cannot be used as the function names.
- The function names for rotate must be described in lowercase letters. If the functions for rotate are described in uppercase letters, they are handled as ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma rot

unsigned char  a = 0x11 ;
unsigned char  b = 2  ;
unsigned char  c ;

void main ( void ) {
    c = rorb ( a, b ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output assembler source&gt;

```
    mov     x, !_b
    mov     a, !_a
L0003 :
    ror     a, 1
    dec     x
    bnz     $L0003
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modification is not needed if the compiler does not use the functions for rotate.
- To change to functions for rotate, modifications are made according to Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- #pragma rot statement is deleted or sorted by #ifdef.
- To use as a function for rotate, modification is needed depending on the specification of each compiler (#asm, #endasm or asm ( ) ;, etc.).

**Multiplication function (#pragma mul)**

Outputs the code that multiplies the value of an expression to the object with direct inline expansion.

**[Function]**

- Outputs the code that multiplies the value of an expression to the object with direct inline expansion instead of function call and generates an object file (mulu function).
- If there is not a #pragma directive, the multiplication function is regarded as an ordinary function.

**[Effect]**

- The codes utilizing the data size of input/output of the multiplication instruction are generated. Therefore, the codes with faster execution speed and smaller size than the description of ordinary multiplication expressions can be generated (mulu function).
- Because the generated code takes advantage of the multiplier's or RL78 expansion instructions I/O data size, the execution speed is faster than writing normal multiplication expressions, and the size of the generated code is smaller as well (muluw/mulsw function).

**[Usage]**

- Describe in the same format as that of function call in the source.  
The following shows list of multiplication function.

mulu, muluw, mulsw

**(1) unsigned int mulu ( x, y ) ;**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Performs unsigned multiplication of x and y.

**(2) unsigned long muluw ( x, y ) ;**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned int y ;**

Performs unsigned multiplication of x and y.

**(3) signed long mulsw ( x, y ) ;**

**signed int x ;**

**signed int y ;**

Performs signed multiplication of x and y.

- Declare the use of functions for multiplication by #pragma mul directive of the module.  
However, the followings can be described before #pragma mul.
  - Comments
  - Other #pragma directives
  - Preprocessing directives that do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/reference of functions
- Keywords following #pragma can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters.

**[Restrictions]**

- The function for multiplication cannot be used as the function names (when #pragma mul is declared).
- The function for multiplication must be described in lowercase letters. If they are described in uppercase letters, they are handled as ordinary functions.
- This will become a library call. Inline expansion will not be performed (mulw/mulsw function).

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma mul

unsigned char  a = 0x11 ;
unsigned char  b = 2 ;
unsigned int   i ;

void main ( void ) {
    i = mulu ( a, b ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
mov    x, !_b
mov    a, !_a
mulu   x
movw   !_i, ax
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modifications are not needed if the compiler does not use the functions for multiplication.
- To change to functions for multiplication, modification is made according to Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- #pragma mul statement is deleted or sorted by #ifdef. Function names for multiplication can be used as the function names.
- To use as functions for multiplication, modification is needed depending on the specification of each compiler (#asm, #endasm or asm ( ) ;, etc.).

**Division function (#pragma div)**

Outputs the code that divides the value of an expression to the object.

**[Function]**

- Outputs the code that divides the value of an expression to the object.
- If there is not a #pragma directive, the function for division is regarded as an ordinary function.

**[Effect]**

- Codes that are compatible with the 78K0 C compiler and utilize the data size of the division instruction I/O are generated. Therefore, codes with faster execution speed and smaller size than the description of ordinary division expressions can be generated.

**[Usage]**

- Describe in the same format as that of function call in the source.  
There are the following 2 functions for division.

divuw, moduw

**(1) unsigned int divuw ( x, y );**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Performs unsigned division of x and y and returns the quotient.

**(2) unsigned char moduw ( x, y );**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Performs unsigned division of x and y and returns the remainder.

- Declare the use of the function for divisions by the #pragma div directive of the module.  
However, the followings can be described before #pragma div.
  - Comments
  - Other #pragma directives
  - Preprocessing directives which do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/ reference of functions
- Keywords following #pragma can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters.

**[Restrictions]**

- The division functions are not expanded inline, but are called by the library.
- The function names for division cannot be used as the function names.
- The function names for division must be described in lowercase letters. If they are described in uppercase letters, they are handled as ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma div

unsigned int    a = 0x1234 ;
unsigned char  b = 0x12 ;
unsigned char   c ;
unsigned int   i ;

void main ( void ) {
    i = divuw ( a, b ) ;
    c = moduw ( a, b ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
mov    c, !_b
movw   ax, !_a
call   !@@divuw
movw   !_i, ax
mov    c, !_b
movw   ax, !_a
call   !@@divuw
mov    a, c
mov    !_c, a
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modification is not needed if the compiler does not use the functions for division.
- To change to functions for division, modifications are made according to Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- #pragma div statement is deleted or sorted by #ifdef. The function names for division can be used as the function name.
- To use as a function for division, modification is needed depending on the specification of each compiler (#asm, #endasm or asm ( ) ;, etc.).

### Sum-of-products calculation function (#pragma mac)

Outputs the code that sum-of-products calculation the value of an expression to the object.

#### [Function]

- Outputs the code that sum-of-products calculation the value of an expression to the object.
- If there is not a #pragma directive, the function for sum-of-products calculation is regarded as an ordinary function.

#### [Effect]

- The codes utilizing the data size of input/output of the sum-of-products calculation or RL78 expansion instructions are generated. Therefore, the codes with faster execution speed and smaller size than the description of ordinary sum-of-products calculation expressions can be generated.

#### [Usage]

- Describe in the same format as that of function call in the source.  
The following shows list of sum-of-products calculation function.

```
macuw, macsw
```

#### (1) unsigned long macuw ( x, y, z ) ;

**unsigned long x ;**

**unsigned int y ;**

**unsigned int z ;**

Performs unsigned sum-of-products calculation of  $x + (y * z)$  and returns the result.

#### (2) signed long macsw ( x, y, z ) ;

**signed long x ;**

**signed int y ;**

**signed int z ;**

Performs signed sum-of-products calculation of  $x + (y * z)$  and returns the result.

- Declare the use of the function for sum-of-products calculation by the #pragma mac directive of the module.  
However, the followings can be described before #pragma mac.
  - Comments
  - Other #pragma directives
  - Preprocessing directives which do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/ reference of functions
- Keywords following #pragma can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters.

#### [Restrictions]

- The sum-of-products calculation functions are not expanded inline, but are called by the library.
- The function names for sum-of-products calculation cannot be used as the function names.
- The function names for sum-of-products calculation must be described in lowercase letters. If they are described in uppercase letters, they are handled as ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma mac

unsigned long  a = 100000 ;
unsigned int   b = 1000  ;
unsigned int   c = 100   ;
signed long   d = 100000 ;
signed int    e = 1000   ;
signed int    f = -100   ;
unsigned long  ul ;
signed long   sl ;

void main ( ) {
    ul = macuw ( a, b, c ) ;
    sl = macsw ( d, e, f ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
movw    ax, !_a
movw    @_RTARG0, ax
movw    ax, !_a+2
movw    @_RTARG2, ax
movw    ax, !_b
movw    @_RTARG4, ax
movw    ax, !_c
call    !@@macuw
movw    ax, @_RTARG2
movw    !_ul+2, ax
movw    ax, @_RTARG0
movw    !_ul, ax
movw    ax, !_d
movw    @_RTARG0, ax
movw    ax, !_d+2
movw    @_RTARG2, ax
movw    ax, !_e
movw    @_RTARG4, ax
movw    ax, !_f
call    !@@macsw
movw    ax, @_RTARG2
movw    !_sl+2, ax
movw    ax, @_RTARG0
movw    !_sl, ax
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modification is not needed if the compiler does not use the functions for sum-of-products calculation.
- To change to functions for sum-of-products calculation, modifications are made according to USAGE above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- #pragma mac statement is deleted or sorted by #ifdef. The function names for sum-of-products calculation can be used as the function name.
- To use as a function for sum-of-products calculation, modification is needed depending on the specification of each compiler (#asm, #endasm or asm ( ) ;, etc.).

**BCD operation function (#pragma bcd)**

Outputs the code that performs a BCD operation on the expression value in an object by direct inline expansion.

**[Function]**

- Outputs the code that performs a BCD operation on the expression value in an object by direct inline expansion rather than by function call, and generates an object file.  
However, `bcdtob`, `btobcde`, `bcdtow`, `wtobcd` and `btobcd` function are not developed inline.
- If there are no `#pragma` directives, the function for BCD operation is regarded as an ordinary function.

**[Effect]**

- Even if the process of the BCD operation is not described, the BCD operation function can be realized by the C source or ASM statements.

**[Usage]**

- The same format as that of a function call is coded in the source.  
There are 13 types of function name for BCD operation, as listed below.

**(1) unsigned char adbcdb ( x, y );**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Decimal addition is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction.

**(2) unsigned char sbbcdb ( x, y );**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Decimal subtraction is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction.

**(3) unsigned int adbcdb ( x, y );**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Decimal addition is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction (with result expansion).

**(4) unsigned int sbbcdb ( x, y );**

**unsigned char x ;**

**unsigned char y ;**

Decimal subtraction is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction (with result expansion).

If a borrow occurs, the high-order digits are set to 0x99.

**(5) unsigned int adbcdw ( x, y );**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned int y ;**

Decimal addition is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction.

**(6) unsigned int sbbcdw ( x, y );**

**unsigned int x ;**

**unsigned int y ;**

Decimal subtraction is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction.

**(7) unsigned long adbcawe ( x, y );****unsigned int x ;****unsigned int y ;**

Decimal addition is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction (with result expansion).

**(8) unsigned long sbbcawe ( x, y );****unsigned int x ;****unsigned int y ;**

Decimal subtraction is carried out by the BCD adjustment instruction (with result expansion).

If a borrow is occurred, the higher digits are set to 0x9999.

**(9) unsigned char bcdtob ( x );****unsigned char x ;**

Values in decimal number are converted to binary number values.

**(10) unsigned int btobcde ( x );****unsigned char x ;**

Values in binary number are converted to decimal number values.

**(11) unsigned int bcdtow ( x );****unsigned int x ;**

Values in decimal number are converted to binary number values.

**(12) unsigned int wtobcd ( x );****unsigned int x ;**

Values in decimal number are converted to binary number values.

However, if the value of x exceeds 10000, 0xffff is returned.

**(13) unsigned char btobcd ( x );****unsigned char x ;**

Values in decimal number are converted to those in binary number.

However, the overflow is discarded.

- Use of functions for BCD operation is declared by the module's #pragma bcd directive. The following items, however, can be coded before #pragma bcd.

- Comments

- Other #pragma directives

- Preprocessing directives that do not generate definitions/sreferences of variables or function definitions/ references

- Either uppercase or lowercase letters can be used for keywords described after #pragma.

**[Restrictions]**

- BCD operation function names cannot be used as function names.

- The BCD operation function is coded in lowercase letters. If uppercase letters are used, these functions are regarded as an ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma bcd

unsigned char  a = 0x12 ;
unsigned char  b = 0x34 ;
unsigned char  c ;

void main ( void ) {
    c = adbcdb ( a, b ) ;
    c = sbbcdb ( b, a ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
mov    a, !_a
add    a, !_b
add    a, !BCDADJ
mov    !_c, a
mov    a, !_b
sub    a, !_a
sub    a, !BCDADJ
mov    !_c, a
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Corrections are not needed if functions for the BCD operations are not used.
- To change another function to the function for BCD operation, use the description above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- The #pragma bcd statements are either deleted or separated by #ifdef. A BCD operation function name can be used as a function name.
- If using "pragma bcd" as a BCD operation function, the changes to the program source must conform to the C compiler's specifications (#asm, #endasm or asm ( ); etc.).

**Data insertion function (#pragma opc)**

Inserts constant data into the current address.

**[Function]**

- Inserts constant data into the current address.
- When there is not a #pragma directive, the function for data insertion is regarded as an ordinary function.

**[Effect]**

- Specific data and instruction can be embedded in the code area without using the ASM statement. When ASM is used, an object cannot be obtained without the intermediary of assembler. On the other hand, if the data insertion function is used, an object can be obtained without the intermediary of assembler.

**[Usage]**

- Describe using uppercase letters in the source in the same format as that of function call.
- The function name for data insertion is \_\_OPC.

**(1) void \_\_OPC ( unsigned char x, ... ) ;**

Insert the value of the constant described in the argument to the current address.

Arguments can describe only constants.

- Declare the use of functions for data insertion by the #pragma opc directive. However, the followings can be described before #pragma opc.
  - Comments
  - Other #pragma directives
  - Preprocessing directives which do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/reference of functions
- Keywords following #pragma can be described in either uppercase or lowercase letters.

**[Restrictions]**

- The function names for data insertion cannot be used as the function names (when #opc is specified).
- \_\_OPC must be described in uppercase letters. If they are described in lowercase letters, they are handled as ordinary functions.

**[Example]**

<C source>

```
#pragma opc

void main ( void ) {
    __OPC ( 0xa7 ) ;
    __OPC ( 0x51, 0x12 ) ;
    __OPC ( 0x30, 0x34, 0x12 ) ;
}
```

<Output object of compiler>

```
_main :  
; line 4 : __OPC ( 0xa7 ) ;  
    DB      0AFH  
; line 5 : __OPC ( 0x51, 0x12 ) ;  
    DB      051H  
    DB      012H  
; line 6 : __OPC ( 0x30, 0x34, 0x12 ) ;  
    DB      030H  
    DB      034H  
    DB      012H  
; line 7 : }  
    ret
```

### [Compatibility]

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- Modification is not needed if the compiler does not use the functions for data insertion.
- To change to functions for data insertion, use the Usage above.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- The #pragma opc statement is deleted or delimited by #ifdef. Function names for data insertion can be used as function names.
- To use as a function for data insertion, changes to the program source must conform to the specification of the C compiler (#asm, #endasm or asm ( ) ;, etc.).

### Interrupt handler for RTOS (`#pragma rtos_interrupt`)

The interrupt handler for RI78V4 can be described.

#### [Function]

- Interprets the function name specified with the `#pragma rtos_interrupt` directive as the interrupt handler for the RL78,78K0R RTOS RI78V4.
- Registers the address of the described function name to the interrupt vector table for the specified interrupt request name.
- The interrupt handler for RTOS generates codes in the following order.

(1) Calls kernel symbol `__kernel_int_entry` using `call !!addr20` instruction

(2) Saves the `saddr` area used by compiler

(3) Secures the local variable area (only when there is a local variable)

(4) The function body

(5) Releases the local variable area (only when there is a local variable)

(6) Restores the `saddr` area used by compiler

(7) Unconditionally jumps to label `_ret_int` using `br !!addr20` instruction

#### [Effect]

- The interrupt handler for RTOS can be described in the C source level.
- Because the interrupt request name is identified, the address of the vector table does not need to be identified.

#### [Usage]

- The interrupt request name, function name is specified by the `#pragma` directive.

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt [interrupt-request-name function-name]
```

- This `#pragma` directive is described at the start of the C source.
- The following can be described before the `#pragma` directive.
  - Comments
  - Preprocessing directives which do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/reference of functions
- Of the keywords to be described following `#pragma`, the interrupt request name must be described in uppercase letters. The other keywords can be described either in uppercase or lowercase letters.

**[Restrictions]**

- When the -zf option is not specified, interrupt handler for RTOS are allocated to the area between C0H and 0FFFFH, regardless of the memory model.  
When the -zf option is specified, interrupt functions are allocated in accordance with the memory model. In addition, specification of allocation area by specifying \_\_near or \_\_far is also enabled.
- Interrupt request names are described in uppercase letters.
- Software interrupts and non-maskable interrupts cannot be specified for the interrupt request names, if specified so, an error will occur.
- Interrupt requests are double-checked in one module units only.
- The interrupt handler for RTOS cannot specify callt/ \_\_callt/ \_\_interrupt/ \_\_interrupt\_brk/ \_\_flash/ \_\_flashf. \_\_far can be specified only when the -zf option is specified.
- ret\_int/ \_kernel\_int\_entry cannot be used for the function names.
- Coding a "#pragma rtos\_interrupt" when -zx is specified will cause an error. Use the "\_\_rtos\_interrupt" modifier when defining an RTOS interrupt handler. RL78 family use the self-programming library to allocate interrupt vector tables in self-programming.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
#pragma rtos_interrupt INTP0 intp

int    i ;

void   intp ( void ) {
    int    a[3] ;
    a[0] = 1 ;
    func ( ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
@@BASE          CSEG    BASE
__intp :
    call    !!__kernel_int_entry
    movw   ax, @_RTARG0    ; Saves saddr area used by the compiler
    push  ax                ;
    movw   ax, @_RTARG2    ;
    push  ax                ;
    movw   ax, @_RTARG4    ;
    push  ax                ;
    movw   ax, @_RTARG6    ;
    push  ax                ;
    movw   ax, @_SEGAX     ;
    push  ax                ;
    movw   ax, @_SEGDE     ;
    push  ax                ;
```

```

        subw    sp, #06H        ; Secures the local variable area
        movw   hl, sp
; line 5 :    int     a[3] ;
; line 6 :    a[0] = 1 ;
        onew   ax
        movw   [hl], ax        ; a
; line 7 :    func ( ) ;
        call  !!_func
; line 8 :    }
        addw   sp, #06H        ; Releases the local variable area
        pop    ax                ; Restores saddr area used by the compiler
        movw   @_SEGDE, ax      ;
        pop    ax                ;
        movw   @_SEGAX, ax      ;
        pop    ax                ;
        movw   @_RTARG6, ax     ;
        pop    ax                ;
        movw   @_RTARG4, ax     ;
        pop    ax                ;
        movw   @_RTARG2, ax     ;
        pop    ax                ;
        movw   @_RTARG0, ax     ;
        br    !!_ret_int

@@VECT06    CSEG    AT    0006H
_@vect06 :
            DW     _intp

```

### [Compatibility]

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- Modifications are not needed if the compiler does not support the interrupt handler for RTOS.
- To change to interrupt handler for RTOS, use the USAGE above.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- Handled as an ordinary function if #pragma rtos\_interrupt specification is deleted.
- To use as an interrupt handler for ROTS, changes to the source program must conform to the specification of the C compiler.

### Interrupt handler qualifier for RTOS (`__rtos_interrupt`)

The setting of the vector and the description of the interrupt handler for R178V4 can be described in separate files.

#### [Function]

- The function declared with the `__rtos_interrupt` qualifier is interpreted as an interrupt handler for RTOS. For details on registers used with interrupt handler for RTOS and saving and restoring of `saddr`, see to "[Interrupt handler for RTOS \(#pragma rtos\\_interrupt\)](#)".

#### [Effect]

- The setting of the vector table and the definition of the interrupt handler function for RTOS can be described in separate files.

#### [Usage]

- `__rtos_interrupt` is added to the qualifier of the interrupt handler for RTOS.

```
__rtos_interrupt void func ( ) { processing }
```

#### [Restrictions]

- When the `-zf` option is not specified, interrupt handler for RTOS are allocated to the area between `C0H` and `0FFFFH`, regardless of the memory model. When the `-zf` option is specified, interrupt functions are allocated in accordance with the memory model. In addition, specification of allocation area by specifying `__near` or `__far` is also enabled.
- The interrupt handler for RTOS cannot specify `callt/__callt/__interrupt/__interrupt_brk/__flash/__flashf`. `__far` can be specified only when the `-zf` option is specified.
- `ret_int/__kernel_int_entry` cannot be used for the function names.
- When `-zx` is specified, the interrupt function is allocated at `[C0H - FFEFFH]`, regardless of whether the `-zf` option was specified, or the memory model. In self-programming mode, an interrupt vector table is allocated using the self-programming library.

#### [Cautions]

- Vector addresses cannot be set only with declaration of this qualifier.  
The setting of the vector address must be performed separately with the `#pragma` directive, assembler description, etc.
- When the interrupt handler for RTOS is defined in the same file as the one in which the `#pragma rtos_interrupt ...` is specified, the function name specified with `#pragma rtos_interrupt` is judged as an interrupt handler for RTOS even if this qualifier is not described.

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modifications are not needed if the compiler does not support interrupt handler for RTOS.
- To change to interrupt handler for RTOS, use the USAGE above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Changes can be made by #define (For the details, see to "[3.2.5 C source modifications](#)").  
By these changes, interrupt handler qualifiers for RTOS are handled as ordinary variables.
- To use as an interrupt handler for RTOS, modification is needed depending on the specification of each compiler.

**Task for RTOS (#pragma rtos\_task)**

The function names specified with #pragma rtos\_task are interpreted as the tasks for RI78V4.

**[Function]**

- The function names specified with #pragma rtos\_task are interpreted as the tasks for RTOS.
- In the case the function name is specified, if the entity definition is not in the same file, an error will occur.
- The preprocessing of the task for RTOS does not save the registers for frame pointer/register variables. The post-processing is not output.
- RTOS system call ext\_tsk is always called at the end of #pragma rtos\_task.
- The following RTOS system call calling function can be used.

```
void ext_tsk ( void ) ;
```

Calls RTOS system call ext\_tsk.

When ext\_tsk is, however, called in the ext\_tsk entity definition, interrupt function, interrupt handler for RTOS, an error will occur.

- RTOS system call ext\_tsk is called using the br !!addr20 instruction. If ext\_tsk is issued at the end of an ordinary function, the epilogue is not output.
- A task can be coded without arguments specified, or with only one argument of up to 4 bytes specified, but no return values can be specified.

An error will occur if two or more arguments are specified, an argument of 5 bytes or longer is specified, or a return value is specified.

**[Effect]**

- The task for RTOS can be described in the C source level.
- The saving and postprocessing of the register frame pointer/register variable are not output, so the code efficiency is improved.

**[Usage]**

- Specifies the function name for the following #pragma directives.

```
#pragma rtos_task[task-function-name]
```

- The #pragma directives are described at the start of the C source.  
However, the followings can be described before the #pragma directive.
  - Comments
  - Preprocessing directives which do not generate definition/reference of variables and definition/ reference of functions
- Keywords following #pragma can be described either in uppercase or lowercase letters.

**[Restrictions]**

- The task for RTOS cannot specify the callt/ \_\_callt/ \_\_interrupt/ \_\_interrupt\_brk/ \_\_flash/ \_\_flashf. \_\_far can be specified only when the -zf option is specified.
- The task for RTOS cannot be called in the same manner as the ordinary functions.
- RTOS system call calling function name ext\_tsk cannot be used for function names.
- If #pragma rtos\_task is not written to the C source, ext\_tsk is not interpreted as a system call for RTOS. Consequently, the following error will not be output even if ext\_tsk is called from an RTOS interrupt handler.

E0778: Cannot call ext\_tsk in interrupt function

Workarounds:

- Clearly specify the use of the task, by specifying #pragma rtos\_task.
- Do not cvoid all ext\_tsk from RTOS interrupt handlers.

**[Example]**

<C source>

```
#pragma rtos_task      func
#pragma rtos_task      func2

void  func ( void ) {
    int  a[3] ;
    a[0] = 1 ;
    ext_tsk ( ) ;
}

void  func2 ( int x ) {
    int  a[3] ;
    a[0] = 1 ;
}

void  func3 ( void ) {
    int  a[3] ;
    a[0] = 1 ;
    ext_tsk ( ) ;
}

void  func4 ( void ) {
    int  a[3] ;
    a[0] = 1 ;
    if ( a[0] )
        ext_tsk ( ) ;
}
```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```
@@CODEL CSEG
_func :
    subw    sp, #06H        ; Frame pointers are saved
    movw   hl, sp
    onew   ax
    movw   [hl], ax        ; a
    br     !!_ext_tsk      ; Calling of ext_tsk by writing ext_tsk function
    br     !!_ext_tsk      ; Calling of ext_tsk always output by task
                                ; Epilogue is not output

_func2 :
    push   ax                ; Frame pointers are not saved
    subw   sp, #06H
    movw   hl, sp
    onew   ax
    movw   [hl], ax        ; a
    br     !!_ext_tsk      ; Calling of ext_tsk always output by task
                                ; Epilogue is not output

_func3 :
    push   hl                ; Frame pointers are saved
    subw   sp, #06H
    movw   hl, sp
    onew   ax
    movw   [hl], ax        ; a
    br     !!_ext_tsk      ; Epilogue is output if ext_tsk is called in the middle of
                                ; a function

_func4 :
    push   hl                ; Frame pointers are saved
    subw   sp, #06H
    movw   hl, sp
    onew   ax
    movw   [hl], ax        ; a
    clrw   bc
    cmpw   ax, bc
    skz
    br     !!_ext_tsk      ; Epilogue is output if ext_tsk is called
                                ; in the middle of a function
    addw   sp, #06H
    pop    hl
    ret
```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Modifications are not needed if the compiler does not support the task for RTOS.
- To change to the task for RTOS, use the USAGE above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- If #pragma rtos\_task specification is deleted, RTOS task is used as an ordinary function.
- To use as RTOS task, changes to the program source must conform to the specification of the C compiler.

**Flash area allocation method (-zf)**

Enables locating a program in the flash area compiling with specifying the -zf option. Enables using function linking with a boot area object created without specifying the -zf option.

**[Function]**

- Generates an object file located in the flash area.
- External variables in the flash area cannot be referred to from the boot area.
- External variables in the boot area can be referred to from the flash area.
- The same external variables and the same global functions cannot be defined in a boot area program and a flash area program.

**[Effect]**

- Enables locating a program in the flash area.
- Enables using function linking with a boot area object created without specifying the -zf option.

**[Usage]**

- Specify the -zf option during compiling.

**[Restrictions]**

- Use startup routines or library for the flash area.

### Flash area branch table and flash area allocation (-zt/-zz)

The -zt option specifies the starting address of the flash branch table. A startup routine and interrupt function can be located in the flash area and a function call can be performed from the boot area to the flash area.

#### [Function]

- The -zt options determine the first address of the branch table for the startup routine, the interrupt function, or the function call from the boot area to the flash area.
- 64 addresses from the first address of the branch table are dedicated for interrupt functions (including startup routine), and each of them occupies 4 bytes of area.
- The branch tables for ordinary functions are normally allocated after the "first address of the branch table + 4 \* 64". Each of the branch tables occupies 4 bytes of area. See "[Function of function call from boot area to flash area \(#pragma ext\\_func\)](#)" for more information about ext\_func ID values.
- The -zz options determine the starting address of the branch table.
- When only the -zt option is specified, the -zz option is regarded as having the same value.
- When only the -zz option is specified, the -zt option is regarded as having the same value.

#### [Effect]

- A startup routine and interrupt function can be located in the flash area.
- A function call can be performed from the boot area to the flash area.

#### [Usage]

- Use the -zt option as follows to specify the starting address of the flash branch table.

```
-ztxxxxxxH : xxxxxx = 0c0H to 0edfffHNote
```

- Use the -zz option as follows to specify the starting address of the flash branch table.

```
-zzxxxxxxH : xxxxxx = 0c0H to 0edfffHNote
```

**Note** The address varies on different devices.

#### [Restrictions]

- The range of addresses that may be specified as the starting address of the flash branch table is 0C0H to 0EDFFFH (However, the 0EDFFFH varies according to the target device).
- Either the -zf option must be specified when the source program contains a #pragma ext\_func, and when the -zf option is specified and the program contains a #pragma vect, #pragma interrupt or a #pragma rtos\_interrupt directive. An error occurs if the -zz or -zt option is not specified.
- 2000H is the default starting address of the interrupt service routine library vector table (\_@vect00 to \_@vect7e). The default of the start address of the branch table in the interrupt vector library is 2000H.
- The linker option -zb also specifies the starting address of the flash branch table. Always specify the same address for the linker option -zb and the starting address of the flash area. An error occurs if the addresses do not agree.
- An error occurs if the allocation address of the flash branch table is smaller than the starting address of the flash branch table.
- The -zt or -zz option must be used to specify the allocation address of the flash area and the flash branch table if you are creating a program to be located in the boot area or the flash area.

- An error occurs when modules compiled with different -zt or -zz address specifications are linked.
- Pointers to ROM data are forcibly handled as far pointers when the ROM data of the boot area or flash area cannot be located in a near area (See the [Cautions] below). Consequently, in the small and medium models, the suffix "\_f" must be added after the library function name when calling a standard library function that takes a (const \* ) argument (warning W0072 is always output).

The following standard library functions take (const \* ) arguments.

```
sprintf/sscanf/printf/scanf/vprintf/vsprintf/puts/atoi/atol/strtol/strtoul/atof/strtod/bsearch/qsort/memcpy/mem-
move/strcpy/strncpy/strcat/strncat/memcmp/strcmp/strncmp/memchr/strchr/strcspn/strpbrk/strchr/strspn/str-
str/strtok/strlen/strcoll/strxfrm
```

### [Example]

To generate a branch table after the address 2000H and place the interrupt function:

<C source>

```
#pragma interrupt      INTP0   intp

void   intp ( void ) {

}
```

#### (1) To place the interrupt function to the boot area (no -zf specified, -zt2000H specified)

<Output object of compiler>

```
                PUBLIC  _intp
                PUBLIC  @_vect06
@@BASE          CSEG    BASE
_intp :
                reti

@@VECT06        CSEG    AT      0006H
_@vect06 :
                DW      _intp
```

Sets the first address of the interrupt function in the interrupt vector table.

#### (2) To place the interrupt function in the flash area (-zf specified, -zt2000H specified)

<Output object of compiler>

```
                PUBLIC  _intp
@@EBCODE        CSEG    BASE
_intp :
                reti

@@EVECT06       CSEG    AT      0200CH
                br      !!_intp
```

Sets the first address of the interrupt function in the branch table.

The address value of the branch table is  $2000H + 4 * (0006H / 2)$  since the first address of the branch table is 200CH and the interrupt vector address (2 bytes) is 0006H.

The interrupt vector library performs the setting of the address 200CH in the interrupt vector table.

<Library for interrupt vector 06>

	PUBLIC	__vect06	
@@VECT06	CSEG	AT	0006H
__vect06 :			
	DW	200CH	

### [Compatibility]

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- To specify the first address of the flash area branch table, change the address in accordance with Usage above.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- To specify the first address of the flash area branch table, the following change is required.

### [Cautions]

- The starting address of the flash branch table and the starting address of the mirror area affect the handling of near/far specifications. If near/far area specifications are different from the actual memory layout, warnings W0070 and W0071 are issued once only, at the time of command line analysis.
- When the starting address of the flash branch table is within the mirror area, and within 64 KB: near/far area specifications are followed without change (See "Figure 3-3. Memory Map Example 1").
- When the starting address of the flash branch table is within the mirror area, and not within 64 KB: flash area functions are located in a far area (See "Figure 3-4. Memory Map Example 2").
- When the starting address of the flash branch table is above the end address of the mirror area, and within 64 KB: flash area ROM data is located in a far area (See "Figure 3-5. Memory Map Example 3").
- When the starting address of the flash branch table is above the end address of the mirror area, and not within 64 KB: flash area functions are located in a far area, and flash ROM data is located in a far area (See "Figure 3-6. Memory Map Example 4").
- When the starting address of the flash branch table is below the starting address of the mirror area, and within 64 KB: boot area ROM data is located in a far area (See "Figure 3-7. Memory Map Example 5").
- When the starting address of the flash branch table is below the starting address of the mirror area, and not within 64 KB: boot area ROM data is located in a far area, and flash area ROM data is located in a far area (See "Figure 3-8. Memory Map Example 6").
- When boot area or flash area ROM data cannot be placed in a near area: pointers to ROM data are always far. Consequently, small and medium model programs no longer conform to the ANSI standard. When the strict ANSI conformance option -za is specified, warning W0073 is issued.
- When boot area or flash area ROM data cannot be placed in a near area, or when flash area functions cannot be placed in a near area: the following restrictions apply.

Table 3-14. Handling of ROM Data When There Is No Mirror of Boot Area

Area	Definition	Extern Declaration	Object Pointed to by Pointer
Boot	Always far	Always far	Always far
Flash	near or far	Always far	Always far

Table 3-15. Handling of ROM Data When There Is No Mirror of Flash Area

Area	Definition	Extern Declaration	Object Pointed to by Pointer
Boot	near or far	near or far	Always far
Flash	Always far	Always far	Always far

Table 3-16. Handling of Functions When Start of Flash Area Is Not Within 64 KB

Area	Definition	Extern Declaration	Object Pointed to by Pointer
Boot	near or far	near or far <sup>Note</sup>	Always far
Flash	Always far	Always far	Always far

**Note** Functions specified by #pragma ext\_func reside in flash memory, so they are always far.

Figure 3-3. Memory Map Example 1

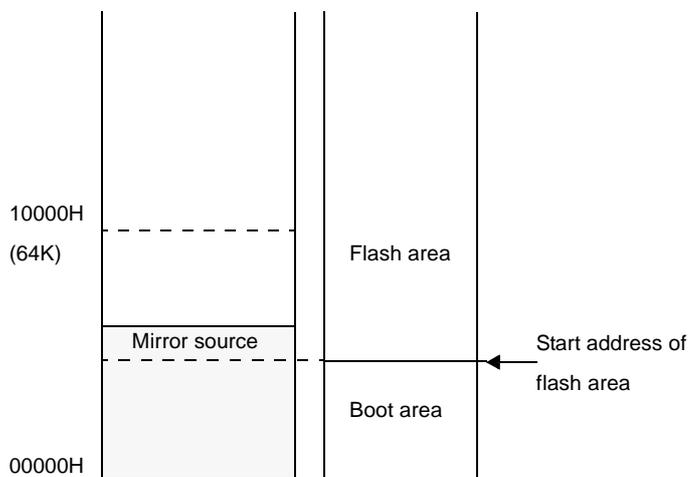


Figure 3-4. Memory Map Example 2

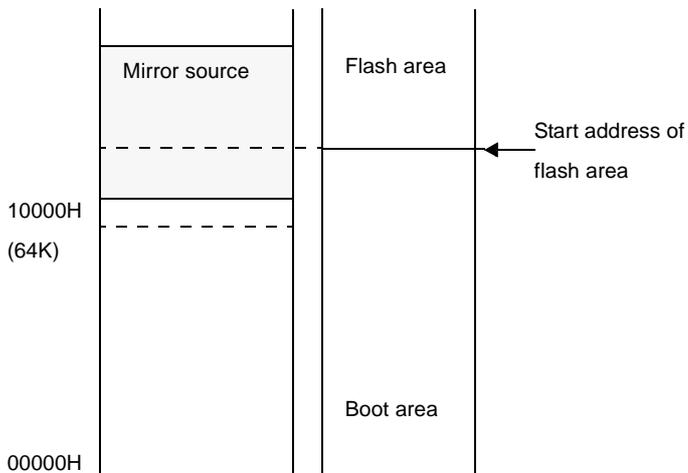


Figure 3-5. Memory Map Example 3

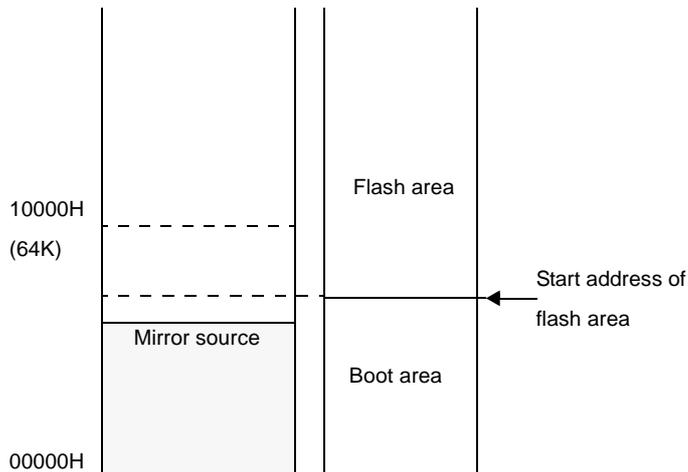


Figure 3-6. Memory Map Example 4

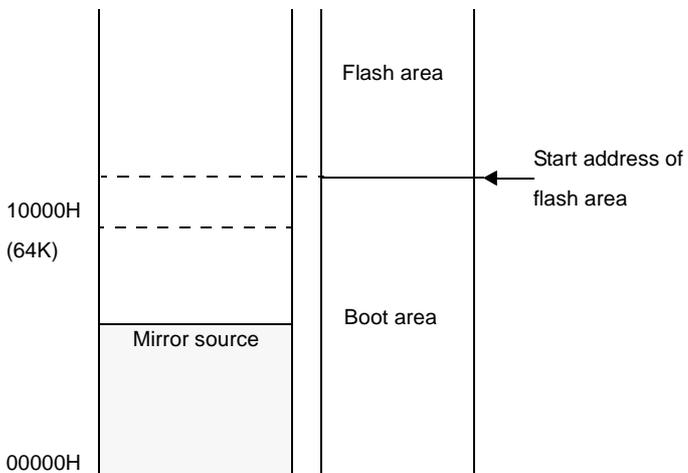


Figure 3-7. Memory Map Example 5

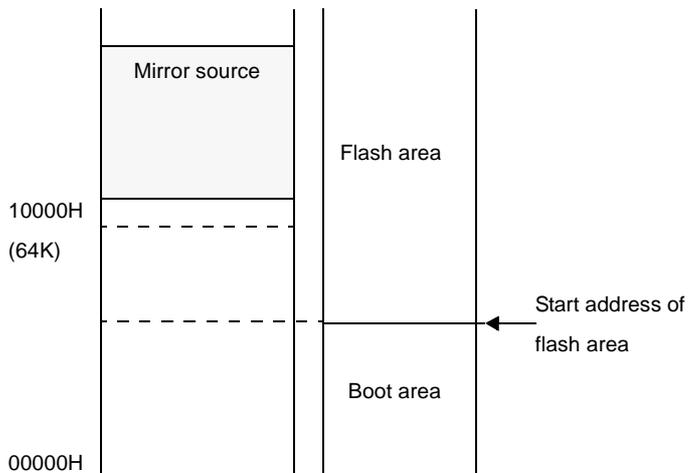
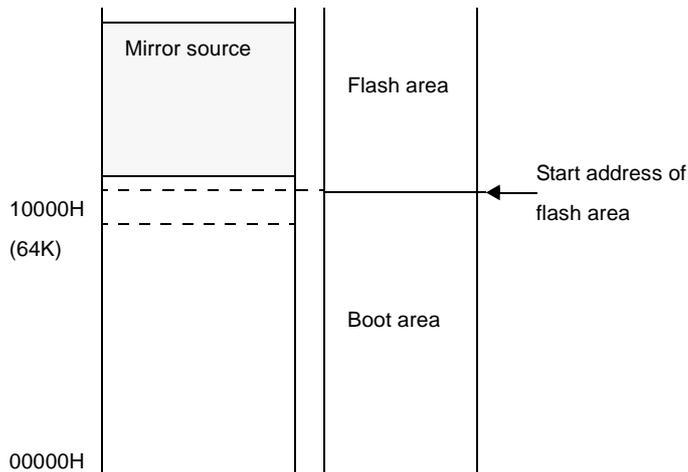


Figure 3-8. Memory Map Example 6



### Function of function call from boot area to flash area (#pragma ext\_func)

The #pragma instruction specifies the function name and ID value in the flash area called from the boot area. It becomes possible to call a function in the flash area from the boot area.

#### [Function]

- Function calls from the boot area to the flash area are executed via the flash area branch table.
- From the flash area, functions in the boot area can be called directly.

#### [Effect]

- It becomes possible to call a function in the flash area from the boot area.

#### [Usage]

- The following #pragma instruction specifies the function name and ID value in the flash area called from the boot area.

```
#pragma ext_func      function-name  ID-value
```

- This #pragma instruction is described at the beginning of the C source.
- The following items can be described before this #pragma instruction.
  - Comments
  - Instructions not to generate the definition/reference of variables or functions among the preprocess instructions.

#### [Restrictions]

- The ID value is set at 0 to 255 (0xff).
- An error occurs if a file containing a #pragma ext\_func is compiled without specifying the -zt option or the -zz option.
- For the same function with a different ID value and a different function with the same ID value, an error will occur. (1) and (2) below are errors.

(1) #pragma ext\_func f1 3  
#pragma ext\_func f1 4

(2) #pragma ext\_func f1 3  
#pragma ext\_func f2 3

- If a function is called from the boot area to the flash area and there is no corresponding function definition in the flash area, the linker cannot conduct a check. This is the user's responsibility.
- The callt functions can only be located in the boot area. If the callt functions are defined in the flash area (when the -zf option is specified), it results in an error.
- When the -rf option is specified for the small or medium model, and when the -rn option is specified for the large model, the suffix "\_f" must be added to the library function name when calling a standard library function that takes a (const \* ) argument (warning W0072 is always output).

The following standard library arguments take (const \* ) arguments.

```
printf/sscanf/printf/scanf/vprintf/vsprintf/puts/atoi/atol/strtol/strtoul/atof/strtod/bsearch/qsort/memcpy/mem-  
move/strcpy/strncpy/strcat/strncat/memcmp/stricmp/strncmp/memchr/strchr/strcspn/strpbrk/strchr/strspn/str-  
str/strtok/strlen/strcoll/strxfrm
```

**[Example]**

- In the case that the branch table is generated after address 2000H and functions f1 and f2 in the flash area are called from the boot area.

<C source>

- Boot area side

```
#pragma interrupt INTP0 intf0
#pragma ext_func f1 3
#pragma ext_func f2 4

void f1 ( ), f2 ( ) ;

void func ( ) {
    f1 ( ) ;
    f2 ( ) ;
}
```

- Flash area side

```
#pragma interrupt INTP1 intf1
#pragma ext_func f1 3
#pragma ext_func f2 4

void f1 ( ) {
}

void f2 ( ) {
}

void intf1 ( ) {
}
```

- Remarks 1.** #pragma ext\_func f1 3 means that the branch destination to function f1 is located in starting address of the branch table +  $4 * 64 + 4 * 3$ .
2. #pragma ext\_func f2 4 means that the branch destination to function f2 is located in starting address of the branch table +  $4 * 64 + 4 * 4$ .
  3.  $4 * 64$  bytes from the beginning of the branch table are dedicated to interrupt functions (including the startup routine).

<Output object of compiler>

**(1) When allocation address of flash area branch table is within 64 KB**

- Boot area side (no specified -zf and specified -zt2000H)

```

@@CODEL          CSEG
  _func :
      call    !0210CH
      call    !02110H
      ret
@@VECT08          CSEG    AT    0008H
  @_vect08 :
      DW      _intf0

```

- Flash area side (specified -zf)

```

@ECODEL          CSEG
  _f1 :
      ret
  _f2 :
      ret
  _intf1 :
      reti
@@EVECT0A          CSEG    AT    02014H
      br      !!_intf1
@@EXT03           CSEG    AT    0210CH
      br      !!_f1
      br      !!_f2

```

- Interrupt vector library for 0A

```

@@VECT0A          CSEG    AT    000AH
  @_vect0a :
      DW      2014H

```

- (2) When allocation address of flash area branch table is not within 64 KB  
When flash area branch table starting address is 13000H

- Boot area side (no specified -zf and specified -zt13000H)

```

@@CODEL          CSEG
__func :
    call    !!01310CH
    call    !!013110H
    ret

@@VECT08          CSEG    AT    0008H
__vect08 :
    DW     __intf0

```

- Flash area side (specified -zf and specified -zt13000H)

```

@ECODEL          CSEG
__f1 :
    ret

__f2 :
    ret

__intf1 :
    reti

@EVECT0A          CSEG    AT    013014H
    br     !!__intf1

@EXT03            CSEG    AT    01310CH
    br     !!__f1
    br     !!__f2

```

- Interrupt vector library for 0A

```

@@BASE           CSEG    BASE
?@vect0a :
    br     !!013014H

@@VECT0A          CSEG    AT    000AH
__vect0a :
    DW     ?@vect0a

```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- If the `#pragma ext_func` is not used, no corrections are necessary.
- To perform the function call from the boot area to the flash area, make the change in accordance with Usage above.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Delete the `#pragma ext_func` instruction or divide it by `#ifdef`.
- To perform the function call from the boot area to the flash area, the following change is required.

**[Cautions]**

- A program ceases to conform to the ANSI standard when the `-rf` option is specified in the small or medium model, and when the `-rn` option is specified for the large model. Warning W0073 is issued if the strict ANSI option `-za` is specified.

**Mirror source area specification (-mi0/-mi1)**

The -mi0/-mi1 options instruct the compiler to generate code for a specified mirror source area.

**[Function]**

- When the -mi0 option is specified, code for 0 in MAA is generated.
- When the -mi1 option is specified, code for 1 in MAA is generated.
- A link error occurs when modules have been compiled with different -mi0/-mi1 option specifications.
- When the -mi option is not specified, code for 0 in MAA is generated.
- By default the linker's -mi option is set to the value of the compiling -mi option.
- Unless specified, the -mi option is set to 0.
- A link error occurs if the value of the linker -mi option is different from the value of the compiler -mi option.
- See the user's manual of the target device for more information about the mirror area and the MAA bit.

**[Effect]**

- The compiler generates code for the specified mirror source area.

**[Usage]**

- At compiling, specify the -mi0 or -mi1 option.

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- The -mi option can be specified to select the mirror source area. No modifications to source files are required.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Source files can be compiled on other C compilers with no modifications required.

**Method of int expansion limitation of argument/return value (-zb)**

The -zb option is specified during compiling, the object code is reduced and the execution speed improved.

**[Function]**

- When the type definition of the function return value is char/unsigned char, the int expansion code of the return value is not generated.
- When the prototype of the function argument is defined and the argument definition of the prototype is char/unsigned char, the int expansion code of the argument is not generated.

**[Effect]**

- The object code is reduced and the execution speed improved since the int expansion codes are not generated.

**[Usage]**

- The -zb option is specified during compiling.

**[Restrictions]**

- If the files are different between the definition of the function body and the prototype declaration to this function, the program may operate incorrectly.

**[Example]**

<C source>

```
unsigned char  func1 ( unsigned char x, unsigned char y ) ;
unsigned char  c, d, e ;

void main ( void ) {
    c = func1 ( d, e ) ;
    c = func2 ( d, e ) ;
}

unsigned char  func1 ( unsigned char x, unsigned char y ) {
    return x + y ;
}
```

(1) When the **-zb** option is specified

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

```

_main :
; line 5 :          c = func1 ( d, e ) ;
    mov     x, !_e
    push   ax
    mov     x, !_d          ; Do not execute int expansion
    call   !_func1
    pop    ax
    mov    a, c
    mov    !_c, a
; line 6 :          c = func2 ( d, e ) ;
    mov     x, !_e
    clrb   a                ; Execute int expansion since there is no
                          ; prototype declaration

    push   ax
    mov     x, !_d
    mov     x, #00H
    xch    a, x            ; Execute int expansion since there is no
                          ; prototype declaration

    call   !_func2
    pop    ax
    mov    a, c
    mov    !_c, a
; line 7 :          }
    ret
; line 8 :
; line 9 :          unsigned char func1 ( unsigned char x, unsigned char y ) {
_func1 :
    push   hl
    push   ax
    movw   ax, sp
    movw   hl, ax
    mov    a, [hl]
    mov    x, a
    mov    a, [hl + 6]
    movw   hl, ax
; line 10 :         return x + y ;
    mov    a, l
    add    a, h
    mov    c, a            ; Do not execute int expansion
; line 11 :         }
    pop    ax
    pop    hl
    ret

```

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- If the prototype declarations for all definitions of function bodies are not correctly performed, perform correct prototype declaration. Alternatively, do not specify the -zb option.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- No modification is needed.

**Memory manipulation function (#pragma inline)**

An object file is generated by the output of the standard library functions memcpy and memset with direct inline expansion.

**[Function]**

- An object file is generated by the output of the standard library memory manipulation functions memcpy and memset with direct inline expansion instead of function call.
- When there is no #pragma directive, the code that calls the standard library functions is generated.

**[Effect]**

- Compared with when a standard library function is called, the execution speed is improved.
- Object code is reduced if a constant is specified for the specified character number.

**[Usage]**

- The function is described in the source in the same format as a function call.
- The following items can be described before #pragma inline.
  - Comments
  - Other #pragma directives
  - Preprocess directives that do not generate variable definitions/references or function definitions/references

**[Example]**

<C source>

```
#pragma inline

char   ary1[100], ary2[100] ;

void main ( void ) {
    memset ( ary1, 'A', 50 ) ;
    memcpy ( ary1, ary2, 50 ) ;
}
```

<Output object of compiler>

```
_main :
    push    hl
; line 5 :    memset ( ary1, 'A', 50 ) ;
    movw   de, #loww ( _ary1 )
    mov    a, #041H      ; 65
    mov    c, #032H      ; 50
L0003 :
    mov    [de], a
    incw   de
    dec    c
    bnz    $L0003
; line 6 :    memcpy ( ary1, ary2, 50 ) ;
    movw   de, #loww ( _ary1 )
    movw   hl, #loww ( _ary2 )
    mov    c, #032H      ; 50
L0005 :
    mov    a, [hl]
    mov    [de], a
    incw   de
    incw   hl
    dec    c
    bnz    $L0005
; line 7 : }
    pop    hl
    ret
```

### [Compatibility]

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- Modification is not needed if the memory manipulation function is not used.
- When changing the memory manipulation function, use the method above.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- The #pragma inline directive should be deleted or delimited using #ifdef.

**Absolute address allocation specification ( \_\_directmap)**

Declare \_\_directmap in the module in which the variable to be allocated in an absolute address is to be defined. Variables can be allocated to the arbitrary address.

**[Function]**

- The initial value of an external variable declared by \_\_directmap and a static variable in a function is regarded as the allocation address specification, and variables are allocated to the specified addresses. Specify the allocation address using integers.
- The \_\_directmap variable in the C source is treated as a static variable.
- Because the initial value is regarded as the allocation address specification, the initial value cannot be defined and remains an undefined value.
- The specifiable address specification range, secured area range linked by the module for securing the area for the specified addresses, and variable duplication check range are shown in the table below.

Item	Range	
	When Small Model or Medium Model Is Specified	When Large Model Is Specified
Address Specification Range	0xf0000 - 0xffff	0x00000 - 0xffff
Secured Area Range	0xffd00 - 0xffeff	0xffd00 - 0xffeff
Duplication Check Range	Start address - end address of device internal RAM	Start address - end address of device internal RAM

- If the address specification is outside the address specification range, an error is output.
- A variable that is declared with \_\_directmap cannot be allocated to an area that extends over a boundary of the following areas. If allocated, an error will be output.
  - saddr area (0xffe20 to 0xffeff)
  - sfr area or an area with which saddr area overlaps (0xfff00 to 0xfff1f)
  - sfr area (0xfff20 to 0xffff)
  - 2nd sfr area (Varies depending on the device used.)
- If the allocation address of a variable declared by \_\_directmap is duplicated and is within the duplication check range, a warning message (W0762) is output and the name of the duplicated variable is displayed.
- If the address specification range is inside the saddr area, the \_\_sreg declaration is made automatically and the saddr instruction is generated.
- If char/unsigned char/short/unsigned short/int/unsigned int/long/unsigned long type variables declared by \_\_directmap are bit referenced, sreg/\_\_sreg must be specified along with \_\_directmap. If they are not, an error will occur.
- If the specified address range is in the near area, the variable is regarded to be in the near area for accessing.
- If the specified address range is in neither the saddr area nor near area, the variable is regarded to be in the far area for accessing.
- If neither the \_\_near nor \_\_far type qualifier is specified, the variable is accessed in accordance with the memory model specifications.

- If a type qualifier is specified, the variable is accessed in accordance with the specification. If the specified address range and the type qualifier contradict, an error will be output.

The table below lists the relationship between the address specification ranges, memory models, and type qualifiers.

Address Specification Range		Type Qualifier					
		<code>__near</code> <code>__sreg</code>	<code>__far</code> <code>__sreg</code>	<code>__sreg</code>	<code>__near</code>	<code>__far</code>	No Specification
In saddr area	Accessing method	sreg	sreg	sreg	sreg	sreg	sreg
	Pointer length	2 bytes	4 bytes	Small : 2 bytes Medium : 2 bytes Large : 4 bytes	2 bytes	4 bytes	Small : 2 bytes Medium : 2 bytes Large : 4 bytes
In near area	Accessing method	Error	Error	Error	near	far	Small : near Medium : near Large : far
	Pointer length				2 bytes	4 bytes	Small : 2 bytes Medium : 2 bytes Large : 4 bytes
In far area	Accessing method	Error	Error	Error	Error	far	Small : Error Medium : Error Large : far
	Pointer length					4 bytes	Small : Error Medium : Error Large : 4 bytes

**[Effect]**

- One or more variables can be allocated to the same arbitrary address.

**[Usage]**

- Declare `__directmap` in the module in which the variable to be allocated in an absolute address is to be defined.

```

__directmap          type-name  variable-name = allocation-address-specification ;
__directmap static   type-name  variable-name = allocation-address-specification ;
__directmap __sreg   type-name  variable-name = allocation-address-specification ;
__directmap __sreg static type-name variable-name = allocation-address-specification ;
    
```

- If `__directmap` is declared for a structure/union/array, specify the address in braces {}.

```

extern          Type-name  Variable-name ;
extern __sreg  Type-name  Variable-name ;
    
```

**[Restrictions]**

- `__directmap` cannot be specified for function arguments, return values, or automatic variables. If it is specified in these cases, an error will occur.
- If an address outside the secured area range is specified, the variable area will not be secured, making it necessary to either describe a directive file or create a separate module for securing the area.
- The `__directmap` variable cannot be declared with `extern` because it is handled in the same way as the static variables.

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```
__directmap char      c = 0xffe00 ;
__directmap __sreg char d = 0xffe20 ;
__directmap __sreg char e = 0xffe21 ;
__directmap struct x {
    char    a ;
    char    b ;
} xx = { 0xffe30 } ;

void main ( void ) {
    c = 1 ;
    d = 0x12 ;
    e.5 = 1 ;
    xx.a = 5 ;
    xx.b = 10 ;
}
```

<Output object of compiler>

```

PUBLIC  _main
_c     EQU    0FFE00H           ; Addresses for variables declared by __directmap
_d     EQU    0FFE20H           ; are defined by EQU
_e     EQU    0FFE21H           ;
_xx    EQU    0FFE30H           ;
      EXTRN  __mmfe00          ; For linking secured area modules
      EXTRN  __mmfe20          ; EXTRN output
      EXTRN  __mmfe21          ;
      EXTRN  __mmfe30          ;
      EXTRN  __mmfe31          ;
@@CODEL CSEG
_main :
; line 10 :
      oneb   !loww ( _c )
; line 11 :
      mov    _d, #012H         ; saddr instruction output because address
; line 12 :                          ; specified in saddr area
      set1   _e.5              ; Bit manipulation possible because __sreg also used
; line 13 :
      mov    _xx, #05H         ; saddr instruction output because address
; line 14 :                          ; specified in saddr area
      mov    _xx + 1, #0AH     ; saddr instruction output because address
; line 15 :                          ; specified in saddr area
      ret
      END

```

### [Compatibility]

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- No modification is necessary if the reserved word `__directmap` is not used.
- To change to the `__directmap` variable, modify according to the description method above.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- Compatibility can be attained using `#define` (see "3.2.5 C source modifications" for details).
- When the `__directmap` is being used as the absolute address allocation specification, modify according to the specifications of each compiler.

**near/far area specification ( \_\_near/ \_\_far)**

An allocating place of the function and a variable can be designated specifically by adding the \_\_near or \_\_far type qualifier when a function or variable declared.

**[Function]**

- The location of a function or variable is specified explicitly by specifying a \_\_near or \_\_far type qualifier.

Qualifier	Location
__near type qualifier	near area (data:0F0000H to 0FFFFFFH, code:000000H to 00FFFFFFH)
__far type qualifier	far area (000000H to 0FFFFFFH)

- The pointer to the near area should be 2 bytes long, and that to the far area should be 4 bytes long.
- An error will occur if \_\_near and \_\_far type qualifiers are used together in declaration of the same variable or function.
- The \_\_near and \_\_far type qualifiers are handled as type qualifiers, grammatically.
- If specified together with \_\_callt, \_\_interrupt, \_\_rtos\_interrupt, \_\_interrupt\_brk, \_\_sreg, or \_\_boolean, the \_\_near or \_\_far type qualifier is ignored.
- An error will occur if \_\_near and \_\_far type qualifiers are specified together.
- If specified for an automatic variable, argument or register variable, the \_\_near or \_\_far type qualifier is ignored.
- Variables in the near area are accessed without using the ES register.  
The pointer length should be 2 bytes long.
- Variables in the far area are accessed by setting the ES register.  
The pointer length should be 4 bytes long.
- Functions in the near area are called with !addr16, and functions in the far area are called with !!addr20.
- Since there are no instructions that can call function pointers without referencing the CS register, be sure to set the CS register to call function pointers.
- Function pointers for functions in the near area output the code to set the CS register to 0.
- The highest byte of a far pointer is always undefined.
- Conversion from the near pointer or int to the far pointer, and from the near pointer to long results in the following operations.
  - "0xf" is added to the higher bytes of the variable pointer (0 is exceptional and zero-extended).
  - The function pointer is zero-extended.
- Addition and subtraction with the far pointer uses the lower 2 bytes, and the higher bytes do not change.
- ptrdiff\_t is always int type.
- An equality operation with the far pointer uses the lower 3 bytes.
- A relational operation with the far pointer uses the lower 2 bytes. To compare pointers that do not point to the same object, the pointer must be converted to unsigned long. If the -za option is specified, the lower 3 bytes are used for comparison.
- The character string constants are allocated to the far area or near area, according to the memory model specified.

Memory Model	Location
Small model	near area
Medium model	near area
Large model	far area

- When the large model is used, pointers to automatic variables, arguments, and sreg variables are 4 bytes long.
- The following error checking is performed to detect cases in which the same variable or function is declared `__near` in the defining module and `__far` in another module, or the reverse (See "[Coding examples 2](#)" below).
  - A link error occurs when a variable or function is referenced if 1) it has been declared `__near` in the defining module, and 2) it is declared `__far` in the module where it is referenced.
  - Error checks are performed for up to 8 of any combination of pointer, array, or function declarator.
  - Error checks are performed only when the `-g` option is specified.

**[Effect]**

- Specification of the `__far` type qualifier enables functions and variables to be allocated to the far area and to be referenced.
- Specification of the `__near` type qualifier enables functions and variables to be allocated to the near area and to be referenced.

The functions and variables allocated to the near area can be called or referenced with a short instruction.

**[Usage]**

- The `__near` or `__far` type qualifier is added to a function or variable declared.

**[Example]****(1) Coding examples 1**

```

__near int i1 ;
__far  int i2 ;
__far  int *__near p1 ;
__far  int *__near *__far p2 ;
__far  int func1 ( ) ;
__far  int *__near func2 ( ) ;
__near int ( *__far fp1 ) ( ) ;
__far  int *__near ( *__near fp2 ) ( ) ;
__near int *__far ( *__near fp3 ) ( ) ;
__near int *__near ( *__far fp4 ) ( ) ;

```

- `i1` is int type and allocated to the near area.
- `i2` is int type and allocated to the far area.
- `p1` is a 4-byte type variable that points to "an int type in the far area". The variable itself is allocated to the near area.
- `p2` is a 2-byte variable that points to a 4-byte type in the near area, which points to "an int type in the far area". The variable itself is allocated to the far area.
- `func1` is a function that returns "an int type". The function itself is allocated to the far area.
- `func2` is a function that returns a 4-byte type that points to "an int type in the far area". The function itself is allocated to the near area.
- `fp1` is a 2-byte type variable that points to "a function in the near area, which returns an int type". The variable itself is allocated to the far area.
- `fp2` is a 2-byte type variable that points to a function in the near area, which returns a 4-byte type that points to "an int type in the far area". The variable itself is allocated to the near area.

- fp3 is a 4-byte type variable that points to a function in the far area, which returns a 2-byte type that points to "an int type in the near area". The variable itself is allocated to the near area.
- fp4 is a 2-byte type variable that points to a function in the near area, which returns a 2-byte type that points to "an int type in the near area". The variable itself is allocated to the far area.

**(2) Coding examples 2**

- The following examples explain the error checking that is performed to detect cases in which the same variable or function is declared near in the defining module and far in another module, or the reverse.

- a.c

```

/* Definitions */
int    __near i1 ;
int    __far  i2 ;
int    __near *__near nnp1 ;
int    __near *__near nnp2 ;
int    __near *__far  fnp1 ;
int    __near *__near nnp3 ;
int    __far  *__near nfp1 ;

int    __far  *__near nffunc1 ( ) { }
int    __far  *__near nffunc2 ( ) { }
int    __far  *__far  fffunc1 ( ) { }
int    __near *__far  fnfunc1 ( ) { }
int    __far  *__far  fffunc2 ( ) { }

```

- b.c

```

/* extern declarations */
extern int    __far  i1 ;
extern int    __near i2 ;
extern int    __near *__near nnp1 ;
extern int    __near *__far  nnp2 ;
extern int    __near *__near fnp1 ;
extern int    __far  *__near nnp3 ;
extern int    __near *__near nfp1 ;
extern int    __far  *__near nffunc1 ( ) ;
extern int    __far  *__far  nffunc2 ( ) ;
extern int    __far  *__near fffunc1 ( ) ;
extern int    __far  *__far  fnfunc1 ( ) ;
extern int    __near *__far  fffunc2 ( ) ;

void main ( void ) {
    i1 = 1 ;           /* OK */
    i2 = 1 ;           /* Error */
    *nnp1 = 1 ;        /* OK */
    *nnp2 = 1 ;        /* OK */
    *fnp1 = 1 ;        /* Error */
}

```

```

*ntp3 = 1 ;      /* Error */
*nfp1 = 1 ;      /* Error */
nfunc1 ( ) ;    /* OK */
nfunc2 ( ) ;    /* OK */
ffunc1 ( ) ;    /* Error */
ffunc1 ( ) ;    /* Error */
ffunc2 ( ) ;    /* Error */
}

```

**[Restrictions]**

- Even if the `__far` type qualifier is specified, data cannot be allocated to an area extending over a 64 KB boundary. Functions can be allocated to an area extending over a 64 KB boundary.

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- It is not necessary to modify the code if reserved word `__near` or `__far` is not used.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- It is not necessary to modify the code if the `__near` or `__far` type qualifier is not used.
- If the `__near` or `__far` type qualifier is used, `#define` can be used for near/far area specification.

**[Cautions]**

- If the lower 2 bytes are used for a relational operation, data cannot be allocated to the last byte of a 64 KB boundary area. If allocated, an error will be output by the linker or compiler. This is because, ANSI-compliant operation<sup>Note</sup> is performed for the relational operation that uses the pointer that points to the range outside an array.

**Note** Constraints on relational operators prescribed by ANSI

If expression P points to an element of an array object and expression Q points to the last element of that array object, pointer expression Q+1 is larger than expression P.

- The size of the pointer for the far area is 4 bytes but the calculation object is the lower 3 bytes, so the highest byte is always undefined.

<Example>

```

union  tag {
    __far unsigned short  *ptr ;
    unsigned long        ldata ;
} un ;

```

A value is written to `un.ptr` and then `un.ldata` is referenced; the highest byte then becomes undefined. To guarantee that the highest byte of `un.ldata` is 0, union `un` must first be initialized with 0.

- The linker checks the data location of sections with the following combination of segment type and relocation attribute.
  - DSEG UNIT64KP
  - DSEG PAGE64KP
  - CSEG PAGE64KP
- If one of the above relocation attributes is changed using the #pragma section or link directive file, the linker does not check it.
- ROM data cannot be allocated to the near area on devices without a mirror area. For this reason, pointers to ROM data are forcibly changed to far pointers (warning W0071 is always output). Additionally, when using small and medium models, standard library functions with "const \*" arguments must be called with "\_f" appended to the function name (warning W0072 is always output). Small and medium models are no longer ANSI compliant. If the ANSI compliance option -za is specified, warning W0073 will be output.

**Memory model specification (-ms/-mm/-ml)**

An allocating place of the function and a variable can be specifying by a memory model by specifying the -ms, -mm, or -ml option when compiling.

**[Function]**

- The location of a function or variable is specified.

Memory Model	Data	Function
Small model	near area	near area
Medium model	near area	far area
Large model	far area	far area

- If the \_\_near or \_\_far type qualifier is specified, the specified \_\_near or \_\_far type qualifier takes precedence.
- Small model  
 Consists of a data portion of 64 KB and a code portion of 64 KB; 128 KB in total.  
 The data ROM is allocated at 0000H to 0FFFFH or 10000H to 1FFFFH, and mirrored in FxxxH.  
 Codes are allocated at 00000H to 0FFFFH.  
 Since the CS register value may be changed by specifying the \_\_far type qualifier, be sure to set the CS register when calling a function pointer.
- Medium model  
 Variables are allocated to the near area, and functions are allocated to the far area. Consists of a data portion of 64 KB and a code portion of 1 MB.  
 The data ROM is allocated at 000000H to 00FFFFH or 010000H to 01FFFFH, and mirrored in FxxxH. There are no limitations on locating codes.
- Large model  
 Variables and functions are allocated to the far area. Consists of a data portion of 1 MB and a code portion of 1 MB. There are no limitations on locating data and codes.

**[Usage]**

- Specify the -ms, -mm, or -ml option during compilation.

Option	Explanation
-ms	Small model
-mm	Medium model
-ml	Large model

**[Example]**

&lt;C source&gt;

```

int    i ;
int    *p ;
void   func( void ) { }
void   ( *fp )( void ) ;

void main( void ) {
    int    r ;

    r = i ;          /* Data access */
    func ( ) ;      /* Function call */
    r = *p ;        /* Data pointer */
    fp ( ) ;        /* Function pointer */
}

```

&lt;Output object of compiler&gt;

**(1) When small model is used**

```

movw   hl, !_i
call   !_func
movw   de, !_p
movw   ax, [de]
movw   hl, ax
movw   ax, !_fp
mov    CS, #00H      ; 0
call   ax

```

**(2) When medium model is used**

```

movw   hl, !_i
call   !!_func
movw   de, !_p
movw   ax, [de]
movw   hl, ax
mov    a, !_fp + 2
mov    CS, a
movw   ax, !_fp
call   ax

```

**(3) When large model is used>**

```

mov     ES, #highw ( _i )
movw   hl, ES: !_i
call   !!_func
mov     ES, #highw ( _p )
mov     a, ES: !_p + 2
movw   de, ES: !_p
mov     ES, a
movw   ax, ES: [de]
movw   hl, ax
mov     ES, #highw ( _fp )
mov     a, ES: !_fp + 2
mov     CS, a
movw   ax, ES: !_fp
call   ax

```

**[Restrictions]**

- Even if the large model is specified, data cannot be allocated to an area that extends over 64 KB boundaries.
- Modules for which a different memory model is specified cannot be linked.
- The size of variables with/without initial values allocated to the far area are (64K - 1) bytes each, per load module file (Note: 64KB if the -za option is specified).  
This size can be increased by changing the section name that includes variables with/without initial values in a certain file to another output section name, using the function of "[Changing compiler output section name \(#pragma section\)](#)".  
In this case, the startup routine and termination routine must be modified (see to [Examples of Changing startup Routine in Connection with Changing Section Name Related to ROMization] in "[Changing compiler output section name \(#pragma section\)](#)").
- The maximum size per output section name does not change.
- If the -za option is not specified, data cannot be allocated to the last byte of a 64 KB boundary area (see to CAUTIONS in "[near/far area specification \(\\_\\_near/\\_\\_far\)](#)").

**[Cautions]**

- ROM data cannot be allocated to the near area on devices without a mirror area. For this reason, ROM data are allocated to the far area (warning W0071 is always output). Additionally, when using small and medium models, standard library functions with "const \*" arguments must be called with "\_f" appended to the function name (warning W0072 is always output). Small and medium models are no longer ANSI compliant. If the ANSI compliance option -za is specified, warning W0073 will be output.

**Allocating ROM data specification (-rf/-rn)**

An allocating place of the ROM data can be designated specifically near or far area.

**[Function]**

- The -rf option places ROM data in a far area.
- The -rn option places ROM data in a near area.
- When neither the -rf nor the -rn option is specified, the placement of ROM data depends on the memory model.
- The placement of ROM data is determined by the following specifications, listed in order of priority from highest priority to lowest.

(1) **near or far specification by specification of the start address of the flash area and the address of the mirror source area (see "[Flash area branch table and flash area allocation \(-zt/-zz\)](#)").**

(2) **\_\_near or \_\_far keyword**

(3) **-rn or -rf option specification**

(4) **Memory model**

- ROM data refers to the following types of data.
  - Variables declared as const
  - String literals
  - Initial values of auto aggregate type variables (arrays and structures)
  - Switch statement branch tables

**[Effect]**

- It's possible to allocate ROM data in any area far or near area.

**[Usage]**

- Specify the -rf or -rn option at compiling.

**[Restrictions]**

- When the same const variable is referenced by different modules, it is placed according to the ROM data specification priorities listed above, and an error check is performed. See "[near/far area specification \(\\_\\_near/\\_\\_far\)](#)" about the error check.

**[Compatibility]**

(1) **From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Specify the placement of ROM data by recompiling with the -rf or -rn option specified. There is no need to modify the source program.

(2) **From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Compile the source program on other C compilers with no modifications.

**[Cautions]**

- ROM data cannot be allocated to the near area on devices without a mirror area. For this reason, the -rn option is ignored, and ROM data is allocated to the far area (warning W0071 is always output).

**Specifying RAM allocation destinations with self-programming (-zx)**

An allocating place of the code and ROM data can be designated RAM area.

**[Function]**

- Supports RL78 family self-programming.
- The -zx option places code and ROM data in a RAM area.
- When -zx is specified, the far attribute is added to the code, regardless of the memory model.
- When -zx1 is specified, it calls a runtime library for ROM allocation.
- When -zx2 is specified, it calls a runtime library for RAM allocation.
- ROM data refers to the following types of data.
  - Variables declared as const
  - String literals
  - Initial values of auto aggregate type variables (arrays and structures)
  - Switch statement branch tables

**[Effect]**

- It's possible to allocate code and ROM data in a RAM area.

**[Usage]**

- Specify the -zx option at compiling.

**[Restrictions]**

- If this option is specified for a device that does not support RL78 family self-programming, and the option -zf for specifying flash area allocation is not specified, then defining an interrupt function or RTOS interrupt handler will cause an error.
- If the -ql optimization option is specified when -zx2 is specified, then the -ql level is automatically set to 1.
- A callt function cannot be defined when -zx is specified. Coding a callt function will cause an error.
- The interrupt specification is different in self-programming mode. For this reason, coding a "#pragma interrupt" or "#pragma rtos\_interrupt" directive when -zx is specified will cause an error. Use the \_\_interrupt/\_\_interrupt\_brk/\_\_rtos\_interrupt modifiers to define an interrupt handler or RTOS interrupt handler when -zx is specified.
- When -zx is specified, there will be a warning because the function is allocated to the RAM area. All functions will be far functions.
- Due to issues with RAM capacity, the standard libraries are allocated to ROM even when -zx is specified. Consequently, you should not call standard libraries in self-programming mode, when it is possible that ROM will become invisible. The user is responsible for calls to the standard libraries from functions allocated to RAM. Behavior is not guaranteed when standard libraries are called while in self-programming mode.
- Due to issues of RAM capacity, libraries used by multiplication, division, sum-of-products, and BCD functions using #pragma directives are allocated to ROM, even when -zx is specified. Consequently, you should not call these functions in self-programming mode, when it is possible that ROM will become invisible. The user is responsible for calls to multiplication, division, sum-of-products, and BCD functions using #pragma directives from functions allocated to RAM. Behavior is not guaranteed when these functions are called while in self-programming mode.

**[Compatibility]****(1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler**

- Recompiling with the -zx option specified. There is no need to modify the source program.

**(2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler**

- Compile the source program on other C compilers with no modifications.

### 3.2.5 C source modifications

The compiler generates efficient object code when using the extended functions. But these functions are designed for use on RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers. If programs make use of the extended functions, they must be modified when porting them for use on other devices.

This section explains techniques that can use to port programs from other C compilers to RL78,78K0R C compiler, and from RL78,78K0R C compiler to other C compilers.

#### (1) From another C compiler to the RL78,78K0R C compiler

- #pragma<sup>Note</sup>

If the other C compiler supports the #pragma directive, the C source must be modified. The method and extent of modifications to the C source depend on the specifications of the other C compiler.

- Extended specifications

If the other C compiler has extended specifications such as addition of reserved words, the C source must be modified. The method and extent of modifications to the C source depend on the specifications of the other C compiler.

**Note** #pragma is one of the preprocessing directives supported by ANSI. The character string following the #pragma is identified as a directive to the compiler. If the compiler does not support this directive, the #pragma directive is ignored and the compile will be continued until it properly ends.

#### (2) From the RL78,78K0R C compiler to another C compiler

- Because the RL78,78K0R C compiler has added reserved words as the extended functions, the C source must be made portable to the other C compiler by deleting such reserved words or invalidating them with #ifdef.

Following are some examples.

##### (a) To invalidate a reserved word (Same applies to callf, sreg, and norec, etc.)

```
#ifndef __K0R__
#define callt          /* Makes callt as ordinary function */
#endif
```

##### (b) To change from one type to another

```
#ifndef __K0R__
#define bit          char /* Changes bit type to char type variable*/
#endif
```

### 3.3 Function Call Interface

This section explains the following features of the function call interface.

- [Return values](#) (common to all functions)
- [Ordinary function call interface](#)

#### 3.3.1 Return values

- The return value of a function is stored in registers or carry flags.
- The locations at which a return value is stored are listed below.

**Table 3-17. Storage Locations of Return Values**

Type	Storage Location
1 bit	CY
1-byte or 2-byte integer	BC
near pointer	BC
4-byte integer	BC (lower), DE (upper)
far pointer	BC (lower), DE (upper)
Floating-point number	BC (lower), DE (upper)
Structure	The structure to be returned is copied into private storage for the function, and the address of the copy is stored in BC and DE.

#### 3.3.2 Ordinary function call interface

##### (1) Passing arguments

- The second and following arguments are passed to functions on the stack.
  - The first argument is passed to the function definition side via a register or stack.
- The location where the first argument is passed is shown in the table below.

**Table 3-18. Location Where First Argument Is Passed (Function Calling Side)**

Type	Storage Location
1-byte data <sup>Note</sup> 2-byte data <sup>Note</sup>	AX
Pointer to near data	AX
3-byte data <sup>Note</sup> 4-byte data <sup>Note</sup>	AX, BC
Pointer to function, Pointer to far data	AX, BC
Floating-point number	AX, BC
Other	On the stack

**Note** 1-byte to 4-byte data includes structures, unions, and pointers.

**(2) Storage locations of arguments and auto variables**

- An argument or automatic variable is assigned to a register at the top of the function, by declaring the argument or automatic variable with register or specifying the -qv option. Other arguments and automatic variables are stored in a stack.
- If an argument, which is passed from the function call side via a stack, is not assigned to registers, the location for passing is the location to be assigned.
- Arguments and automatic variables are assigned to register HL, unless otherwise there are no stack frames. Arguments and automatic variables can also be assigned to @\_KREGxx if the -qr option is specified. See to "3.4 List of saddr Area Labels" for @\_KREGxx.
- Arguments and automatic variables are assigned to registers in the order of reference frequency. Arguments and automatic variables that are rarely referenced may not be assigned to registers, even if the argument or automatic variable is declared with register or the -qv option is specified.
- The registers to which arguments or automatic variables are assigned are saved and restored by the function definition side.

**(3) Examples****(a) Examples 1**

&lt;C source&gt;

```

void    func0 ( register int, int ) ;

void main ( void ) {
        func0 ( 0x1234, 0x5678 ) ;
}

void    func0 ( register int p1, int p2 ) {
        register int    r ;
        int             a ;
        r = p2 ;
        a = p1 ;
}

```

**<1> -When -qr option is specified**

&lt;Assembly source code generated by compiler&gt;

```

_main :
; line 4 :      func0 ( 0x1234, 0x5678 ) ;
        movw    ax, #05678H      ; 22136
        push   ax                ; 2nd and following arguments passed on
                                   ; stack
        movw    ax, #01234H      ; 4660 ; 1st argument passed in register
        call   !!_func0         ; Function call
        pop    ax                ; Release stack used for function call
; line 5 : }
        ret
; line 6 :

```

```

; line 7 : void   func0 ( register int p1, int p2 ) {
_func0 :
    push    hl
    movw   de, @_KREG14
    push   de                ; Save saddr area for register variable
    movw   de, @_KREG12
    push   de                ; Save saddr area for register variable
    movw   @_KREG14, ax      ; Assign 1st argument p1 to saddr
    push   ax                ; Reserve storage for auto variable a
    movw   hl, sp
; line 8 :   register int   r ;
; line 9 :   int           a ;
; line 10 :  r = p2 ;
    movw   ax, [hl+12]      ; p2   ; Argument p2
    movw   @_KREG12, ax    ; r    ; Auto variable r
; line 11 :  a = p1 ;
    movw   ax, @_KREG14    ; p1   ; Argument p1
    movw   [hl], ax       ; a    ; Auto variable a
; line 12 : }
    pop    ax                ; Release storage for auto variable a
    pop    ax
    movw   @_KREG12, ax    ; Restores saddr area for register
                                ; argument
    pop    ax
    movw   @_KREG14, ax    ; Restores saddr area for register
                                ; argument

    pop    hl
    ret

```

**(b) Example 2**

&lt;C source&gt;

```

void   func1 ( int, register int ) ;

void main ( void ) {
    func1 ( 0x1234, 0x5678 ) ;
}

void   func1 ( int p1, register int p2 ) {
    register int   r ;
    int           a ;
    r = p2 ;
    a = p1 ;
}

```

## &lt;1&gt; When -qr option is specified

&lt;Assembly source code generated by compiler&gt;

```

_main :
; line 4 :      func1 ( 0x1234, 0x5678 ) ;
      movw     ax, #05678H      ; 22136
      push    ax                ; 2nd and following arguments passed on
                                ; stack
      movw     ax, #01234H      ; 4660 ; 1st argument passed in register
      call    !!_func1         ; Function call
      pop     ax                ; Release stack used for function call
; line 5 : }
      ret
; line 6 :
; line 7 : void   func1 ( int p1, register int p2 ) {

_func0 :
      push    hl
      push    ax                ; Place 1st argument p1 on stack
      movw    de, @_KREG14
      push    de                ; Save saddr area for register variable
      movw    de, @_KREG12
      push    de                ; Save saddr area for register variable
      movw    ax, [sp+12]
      movw    @_KREG12, ax      ; Assign argument p2 to saddr
      push    ax                ; Reserve storage for auto variable a
      movw    hl, sp
; line 8 :      register int   r ;
; line 9 :      int           a ;
; line 10 :     r = p2 ;
      movw    ax, @_KREG12      ; p2 ; Argument p2
      movw    @_KREG14, ax     ; r ; Auto variable r
; line 11 :     a = p1 ;
      movw    ax, [hl+6]       ; p1 ; Argument p1
      movw    [hl], ax         ; a ; Auto variable a
; line 12 : }
      pop     ax                ; Release storage for auto variable a
      pop     ax
      movw    @_KREG12, ax     ; Restores saddr area for register
                                ; variable
      pop     ax
      movw    @_KREG14, ax     ; Restores saddr area for register
                                ; variable
      pop     ax                ; Release storage for 1st argument p1
      pop     hl
      ret

```

### 3.4 List of saddr Area Labels

RL78,78K0R C compiler uses the following labels to reference addresses in the saddr area. Therefore, the names in the following tables cannot be used in C and assembler source programs.

Since these labels are defined in libraries, link the libraries if the compiler is to use them.

#### (1) Register variables

Label Name	Address
_ <b>@KREG00</b>	0FFEB4H
_ <b>@KREG01</b>	0FFEB5H
_ <b>@KREG02</b>	0FFEB6H
_ <b>@KREG03</b>	0FFEB7H
_ <b>@KREG04</b>	0FFEB8H
_ <b>@KREG05</b>	0FFEB9H
_ <b>@KREG06</b>	0FFEBAH
_ <b>@KREG07</b>	0FFEBBH
_ <b>@KREG08</b>	0FFEBCH
_ <b>@KREG09</b>	0FFEBDH
_ <b>@KREG10</b>	0FFEBEH
_ <b>@KREG11</b>	0FFEBFH
_ <b>@KREG12</b>	0FFEC0H <sup>Note</sup>
_ <b>@KREG13</b>	0FFEC1H <sup>Note</sup>
_ <b>@KREG14</b>	0FFEC2H <sup>Note</sup>
_ <b>@KREG15</b>	0FFEC3H <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** When the arguments of the function are declared by register or the -qv option is specified and the -qr option is specified, arguments are allocated to the saddr area.

#### (2) For Works

Label Name	Address
_ <b>@NRARG0</b>	0FFEC4H
_ <b>@NRARG1</b>	0FFEC6H
_ <b>@NRARG2</b>	0FFEC8H
_ <b>@NRARG3</b>	0FFECAH
_ <b>@NRAT00</b>	0FFECCH
_ <b>@NRAT01</b>	0FFECDH
_ <b>@NRAT02</b>	0FFECEH
_ <b>@NRAT03</b>	0FFECFH
_ <b>@NRAT04</b>	0FFED0H
_ <b>@NRAT05</b>	0FFED1H

Label Name	Address
_ <u>@NRAT06</u>	0FFED2H
_ <u>@NRAT07</u>	0FFED3H

**(3) For Segment information**

Label Name	Address
_ <u>@SEGAX</u>	0FFED4H
_ <u>@SEGBC</u>	0FFED5H
_ <u>@SEGDE</u>	0FFED6H
_ <u>@SEGL</u>	0FFED7H

**(4) Runtime library arguments**

Label Name	Address
_ <u>@RTARG0</u>	0FFED8H
_ <u>@RTARG1</u>	0FFED9H
_ <u>@RTARG2</u>	0FFEDA H
_ <u>@RTARG3</u>	0FFEDB H
_ <u>@RTARG4</u>	0FFEDC H
_ <u>@RTARG5</u>	0FFEDD H
_ <u>@RTARG6</u>	0FFEDE H
_ <u>@RTARG7</u>	0FFEDF H

**3.5 List of Segment Names**

This section explains all the segments that the compiler outputs and their locations.

The tables below list the relocation attributes that appear in the tables of this section.

**- CSEG relocation attributes**

CALLT0	Allocates the specified segment so that the start address is a multiple of two within the range of 80H to BFH.
AT absolute expres- sion	Allocates the specified segment to an absolute address (within the range of 00000H to FFEFFH).
UNITP	Allocates the specified segment so that the start address is a multiple of two within any position (within the range of C0H to EFFE H).

**- DSEG relocation attributes**

SADDRP	Allocates the specified segment so that the start address is a multiple of two within the range of FFE20H to FFEFFH in the saddr area.
UNITP	Allocates the specified segment so that the start address is a multiple of two within any position (default is within the RAM area).

## 3.5.1 List of segment names

## (1) Program areas and data areas

Section Name	Segment Type	Relocation Attribute	Description
@@CODE	CSEG	BASE	Segment for code portion (allocated to near area)
@@CODEL	CSEG		Segment for code portion (allocated to far area)
@@CODER	CSEG		Segment for code portion (allocated to RAM)
@@LCODE	CSEG	BASE	Segment for library code (allocated to near area)
@@LCODEL	CSEG		Segment for library code (allocated to far area)
@@LCODER	CSEG		Segment for library code portion (allocated to RAM)
@@CNST	CSEG	MIRRORP	ROM data (allocated to near area) <sup>Note 1</sup>
@@CNSTR	CSEG	MIRRORP (If there is a mirror area)	Segment for ROM data portion (allocated to RAM) (allocated to near area)
		UNITP (If there is no mirror area)	
@@CNSTL	CSEG	PAGE64KP	ROM data (allocated to far area) <sup>Note 1</sup>
@@CNSTLR	CSEG	PAGE64KP	Segment for ROM data portion (allocated to RAM) (allocated to far area)
@@R_INIT	CSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for near initialized data (with initial value)
@@RLINIT	CSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for far initialized data (with initial value)
@@R_INIS	CSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for initialized data (sreg variable with initial value)
@@CALT	CSEG	CALLT0	Segment for callt function table
@@VECT $nn$	CSEG	AT 00 $mm$ H	Segment for vector table <sup>Note 2</sup>
@@BASE	CSEG	BASE	Segment for callt function and interrupt function
@@LBASE	CSEG	BASE	Segment for library and callt function
@@INIT	DSEG	BASEP	Segment for data area (with initial value, allocated to near area)
@@INITL	DSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for data area (with initial value, allocated to far area)
@@DATA	DSEG	BASEP	Segment for data area (without initial value, allocated to near area)
@@DATAL	DSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for data area (without initial value, allocated to far area)
@@INIS	DSEG	SADDRP	Segment for data area (sreg variable with initial value)
@@DATS	DSEG	SADDRP	Segment for data area (sreg variable without initial value)
@@BITS	BSEG		Segment for boolean type and bit type variables

**Notes 1.** ROM data refers to the following types of data.

- Segment for const variables
- Table reference for switch-case statement
- Unknown character-string constant
- Data of initial value of an auto variable

2. The value of *nn* and *mm* changes depending on the interrupt types.

## (2) Flash memory areas

Section Name	Segment Type	Relocation Attribute	Description
@ECODE	CSEG	BASE	Segment for code portion (allocated to near area)
@ECODEL	CSEG		Segment for code portion (allocated to far area)
@ECODER	CSEG		Segment for code portion (allocated to RAM)
@LECODE	CSEG	BASE	Segment for library code (allocated to near area)
@LECODEL	CSEG		Segment for library code (allocated to far area)
@LECODER	CSEG		Segment for library code (allocated to RAM)
@ECNST	CSEG	MIRRORP	ROM data (allocated to near area) <sup>Note 1</sup>
@ECNSTR	CSEG	MIRRORP (If there is a mirror area)	Segment for ROM data (allocated to RAM) (allocated to near area)
		UNITP (If there is no mirror area)	
@ECNSTL	CSEG	PAGE64KP	ROM data (allocated to far area) <sup>Note 1</sup>
@ECNSTLR	CSEG	PAGE64KP	Segment for ROM data (allocated to RAM) (allocated to far area)
@ER_INIT	CSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for near initialized data (with initial value)
@ERLINIT	CSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for far initialized data (with initial value)
@ER_INIS	CSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for initialized data (sreg variable with initial value)
@EVECT $nn$	CSEG	AT $mmmm$ H	Segment for vector table <sup>Note 2</sup>
@EXT $xx$	CSEG	AT $yyyy$ H	Segment for flash area branch table <sup>Note 3</sup>
@EINIT	DSEG	BASEP	Segment for data area (with initial value, allocated to near area)
@EINITL	DSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for data area (with initial value, allocated to far area)
@EDATA	DSEG	BASEP	Segment for data area (without initial value, allocated to near area)
@EDATAL	DSEG	UNIT64KP	Segment for data area (without initial value, allocated to far area)
@EINIS	DSEG	SADDRP	Segment for data area (sreg variable with initial value)
@EDATS	DSEG	SADDRP	Segment for data area (sreg variable without initial value)
@EBITS	BSEG		Segment for boolean type and bit type variables
@ECALT	CSEG		Dummy segment
@EBASE	CSEG	BASE	Dummy segment

**Notes 1.** ROM data refers to the following types of data.

- Segment for const variables
- Table reference for switch-case statement
- Unknown character-string constant
- Data of initial value of an auto variable

2. The value of *nn* and *mmmm* changes depending on the interrupt types.

3. The values of *xx* and *yyyy* changes depending on the ID of the flash area function.

## 3.5.2 Segment allocation

Segment Type	Location (Default)
CSEG	ROM
BSEG	saddr area of RAM
DSEG	RAM

## 3.5.3 C source example

```

#pragma INTERRUPT   INTPO   inter   rbl   /* Interrupt vector*/

void inter ( void ) ;                      /* Interrupt function prototype declaration */
const   int   i_cnst = 1 ;                /* const variable*/
__callt void f_clt ( void ) ;            /* callt function prototype declaration*/
__boolean   b_bit ;                      /* boolean-type variable*/
long       l_init = 2 ;                  /* External variable with initial value*/
int        i_data ;                      /* External variable without initial value*/
__sreg int  sr_inis = 3 ;                /* sreg variable with initial value*/
__sreg int  sr_dats ;                    /* sreg variable without initial value*/

void main ( ) {                          /* Function definition*/
    int   i ;
    i = 100 ;
}

void   inter ( ) {                        /* Interrupt function definition*/
    unsigned char   uc = 0;
    uc++;
    if (b_bit)
        b_bit = 0;
}

__callt void   f_clt ( ) {                /* callt function definition*/
}

```

### 3.5.4 Example of output assembler module

Directives and instructions sets in assembly language source output vary according to the target device.  
For details, see "[CHAPTER 4 ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS](#)".

#### (1) Small model

```

; 78K0R C Compiler Vx.xx Assembler Source      Date:xx xxx xxxx Time:xx:xx:xx

; Command   : -cf104le sample.c -ms -sa -ng
; In-file   : sample.c
; Asm-file  : sample.asm
; Para-file :

$PROCESSOR ( F104LE )
$NODEBUG
$NODEBUGA
$KANJI CODE SJIS
$TOL_INF   03FH, 0xxxH, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H, 00H

        PUBLIC  _inter
        PUBLIC  _i_cnst
        PUBLIC  _b_bit
        PUBLIC  _l_init
        PUBLIC  _i_data
        PUBLIC  _sr_inis
        PUBLIC  _sr_dats
        PUBLIC  _main
        PUBLIC  _f_clt
        PUBLIC  ?f_clt
        PUBLIC  @_vect08

@@BITS   BSEG                ; Segment for boolean-type and bit-type variable
_b_bit   DBIT

@@CNST   CSEG   MIRRORP      ; Segment for const variable
_i_cnst  : DW     01H        ; 1

@@R_INIT CSEG   UNIT64KP     ; Segment for initialization data(External variable
                               with initial value)
        DW     00002H, 00000H ; 2

@@INIT   DSEG   BASEP        ; Segment for data area(External variable with
                               initial value)
_l_init  : DS     ( 4 )

@@DATA   DSEG   BASEP        ; Segment for data area(External variable without

```

```

                                initial value)
_i_data : DS      ( 2 )

@@R_INIS CSEG UNIT64KP      ; Segment for initialization data(sreg variable
                                with initial value)
                                DW      03H      ; 3

@@INIS DSEG SADDRP      ; Segment for data area(sreg variable with initial
value)
_sr_inis : DS      ( 2 )

@@DATS DSEG SADDRP      ; Segment for data area(sreg variable without
                                initial value)
_sr_dats : DS      ( 2 )

@@CALT CSEG CALLT0      ; Segment for callt function table
?f_clt : DW      _f_clt

; line 1 : #pragma interrupt INTPO inter rb1 /* Interrupt vector */
; line 2 :
; line 3 : void inter ( void ) ; /* Interrupt function prototype declaration */
; line 4 : const int i_cnst = 1 ; /* const variable */
; line 5 : __callt void f_clt ( void ) ; /* callt function prototype declaration */
; line 6 : __boolean b_bit ; /* boolean-type variable */
; line 7 : long l_init = 2 ; /* External variable with initial value */
; line 8 : int i_data ; /* External variable without initial value */
; line 9 : __sreg int sr_inis = 3 ; /* sreg variable with initial value */
; line 10 : __sreg int sr_dats ; /* sreg variable without initial value */
; line 11 :
; line 12 : void main ( ) { /* Function definition */

@@CODE CSEG BASE      ; Segment for code portion
_main :
    push hl      ;[INF] 1, 1
; line 13 : int i ;
; line 14 : i = 100 ;
    movw hl, #064H ; 100 ;[INF] 3, 1
; line 15 : }
    pop hl      ;[INF] 1, 1
    ret      ;[INF] 1, 6
; line 16 :
; line 17 : void inter ( ) { /* Interrupt function definition */

@@BASE CSEG BASE      ; Segment for callt and interrupt function
_inter :
    sel RB1      ;[INF] 2, 1 Selects register bank 1

```

```

; line 18 : unsigned char  uc = 0;
        mov     l,#00H      ; 0      ;[INF] 2, 1
; line 19 : uc++;
        inc     l           ;[INF] 1, 1
; line 20 : if (b_bit)
        bf     _b_bit,$L0005 ;[INF] 4, 5
; line 21 : b_bit = 0;
        clr1   _b_bit      ;[INF] 3, 2
L0005:
; line 22 : }
        reti                    ;[INF] 2, 6
; line 23 :
; line 24 : __callt void   f_clt ( ) { /* callt function definition */
_f_clt :
; line 25 : }
        ret
@@VECT08      CSEG      AT      0008H      ; Segment for vector table
_@vect08 :
            DW      _inter
            END

; *** Code Information ***
;
; $FILE D:\CA78K0R\Vx.xx\Smp78k0r\cc78k0r\sample.c
;
; $FUNC main(12)
;         void=(void)
;         CODE SIZE= 6 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 9 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 2 bytes
;
; $FUNC inter(17)
;         void=(void)
;         CODE SIZE= 14 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 16 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 0 bytes
;
; $FUNC f_clt(24)
;         void=(void)
;         CODE SIZE= 1 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 6 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 0 bytes

; Target chip : R5F104LE
; Device file : Vx.xx

```

## (2) Medium model

```

; 78K0R C Compiler Vx.xx Assembler Source      Date:xx xxx xxxx Time:xx:xx:xx

; Command   : -cf104le sample.c -mm -sa -ng
; In-file   : sample.c
; Asm-file  : sample.asm
; Para-file :

$PROCESSOR ( F104LE )
$NODEBUG
$NODEBUGA
$KANJI CODE SJIS
$TOL_INF   03FH, 0xxxH, 00H, 04000H, 00H, 00H, 00H

        PUBLIC  _inter
        PUBLIC  _i_cnst
        PUBLIC  _b_bit
        PUBLIC  _l_init
        PUBLIC  _i_data
        PUBLIC  _sr_inis
        PUBLIC  _sr_dats
        PUBLIC  _main
        PUBLIC  _f_clt
        PUBLIC  ?f_clt
        PUBLIC  @_vect08

@@BITS   BSEG                ; Segment for boolean-type and bit-type variable
_b_bit   DBIT

@@CNST   CSEG   MIRRORP      ; Segment for const variable
_i_cnst  :  DW    01H        ; 1

@@R_INIT CSEG   UNIT64KP     ; Segment for initialization data(External variable
                               with initial value)
        DW    00002H, 00000H ; 2

@@INIT   DSEG   BASEP       ; Segment for data area(External variable with
                               initial value)
_l_init  :  DS    ( 4 )

@@DATA   DSEG   BASEP       ; Segment for data area(External variable
                               without initial value)
_i_data  :  DS    ( 2 )

@@R_INIS CSEG   UNIT64KP     ; Segment for initialization data(sreg variable

```

```

                                with initial value)
                                ; 3
                                DW      03H
@@INIS      DSEG      SADDRP      ; Segment for data area (sreg variable with
                                initial value)
_sr_inis : DS      ( 2 )
@@DATS      DSEG      SADDRP      ; Segment for data area (sreg variable without
                                initial value)
_sr_dats : DS      ( 2 )
@@CALLT     CSEG      CALLT0      ; Segment for callt function table
?f_clt :     DW      _f_clt

; line 1 : #pragma interrupt  INTPO  inter  rb1      /* Interrupt vector*/
; line 2 :
; line 3 : void inter ( void ) ;          /* Interrupt function prototype declaration */
; line 4 : const  int   i_cnst = 1 ;      /* const variable */
; line 5 : __callt void f_clt ( void ) ; /* callt function prototype declaration */
; line 6 : __boolean  b_bit ;            /* boolean-type variable */
; line 7 : long     l_init = 2 ;          /* External variable with initial value */
; line 8 : int      i_data ;              /* External variable without initial value */
; line 9 : __sreg  int  sr_inis = 3 ;     /* sreg variable with initial value */
; line 10 : __sreg int  sr_dats ;         /* sreg variable without initial value */
; line 11 :
; line 12 : void main ( ) {                /* Function definition */

@@CODEL     CSEG                ; Segment for code portion
_main :
    push    hl                    ;[INF] 1, 1
; line 13 :      int      i ;
; line 14 :      i = 100 ;
    movw   hl, #064H      ; 100 ;[INF] 3, 1
; line 15 : }
    pop    hl                    ;[INF] 1, 1
    ret                               ;[INF] 1, 6
; line 16 :
; line 17 : void  inter ( ) {              /* Interrupt function definition */

@@BASE     CSEG      BASE          ; Segment for callt and interrupt function
_inter :
    sel    RB1                    ;[INF] 2, 1 Selects register bank 1
; line 18 : unsigned char  uc = 0;
    mov    1, #00H      ; 0          ;[INF] 2, 1
; line 19 : uc++;

```

```

        inc     1                ;[INF] 1, 1
; line 20 : if (b_bit)
        bf     _b_bit,$L0005    ;[INF] 4, 5
; line 21 : b_bit = 0;
        clr1   _b_bit          ;[INF] 3, 2
L0005:
; line 22 : }
        reti
; line 23 :                ;[INF] 2, 6
; line 24 : __callt void    f_clt ( ) { /* callt function definition*/
_f_clt :
; line 25 : }                ;[INF] 1, 6
        ret
@@VECT08 CSEG    AT      0008H    ; Segment for vector table
__vect08 :
        DW     _inter
        END

; *** Code Information ***
;
; $FILE D:\CA78K0R\Vx.xx\Smp78k0r\cc78k0r\sample.c
;
; $FUNC main(12)
;     void=(void)
;     CODE SIZE= 6 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 9 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 2 bytes
;
; $FUNC inter(17)
;     void=(void)
;     CODE SIZE= 14 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 16 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 0 bytes
;
; $FUNC f_clt(24)
;     void=(void)
;     CODE SIZE= 1 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 6 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 0 bytes

; Target chip : R5F104LE
; Device file : Vx.xx

```

## (3) Large model

```

; 78K0R C Compiler Vx.xx Assembler Source      Date:xx xxx xxxx Time:xx:xx:xx

; Command   : -cf104le sample.c -ml -sa -ng
; In-file   : sample.c
; Asm-file  : sample.asm
; Para-file :

$PROCESSOR ( F104LE )
$NODEBUG
$NODEBUGA
$KANJI CODE SJIS
$TOL_INF   03FH, 0xxxH, 00H, 08000H, 00H, 00H, 00H

        PUBLIC  _inter
        PUBLIC  _i_cnst
        PUBLIC  _b_bit
        PUBLIC  _l_init
        PUBLIC  _i_data
        PUBLIC  _sr_inis
        PUBLIC  _sr_dats
        PUBLIC  _main
        PUBLIC  _f_clt
        PUBLIC  ?f_clt
        PUBLIC  @_vect08

@@BITS   BSEG                ; Segment for boolean-type and bit-type variable
_b_bit   DBIT

@@R_INIS  CSEG   UNIT64KP      ; Segment for initialization data(sreg variable
                               with initial value)
        DW    03H            ; 3

@@INIS    DSEG   SADDRP       ; Segment for data area(sreg variable with
                               initial value)
_sr_inis : DS      ( 2 )

@@DATS    DSEG   SADDRP       ; Segment for data area(sreg variable without
                               initial value)
_sr_dats : DS      ( 2 )

@@CNSTL   CSEG   PAGE64KP     ; Segment for const variable
_i_cnst  : DW    01H            ; 1

@@RLINIT  CSEG   UNIT64KP     ; Segment for initialization data (External

```

```

                                variable with initial value)
                                DW      00002H, 00000H ; 2

@@INITL      DSEG  UNIT64KP      ; Segment for data area(External variable with
initial value)
_l_init :    DS      ( 4 )

@@DATAL      DSEG  UNIT64KP      ; Segment for data area(External variable without
initial value)
_i_data :    DS      ( 2 )

@@CALT       CSEG   CALLT0       ; Segment for callt function table
?f_clt :     DW      _f_clt

; line 1 : #pragma interrupt  INTP0  inter  rb1      /* Interrupt vector */
; line 2 :
; line 3 : void inter ( void ) ;      /* Interrupt function prototype declaration */
; line 4 : const  int  i_cnst = 1 ; /* const variable */
; line 5 : __callt void f_clt ( void ) ; /* callt function prototype declaration */
; line 6 : __boolean  b_bit ;      /* boolean-type variable */
; line 7 : long   l_init = 2 ;      /* External variable with initial value */
; line 8 : int    i_data ;          /* External variable without initial value */
; line 9 : __sreg int  sr_inis = 3 ; /* sreg variable with initial value */
; line 10 : __sreg int  sr_dats ;   /* sreg variable without initial value */
; line 11 :
; line 12 : void main ( ) {          /* Function definition */

@@CODEL      CSEG                ; Segment for code portion
_main :
    push    hl                    ;[INF] 1, 1
; line 13 :int    i ;
; line 14 :i = 100 ;
    movw   hl, #064H ; 100        ;[INF] 3, 1
; line 15 : }
    pop    hl                      ;[INF] 1, 1
    ret                                ;[INF] 1, 6
; line 16 :
; line 17 : void  inter ( ) {        /*Interrupt function definition */

@@BASE       CSEG   BASE          ; Segment for callt and interrupt function
_inter :
    sel    RB1                      ;[INF] 2, 1 Selects register bank 1
; line 18 : unsigned char  uc = 0;
    mov    l,#00H                    ; 0 ;[INF] 2, 1
; line 19 : uc++;
    inc   l                          ;[INF] 1, 1

```

```

; line 20 : if (b_bit)
        bf      _b_bit,$L0005      ;[INF] 4, 5
; line 21 : b_bit = 0;
        clr1   _b_bit              ;[INF] 3, 2
L0005:
; line 22 : }
        reti                          ;[INF] 2, 6
; line 23 :
; line 24 : __callt void    f_clt ( ) { /* callt function definition */
_f_clt :
; line 25 : }
        ret

@@VECT08    CSEG    AT    0008H    ; Segment for vector table
_@vect08 :
        DW      _inter
        END

; *** Code Information ***
;
; $FILE D:\CA78K0R\Vx.xx\Smp78k0r\cc78k0r\sample.c
;
; $FUNC main(12)
;     void=(void)
;     CODE SIZE= 6 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 9 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 2 bytes
;
; $FUNC inter(17)
;     void=(void)
;     CODE SIZE= 14 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 16 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 0 bytes
;
; $FUNC f_clt(24)
;     void=(void)
;     CODE SIZE= 1 bytes, CLOCK_SIZE= 6 clocks, STACK_SIZE= 0 bytes

; Target chip : R5F104LE
; Device file : Vx.xx

```

## CHAPTER 4 ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE SPECIFICATIONS

This chapter explains the assembly language specifications supported by RL78,78K0R assembler.

#### 4.1 Description Methods of Source Program

This section explains the description methods, expressions and operators of the source program.

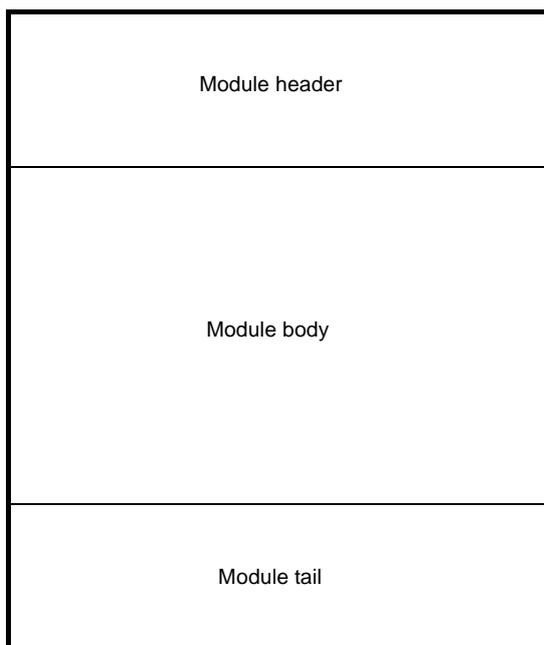
##### 4.1.1 Basic configuration

When a source program is described by dividing it into several modules, each module that becomes the unit of input to the assembler is called a source module (if a source program consists of a single module, "source program" means the same as "source module").

Each source module that becomes the unit of input to the assembler consists mainly of the following three parts:

- [Module header](#) (Module Header)
- [Module body](#) (Module Body)
- [Module tail](#) (Module Tail)

**Figure 4-1. Source Module Configuration**



##### (1) Module header

In the module header, the control instructions shown below can be described. Note that these control instructions can only be described in the module header.

Also, the module header can be omitted.

Table 4-1. Instructions That Can Appear in Module Headers

Type of Instruction	Description
Control instructions with the same functions as assembler options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- PROCESSOR</li> <li>- DEBUG/NODEBUG/DEBUGA/NODEBUGA</li> <li>- XREF/NOXREF</li> <li>- SYMLIST/NOSYMLIST</li> <li>- TITLE</li> <li>- FORMFEED/NOFORMFEED</li> <li>- WIDTH</li> <li>- LENGTH</li> <li>- TAB</li> <li>- KANJICODE</li> </ul>
Special control instructions output by a C compiler or other high-level program	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- TOL_INF</li> <li>- DGS</li> <li>- DGL</li> </ul>

**(2) Module body**

The following may not appear in the module body.

- Control instructions with the same functions as assembler options

All other directives, control instructions, and instructions can be described in the module body.

The module body must be described by dividing it into units, called "segments".

Segments are defined with the corresponding directives, as follows.

- Code segment  
Defined with the CSEG directive
- Data segment  
Defined with the DSEG directive
- Bit segment  
Defined with the BSEG directive
- Absolute segment  
Defined with the CSEG, DSEG, or BSEG directive, plus an absolute address (AT location address) as the relocation attribute. Absolute segments can also be defined with the ORG directive.

The module body may be configured as any combination of segments.

However, data segments and bit segments should be defined before code segments.

**(3) Module tail**

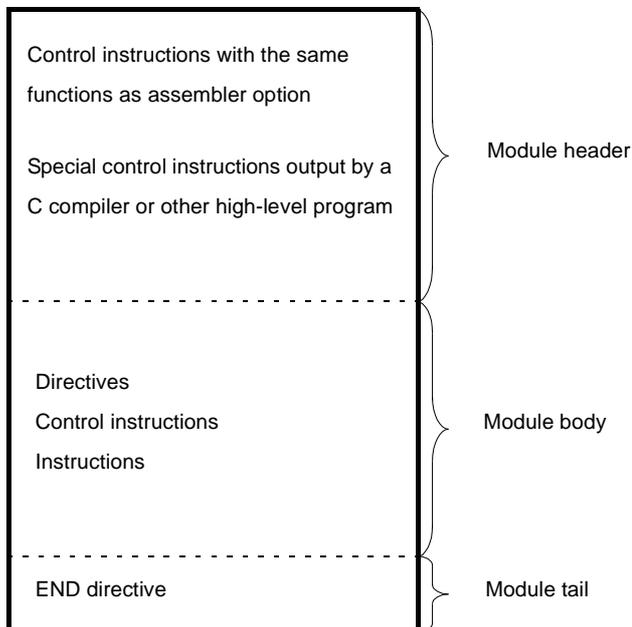
The module tail indicates the end of the source module. The END directive must be described in this part.

If anything other than a comment, a blank, a tab, or a line feed code is described following the END directive, the assembler will output a warning message and ignore the characters described after the END directive.

(4) Overall configuration of source program

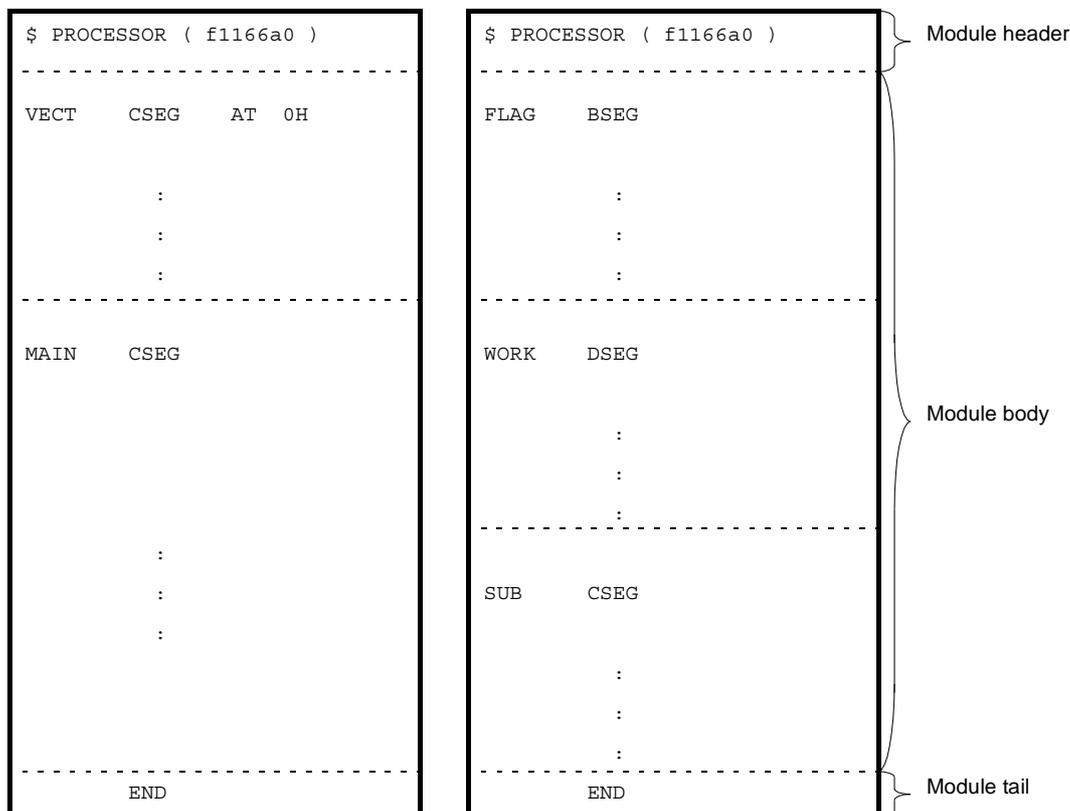
The overall configuration of a source module (source program) is as shown below.

Figure 4-2. Overall Configuration of Source Program



Examples of simple source module configurations are shown below.

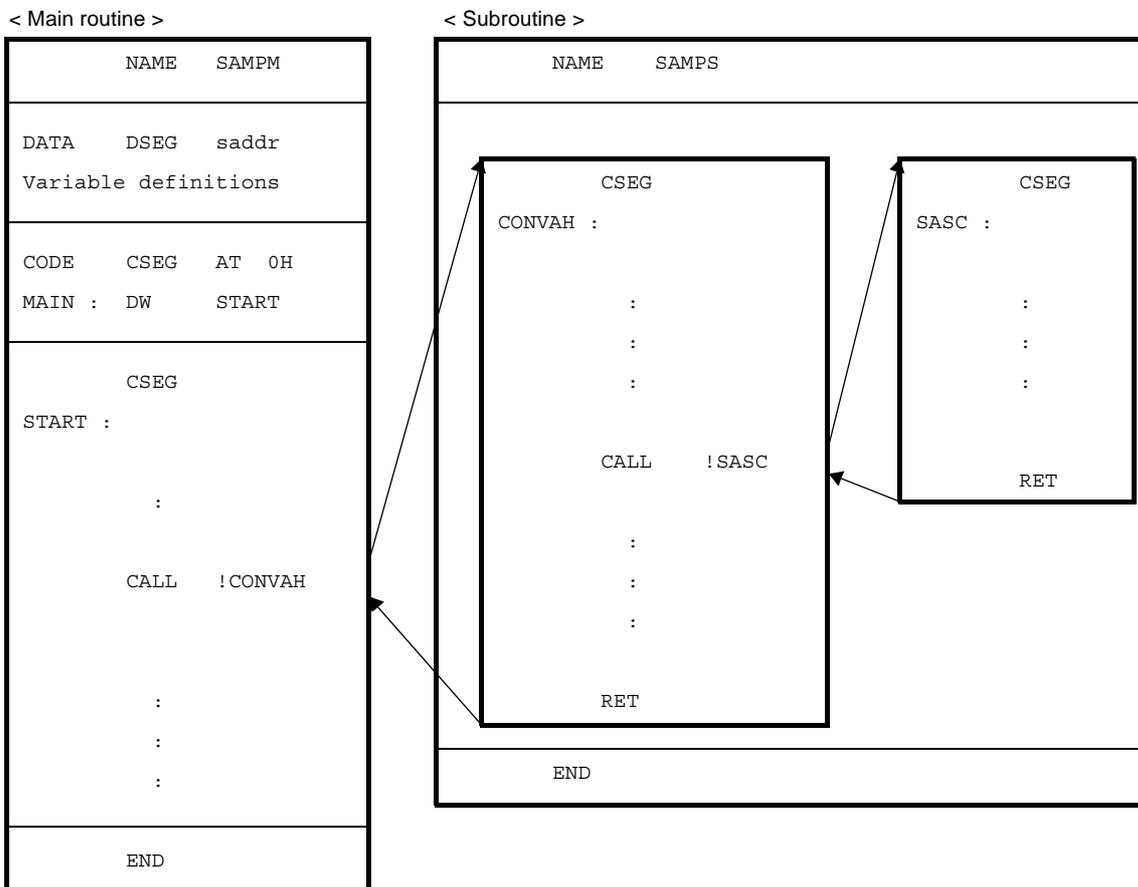
Figure 4-3. Examples of Source Module Configurations



(5) Coding example

In this subsection, a description example of a source module (source program) is shown as a sample program. The configuration of the sample program can be illustrated simply as follows.

Figure 4-4. Sample Source Program Configuration



- Main routine

```

        NAME      SAMPM                ; (1)
; *****
;      HEX -> ASCII Conversion Program
;      main-routine
; *****

PUBLIC  MAIN, START                    ; (2)
EXTRN  CONVAH                          ; (3)
EXTRN  _@STBEG                          ; (4)  <- Error

DATA   DSEG     AT      0FFE20H        ; (5)
HDTSA  : DS     1
STASC  : DS     2

CODE   CSEG     AT      0H            ; (6)
    
```

```

MAIN : DW      START

      CSEG                      ; (7)
START :
      ; chip initialize
      MOVW    SP, #_@STBEG

      MOV     HDTSA, #1AH
      MOVW   HL, #LOWW ( HDTSA )    ; set hex 2-code data in HL register

      CALL   !CONVAH                ; convert ASCII <- HEX
      ; output BC-register <- ASCII code

      MOVW   DE, #LOWW ( STASC )    ; set DE <- store ASCII code table
      MOV    A, B
      MOV    [DE], A
      INCW   DE
      MOV    A, C
      MOV    [DE], A
      BR    $$
      END                      ; (8)

```

- (1) Declaration of module name
- (2) Declaration of symbol referenced from another module as an external reference symbol
- (3) Declaration of symbol defined in another module as an external reference symbol
- (4) Declaration of stack resolution symbol. This will be generated by the linker when the program is linked with the -s option specified. (An error occurs if the linker -s option is not specified.)
- (5) Declaration of the start of a data segment (to be located in saddr)
- (6) Declaration of start of code segment (to be located as an absolute segment starting from address 0H)
- (7) Declaration of start of another code segment (ending the absolute code segment)
- (8) Declaration of end of module

- Subroutine

```

      NAME    SAMPS                ; (9)
; *****
;      HEX -> ASCII Conversion Program
;      sub-routine
;
;      input condition      : ( HL )      <- hex 2 code

```

```

; output condition      : BC-register  <- ASCII 2 code
; *****
PUBLIC  CONVAH          ; (10)

        CSEG            ; (11)
CONVAH :
        XOR             A, A
        ROL4            [HL]          ; hex upper code load (12)
        CALL            !SASC
        MOV              B, A          ; store result

        XOR             A, A
        ROL4            [HL]          ; hex lower code load
        CALL            !SASC
        MOV              C, A          ; store result
        RET

; *****
;      subroutine      convert ASCII code
;
; input               Acc ( lower 4bits )  <- hex code
; output              Acc                  <- ASCII code
; *****

SASC :
        CMP             A, #0AH        ; check hex code > 9
        BC              $SASC1
        ADD             A, #07H        ; bias ( +7H )
SASC1 :
        ADD             A, #30H        ; bias ( +30H )
        RET
        END              ; (13)

```

(9) Declaration of module name

(10) Declaration of symbol referenced from another module as an external definition symbol

(11) Declaration of start of code segment

(12) The ROL4 instruction is 78K0 instruction that is not supported by the RL78,78K0R. The assembler `-compati` option must be specified to assemble this module.

For the assembler option (`-compati`), see to CubeSuite+ Integrated Development Environment User's Manual: RL78,78K0R Build.

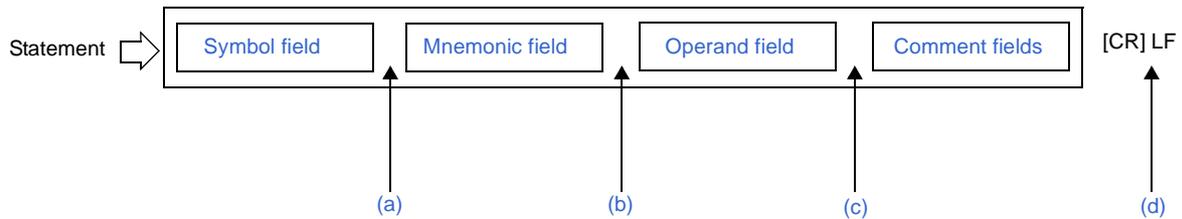
(13) Declaration of end of module

4.1.2 Description method

(1) Configuration

A source program consists of statements.  
 A statement is made up of the 4 fields shown below.

Figure 4-5. Statement Fields



- (a) The symbol field and the mnemonic field must be separated by a colon ( : ) or one or more spaces or tabs. (Whether a colon or space is required depends on the instruction in the mnemonic field.)
- (b) The mnemonic field and the operand field must be separated by one or more spaces or tabs. Depending on the instruction in the mnemonic field, the operand field may not be required.
- (c) The comment field, if present, must be preceded by a semicolon ( ; ).
- (d) Each line in the source program ends with an LF code (One CR code may exist before the LF code).

- A statement must be described in 1 line. The line can be up to 2048 characters long (including CR/LF). TAB and the CR (if present) are each counted as 1 character. If the length of the line exceeds 2048 characters, a warning is issued and all characters beyond the 2048th are ignored for purposes of assembly. However, characters beyond 2048 are output to assembler list files.
- Lines consisting of CR only are not output to assembler list files.
- The following line types are valid.
  - Empty lines (lines with no statements)
  - Lines consisting of the symbol field only
  - Lines consisting of the comment field only

(2) Character set

Source files can contain the following 3 types of characters.

- Language characters
- Character data
- Comment characters

(a) Language characters

Language characters are the characters used to describe instructions in source programs.  
 The language character set includes alphabetic, numeric, and special characters.

Table 4-2. Alphanumeric Characters

Name	Characters
Numeric characters	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

Name		Characters
Alphabetic characters	Uppercase	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
	Lowercase	a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

Table 4-3. Special Characters

Character	Name	Main Use	
?	Question mark	Symbol equivalent to alphabetic characters	
@	Circa	Symbol equivalent to alphabetic characters	
_	Underscore	Symbol equivalent to alphabetic characters	
	Blank	Field delimiter	Delimiter symbols
HT (09H)	Tab code	Character equivalent to blank	
,	Comma	Operand delimiter	
:	Colon	Label delimiter	
;	Semicolon	Symbol indicating the start of the Comment field	
CR (0DH)	Carriage return code	Symbol indicating the end of a line (ignored in the assembler)	
LF (0AH)	Line feed code	Symbol indicating the end of a line	
+	Plus sign	Add operator or positive sign	Assembler operators
-	Minus sign	Subtract operator or negative sign	
*	Asterisk	Multiply operator	
/	Slash	Divide operator	
.	Period	Bit position specifier	
( )	Left and right parentheses	Symbols specifying the order of arithmetic operations to be performed	
<>	Not equal sign	Relational operator	
=	Equal sign	Relational operator	
'	Single quote mark	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Symbol indicating the start or end of a character constant</li> <li>- Symbol indicating a complete macro parameter</li> </ul>	
\$	Dollar sign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Symbol indicating the location counter</li> <li>- Symbol indicating the start of a control instruction equivalent to an assembler option</li> <li>- Symbol specifying relative addressing</li> </ul>	
&	Ampersand	Concatenation symbol (used in macro body)	
#	Sharp sign	Symbol specifying immediate addressing	
!	Exclamation point	Symbol specifying absolute addressing	
[ ]	Brackets	Symbol specifying indirect addressing	

**(b) Character data**

Character data refers to characters used to write string literals, strings, and the quote-enclosed operands of some control instructions (TITLE, SUBTITLE, INCLUDE).

- Cautions**
1. **Character data can use all characters except 00H (including multibyte kanji, although the encoding depends on the OS). If 00H is encountered, an error occurs and all characters from the 00H to the closing single quote ( ' ) are ignored.**
  2. **When an invalid character is encountered, the assembler replaces it with an exclamation point ( ! ) in the assembly list. (The CR (0DH) character is not output to assembly lists.)**
  3. **The Windows OS interprets code 1AH as an end of file (EOF) code. Input data cannot contain this code.**

**(c) Comment characters**

Comment characters are used to write comments.

**Caution** **Comment characters and character data have the same character set. However, no error is output for 00H in comments. 00H is replaced by "!" in assembly lists.**

**(3) Symbol field**

The symbol field is for symbols, which are names given to addresses and data objects. Symbols make programs easier to understand.

**(a) Symbol types**

Symbols can be classified as shown below, depending on their purpose and how they are defined.

Symbol Type	Purpose	Definition Method
Name	Used as names for addresses and data objects in source programs.	Write in the symbol field of an EQU, SET, or DBIT directive.
Label	Used as labels for addresses and data objects in source programs.	Write a name followed by a colon ( : ).
External reference name	Used to reference symbols defined by other source modules.	Write in the operand field of an EXTRN or EXTBIT directive.
Segment name	Used at link time.	Write in the symbol field of a CSEG, DSEG, BSEG, or ORG directive.
Module name	Used during symbolic debugging.	Write in the operand field of a NAME directive.
Macro name	Use to name macros in source programs.	Write in the symbol field of a MACRO directive.

**Caution** **The 4 types of symbols that can be written in symbol fields are names, labels, segment names, and macro names.**

**(b) Conventions of symbol description**

Observe the following conventions when writing symbols.

- The characters which can be used in symbols are the alphanumeric characters and special characters ( ?, @, \_ ).

The first character in a symbol cannot be a digit (0 to 9).

- The maximum length of symbols is 256 characters.  
Characters beyond the maximum length are ignored.
- Reserved words cannot be used as symbols.  
See "4.5 Reserved Words" for a list of reserved words.
- The same symbol cannot be defined more than once.  
However, a name defined with the SET directive can be redefined with the SET directive.
- The assembler distinguishes between lowercase and uppercase characters.
- When a label is written in a symbol field, the colon ( : ) must appear immediately after the label name.

<Examples of correct symbols>

```
CODE01 CSEG          ; "CODE01" is a segment name.
VAR01  EQU    10H    ; "VAR01" is a name.
LAB01  : DW     0     ; "LAB01" is a label.
        NAME  SAMPLE ; "SAMPLE" is a module name.
MAC1   MACRO          ; "MAC1" is a macro name.
```

<Examples of incorrect symbols>

```
1ABC  EQU    3      ; The first character is a digit.s
LAB   MOV    A, R0  ; "LAB" is a label and must be separated from the mnemonic field by
                    ; a colon ( : ).
FLAG : EQU    10H   ; The colon ( : ) is not needed for names.
```

<Example of a symbol that is too long>

```
A123456789B12...Y123456789Z123456 EQU 70H
    257characters                ; The last character (6) is ignored because it is
                                    ; beyond the maximum symbol length.
                                    ; The symbol is defined as
                                    ; A123456789B12...Y123456789Z12345
```

< Example of a statement composed of a symbol only>

```
ABCD :                ; ABCD is defined as a label.
```

(c) Points to note about symbols

??Rannnn (where nnnn = 0000 to FFFF) is a symbol that the assembler replaces automatically every time it generates a local symbol in a macro body. Unless care is taken, this can result in duplicate definitions, which are errors.

The assembler generates a name automatically when a segment definition directive does not specify a name. These segment names are listed below.

Duplicate segment name definitions are errors.

Segment Name	Directive	Relocation Attribute
?A0nnnnn (nnnnn = 00000 - FFFFFF)	ORG directive	(none)

Segment Name	Directive	Relocation Attribute
?CSEG	CSEG directive	UNIT
?CSEGUP		UNITP
?CSEGT0		CALLT0
?CSEGFx		FIXED
?CSEGSi		SECUR_ID
?CSEGB		BASE
?CSEGP64		PAGE64KP
?CSEGU64		UNIT64KP
?CSEGMIP		MIRRORP
?CSEGOB0		OPT_BYTE
?DSEG	DSEG directive	UNIT
?DSEGUP		UNITP
?DSEGS		SADDR
?DSEGSP		SADDRP
?DSEGBP		BASEP
?DSEGP64		PAGE64KP
?DSEGU64		UNIT64KP
?BSEG	BSEG directive	UNIT

**(d) Symbol attributes**

Every name and label has both a value and an attribute.

The value is the value of the defined data object, for example a numerical value, or the value of the address itself.

Segment names, module names, and macro names do not have values.

The following table lists symbol attributes.

Attribute Type	Classification	Value
NUMBER	- Name to which numeric constants are assigned - Symbols defined with the EXTRN directive - Numeric constants	Decimal notation : 0 to 1048575 Hexadecimal notation : 00000H to FFFFFH (unsigned)
ADDRESS	- Symbols defined as labels - Names of labels defined with the EQU and SET directives	Decimal notation : 0 to 1048575 Hexadecimal notation : 0H to FFFFFH
BIT	- Names defined as bit values - Names in BSEG - Symbols defined with the EXTBIT directive	0H to FFFFFH
SFR	Names defined as SFRs with the EQU directive	SFR area
SFRP	Names defined as SFRs with the EQU directive	

Attribute Type	Classification	Value
CSEG	Segment names defined with the CSEG directive	These attribute types have no values.
DSEG	Segment names defined with the DSEG directive	
BSEG	Segment names defined with the BSEG directive	
MODULE	Module names defined with the NAME directive. (If not specified, a module name is created from the primary name of the input source filename.)	
MACRO	Macro names defined with the MACRO directive	

**Example**

```
TEN    EQU    10H           ; The name TEN has the NUMBER attribute and a value of 10H.
      ORG    80H
START : MOV    A, #10H      ; The label START has the ADDRESS attribute and a value of 80H.
BIT1  EQU    0FFE20H.0     ; The name BIT1 has the BIT attribute and a value of 0FFE20H.0.
```

**(4) Mnemonic field**

Write instruction mnemonics, directives, and macro references in the mnemonic field.

If the instruction or directive requires an operand or operands, the mnemonic field must be separated from the operand field with one or more blanks or tabs.

However, if the first operand begins with "#", "\$", "!", or "[", the statement will be assembled properly even if nothing exists between the mnemonic field and the first operand field.

<Examples of correct mnemonics>

```
MOV    A, #0H
CALL   !CONVAH
RET
```

<Examples of incorrect mnemonics>

```
MOVA   #0H           ; There is no blank between the mnemonic and operand fields.
C ALL  !CONVAH       ; The mnemonic field contains a blank.
ZZZ    ; The RL78,78K0R series does not have a ZZZ instruction.
```

**(5) Operand field**

In the operand field, write operands (data) for the instructions, directives, or macro references that require them.

Some instructions and directives require no operands, while others require two or more.

When you provide two or more operands, delimit them with a comma ( , ).

The following types of data can appear in the operand field:

- [Constants](#) (numeric or string)
- [Character strings](#)
- [Register names](#)
- [Special characters](#) (\$ # ! [ ])
- [Relocation attributes of segment definition directives](#)
- [Symbols](#)

- Expressions
- Bit terms

The size and attribute of the required operand depends on the instruction or directive. See "4.1.16 Operand characteristics" for details.

See the user's manual of the target device for the format and notational conventions of instruction set operands. The following sections explain the types of data that can appear in the operand field.

#### (a) Constants

A constant is a fixed value or data item and is also referred to as immediate data.

There are numeric constants and character string constants.

##### - Numeric constants

Numeric constants can be written in binary, octal, decimal, or hexadecimal notation.

The table below lists the notations available for numeric constants.

Numeric constants are handled as unsigned 32-bit data.

The range of possible values is  $0 \leq n \leq 0FFFFFFFH$ .

Use the minus sign operator to indicate minus values.

Type	Notation	Example
Binary	Append a "B" or "Y" suffix to the number.	1101B 1101Y
Octal	Append an "O" or "Q" suffix to the number.	74O 74Q
Decimal	Simply write the number, or append a "D" or "T" suffix.	128 128D 128T
Hexadecimal	- Append an "H" suffix to the number. - If the number begins with "A", "B", "C", "D", "E", or "F", prefix it with "0"	8CH 0A6H

##### - Character string constants

A character-string constant is expressed by enclosing a string of characters from those shown in "(2) Character set", in a pair of single quotation marks ( ' ).

The assembler converts string constants to 7-bit ASCII codes, with the parity bit set to 0.

The length of a string constant is 0 to 2 characters.

To include the single quote character in the string, write it twice in succession.

<Example string constants >

'ab'	; 6162H
'A'	; 0041H
'A'''	; 4127H
' '	; 0020H (1 space character)

**(b) Character strings**

A character string is expressed by enclosing a string of characters from those shown in "(2) Character set", in a pair of single quotation marks ( ' ).

The main use for character strings is as operands for the DB and CALL directives and the TITLE and SUBTITLE control instructions.

<Special character example>

```

CSEG
MAS1 : DB      'YES'           ; Initialize with character string "YES".
MAS2 : DB      'NO'           ; Initialize with character string "NO".
    
```

**(c) Register names**

The following registers can be named in the operand field:

- General registers
- General register pairs
- Special function registers

General registers and general register pairs can be described with their absolute names (R0 to R7 and RP0 to RP3), as well as with their function names (X, A, B, C, D, E, H, L, AX, BC, DE, HL).

The register names that can be described in the operand field may differ depending on the type of instruction. For details of the method of describing each register name, see the user's manual of each device for which software is being developed.

**(d) Special characters**

The following table lists the special characters that can appear in the operand field.

Special Character	Function
\$	- Indicates the location address of the instruction that has the operand (or the first byte of the address, in the case of multibyte instructions). - Indicates relative addressing for a branch instruction.
!	- Indicates absolute addressing for a branch instruction. - Indicates an addr16 specification, which allows a MOV instruction to access the entire memory space.
#	- Indicates immediate data.
[]	- Indicates indirect addressing.

<Special character example>

```

Address      Source program
100          ADD      A, #10H
102  LOOP :  INC      A
103          BR       $$ - 1      ; The second $ in the operand indicates address
                                   ; 103H. Describing "BR $ - 1" results in the
                                   ; same operation.
105          BR       !$ + 100H   ; The second $ in the operand indicates address
                                   ; 105H. Describing "BR $ + 100H" results in the
                                   ; same operation.
    
```

**(e) Relocation attributes of segment definition directives**

Relocation attributes can appear in the operand field.

See "4.2.2 Segment definition directives" for more information about relocation attributes.

**(f) Symbols**

When a symbol appears in the operand field, the address (or value) assigned to that symbol becomes the operand value.

<Symbol value example>

VALUE	EQU	1234H		
	MOV	AX, #VALUE	; This could also be written	MOV AX, #1234H

**(g) Expressions**

An expression is a combination of constants, location addresses (indicated by \$), names, labels, and operators, which is evaluated to produce a value.

Expressions can be specified as instruction operands wherever a numeric value can be specified.

See "4.1.3 Expressions and operators" for more information about expressions.

<Expression example>

TEN	EQU	10H	
	MOV	A, #TEN - 5H	

In this example, "TEN - 5H" is an expression.

In this expression, a name and a numeric value are connected by the - (minus) operator. The value of the expression is 0BH, so this expression could be rewritten as "MOV A, #0BH".

**(h) Bit terms**

Bit terms are obtained by the bit position specifier.

See "4.1.14 Bit position specifier" for more information about bit terms.

<Bit term examples>

CLR1	A.5	
SET1	1 + 0FFE30H.3	; The value of this operand is 0FFE31H.3
CLR1	0FFE40H.4 + 2	; The value of this operand is 0FFE40H.6

**(6) Comment fields**

Describe comments in the comment field, after a semicolon (;).

The comment field continues from the semicolon to the new line code at the end of the line, or to the EOF code of the file.

Comments make it easier to understand and maintain programs.

Comments are not processed by the assembler, and are output verbatim to assembly lists.

Characters that can be described in the comment field are those shown in "(2) Character set".

<Comment example>

```

NAME      SAMPM
; *****
;      HEX -> ASCII Conversion Program
;      main-routine
; *****

PUBLIC   MAIN, START
EXTRN   CONVAH
EXTRN   @STBEG

DATA    DSEG      saddr
HDTSA   : DS      1
STASC   : DS      2

CODE    CSEG      AT 0H
MAIN    : DW      START

        CSEG
START   :
; chip initialize
MOVW    SP, #_@STBEG

MOV     HDTSA, #1AH
MOVW    HL, #HDTSA      ; set hex 2-code data in HL register

CALL    !CONVAH        ; convert ASCII <- HEX
; output BC-register <- ASCII code

MOVW    DE, #STASC     ; set DE <- store ASCII code table
MOV     A, B
MOV     [DE], A
INCW    DE
MOV     A, C
MOV     [DE], A
BR     $$
END
    
```

Lines with comment fields only

Lines with comment fields only

Lines with comments in comment fields

4.1.3 Expressions and operators

An expression is a symbol, constant, location address (indicated by \$) or bit term, an operator combined with one of the above, or a combination of operators.

Elements of an expression other than the operators are called terms, and are referred to as the 1st term, 2nd term, and so forth from left to right, in the order that they occur in the expression.

The assembler supports the operators shown in "Table 4-4. Operator Types". Operators have priority levels, which determine when they are applied in the calculation. The priority order is shown in "Table 4-5. Operator Precedence Levels".

The order of calculation can be changed by enclosing terms and operators in parentheses "( )".

<Example>

```
MOV    A, #5 * ( SYM + 1 )
```

In the above example, "5 \* ( SYM+1 )" is an expression. "5" is the 1st term, "SYM" is the 2nd term, and "1" is the 3rd term. The operators are "\*", "+", and "( )".

Table 4-4. Operator Types

Operator Type	Operators
Arithmetic operators	+, -, *, /, MOD, +sign, -sign
Logic operators	NOT, AND, OR, XOR
Relational operators	EQ ( = ), NE ( <> ), GT ( > ), GE ( >= ), LT ( < ), LE ( <= )
Shift operators	SHR, SHL
Byte separation operators	HIGH, LOW
Word separation operators	HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW
Special operators	DATAPOS, BITPOS, MASK
Other operator	( )

The above operators can also be divided into unary operators, special unary operators, binary operators, N-ary operators, and other operators.

Unary operators	+sign, -sign, NOT, HIGH, LOW, HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW
Special unary operators	DATAPOS, BITPOS
Binary operators	+, -, *, /, MOD, AND, OR, XOR, EQ ( = ), NE ( <> ), GT ( > ), GE ( >= ), LT ( < ), LE ( <= ), SHR, SHL
N-ary operators	MASK
Other operators	( )

Table 4-5. Operator Precedence Levels

Priority	Level	Operators
Higher	1	+ sign, - sign, NOT, HIGH, LOW, HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW, DATAPOS, BITPOS, MASK
	2	*, /, MOD, SHR, SHL
	3	+, -
	4	AND
	5	OR, XOR
Lower	6	EQ (=), NE (<>), GT (>), GE (>=), LT (<), LE (<=)

Expressions are operated according to the following rules.

- The order of operation is determined by the priority level of the operators.  
When two operators have the same priority level, operation proceeds from left to right, except in the case of unary operators, where it proceeds from right to left.
- Sub-expressions in parentheses "( )" are operated before sub-expressions outside parentheses.
- Operations involving consecutive unary operators are allowed.

Examples:

$1 = --1 == 1$

$-1 = -+1 = -1$

- Expressions are operated using unsigned 32-bit values.  
If intermediate values overflow 32 bits, the overflow value is ignored.
- If the value of a constant exceeds 32 bits, an error occurs, and its value is calculated as 0.
- In division, the decimal fraction part is discarded.  
If the divisor is 0, an error occurs and the result is 0.
- Negative values are represented as two's complement.
- External reference symbols are evaluated as 0 at the time when the source is assembled (the evaluation value is determined at link time).
- The results of operating an expression in the operand field must meet the requirements of the instruction for a valid operand.

When the expression includes a relocatable or external reference term, and the instruction requires an 8-bit operand, then object code is generated with the value of the least significant 8 bits and the information required for 16 bits is output in the relocation information. Subsequently the linker checks whether the previously determined value overflows the range of 8 bits. If it overflows, a linking error occurs.

In the case of absolute expressions, the value is determined at the assembly stage and a check is performed at that stage to test whether the result fits in the required range.

For example, the MOV instruction requires 8-bit operands, so the operand must be in the range 0H to 0FFH.

#### (1) Correct examples

```
MOV    A, #'2*' AND 0FH
MOV    A, #4 * 8 * 8 - 1
```

#### (2) Incorrect examples

```
MOV    A, #'2*.
MOV    A, #4 * 8 * 8
```

## (3) Evaluation examples

Expression	Evaluation
$2 + 4 * 5$	22
$( 2 + 3 ) * 4$	20
10/4	2
0 - 1	0FFFFFFFH
-1 > 1	00H (False)
EXT <sup>Note</sup> + 1	1

**Note** EXT : External reference symbols

#### 4.1.4 Arithmetic operators

The following arithmetic operators are available.

Operator	Overview
+	Addition of values of first and second terms
-	Subtraction of value of first and second terms
*	Multiplacation of value of first and second terms.
/	Divides the value of the 1st term of an expression by the value of its 2nd term and returns the integer part of the result.
MOD	Obtains the remainder in the result of dividing the value of the 1st term of an expression by the value of its 2nd term.
+sign	Returns the value of the term as it is.
-sign	The term value 2 complement is sought.

+
---

Addition of values of first and second terms

**[Function]**

Returns the sum of the values of the 1st and 2nd terms of an expression.

**[Application example]**

ORG	100H		
START :	BR	!\$ + 6	; (1)

(1) The BR instruction causes a jump to "current location address plus 6", namely, to address "100H + 6H = 106H".

Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: START : BR !106H

-
---

Subtraction of value of first and second terms

**[Function]**

Returns the result of subtraction of the 2nd-term value from the 1st-term value.

**[Application example]**

ORG	100H		
BACK :	BR	BACK - 6H	; (1)

(1) The BR instruction causes a jump to "address assigned to BACK minus 6", namely, to address "100H - 6H = 0FAH".

Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: **BACK : BR !0FAH**

*
---

Multiplication of value of first and second terms

**[Function]**

Returns the result of multiplication (product) between the values of the 1st and 2nd terms of an expression.

**[Application example]**

TEN	EQU	10H		
	MOV	A, #TEN * 3	;	(1)

(1) With the EQU directive, the value "10H" is defined in the name "TEN".

"#" indicates immediate data. The expression "TEN \* 3" is the same as "10H \* 3" and returns the value "30H".

Therefore, (1) in the above expression can also be described as: MOV A, #30H

/

Divides the value of the 1st term of an expression by the value of its 2nd term and returns the integer part of the result.

**[Function]**

Divides the value of the 1st term of an expression by the value of its 2nd term and returns the integer part of the result.

The decimal fraction part of the result will be truncated. If the divisor (2nd term) of a division operation is 0, an error occurs

**[Application example]**

MOV     A, #256 / 50             ;   (1)

**(1) The result of the division "256 / 50" is 5 with remainder 6.**

**The operator returns the value "5" that is the integer part of the result of the division.**

**Therefore, (1) in the above expression can also be described as: MOV A, #5**

**MOD**

Obtains the remainder in the result of dividing the value of the 1st term of an expression by the value of its 2nd term.

**[Function]**

Obtains the remainder in the result of dividing the value of the 1st term of an expression by the value of its 2nd term.

An error occurs if the divisor (2nd term) is 0.

A blank is required before and after the MOD operator.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #256 MOD 50    ; (1)
```

**(1) The result of the division "256 / 50" is 5 with remainder 6.**

**The MOD operator returns the remainder 6.**

**Therefore, (1) in the above expression can also be described as: MOV A, #6**

**+sign**

Returns the value of the term as it is.

**[Function]**

Returns the value of the term of an expression without change.

**[Application example]**

```
FIVE EQU +5 ; (1)
```

(1) The value "5" of the term is returned without change.

The value "5" is defined in name "FIVE" with the EQU directive.

**-sign**

The term value 2 complement is sought.

**[Function]**

Returns the value of the term of an expression by the two's complement.

**[Application example]**

```
NO      EQU      -1      ; (1)
```

(1) -1 becomes the two's complement of 1.

The two's complement of binary 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0001 becomes:

1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111

Therefore, with the EQU directive, the value "0FFFFFFFH" is defined in the name "NO".

#### 4.1.5 Logic operators

The following logic operators are available.

Operator	Overview
NOT	Obtains the logical negation (NOT) by each bit.
AND	Obtains the logical AND operation for each bit of the first and second term values.
OR	Obtains the logical OR operation for each bit of the first and second term values.
XOR	Obtains the exclusive OR operation for each bit of the first and second term values.

**NOT**

Obtains the logical negation (NOT) by each bit.

**[Function]**

Negates the value of the term of an expression on a bit-by-bit basis and returns the result.  
 A blank is required between the NOT operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOVW AX, #LOWW ( NOT 3H ) ; (1)
```

(1) Logical negation is performed on "3H" as follows:

NOT)	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0011
	1111	1111	1111	1111	1111	1111	1111	1100

**0FFFFFFCH is returned.**

Therefore, (1) can also be described as: **MOVW AX, #LOWW #0FFFFFFCH**

**AND**

Obtains the logical AND operation for each bit of the first and second term values.

**[Function]**

Performs an AND (logical product) operation between the value of the 1st term of an expression and the value of its 2nd term on a bit-by-bit basis and returns the result.

A blank is required before and after the AND operator.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #6FAH AND 0FH    ; (1)
```

**(1) AND operation is performed between the two values "6FAH" and "0FH" as follows:**

	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0110	1111	1010
AND)	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1111
	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1010

**The result "0AH" is returned. Therefore, (1) in the above expression can also be described as:  
MOV A, #0AH**

**OR**

Obtains the logical OR operation for each bit of the first and second term values.

**[Function]**

Performs an OR (Logical sum) operation between the value of the 1st term of an expression and the value of its 2nd term on a bit-by-bit basis and returns the result.

A blank is required before and after the OR operator.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #0AH OR 1101B    ; (1)
```

**(1) OR operation is performed between the two values "0AH" and "1101B" as follows:**

	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1010
OR)	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1101
	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1111

**The result "0FH" is returned.**

**Therefore, (1) in the above expression can also be described as: MOV A, #0FH**

**XOR**

Obtains the exclusive OR operation for each bit of the first and second term values.

**[Function]**

Performs an Exclusive-OR operation between the value of the 1st term of an expression and the value of its 2nd term on a bit-by-bit basis and returns the result. A blank is required before and after the XOR operator.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #9AH XOR 9DH    ; (1)
```

(1) XOR operation is performed between the two values "9AH" and "9DH" as follows:

	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1001	1010
XOR)	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	1001	1101
	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0000	0111

The result "7H" is returned.

Therefore, (1) in the above expression can also be described as: MOV A, #7H

#### 4.1.6 Relational operators

The following relational operators are available.

Operator	Overview
EQ ( = )	Compares whether values of first term and second term are equivalent.
NE ( <> )	Compares whether values of first term and second term are not equivalent.
GT ( > )	Compares whether value of first term is greater than value of the second.
GE ( >= )	Compares whether value of first term is greater than or equivalent to the value of the second term.
LT ( < )	Compares whether value of first term is smaller than value of the second.
LE ( <= )	Compares whether value of first term is smaller than or equivalent to the value of the second term.

**EQ ( = )**

Compares whether values of first term and second term are equivalent.

**[Function]**

Returns 0FFH (True) if the value of the 1st term of an expression is equal to the value of its 2nd term, and 00H (False) if both values are not equal.

A blank is required before and after the EQ operator.

**[Application example]**

A1	EQU	12C4H		
A2	EQU	12C0H		
	MOV	A, #A1 EQ ( A2 + 4H )		; (1)
	MOV	X, #A1 EQ A2		; (2)

**(1) In (1) above, the expression "A1 EQ ( A2 + 4H )" becomes "12C4H EQ ( 12C0H + 4H )".**

**The operator returns 0FFH because the value of the 1st term is equal to the value of the 2nd term.**

**(2) In (2) above, the expression "A1 EQ A2" becomes "12C4H EQ 12C0H".**

**The operator returns 00H because the value of the 1st term is not equal to the value of the 2nd term.**

**NE ( <> )**

Compares whether values of first term and second term are not equivalent.

**[Function]**

Returns 0FFH (True) if the value of the 1st term of an expression is not equal to the value of its 2nd term, and 00H (False) if both values are equal.

A blank is required before and after the NE operator.

**[Application example]**

```
A1      EQU      5678H
A2      EQU      5670H

        MOV      A, #A1 NE  A2          ; (1)
        MOV      A, #A1 NE ( A2 + 8H ) ; (2)
```

(1) In (1) above, the expression "A1 NE A2" becomes "5678H NE 5670H".

The operator returns 0FFH because the value of the 1st term is not equal to the value of the 2nd term.

(2) In (2) above, the expression "A1 NE ( A2 + 8H )" becomes "5678H NE ( 5670H + 8H )".

The operator returns 00H because the value of the 1st term is equal to the value of the 2nd term.

**GT ( > )**

Compares whether value of first term is greater than value of the second.

**[Function]**

Returns 0FFH (True) if the value of the 1st term of an expression is greater than the value of its 2nd term, and 00H (False) if the value of the 1st term is equal to or less than the value of the 2nd term.

A blank is required before and after the GT operator.

**[Application example]**

```
A1      EQU      1023H
A2      EQU      1013H

        MOV      A, #A1 GT  A2          ; (1)
        MOV      X, #A1 GT  ( A2 + 10H ) ; (2)
```

(1) In (1) above, the expression "A1 GT A2" becomes "1023H GT 1013H".

The operator returns 0FFH because the value of the 1st term is greater than the value of the 2nd term.

(2) In (2) above, the expression "A1 GT ( A2 + 10H )" becomes "1023H GT ( 1013H + 10H )".

The operator returns 00H because the value of the 1st term is equal to the value of the 2nd term.

**GE ( >= )**

Compares whether value of first term is greater than or equivalent to the value of the second term.

**[Function]**

Returns 0FFH (True) if the value of the 1st term of an expression is greater than or equal to the value of its 2nd term, and 00H (False) if the value of the 1st term is less than the value of the 2nd term.

A blank is required before and after the GE operator.

**[Application example]**

```
A1      EQU      2037H
A2      EQU      2015H

        MOV      A, #A1 GE  A2          ; (1)
        MOV      X, #A1 GE  ( A2 + 23H ) ; (2)
```

(1) In (1) above, the expression "A1 GE A2" becomes "2037H GE 2015H".

The operator returns 0FFH because the value of the 1st term is greater than the value of the 2nd term.

(2) In (2) above, the expression "A1 GE ( A2 + 23H )" becomes "2037H GE ( 2015H + 23H )".

The operator returns 00H because the value of the 1st term is less than the value of the 2nd term.

**LT (<)**

Compares whether value of first term is smaller than value of the second.

**[Function]**

Returns 0FFH (True) if the value of the 1st term of an expression is less than the value of its 2nd term, and 00H (False) if the value of the 1st term is equal to or greater than the value of the 2nd term.

A blank is required before and after the LT operator

**[Application example]**

```

A1      EQU      1000H
A2      EQU      1020H

        MOV      A, #A1 LT A2          ; (1)
        MOV      X, # ( A1 + 20H ) LT A2 ; (2)

```

**(1) In (1) above, the expression "A1 LT A2" becomes "1000H LT 1020H".**

The operator returns 0FFH because the value of the 1st term is less than the value of the 2nd term.

**(2) In (2) above, the expression "( A1 + 20H ) LT A2" becomes "( 1000H + 20H ) LT 1020H".**

The operator returns 00H because the value of the 1st term is equal to the value of the 2nd term.

**LE ( <= )**

Compares whether value of first term is smaller than or equivalent to the value of the second term.

**[Function]**

Returns 0FFH (True) if the value of the 1st term of an expression is less than or equal to the value of its 2nd term, and 00H (False) if the value of the 1st term is greater than the value of the 2nd term.

A blank is required before and after the LE operator.

**[Application example]**

```
A1      EQU      103AH
A2      EQU      1040H

        MOV      A, #A1 LE A2          ; (1)
        MOV      X, # ( A1 + 7H ) LE A2 ; (2)
```

**(1) In (1) above, the expression "A1 LE A2" becomes "103AH LE 1040H".**

**The operator returns 0FFH because the value of the 1st term is less than the value of the 2nd term.**

**(2) In (2) above, the expression "( A1 + 7H ) LE A2" becomes "( 103AH + 7H ) LE 1040H".**

**The operator returns 00H because the value of the 1st term is greater than the value of the 2nd term.**

#### 4.1.7 Shift operators

The following shift operators are available.

Operator	Overview
SHR	Obtains only the right-shifted value of the first term which appears in the second term.
SHL	Obtains only the left-shifted value of the first term which appears in the second term.



**SHL**

Obtains only the left-shifted value of the first term which appears in the second term.

**[Function]**

Returns a value obtained by shifting the value of the 1st term of an expression to the left the number of bits specified by the value of the 2nd term. Zeros equivalent to the specified number of bits shifted move into the low-order bits.

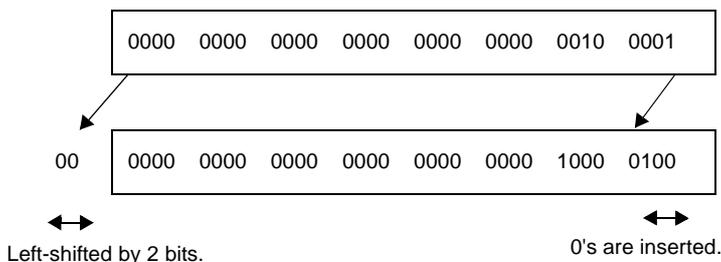
A blank is required before and after the SHL operator.

If the number of shifted bits is 0, the value of the first term is returned as is. If the number of shifted bits exceeds 32, the space is automatically filled with zeros.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #21H SHL 2      ; (1)
```

(1) This operator shifts the value "21H" to the left by 2 bits.



The value "84H" is returned.

Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: MOV A, #84H

#### 4.1.8 Byte separation operators

The following byte separation operators are available.

Operator	Overview
HIGH	Returns the high-order 8-bit value of a term.
LOW	Returns the low-order 8-bit value of a term.

**HIGH**

Returns the high-order 8-bit value of a term.

**[Function]**

Returns the high-order 8-bit value of a term.  
 A blank is required between the HIGH operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #HIGH 1234H    ; (1)
```

(1) By executing a MOV instruction, this operator returns the high-order 8-bit value "12H" of the expression "1234H".  
 Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: MOV A, #12H

**[Remark]**

A HIGH operation for an SFR name is performed, using either of the following description methods.

```
HIGH SFR-name
```

Or,

```
HIGH [ ] ( [ ] SFR-name [ ] )
```

The result obtained from the operation is an operand of the absolute NUMBER attribute.  
 No other operations can be performed for the SFR name .  
 <Example>

<u>Symbol field</u>	<u>Mnemonic field</u>	<u>Operand field</u>
	MOV	R0, #HIGH PM0
	MOV	R1, #HIGH PM1 + 1H ; Equivalent to ( HIGH PM1 ) + 1
	MOV	R1, #HIGH ( PM1 + 1H ) ; An error is returned because
		; operands other than HIGH, LOW,
		; HIGHW, and LOWW are specified
		; as the SFR name

**LOW**

Returns the low-order 8-bit value of a term.

**[Function]**

Returns the low-order 8-bit value of a term.

A blank is required between the LOW operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOV    A, #LOW 1234H    ; (1)
```

(1) By executing a MOV instruction, this operator returns the low-order 8-bit value "34H" of the expression "1234H".

Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: MOV A, #34H

**[Remark]**

A LOW operation for an SFR name is performed, using either of the following description methods.

```
LOW SFR-name
```

Or,

```
LOW [ ] ( [ ] SFR-name [ ] )
```

The result obtained from the operation is an operand of the absolute NUMBER attribute.

No other operations can be performed for the SFR name .

<Example>

<u>Symbol field</u>	<u>Mnemonic field</u>	<u>Operand field</u>	
	MOV	R0, #LOW PM0	
	MOV	R1, #LOW PM1 + 1H	; Equivalent to #( LOW PM1 ) + 1
	MOV	R1, #LOW ( PM1 + 1H )	; An error is returned because
			; operands other than HIGH, LOW,
			; HIGHW, and LOWW are specified
			; as the SFR name

#### 4.1.9 Word separation operators

The following word separation operators are available.

Operator	Overview
<a href="#">HIGHW</a>	Returns the high-order 16-bit value of a term.
<a href="#">LOWW</a>	Returns the low-order 16-bit value of a term.
<a href="#">MIRHW</a>	Obtains the 16 higher-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area specified as the operand in the mirror source area.
<a href="#">MIRLW</a>	Obtains the 16 lower-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area specified as the operand in the mirror source area.

**HIGHW**

Returns the high-order 16-bit value of a term.

**[Function]**

Returns the high-order 16-bit value of a term.

A blank is required between the HIGHW operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOVW    AX, #HIGHW    12345678H    ; (1)
MOV     ES, #HIGHW    LAB          ; (2)
MOVW    AX, ES: !LAB
```

(1) By executing a MOVW instruction, this operator returns the high-order 16-bit value "1234H" of the expression "12345678H".

Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: MOVW AX, #1234H

(2) By executing the MOV instruction on line (2), the higher address of label LAB is set to the ES register.

**[Remark]**

A HIGHW operation for an SFR name is performed, using either of the following description methods.

```
HIGHW SFR-name
```

Or,

```
HIGHW [ ] ( [ ] SFR-name [ ] )
```

The result obtained from the operation is an operand of the absolute NUMBER attribute.

No other operations can be performed for the SFR name.

<Example>

<u>Symbol field</u>	<u>Mnemonic field</u>	<u>Operand field</u>
	MOVW	RP0, #HIGHW PM0
	MOVW	RP1, #HIGHW PM1 + 1H ; Equivalent to #( HIGHW PM1 ) + 1
	MOVW	RP1, #HIGHW ( PM1 + 1H ) ; An error is returned because ; operands other than HIGH, LOW, ; HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, and MIRLW ; are specified as the SFR name

**LOWW**

Returns the low-order 16-bit value of a term.

**[Function]**

Returns the low-order 16-bit value of a term.  
 A blank is required between the LOWW operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOVW    AX, #LOWW    12345678H    ; (1)
```

(1) By executing a MOVW instruction, this operator returns the low-order 16-bit value "5678H" of the expression "12345678H".  
 Therefore, (1) in the above example can also be described as: MOVW AX, #5678H

**[Remark]**

A LOWW operation for an SFR name is performed, using either of the following description methods.

```
LOWW SFR-name
```

Or,

```
LOWW [ ] ( [ ] SFR-name [ ] )
```

The result obtained from the operation is an operand of the absolute NUMBER attribute.  
 No other operations can be performed for the SFR name.  
 <Example>

<u>Symbol field</u>	<u>Mnemonic field</u>	<u>Operand field</u>
	MOVW	RP0, #LOWW PM0
	MOVW	RP1, #LOWW PM1 + 1H ; Equivalent to #( LOWW PM1 ) + 1
	MOVW	RP1, #LOWW ( PM1 + 1H ) ; An error is returned because
		; operands other than HIGH, LOW,
		; HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, and MIRLW
		; are specified as the SFR name

**MIRHW**

Obtains the 16 higher-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area specified as the operand in the mirror source area.

**[Function]**

Returns the 16 higher-order bits of the 32 bits of an address in the mirror destination area specified as the operand in the mirror source area.

A blank is required between the MIRHW operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOVW    AX, #MIRHW    00001000H    ; (1)
```

- (1) When the MOVW instruction is executed, the value of the 16 higher-order bits of 00001000H, i.e. 0000H, is converted into the 16 higher-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area (000FH), and the AX register is loaded with this value.

When the operand is beyond the range of the mirror source area, the operation is the same as for HIGHW.

**[Remark]**

A MIRHW operation for an SFR name is performed, using either of the following description methods.

```
MIRHW SFR-name
```

Or,

```
MIRHW[ ] ( [ ] SFR-name [ ] )
```

The result obtained from the operation is an operand of the absolute NUMBER attribute.

No other operations can be performed for the SFR name.

<Example>

<u>Symbol field</u>	<u>Mnemonic field</u>	<u>Operand field</u>
	MOVW	RP0, #MIRHW PM0
	MOVW	RP1, #MIRHW PM1 + 1H ; Equivalent to #( MIRHW PM1 ) + 1
	MOVW	RP1, #MIRHW ( PM1 + 1H ) ; An error is returned because ; operands other than HIGH, LOW, ; HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, and MIRLW ; are specified as the SFR name

**MIRLW**

Obtains the 16 lower-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area specified as the operand in the mirror source area.

**[Function]**

Returns the 16 lower-order bits of the 32 bits of an address in the mirror destination area specified as the operand in the mirror source area.

A blank is required between the MIRLW operator and the term.

**[Application example]**

```
MOVW    AX, #MIRLW    00001000H    ; (1)
```

(1) When the MOVW instruction is executed on an 8-bit CPU, the value of the 16 lower-order bits of 00001000H, i.e. 1000H, is converted into the 16 lower-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area (9000H), and the AX register is loaded with this value.

When the MOVW instruction is executed on a 16-bit CPU, the value of the 16 lower-order bits of 00001000H, i.e. 1000H, is converted into the 16 lower-order bits of an address in the mirror destination area (1000H), and the AX register is loaded with this value.

When the operand is beyond the range of the mirror source area, the operation is the same as for LOWW.

**[Remark]**

A MIRLW operation for an SFR name is performed, using either of the following description methods.

```
MIRLW SFR-name
```

Or,

```
MIRLW[ ] ( [ ] SFR-name [ ] )
```

The result obtained from the operation is an operand of the absolute NUMBER attribute.

No other operations can be performed for the SFR name.

<Example>

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field
	MOVW	RP0, #MIRLW PM0
	MOVW	RP1, #MIRLW PM1 + 1H ; Equivalent to #( LOWW PM1 ) + 1
	MOVW	RP1, #MIRLW ( PM1 + 1H ) ; An error is returned because ; operands other than HIGH, LOW, ; HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, and MIRLW ; are specified as the SFR name

#### 4.1.10 Special operators

The following special operators are available.

Operator	Overview
<a href="#">DATAPOS</a>	Obtains the address part of a bit symbol.
<a href="#">BITPOS</a>	Obtains the bit part of a bit symbol.
<a href="#">MASK</a>	Obtains a 16-bit value in which the specified bit positions are 1 and all others are 0.

**DATAPOS**

Obtains the address part of a bit symbol.

**[Function]**

Returns the address portion (byte address) of a bit symbol.

**[Application example]**

```
SYM    EQU    0FE68H.6                ; (1)

      MOV    A, !DATAPOS SYM          ; (2)
```

(1) An EQU directive defines the name "SYM" with a value of 0FE68H.6.

(2) "DATAPOS SYM" represents "DATAPOS 0FE68H.6", and "0FE68H" is returned.  
Therefore, (2) in the above example can also be described as: MOV A, !0FE68H

**BITPOS**

Obtains the bit part of a bit symbol.

**[Function]**

Returns the bit portion (bit position) of a bit symbol.

**[Application example]**

```
SYM    EQU    0FE68H.6                ; (1)

CLR1   [HL].BITPOS SYM                ; (2)
```

(1) An EQU directive defines the name "SYM" with a value of 0FE68H.6.

(2) "BITPOS.SYM" represents "BITPOS 0FE68H.6", and "6" is returned.  
A CLR1 instruction clears [HL].6 to 0.

**MASK**

Obtains a 16-bit value in which the specified bit positions are 1 and all others are 0.

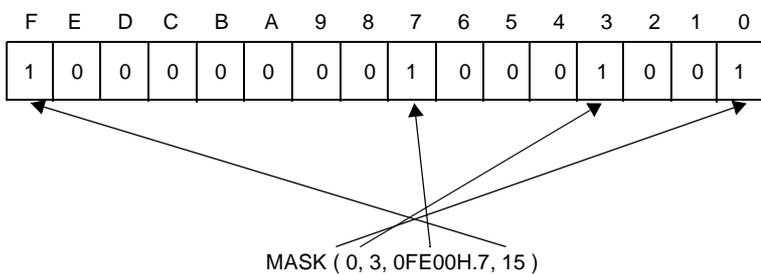
**[Function]**

Returns a 16-bit value in which the specified bit position is 1 and all others are set to 0.

**[Application example]**

```
MOVW    AX, #MASK ( 0, 3, 0FE00H.7, 15 ) ; (1)
```

(1) A MOVW instruction returns the value "8089H".



#### 4.1.11 Other operator

The following operators are also available.

Operator	Overview
( )	Prioritizes the calculation within ( )

( )

Prioritizes the calculation within ( )

### [Function]

Causes an operation in parentheses to be performed prior to operations outside the parentheses.

This operator is used to change the order of precedence of other operators.

If parentheses are nested at multiple levels, the expression in the innermost parentheses will be calculated first.

### [Application example]

MOV    A, # ( 4 + 3 ) \* 2

$$(4 + 3) * 2$$

Calculations are performed in the order of expressions (1), (2) and the value "14" is returned as a result.

If parentheses are not used,

$$4 + 3 * 2$$

Calculations are performed in the order (1), (2) shown above, and the value "10" is returned as a result.

See [Table 4-5. Operator Precedence Levels](#), for the order of precedence of operators.

4.1.12 Restrictions on operations

The operation of an expression is performed by connecting terms with operator(s). Elements that can be described as terms are constants, \$, names and labels. Each term has a relocation attribute and a symbol attribute.

Depending on the types of relocation attribute and symbol attribute inherent in each term, operators that can work on the term are limited. Therefore, when describing an expression it is important to pay attention to the relocation attribute and symbol attribute of each term constituting the expression.

(1) Operators and relocation attributes

Each term constituting an expression has a relocation attribute and a symbol attribute.

If terms are categorized by relocation attribute, they can be divided into 3 types: absolute terms, relocatable terms and external reference terms.

The following table shows the types of relocation attributes and their properties, and also the corresponding terms.

Table 4-6. Relocation Attribute Types

Type	Property	Corresponding Elements
Absolute term	Term that is a value or constant determined at assembly time	- Constants - Labels in absolute segments - \$, indicating a location address defined in an absolute segment - Names defined with absolute values such as constants or the labels and \$ listed above.
Relocatable term	Term with a value that is not determined at assembly time	- Labels defined in relocatable segments - \$, indicating a relocatable address defined in a relocatable segment - Names defined with relocatable symbols
External reference term <sup>Note</sup>	Term for external reference of symbol in other module	- Labels defined with EXTRN directive - Names defined with EXTBIT directive

**Note** There are 7 operators which can take an external reference term as the target of an operation; these are "+", "HIGH", "LOW", "HIGHW", "LOWW", "MIRHW" and "MIRLW". However, only one external reference term is allowed in one expression, and it must be connected with the "+" operator.

The following tables categorize combinations of operators and terms which can be used in expressions by relocation attribute.

Table 4-7. Combinations of Operators and Terms by Relocation Attribute (Relocatable Terms)

Operator Type	Relocation Attribute of Term			
	X:ABS Y:ABS	X:ABS Y:REL	X:REL Y:ABS	X:REL Y:REL
X + Y	A	R	R	-
X - Y	A	-	R	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X * Y	A	-	-	-
X / Y	A	-	-	-
X MOD Y	A	-	-	-
X SHL Y	A	-	-	-

Operator Type	Relocation Attribute of Term			
	X:ABS Y:ABS	X:ABS Y:REL	X:REL Y:ABS	X:REL Y:REL
X SHR Y	A	-	-	-
X EQ Y	A	-	-	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X LT Y	A	-	-	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X LE Y	A	-	-	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X GT Y	A	-	-	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X GE Y	A	-	-	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X NE Y	A	-	-	A <sup>Note 1</sup>
X AND Y	A	-	-	-
X OR Y	A	-	-	-
X XOR Y	A	-	-	-
NOT X	A	A	-	-
+ X	A	A	R	R
- X	A	A	-	-
HIGH X	A	A	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>
LOW X	A	A	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>
HIGHW X	A	A	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>
LOWW X	A	A	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>
MIRHW X	A	A	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>
MIRLW X	A	A	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>
MASK ( X )	A	A	-	-
DATAPOS X.Y	A	-	-	-
BITPOS X.Y	A	-	-	-
MASK ( X.Y )	A	-	-	-
DATAPOS X	A	A	R	R
BITPOS X	A	A	A	A

ABS : Absolute term  
 REL : Relocatable term  
 A : Result is absolute term  
 R : Result is relocatable term  
 - : Operation not possible

- Notes 1.** Operation is possible only when X and Y are defined in the same segment, and when X and Y are not relocatable terms operated on by HIGH, LOW, HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW, or DATAPOS.
- 2.** Operation is possible when X and Y are not relocatable terms operated on by HIGH, LOW, HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW, or DATAPOS.

There are 7 operators which can take an external reference term as the target of an operation; these are "+", "HIGH", "LOW", "HIGHW", "LOWW", "MIRHW" and "MIRLW". However, only one external reference term is allowed in one expression, and it must be connected with the "+" operator.

The possible combinations of operators and terms are as follows, categorized by relocation attribute.

**Table 4-8. Combinations of Operators and Terms by Relocation Attribute (External Reference Terms)**

Operator Type	Relocation Attribute of Term				
	X:ABS Y:EXT	X:EXT Y:ABS	X:REL Y:EXT	X:EXT Y:REL	X:EXT Y:EXT
X + Y	E	E	-	-	-
X - Y	-	E	-	-	-
+ X	A	E	R	E	E
HIGH X	A	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>
LOW X	A	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>
HIGHW X	A	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>
LOWW X	A	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>
MIRHW X	A	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>
MIRLW X	A	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	R <sup>Note 2</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>	E <sup>Note 1</sup>
MASK ( X )	A	-	-	-	-
DATAPOS X.Y	-	-	-	-	-
BITPOS X.Y	-	-	-	-	-
MASK ( X.Y )	-	-	-	-	-
DATAPOS X	A	E	R	E	E
BITPOS X	A	E	A	E	E

ABS : Absolute term  
EXT : External reference term  
REL : Relocatable term  
A : Result is absolute term  
E : Result is external reference term  
R : Result is relocatable term  
- : Operation not possible

**Notes 1.** Operation is possible only when X and Y are not external reference terms operated on by HIGH, LOW, HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW, DATAPOS, or BITPOS.

**2.** Operation is possible only when X and Y are not relocatable terms operated on by HIGH, LOW, HIGHW, LOWW, MIRHW, MIRLW, or DATAPOS.

## (2) Operators and symbol attributes

Each of the terms constituting an expression has a symbol attribute in addition to a relocation attribute.

If terms are categorized by symbol attribute, they can be divided into two types: NUMBER terms and ADDRESS terms.

The following table shows the types of symbol attributes used in expressions and the corresponding terms.

Table 4-9. Symbol Attribute Types in Operations

Symbol Attribute Type	Corresponding Terms
NUMBER term	- Symbol with NUMBER attribute - Constant
ADDRESS term	- Symbol with ADDRESS attribute - "\$", indicating the location counter

The possible combinations of operators and terms are as follows, categorized by symbol attribute.

Table 4-10. Combinations of Operators and Terms by Symbol Attribute

Operator Type	Symbol Attribute of Term			
	X:ADDRESS Y:ADDRESS	X:ADDRESS Y:NUMBER	X:NUMBER Y:ADDRESS	X:NUMBER Y:NUMBER
X + Y	A	A	A	N
X - Y	N	A	N	N
X * Y	N	N	N	N
X / Y	N	N	N	N
X MOD Y	N	N	N	N
X SHL Y	N	N	N	N
X SHR Y	N	N	N	N
X EQ Y	N	N	N	N
X LT Y	N	N	N	N
X LE Y	N	N	N	N
X GT Y	N	N	N	N
X GE Y	N	N	N	N
X NE Y	N	N	N	N
X AND Y	N	N	N	N
X OR Y	N	N	N	N
X XOR Y	N	N	N	N
NOT X	A	A	N	N
+ X	A	A	N	N
- X	A	A	N	N
HIGH X	A	A	N	N
LOW X	A	A	N	N
HIGHW X	A	A	N	N
LOWW X	A	A	N	N
MIRHW X	A	A	N	N
MIRLW X	A	A	N	N
DATAPOS X	A	A	N	N

Operator Type	Symbol Attribute of Term			
	X:ADDRESS Y:ADDRESS	X:ADDRESS Y:NUMBER	X:NUMBER Y:ADDRESS	X:NUMBER Y:NUMBER
MASK X	N	N	N	N

- ADDRESS : ADDRESS term
- NUMBER : NUMBER term
- A : Result is ADDRESS term
- N : Result is NUMBER term
- : Operation not possible

**(3) How to check operation restrictions**

The following is an example of how to interpret the operation of relocation attributes and symbol attributes.

```
BR    $TABLE + 5H
```

Here, "TABLE" is presumed to be a defined label in a relocatable code segment.

**(a) Operation and relocation attributes**

"TABLE + 5H" is a relocatable term + an absolute term, so the rules of "[Table 4-7. Combinations of Operators and Terms by Relocation Attribute \(Relocatable Terms\)](#)" apply.

- Operator type ... X + Y
- Relocation attribute of term ... X:REL, Y:ABS

Therefore, it can be understood that the result is "R", or more specifically a relocatable term.

**(b) [Operation and symbol attributes]**

"TABLE + 5H" is an ADDRESS term + a NUMBER term, so the rules of "[Table 4-10. Combinations of Operators and Terms by Symbol Attribute](#)" apply.

- Operator type ... X + Y
- Relocation attribute of term ... X:ADDRESS, Y:NUMBER

Therefore, it can be understood that the result is "A", or more specifically an ADDRESS term.

**4.1.13 Absolute expression definitions**

Absolute expressions are expressions with values determined by evaluation at assembly time.

The following belong to the category of absolute expressions:

- Constants
- Expressions that are composed only of constants (constant expressions)
- Constants, EQU symbols defined from constant expressions, and SET symbols
- Expressions that operate on the above

**Remark** Only backward referencing of symbols is possible.

4.1.14 Bit position specifier

Bit access becomes possible via use of the ( . ) bit position specifier.

(1) Description Format



X (First Term)		Y (Second Term)
General register	A	Expression (0 - 7)
Control register	PSW	Expression (0 - 7)
Special function register	sfr <sup>Note</sup>	Expression (0 - 7)
Memory	[HL] <sup>Note</sup>	Expression (0 - 7)

**Note** For details on the specific description, see the user's manual of each device.

(2) Function

- The first term specifies a byte address, and the second term specifies a bit position. This makes it possible to access a specific bit.

(3) Explanation

- An expression that uses a bit position specifier is called a bit term.
- The bit position specifier is not affected by the precedence order of operators. The left side is recognized as term 1 and the right side is recognized as term 2.
- The following restrictions apply to the first term:
  - A NUMBER or ADDRESS attribute expression, an SFR name supporting 8-bit access, or a register name (A) can be specified.
  - If the first term is an absolute expression, the area must be 0H to 0FFFFFFH.
  - External reference symbols can be specified.
- The following restrictions apply to the second term:
  - The value of the expression must be in the range from 0 to 7. When this range is exceeded, an error occurs.
  - It is possible to specify only absolute NUMBER attribute expressions.
  - External reference symbols cannot be specified.

(4) Operations and relocation attributes

- The following table shows combinations of terms 1 and 2 by relocation attribute.

Terms combination X:	ABS	ABS	REL	REL	ABS	EXT	REL	EXT	EXT
Terms combination Y:	ABS	REL	ABS	REL	EXT	ABS	EXT	REL	EXT
X.Y	A	-	R	-	-	E	-	-	-

- ABS : Absolute term
- REL : Relocatable term
- EXT : External reference term
- A : Result is absolute term

- E : Result is external reference term
- R : Result is relocatable term
- : Operation not possible

### (5) Bit symbol values

- When a bit symbol is defined by using the bit position specifier in the operand field of an EQU directive, the value of the bit symbol is as follows:

Operand Type	Symbol Value
A.bit <sup>Note 2</sup>	1.bit
PSW.bit <sup>Note 2</sup>	FFFFAH.bit
sfr <sup>Note 1</sup> .bit <sup>Note 2</sup>	FFFXXH.bit <sup>Note 3</sup>
expression.bit <sup>Note 2</sup>	XXXXXH.bit <sup>Note 4</sup>

**Notes 1.** For a detailed description, see the user's manual of each device.

2. bit = 0 - 7
3. FFFXXH is an sfr address
4. XXXXXH is an expression value

### (6) Example

SET1	OFFE20H.3	
SET1	A.5	
CLR1	P1.2	
SET1	1 + OFFE30H.3	; Equals OFFE31H.3
SET1	OFFE40H.4 + 2	; Equals OFFE40H.6

#### 4.1.15 Identifiers

An identifier is a name used for symbols, labels, macros etc.

Identifiers are described according to the following basic rules.

- Identifiers consist of alphanumeric characters and symbols that are used as characters (?, @, \_)  
However, the first character cannot be a number (0 to 9).
- Reserved words cannot be used as identifiers.  
With regard to reserved words, see "[4.5 Reserved Words](#)".
- The assembler distinguishes between uppercase and lowercase.

#### 4.1.16 Operand characteristics

Instructions and directives requiring one or more operands differ in the size and address range of the required operand values and in the symbol attributes of the operands.

For example, the function of the instruction "MOV r, #byte" is to transfer the value indicated by "byte" to register "r". Because the register is an 8-bit register, the data size of "byte" must be 8 bits or less.

An assembly error will occur at the statement "MOV R0, #100H", because the value of the second operand (100H) cannot be expressed with 8 bits.

Therefore, it is necessary to bear the following points in mind when describing operands.

- Whether the size and address range are suitable for an operand of that instruction (numeric value, name, label)
- Whether the symbol attribute is suitable for an operand of that instruction (name, label)

##### (1) Operand value sizes and address ranges

There are conditions that limit the size and address ranges of numeric values, names and labels used as instruction operands.

For instructions, the size and address range of operands are limited by the operand representation. For directives, they are limited by the directive type.

These limiting conditions are as follows.

**Table 4-11. Instruction Operand Value Ranges**

Operand Representation	Value Range	
byte	8-bit value : 0H to 0FFH	
word	word [B] word [C] word [BC]	(1) Numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols 0H to FFFFH (2) ADDRESS attribute symbols In either of the following areas - F000H to FFFFFH - The mirror source area (e.g. 0100H to 0xxxH) when MAA=0 or the mirror source area (e.g. 1100H to 1xxxH) when MAA=1 <sup>Note 1</sup>
	ES : word [B] ES : word [C] ES : word [BC]	(1) Numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols 0H to FFFFH (2) ADDRESS attribute symbols 0H to FFFFFH
	Other than the above	16-bit value : 0H to FFFFH
saddr	FFE20H to FFF1FH <sup>Note 4</sup>	
saddrp	FFE20H to FFF1FH even number <sup>Note 4</sup>	
sfr	FFF20H to FFFFFH: Special function register symbols (SFR symbols), numeric constants, and NUMBER attribute symbols <sup>Note 5</sup>	
sfrp	FFF20H to FFFFFH: Special function register symbols (symbols of SFRs that support 16-bit operations, even values only), numeric constants, and NUMBER attribute symbols <sup>Note 5</sup>	
addr20	!!addr20	0H to FFFFFH
	\$addr20	0H to FFFFFH, and when a branch destination is in the range (-80H) to (+7FH) from the next address after a branch or call instruction
	!addr20	0H to FFFFFH, and when a branch destination is in the range (-8000H) to (+7FFFH) from the next address after a branch or call instruction

Operand Representation	Value Range	
addr16	!addr16 (BR, CALL instructions)	0H to FFFFH (The range in which numeric constants and symbols can be specified is the same)
	!addr16 <sup>Note 2</sup> (Other than BR, CALL instructions)	(1) Numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbol <sup>Note 3</sup> 0H to FFFFH (2) ADDRESS attribute symbol <sup>Note 3</sup> Within one of the following: - F000H to FFFFFH - The mirror source area (e.g. 01000H to 0xxxxH) when MAA=0 or the mirror source area (e.g. 11000H to 1xxxxH) when MAA=1 <sup>Note 1</sup>
	ES:!addr16	(1) Numeric constants or NUMBER attribute symbols <sup>Note 3</sup> 0H to FFFFH (2) ADDRESS attribute symbols <sup>Note 3</sup> 0H to FFFFFH
	!addr16.bit	(1) DBIT symbol, SFBIT or SABIT attribute bit symbols, bit symbols defined with EQU directives (but only when operand includes an ADDRESS attribute symbol) Within one of the following: - F000H to FFFFFH - The mirror source area (e.g. 01000H to 0xxxxH) when MAA=0 or the mirror source area (e.g. 11000H to 1xxxxH) when MAA=1 <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) Bit symbols other than the above 0H to FFFFH
	ES : !addr16.bit	(1) DBIT symbols, SFBIT or SABIT attribute bit symbols, bit symbols defined with EQU directives (only when operand includes an ADDRESS attribute symbol) 0H to FFFFFH (2) Bit symbols other than the above 0H to FFFFH
addr5	0080H to 00BFH (CALLT table area, even values only)	
bit	3-bit value : 0 to 7	
n	2-bit value : 0 to 3	

- Notes 1.** The address range of the mirror source area differs depending to the device. For details, see to the user's manual of the target device.
- 2.** To describe sfr or 2ndsfr as an operand, it can be specified as !sfr and !2ndsfr. These are output as the operands for !addr16 in the code.  
It is possible to described 2ndsfr without "!". The same !addr16 operand code will be output.
- 3.** Only even addresses can be specified for 16-bit data.
- 4.** In order to maintain compatibility with the 78K0, the range from FE20H to FF1FH can be specified with numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols only.
- 5.** For numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols, no check of read/write access for the SFR at the specified address is performed.

The following examples explain why the symbol attribute of an addr16 or word operand affects the range that can be specified for that operand.

For more information about symbol attributes, see "(d) [Symbol attributes](#)".

**(a) !addr16 (Instructions other than BR, CALL)**

This section explains why the range of values that can be specified for an !addr16 operand (instructions other than BR and CALL) differs between (1) numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols and (2) ADDRESS attribute symbols.

Following is an example.

NUMBER0	EQU	0F100H	; (a)
NUMBER1	EQU	0F102H	
NUMBER2	EQU	0F103H	
D0	DSEG	AT 0FF100H	
ADDRESS0 :	DS	1	
ADDRESS1 :	DS	1	
ADDRESS2 :	DS	1	
	CSEG		
	MOV	!NUMBER0, A	; (b)
	MOV	!0F100H, A	; (c)
	MOV	!ADDRESS0, A	; (d)

Line (a) contains a NUMBER attribute symbol. The following explains the case when this NUMBER attribute symbol is specified as an !addr16 operand.

The "MOV !addr16, A" instruction in the instruction set uses direct addressing for the !addr16 operand. In line (b) of the example, the value in register A is transferred to address 0FF100H. The NUMBER attribute symbol in line (a) could be replaced with the value in line (c). That is, the NUMBER0 symbol (the NUMBER attribute symbol specified for the !addr16 operand) and the numeric value 0F100H both indicate the same address, namely "0F100H". With respect to the range, NUMBER attribute symbols used as !addr16 operands (instructions other than BR and CALL) can have values from 0H to FFFFH. These values specify addresses from F0000H to FFFFFH.

Next, the following explains the case where the same kind of processing is performed for the ADDRESS0 label, an ADDRESS attribute symbol.

The addr16 range is 0000H to FFFFH, while the value of the ADDRESS symbol in line (d) is in the RAM memory space FxxxH to FFFFFH. Normally this would result in an error. Therefore, to facilitate program development, provision is made for operand labels like ADDRESS0 (ADDRESS attribute symbols), under which the operand range F0000H to FFFFFH is allowed.

To summarize, !addr16 operands (instructions other than BR, CALL) that are ADDRESS attribute symbols can have values from F0000H to FFFFH. This allows them to be specified as !addr16 operands just as they are.

Additionally, support for !addr16 is required when ROM areas are mirrored to the mirror destination area. This is shown in the following example.

M0	CSEG	MIRRORP	
ADDRESS0 :	DB	12H	
ADDRESS1 :	DB	34H	
ADDRESS2 :	DB	56H	
	CSEG		
	MOV	A, !ADDRESS0	; (e)

Segment M0 is located in the ROM area (mirror source area) that is mirrored in the RAM area. Segment M0 is located at 01000H to 0xxxxH when MAA=0, and at 11000H to 1xxxxH when MAA=1. Due to this, the value of the ADDRESS0 symbol in line (e) is in the range from 01000H to 0xxxxH or from 11000H to 1xxxxH. To facilitate program development, references to symbols in mirrored segments like the symbol in line (e) are allowed. Their !addr16 range is 01000H to 0xxxxH, or 11000H to 1xxxxH.

To summarize, !addr16 (instructions other than BR,CALL) symbols with the ADDRESS attribute can have values from 01000H to 0xxxxH, or from 11000H to 1xxxxH. This allows them to be specified as !addr16 operands just as they are.

#### (b) ES:!addr16

This section explains why the range of values that can be specified for an ES:!addr16 operand varies between (1) numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols and (2) ADDRESS attribute symbols.

Following is an example.

DATA	CSEG	AT	12345H
ADDRESS0 :	DB	12H	
ADDRESS1 :	DB	34H	
ADDRESS2 :	DB	56H	
	CSEG		
	MOV	ES, #HIGHW ADDRESS0	; (f)
	MOV	A, ES:!ADDRESS0	; (g)

The statements in lines (f) and (g) transfer data from ADDRESS0 to register A.

The addr16 range is 0000H to FFFFH. But in line (g) the value of the ADDRESS0 symbol is 12345H. Normally this would result in an error.

Therefore, to facilitate program development, provision is made to allow ADDRESS0 to be in the range 0H to FFFFFH, making it possible to write lines like line (g).

To summarize, ES:!addr16 operands which are ADDRESS attribute symbols can be specified just as they are. Values from 0H to FFFFFH can also be specified just as they are.

#### (c) !addr16.bit, ES:!addr16.bit

This section explains why the value range in !addr16.bit and ES:!addr16.bit operands differs between (1) DBIT symbols, SFBIT and SABIT attribute bit symbols, bit symbols defined by EQU directives (but only when an ADDRESS attribute symbol is included in the operand) and (2) all other symbols.

This is shown by the following example.

```

                                BSEG
DBITSYM0      DBIT                ; (h)
DBITSYM1      DBIT
DBITSYM2      DBIT

BIT1_PM0      EQU    PM0.1        ; (i)
BIT2_P0       EQU    P0.2        ; (j)

                                DSEG
ADDRESS0 :    DS      1
ADDRESS1 :    DS      1
ADDRESS2 :    DS      1

ADR_BIT0      EQU    ADDRESS0.0   ; (k)
ADR_BIT1      EQU    ADDRESS0.1
ADR_BIT2      EQU    ADDRESS0.2

                                CSEG
SET1          !DBITSYM0          ; (l)
SET1          !BIT1_PM0         ; (m)
SET1          !BIT2_P0         ; (n)
SET1          !ADR_BIT0         ; (o)

```

Describing of the DBIT symbol on line (h), SFBIT attribute and SABIT attribute bit symbols on lines (i) and (j), and the bit symbol defined with the EQU directive on line (k) (only when an ADDRESS attribute symbol is included as an operand) as operands for laddr16.bit is made possible, as stated on lines (l) to (o), so the range of values varies depending on the symbol attribute described.

For the same reasons, the value range for ES:laddr16.bit operands also depends on the symbol attribute.

#### (d) word

This section explains why the value ranges of word operands differs between (1) numeric constants and NUMBER attribute symbols and (2) ADDRESS attribute symbols.

This is shown by the following example.

```

                                DSEG
ADDRESS0 :    DS      1
ADDRESS1 :    DS      1
ADDRESS2 :    DS      1

                                CSEG
MOV          B, #0
MOV          ADDRESS0[B], A      ; (p)
MOV          C, #1
MOV          ADDRESS0[C], A      ; (q)
MOVW        BC, #2
MOV          ADDRESS0[BC], AX    ; (r)

```

Since labels (ADDRESS attribute symbols) are often specified where a word is required in an operand, such as in the word[B], word[C] and word[BC] instructions in lines (p) to (r), coding is made simpler by the ability to specify labels, in the same manner as !addr16.

In the same reason, coding of ES:word[B], ES:word[C], ES:word[BC] instructions is simplified.

**Table 4-12. Value ranges of Directive Operands**

Directive Type	Directive	Value Range
Segment definition	CSEG AT	0H to 0FFFFFFH (excluding SFR and 2ndSFR)
	DSEG AT	0H to 0FFFFFFH (excluding SFR and 2ndSFR)
	BSEG AT	0H to 0FFFFFFH (excluding SFR and 2ndSFR)
	ORG	0H to 0FFFFFFH (excluding SFR and 2ndSFR)
Symbol definition	EQU	20-bit value 0H to FFFFFH
	SET	20-bit value 0H to FFFFFH
Memory initialization and area reservation	DB	8-bit value 0H to FFH
	DW	16-bit value 0H to FFFFH
	DG	20-bit value 0H to FFFFFH
	DS	16-bit value 0H to FFFFH
Automatic branch instruction selection	BR/CALL	0H to FFFFFH

## (2) Sizes of operands required by instructions

Instructions can be classified into machine instructions and directives. When they require immediate data or symbols, the size of the required operand differs according to the instruction or directive. An error occurs when source code specifies data that is larger than the required operand.

Expressions are operated as unsigned 32 bits. When evaluation results exceed 0FFFFFFFFH (32 bits), a warning message is issued.

However, when relocatable or external symbols are specified as operands, the value cannot be determined by the assembler. In these cases, the linker determines the value and performs range checks.

## (3) Symbol attributes and relocation attributes of operands

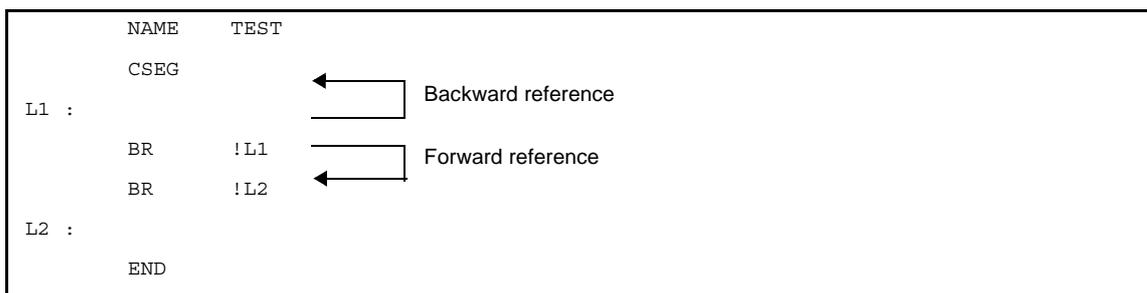
When names, labels, and \$ (which indicate location counters) are described as instruction operands, they may or may not be describable as operands. This depends on the symbol attributes and relocation attributes (see "[4.1.12 Restrictions on operations](#)").

When names and labels are described as instruction operands, they may or may not be describable as operands. This depends on the direction of reference.

Reference direction for names and labels can be backward reference or forward reference.

- Backward reference: A name or label referenced as an operand, which is defined in a line above (before) the name or label
- Forward reference: A name or label referenced as an operand, which is defined in a line below (after) the name or label

<Example>



These symbol attributes and relocation attributes, as well as direction of reference for names and labels, are shown below.

**Table 4-13. Properties of Described Symbols as Operands**

	Symbol Attributes	NUMBER		ADDRESS				NUMBER ADDRESS		sfr Reserved Words <sup>Note 1</sup>	
	Relocation Attributes	Attributes Terms		Attributes Terms		Relocatable Terms		External Reference Terms		sfr	2ndsfr
	Reference Pattern	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward		
Description Format	byte	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
	word	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
	saddr	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK <sup>Note 3</sup>	-
	saddrp	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK <sup>Note 2,4</sup>	-
	sfr	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	OK <sup>Note 2,5</sup>	-
	sfrp	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	OK <sup>Note 2,6</sup>	-
	addr20	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
	addr16	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK <sup>Note 7</sup>	OK <sup>Note 7</sup>
	addr5	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-
	bit	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
n	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

- Forward : Forward reference
- Backward : Backward reference
- OK : Description possible
- : An error

- Notes 1.** The defined symbol specifying sfr or sfrp (sfr area where saddr and sfr are not overlapped) as an operand of EQU directive is only referenced backward. Forward reference is prohibited.
2. If an sfr reserved word in the saddr area has been described for an instruction in which a combination of sfr/sfrp changed from saddr/saddrp exists in the operand combination, a code is output as saddr/saddrp.
  3. sfr reserved word in saddr area
  4. sfrp reserved word in saddr area
  5. Only sfr reserved words that allow 8-bit accessing
  6. Only sfr reserved words that allow 16-bit accessing

7. !sfr and !2ndsfr can be specified only for operand !addr16 of instructions other than BR and CALL.

Table 4-14. Properties of Described Symbols as Operands of Directives

	Symbol Attributes		NUMBER				ADDRESS, SADDR				BIT					
	Relocation Attributes		Attributes Terms		Attributes Terms		Relocatable Terms		External Reference Terms		Attributes Terms		Relocatable Terms		External Reference Terms	
	Reference Pattern		Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward	Backward	Forward
Directive	ORG		OK Note 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	EQU <sup>Note 2</sup>		OK	-	OK	-	OK Note 3	-	-	-	OK	-	OK Note 3	-	-	-
	SET		OK Note 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DB	Size	OK Note 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		Initial value	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DW	Size	OK Note 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		Initial value	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DG	Size	OK Note 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
		Initial value	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-
	DS		OK Note 4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	BR/CALL		OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-

Forward : Forward reference  
 Backward : Backward reference  
 OK : Description possible  
 - : Description impossible

- Notes 1.** Only an absolute expression can be described.
- 2.** An error occurs if an expression including one of the following patterns is described.
- ADDRESS attribute - ADDRESS attribute
  - ADDRESS attribute relational operator ADDRESS attribute
  - HIGH absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - LOW absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - HIGHW absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - LOWW absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - MIRHW absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - MIRLW absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - DATAPOS absolute ADDRESS attribute

- MASK absolute ADDRESS attribute
  - When the operation results can be affected by optimization from the above 10 patterns.
3. A term created by the HIGH/LOW/HIGHW/LOWW/MIRHW/MIRLW/DATAPOS/MASK operator that has a relocatable term is not allowed.
  4. See "[4.2.4 Memory initialization, area reservation directives](#)".

## 4.2 Directives

This chapter explains the directives.

Directives are instructions that direct all types of instructions necessary for the RL78,78K0R assembler to perform a series of processes.

### 4.2.1 Overview

Instructions are translated into object codes (machine language) as a result of assembling, but directives are not converted into object codes in principle.

Directives contain the following functions mainly:

- To facilitate description of source programs
- To initialize memory and reserve memory areas
- To provide the information required for assemblers and linkers to perform their intended processing

The following table shows the types of directives.

**Table 4-15. List of Directives**

Type	Directives
Segment definition directives	CSEG, DSEG, BSEG, ORG
Symbol definition directives	EQU, SET
Memory initialization, area reservation directives	DB, DW, DG, DS, DBIT
Linkage directives	EXTRN, EXTBIT, PUBLIC
Object module name declaration directive	NAME
Branch instruction automatic selection directives	BR, CALL
Macro directives	MACRO, LOCAL, REPT, IRP, EXITM, ENDM
Assemble termination directive	END

The following sections explain the details of each directive.

In the description format of each directive, "[ ]" indicates that the parameter in square brackets may be omitted from specification, and "..." indicates the repetition of description in the same format.

#### 4.2.2 Segment definition directives

The source module is described by dividing each segment unit.

The segment directive is what defines these "segments".

There are 4 types of these segments.

- Code segment
- Data segment
- Bit segment
- Absolute segment

The type of segment determines which area of the memory it is mapped to.

The following shows each segment definition method and the memory address that is mapped to.

**Table 4-16. Segment Definition Method and Memory Address Location**

Segment Type	Definition Method	Memory Address Location
Code segment	CSEG directive	In internal or external ROM address area
Data segment	DSEG directive	In internal or external RAM address area
Bit segment	BSEG directive	In internal RAM saddr area
Absolute segment	Specifies location address (AT location address) to relocation attribute with CSEG, DSEG, BSEG directive	Specified address

The absolute segment is defined for when the user wants to set the address mapped in the memory. For stack area, the user must set a stack pointer and secure an area in the data segment.

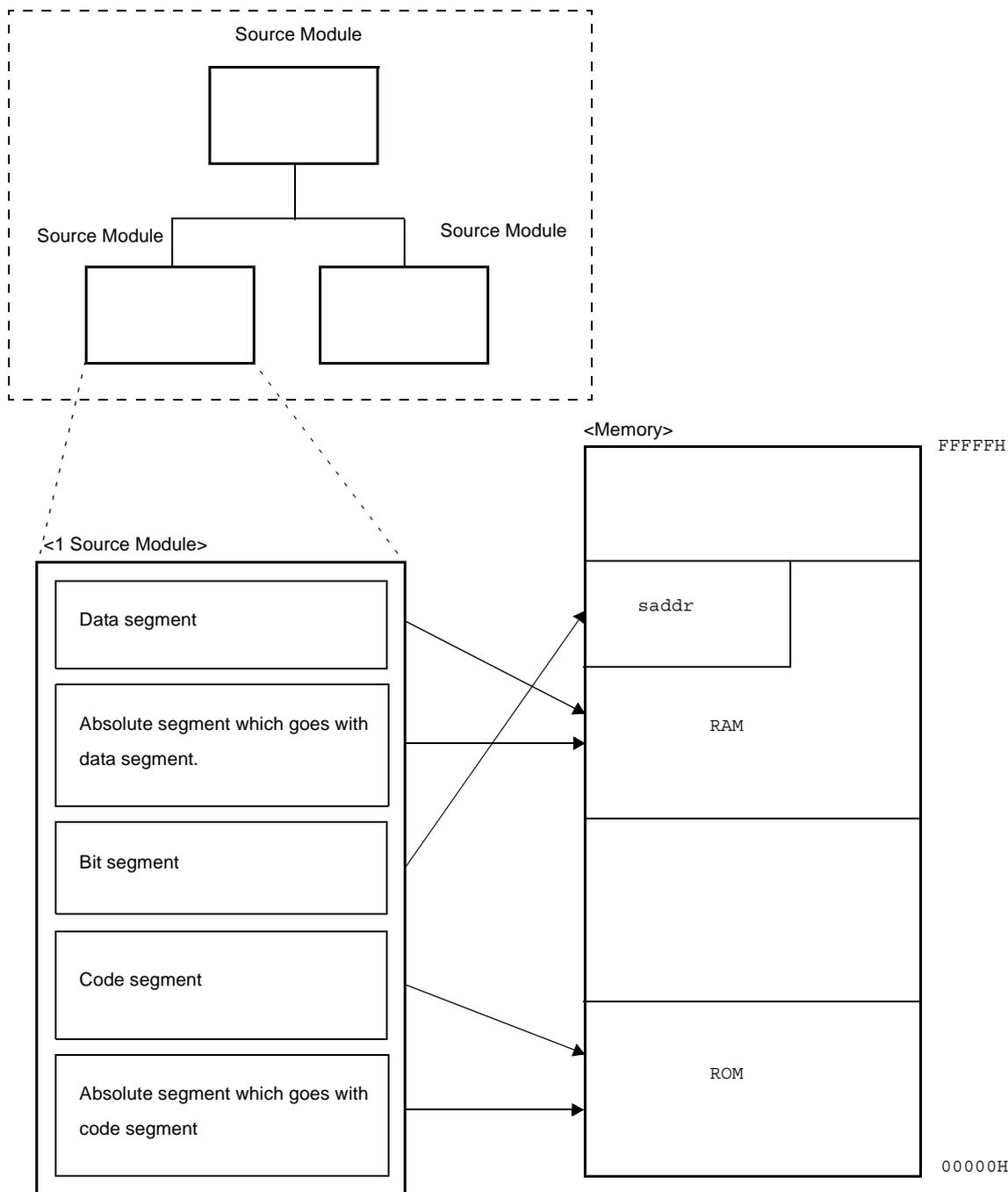
Also, segments cannot be located to the areas below.

Option byte area	C0 to C2H (user option byte) C3H (on-chip-debug option byte)
When specifying security ID	C4H to CDH
When using on-chip debug function	02H to 03H, CE to D7H (for on-chip debugging) Area of program size part from the start address specified with the -go option by the user

When using an on-chip debug function, allocate the area for on-chip debugging by a directive-file to be able to arrange the monitor area for on-chip debugging.

Examples of segment mapping are shown below.

Figure 4-6. Segment Memory Mapping



The following segment definition directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
CSEG	Indicate to the assembler the start of a code segment
DSEG	Indicate to the assembler the start of a data segment
BSEG	Indicate to the assembler the start of a bit segment
ORG	Set the value of the expression specified by its operand of the location counter.

**CSEG**

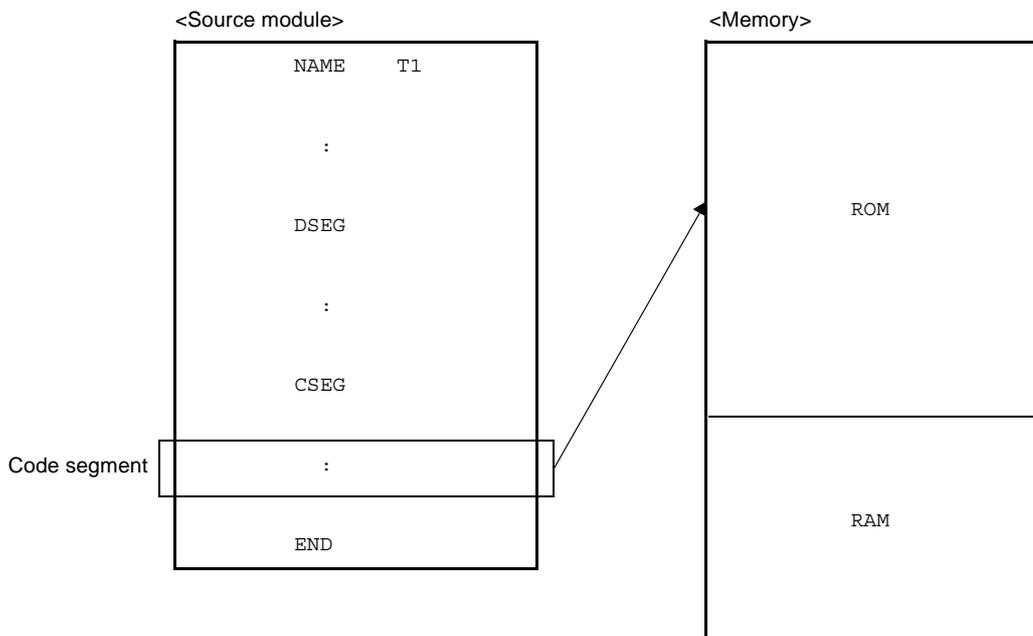
Indicate to the assembler the start of a code segment.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[ <i>segment-name</i> ]	CSEG	[ <i>relocation-attribute</i> ]	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The CSEG directive indicates to the assembler the start of a code segment.
- All instructions described following the CSEG directive belong to the code segment until it comes across a segment definition directives (CSEG, DSEG, BSEG, or ORG) or the END directive, and finally those instructions are located within a ROM address after being converted into machine language.



**[Use]**

- The CSEG directive is used to describe instructions, DB, DW directives, etc. in the code segment defined by the CSEG directive.  
However, to relocate the code segment from a fixed address, "AT *absolute-expression*" must be described as its relocation attribute in the operand field.
- Description of one functional unit such as a subroutine should be defined as a single code segment.  
If the unit is relatively large or if the subroutine is highly versatile (i.e. can be utilized for development of other programs), the subroutine should be defined as a single module.

**[Description]**

- The start address of a code segment can be specified with the ORG directive.  
It can also be specified by describing the relocation attribute "AT *absolute-expression*".
- A relocation attribute defines a range of location addresses for a code segment.

Table 4-17. Relocation Attributes of CSEG

Relocation Attribute	Description Format	Explanation
CALLT0	CALLT0	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment so that the start address of the segment becomes a multiple of 2 within the address range 00080H to 000BFH.
FIXED	FIXED	Tells the assembler to locate the beginning of the specified segment within the address range 000C0H to 0FFFFH
BASE	BASE	Tells the assembler to locate the beginning of the specified segment within the address range 000C0H to 0FFFFH
AT	<i>AT absolute-expression</i>	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment to an absolute address (excluding SFR and 2ndSFR).
UNIT	UNIT	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment to any address (000C0H to EFFFFH in memory area "ROM").
UNITP	UNITP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment to any address, so that the start of the address may be an even number ( 000C0H to EFFFFH) in memory area "ROM").
IXRAM	IXRAM	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment to any address (000C0H to EFFFFH in memory area "ROM").
SECUR_ID	SECUR_ID	It is a security ID specific attribute. Not specify except security ID. Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment within the address range 000C4H to 000CDH.
PAGE64KP	PAGE64KP	Tells the assembler to locates the specified segment in memory area "ROM" that does not extend over a 64 KB boundary, so that the start of the address may be an even number.  The same-named segments but located in different files are not combined.
UNIT64KP	UNIT64KP	Tells the assembler to locates the specified segment in memory area "ROM" that does not extend over a 64 KB boundary, so that the start of the address may be an even number.  The same-named segments are combined.
MIRRORP	MIRRORP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in the mirror source area, either 01000H to 0xxxxH when MAA=0 or 11000H to 1xxxxH when MAA=1. <sup>Note</sup>
OPT_BYTE	OPT_BYTE	It is a user option byte and on-chip debugging specific attribute. Not specify except user option byte and on-chip debugging. Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment within the address range 000C0H to 000C3H.

**Note** The address range of the mirror source area differs with the device.

- If no relocation attribute is specified for the code segment, the assembler will assume that "UNIT" has been specified.
- If a relocation attribute other than those listed in "Table 4-17. Relocation Attributes of CSEG" is specified, the assembler will output an error and assume that "UNIT" has been specified. An error occurs if the size of each code segment exceeds that of the area specified by its relocation attribute.
- If the absolute expression specified with the relocation attribute "AT" is illegal, the assembler will output an error message and continue processing by assuming the value of the expression to be "0".

- By describing a segment name in the symbol field of the CSEG directive, the code segment can be named. If no segment name is specified for a code segment, the assembler will automatically give a default segment name to the code segment.

The default segment names of the code segments are shown below.

Relocation Attribute	Default Segment Name
CALLT0	?CSEGT0
FIXED	?CSEGFIX
UNIT (or omitted)	?CSEG
UNITP	?CSEGUP
IXRAM	?CSEGIX
BASE	?CSEGB
SECUR_ID	?CSECSI
PAGE64KP	?CSEGP64
UNIT64KP	?CSEGU64
MIRRORP	?CSEGMIP
OPT_BYTE	?CSEGOB0
AT	Segment name cannot be omitted.

- When the size of the following segment is 0 among the default segments that C compiler outputs, the relocation attribute is changed by the linker.

Section Name	Relocation Attribute	Relocation Attribute When Being Size 0
@@CALT	CSEG CALLT0	CSEG UNIT
@@CNST	CSEG MIRRORP	CSEG UNIT

- An error occurs if the segment name is omitted when the relocation attribute is AT.
- If two or more code segments have the same relocation attribute (except AT), these code segments may have the same segment name.  
These same-named code segments are processed as a single code segment within the assembler.  
An error occurs if the same-named segments differ in their relocation attributes. Therefore, the number of the same-named segments for each relocation attribute is one.
- Description of a code segment can be divided into units. The same relocation attribute and the samename code segment described in one module are handled by the assembler as a series of segments.

- Cautions 1. Description of a code segment whose relocation attribute is AT cannot be divided into units.**
- 2. Insert a 1-byte interval, as necessary, so that the address specified by relocation attribute CALLT0 may be an even number.**

- The same-named data segments in two or more different modules can be specified only when their relocation attributes are UNIT, CALLT0, FIXED, UNITP, BASE, PAGE64KP, UNIT64KP, MIRRORP, or SECUR\_ID, and are combined into a single data segment at linkage.
- No segment name can be referenced as a symbol.
- The total number of segments that can be output by the assembler is up to 256 alias names, including those defined with the ORG directive. The same-named segments are counted as one.

- The maximum number of characters recognizable as a segment name is 8.
- The uppercase and lowercase characters of a segment name are distinguished.
- Specify user option byte and on-chip debugging by using OPT\_BYTE.

When the user option byte is not specified for the chip having the user option byte feature, define a default segment of "?CSEGOB0" to each address and set the initial value by reading from a device file.

**[Example]**

```
NAME      SAMP1
C1        CSEG          ; (1)
C2        CSEG  CALLT0  ; (2)
          CSEG  FIXED   ; (3)
C1        CSEG  CALLT0  ; (4)  <- Error
          CSEG          ; (5)
END
```

- (1) The assembler interprets the segment name as "C1", and the relocation attribute as "UNIT".
- (2) The assembler interprets the segment name as "C2", and the relocation attribute as "CALLT0".
- (3) The assembler interprets the segment name as "?CSEGFx", and the relocation attribute as "FIXED".
- (4) An error occurs because the segment name "C1" was defined as the relocation attribute "UNIT" in (1).
- (5) The assembler interprets the segment name as "?CSEG", and the relocation attribute as "UNIT".

**DSEG**

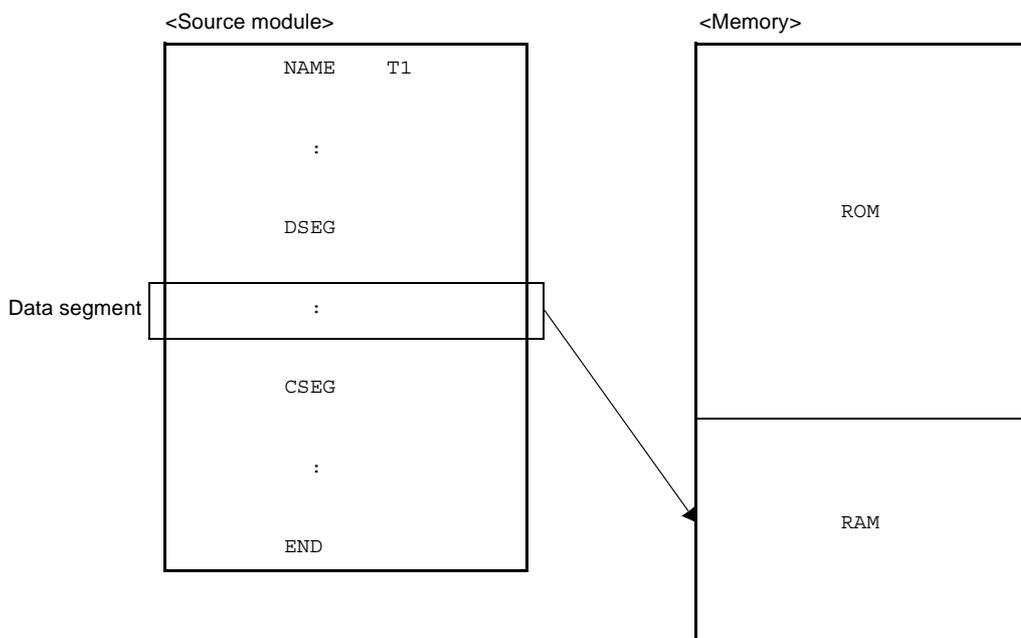
Indicate to the assembler the start of a data segment.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[segment-name]	DSEG	[relocation-attribute]	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The DSEG directive indicates to the assembler the start of a data segment.
- A memory defined by the DS directive following the DSEG directive belongs to the data segment until it comes across a segment definition directives (CSEG, DSEG, BSEG, or ORG) or the END directive, and finally it is reserved within the RAM address.



**[Use]**

- The DS directive is mainly described in the data segment defined by the DSEG directive. Data segments are located within the RAM area. Therefore, no instructions can be described in any data segment.
- In a data segment, a RAM work area used in a program is reserved by the DS directive and a label is attached to each work area. Use this label when describing a source program. Each area reserved as a data segment is located by the linker so that it does not overlap with any other work areas on the RAM (stack area, and work areas defined by other modules). The linker outputs a warning message if the data segment overlaps a general-purpose register area. The output level of the warning message can be changed using the warning message specification option (-w).

Value Specified by -w	Check Target
0	No areas

Value Specified by -w	Check Target
1	RB0
2	RB0 to RB3

**[Description]**

- The start address of a data segment can be specified with the ORG directive. It can also be specified by describing the relocation attribute "AT" followed by an absolute expression in the operand field of the DSEG directive.
- A relocation attribute defines a range of location addresses for a data segment. The relocation attributes available for data segments are shown below.

**Table 4-18. Relocation Attributes of DSEG**

Relocation Attribute	Description Format	Explanation
SADDR	SADDR	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in the saddr area (saddr area: FFE20H to FFEFFH).
SADDRP	SADDRP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment from an even-numbered address of the saddr area (saddr area: FFE20H to FFEFFH).
AT	AT <i>absolute-expression</i>	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in an absolute address (excluding SFR and 2ndSFR).
UNIT	UNIT or no specification	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in the internal or any external location (within the memory area name "RAM" ).
UNITP	UNITP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in the internal or any external location from an even-numbered address (within the memory area name "RAM" ).
BASEP	BASEP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in the internal RAM area so that the start of the address may be an even number (not including saddr area: FxxxH to FFEFFH). <sup>Note</sup> When arranging the data to access without ES references, it's used.
PAGE64KP	PAGE64KP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in memory area "RAM" that does not extend over a 64 KB boundary, so that the start of the address may be an even number. The same-named segments but located in different files are not combined.
UNIT64KP	UNIT64KP	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in memory area "RAM" that does not extend over a 64 KB boundary, so that the start of the address may be an even number. The same-named segments are combined.

**Note** The address represented by xxxx varies depending on the device used.

- Relocation attributes provided for the 78K0 assembler can also be described, which function in the same manner as "UNIT".  
The following table lists the relocation attributes of DSEG provided for the 78K0.

Relocation Attribute	Description
IHRAM	IHRAM
LRAM	LRAM
DSPRAM	DSPRAM
IXRAM	IXRAM

- If no relocation attribute is specified for the data segment, the assembler will assume that "UNIT" has been specified.
- If a relocation attribute other than those listed in "Table 4-18. Relocation Attributes of DSEG" is specified, the assembler will output an error and assume that "UNIT" has been specified. An error occurs if the size of each data segment exceeds that of the area specified by its relocation attribute.
- If the absolute expression specified with the relocation attribute "AT" is illegal, the assembler will output an error and continue processing by assuming the value of the expression to be "0".
- Machine language instructions (including BR directive) cannot be described in a data segment. If described, an error is output and the line is ignored.
- By describing a segment name in the symbol field of the DSEG directive, the data segment can be named. If no segment name is specified for a data segment, the assembler automatically gives a default segment name. The default segment names of the data segments are shown below.

Relocation Attribute	Default Segment Name
SADDR	?DSEGS
SADDRP	?DSEGSP
UNIT(or no specification)	?DSEG
UNITP	?DSEGUP
IHRAM	?DSEGIH
LRAM	?DSEGL
DSPRAM	?DSEGDSP
IXRAM	?DSEGIX
BASEP	?DSEGBP
PAGE64KP	?DSEGP64
UNIT64KP	?DSEGU64
AT	Segment name cannot be omitted.

- When the size of the following segment is 0 among the default segments that C compiler outputs, the relocation attribute is changed by the linker.

Section Name	Relocation Attribute	Relocation Attribute When Being Size 0
@@INIS	DSEG SADDRP	DSEG UNITP
@@DATS	DSEG SADDRP	DSEG UNITP
@EINIS	DSEG SADDRP	DSEG UNITP
@EDATS	DSEG SADDRP	DSEG UNITP

- If two or more data segments have the same relocation attribute (except AT), these data segments may have the same segment name.  
These segments are processed as a single data segment within the assembler.
- Description of a data segment can be divided into units. The same relocation attribute and the same-named code segment described in one module are handled by the assembler as a series of segments.

**Cautions 1. Description of a code segment whose relocation attribute is AT cannot be divided into units.**  
**2. When the relocation attribute is SADDR, insert a 1-byte interval, as necessary, so that the address immediately after a DESG directive is described may be an even number.**

- If the relocation attribute is SADDRP, the specified segment is located so that the address immediately after the DSEG directive is described becomes a multiple of 2.
- An error occurs if the same-named segments differ in their relocation attributes. Therefore, the number of the same-named segments for each relocation attribute is one.
- The same-named data segments in two or more different modules can be specified only when their relocation attributes are UNIT, UNITP, SADDR, SADDRP, LRAM, IHRAM, DSPRAM, IXRAM, BASEP, PAGE64KP, or UNIT64KP, and are combined into a single data segment at linkage.
- No segment name can be referenced as a symbol.
- The total number of segments that can be output by the assembler is up to 255 alias segments including those defined with the ORG directive. The same-named segments are counted as one.
- The maximum number of characters recognizable as a segment name is 8.
- The uppercase and lowercase characters of a segment name are distinguished.

#### [Example]

```

NAME      SAMP1
DSEG                      ; (1)
WORK1 : DS      2
WORK2 : DS      1
CSEG
MOV      A, !WORK2      ; (2)
MOV      A, WORK2      ; (3)  <- Error
MOVW     DE, #WORK1     ; (4)
MOVW     AX, WORK1      ; (5)  <- Error
END

```

- (1) The start of a data segment is defined with the DSEG directive.  
Because its relocation attribute is omitted, "UNIT" is assumed. The default segment name is "?DSEG".
- (2) This description corresponds to "MOV A, laddr16".
- (3) This description corresponds to "MOV A, saddr".  
Relocatable label "WORK2" cannot be described as "saddr". Therefore, an error occurs as a result of this description.
- (4) This description corresponds to "MOVW rp, #word".

- (5) This description corresponds to "MOVW AX, saddrp".  
Relocatable label "WORK1" cannot be described as "saddrp". Therefore, an error occurs as a result of this description.

**BSEG**

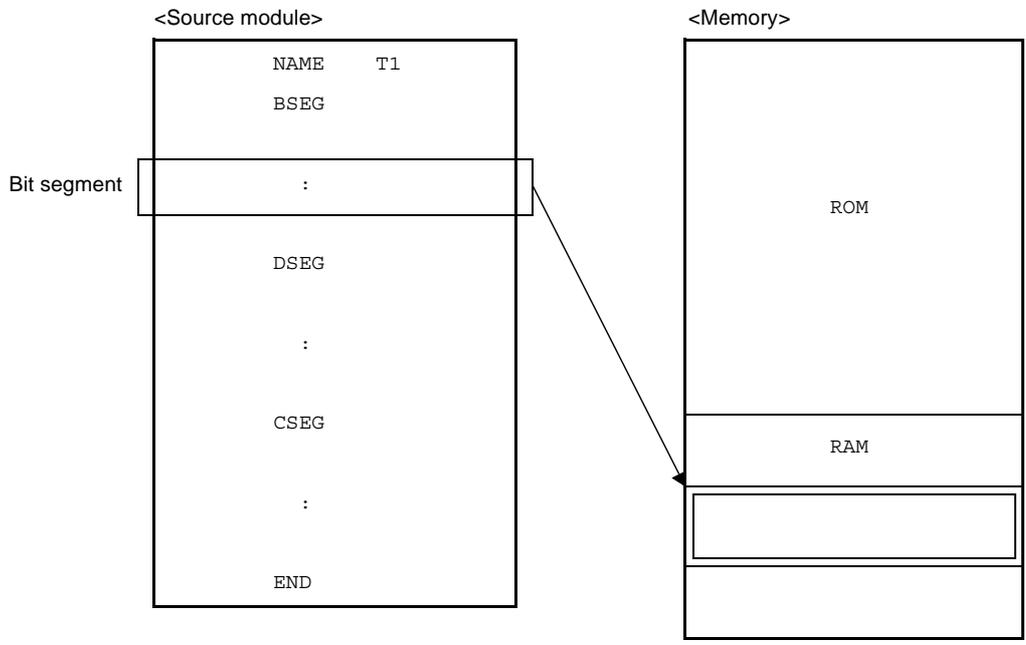
Indicate to the assembler the start of a bit segment.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[ <i>segment-name</i> ]	BSEG	[ <i>relocation-attribute</i> ]	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The BSEG directive indicates to the assembler the start of a bit segment.
- A bit segment is a segment that defines the RAM addresses to be used in the source module.
- A memory area that is defined by the DBIT directive after the BSEG directive until it comes across a segment definition directives (CSEG, DSEG, or BSEG) or the END directive belongs to the bit segment.



**[Use]**

- Describe the DBIT directive in the bit segment defined by the BSEG directive.
- No instructions can be described in any bit segment.

**[Description]**

- The start address of a bit segment can be specified by describing "AT *absolute-expression*" in the relocation attribute field.
- A relocation attribute defines a range of location addresses for a bit segment. Relocation attributes available for bit segments are shown below.

Table 4-19. Relocation Attributes of BSEG

Relocation Attribute	Description Format	Explanation
AT	AT <i>absolute-expression</i>	Tells the assembler to locate the starting address of the specified segment in the 0th bit of an absolute address. Specification in bit units is prohibited (00000H to FFFFFH)(excluding SFR and 2ndSFR).
UNIT	UNIT or no specification	Tells the assembler to locate the specified segment in any location (FFE20H to FFEFFH).

- If no relocation attribute is specified for the bit segment, the assembler assumes that "UNIT" is specified.
- If a relocation attribute other than those listed in Table 3-5 is specified, the assembler outputs an error and assumes that "UNIT" is specified. An error occurs if the size of each bit segment exceeds that of the area specified by its relocation attribute.
- In both the assembler and the linker, the location counter in a bit segment is displayed in the form "0xxxx.b" (The byte address is hexadecimal 5 digits and the bit position is hexadecimal 1 digit (0 to 7) ).

(1) Absolute

Byte Address	Bit Position							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0FFE20H	0FFE20H.0	0FFE20H.1	0FFE20H.2	0FFE20H.3	0FFE20H.4	0FFE20H.5	0FFE20H.6	0FFE20H.7
0FFE21H	0FFE21H.0	0FFE21H.1	0FFE21H.2	0FFE21H.3	0FFE21H.4	0FFE21H.5	0FFE21H.6	0FFE21H.7

(2) Relocatable

Byte Address	Bit Position							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
0H	0H.0	0H.1	0H.2	0H.3	0H.4	0H.5	0H.6	0H.7
1H	1H.0	1H.1	1H.2	1H.3	1H.4	1H.5	1H.6	1H.7

**Remark** Within a relocatable bit segment, the byte address specifies an offset value in byte units from the beginning of the segment.  
 In a symbol table output by the object converter, a bit offset from the beginning of an area where a bit is defined is displayed and output.

Symbol Value	Bit Offset
0FFE20H.0	0000
0FFE20H.1	0001
0FFE20H.2	0002
:	:
0FFE20H.7	0007
0FFE21H.0	0008
0FFE21H.1	0009

Symbol Value	Bit Offset
:	:
OFFE80H.0	0300
:	:

- If the absolute expression specified with the relocation attribute "AT" is illegal, the assembler outputs an error message and continues processing while assuming the value of the expression to be "0".
- By describing a segment name in the symbol field of the BSEG directive, the bit segment can be named. If no segment name is specified for a bit segment, the assembler automatically gives a default segment name. The following table shows the default segment names.

Relocation Attribute	Default Segment Name
UNIT (or no specification)	?BSEG
AT	Segment name cannot be omitted.

- When the size of the following segment is 0 among the default segments that C compiler outputs, the relocation attribute is changed by the linker.

Section Name	Relocation Attribute	Relocation Attribute When Being Size 0
@@BITS	BSEG UNIT (in SADDR area)	BSEG UNIT (in RAM area)

- If the relocation attribute is "UNIT", two or more data segments can have the same segment name (except AT). These segments are processed as a single segment within the assembler. Therefore, the number of same-named segments for each relocation attribute is one.
- The same-named bit segments name must have the same relocation attribute UNIT (when the relocation attribute is AT, specifying the same name for multiple segments is prohibited).
- If the relocation attribute of the same-named segments in a module is not UNIT, an error is output and the line is ignored.
- The same-named bit segments in two or more different modules will be combined into a single bit segment at linkage time.
- No segment name can be referenced as a symbol.
- Bit segments are located at 0H to FFFFFH by the linker.
- Labels cannot be described in a bit segment.
- The only instructions that can be described in the bit segments are the DBIT, EQU, SET, PUBLIC, EXTBIT, EXTRN, MACRO, REPT, IRP, ENDM directive, macro definition and macro reference. Description of instructions other than these causes in an error.
- The total number of segments that the assembler outputs is up to 256 alias segments, with segments defined by the ORG directive. The segments having the same name are counted as one.
- The maximum number of characters recognizable as a segment name is 8.
- The uppercase and lowercase characters of a segment name are distinguished.

**[Example]**

	NAME	SAMP1	
FLAG	EQU	OFFE20H	
FLAG0	EQU	FLAG.0	; (1)
FLAG1	EQU	FLAG.1	; (2)
	BSEG		; (3)
FLAG2	DBIT		
	CSEG		
	SET1	FLAG0	; (4)
	SET1	FLAG2	; (5)
	END		

(1) Bit addresses (bits 0 of 0FFE20H are defined with consideration given to byte address boundaries.

(2) Bit addresses (bits 1 of 0FFE20H) are defined with consideration given to byte address boundaries.

(3) A bit segment is defined with the BSEG directive. Because its relocation attribute is omitted, the relocation attribute "UNIT" and the segment name "?BSEG" are assumed.

In each bit segment, a bit work area is defined for each bit with the DBIT directive. A bit segment should be described at the early part of the module body.

Bit address FLAG2 defined within the bit segment is located without considering the byte address boundary.

(4) This description can be replaced with "SET1 FLAG.0". This FLAG indicates a byte address.

(5) In this description, no consideration is given to byte address boundaries.

**ORG**

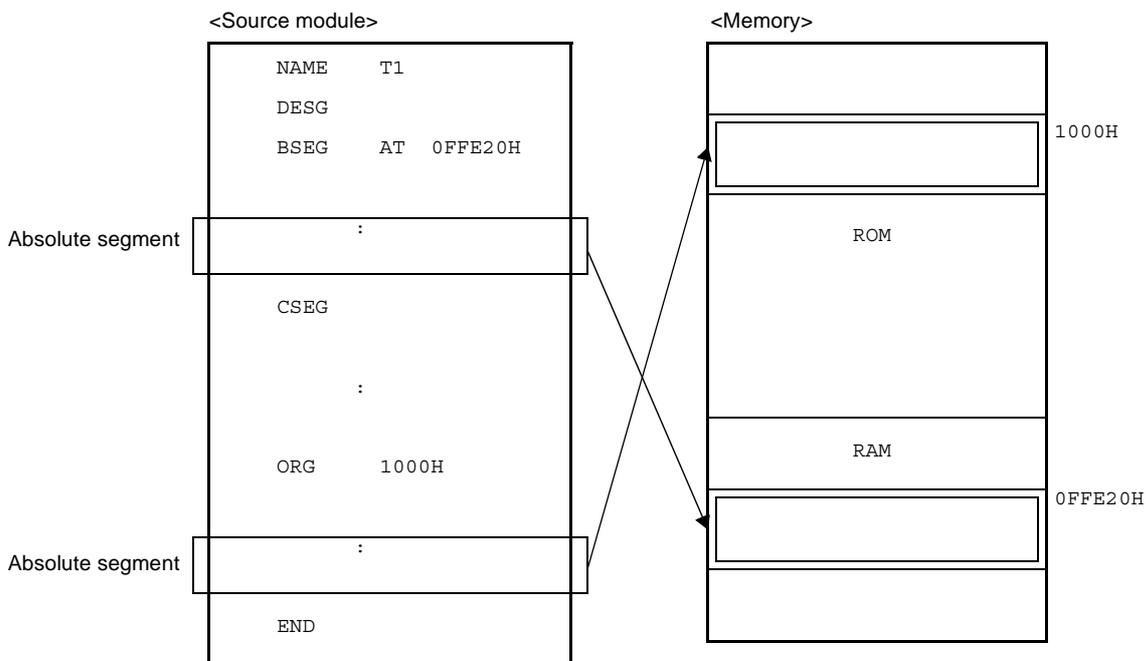
Set the value of the expression specified by its operand of the location counter.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[segment-name]	ORG	[absolute-expression]	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The ORG directive sets the value of the expression specified by its operand of the location counter.
- After the ORG directive, described instructions or reserved memory area belongs to an absolute segment until it comes across a segment definition directives (CSEG, DSEG, BSEG, or ORG) or the END directive, and they are located from the address specified by an operand.



**[Use]**

- Specify the ORG directive to locate a code segment or data segment from a specific address.

**[Description]**

- The absolute segment defined with the ORG directive belongs to the code segment or data segment defined with the CSEG or DSEG directive immediately before this ORG directive. Within an absolute segment that belongs to a data segment, no instructions can be described. An absolute segment that belongs to a bit segment cannot be described with the ORG directive.
- The code segment or data segment defined with the ORG directive is interpreted as a code segment or data segment of the relocation attribute "AT".
- By describing a segment name in the symbol field of the ORG directive, the absolute segment can be named. The maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a segment name is 8.

- The same-named segments in a module, which are defined with the ORG directive, are handled in the same manner as segments of the AT attribute, which are defined with the CSEG or DESG directive.
- The same-named segments in different modules, which are defined with the ORG directive, are handled in the same manner as segments of the AT attribute, which are defined with the CSEG or DESG directive.
- If no segment name is specified for an absolute segment, the assembler will automatically assign the default segment name "?A0nnnnn", where "nnnnn" indicates the 5 digit hexadecimal start address (00000 to FFFFF) of the segment specified.
- If neither CSEG nor DSEG directive has been described before the ORG directive, the absolute segment defined by the ORG directive is interpreted as an absolute segment in a code segment.
- If a name or label is described as the operand of the ORG directive, the name or label must be an absolute term that has already been defined in the source module.
- If illegal objects are described for absolute expressions, or if the evaluated value of an absolute expression exceeds 00000H to FFEFFH, the assembler outputs an error and continues processing, assuming that the value of the absolute expression is 00000H.
- Absolute expressions for operands are evaluated in unsigned 32-bit units.
- No segment name can be referenced as a symbol.
- The total number of segments that the assembler outputs is up to 256 alias segments, with segments defined by the segment definition directives. The segments having the same name are counted as one.
- The maximum number of characters recognizable as a segment name is 8.
- The uppercase and lowercase characters of a segment name are distinguished.

**[Example]**

```

NAME      SAMP1

DSEG

ORG      0FFE20H      ; (1)
SADR1 : DS      1
SADR2 : DS      1
SADR3 : DS      2

MAIN0    ORG      100H
          MOV      A, SADR1      ; (2)  <- Error

          CSEG      ; (3)
MAIN1    ORG      1000H      ; (4)
          MOV      A, SADR2
          MOVW     AX, SADR3
          END

```

**(1) An absolute segment that belongs to a data segment is defined.**

This absolute segment will be located from the short direct addressing area that starts from address "FFE20H". Because specification of the segment name is omitted, the assembler automatically assigns the name "?A0FFE20".

**(2) An error occurs because no instruction can be described within an absolute segment that belongs to a data segment.**

- (3) This directive declares the start of a code segment.
  
- (4) This absolute segment is located in an area that starts from address "1000H".

### 4.2.3 Symbol definition directives

Symbol definition directives specify names for the data that is used when writing to source modules. With these, the data value specifications are made clear and the details of the source module are easier to understand.

Symbol definition directives indicate the names of values used in the source module to the assembler.

The following symbol definition directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">EQU</a>	The value of the expression specified by operand and the numerical data with attribute are defined as a name.
<a href="#">SET</a>	The value of the expression specified by operand and the variable with attribute are defined as a name.

**EQU**

The value of the expression specified by operand and the numerical data with attribute are defined as a name.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>name</i>	EQU	<i>expression</i>	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The EQU directive defines a name that has the value and attributes (symbol attribute and relocation attribute) of the expression specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- Define numerical data to be used in the source module as a name with the EQU directive and describe the name in the operand of an instruction in place of the numerical data.  
Numerical data to be frequently used in the source module is recommended to be defined as a name. If you must change a data value in the source module, all you need to do is to change the operand value of the name.

**[Description]**

- The EQU directive may be described anywhere in a source program.
- A symbol defined with the EQU directive cannot be redefined with the SET directive, nor as a label. In addition, a symbol or label defined with the SET directive cannot be redefined with the EQU directive, nor as a label.
- When a name or label is to be described in the operand of the EQU directive, use the name or label that has already been defined in the source module.  
No external reference term can be described as the operand of this directive.  
SFRs and SFR bit symbols can be described.
- An expression including a term created by a HIGH/LOW/HIGHW/LOWW/MIRHW/MIRLW/DATAPOS/BITPOS operator that has a relocatable term in its operand cannot be described.
- An error occurs if an expression with any of the following patterns of operands is described:

**(1) Expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute - Expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute**

Either of the following conditions (1) and (2) is fulfilled in the above expression (a) or (b):

**(a) (a) If label 1 in the expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute and label 2 in the expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute belong to the same segment and if a BR directive for which the number of bytes of the object code cannot be determined is described between the two labels**

**(b) (b) If label 1 and label 2 differ in segment and if a BR directive for which the number of bytes of the object code cannot be determined is described between the beginning of the segment and label**

**(2) Expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute attributeRelational operator Expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute****(3) HIGH absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute****(4) LOW absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute**

- (5) HIGHW absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute
- (6) LOWW absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute
- (7) MIRHW absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute
- (8) MIRLW absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute
- (9) DATAPOS absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute
- (10) BITPOS absolute expression with ADDRESS attribute
- (11) The following (a) is fulfilled in the expression (3) to (10):

(a) If a BR directive for which the number of bytes of the object code cannot be determined instantly is described between the label in the expression with ADDRESS attribute and the beginning of the segment to which the label belongs

- If an error exists in the description format of the operand, the assembler will output an error message, but will attempt to store the value of the operand as the value of the name described in the symbol field to the extent that it can analyze.
- A name defined with the EQU directive cannot be redefined within the same source module.
- A name that has defined a bit value with the EQU directive will have an address and bit position as value.
- The following table shows the bit values that can be described as the operand of the EQU directive and the range in which these bit values can be referenced.

Operand Type	Symbol Value	Reference Range
<i>A.bit</i> <sup>Note 1</sup>	1.bit	Can be referenced within the same module only.
<i>PSW.bit</i> <i>byte</i>	0FFFFAH.bit	
<i>sfr</i> <sup>Note 2</sup> . <i>bit</i> <sup>Note 1</sup>	0FFFXXH <sup>Note 3</sup> . <i>bit</i>	
<i>2ndsfr</i> <sup>Note 2</sup> . <i>bit</i> <sup>Note 1</sup>	0FXXXXH <sup>Note 4</sup> . <i>bit</i>	
<i>saddr.bit</i> <sup>Note 1</sup>	0FFXXH <sup>Note 5</sup> . <i>bit</i>	Can be referenced from another module.
<i>expression.bit</i> <sup>Note 1</sup>	0XXXXH <sup>Note 6</sup> . <i>bit</i>	

- Notes**
1. bit = 0 to 7
  2. For a detailed description, see the user's manual of each device.
  3. 0FFFXXH : the address of a sfr
  4. 0FXXXXH : 2ndsfr area
  5. 0FFXXH : saddr area (0FFE20H to 0FFF1FH)
  6. 0XXXXH : 0H to 0FFFFH

**[Example]**

	NAME	SAMP1	
WORK1	EQU	OFFE20H	; (1)
WORK10	EQU	WORK1.0	; (2)
P02	EQU	P0.2	; (3)
A4	EQU	A.4	; (4)
PSW5	EQU	PSW.5	; (5)
	SET1	WORK10	; (6)
	SET1	P02	; (7)
	SET1	A4	; (8)
	SET1	PSW5	; (9)
	END		

- (1) The name "WORK1" has the value "OFFE20H", symbol attribute "NUMBER", and relocation attribute "ABSOLUTE".
- (2) The name "WORK10" is assigned to bit value "WORK1.0", which is in the operand format "saddr.bit". "WORK1", which is described in an operand, is already defined at the value "OFFE20H", in (1) above.
- (3) The name "P02" is assigned to the bit value "P0.2", which is in the operand format "sfr.bit".
- (4) The name "A4" is assigned to the bit value "A.4", which is in the operand format "A.bit".
- (5) The name "PSW5" is assigned to the bit value "PSW.5", which is in the operand format "PSW.bit".
- (6) This description corresponds to "SET1 saddr.bit".
- (7) This description corresponds to "SET1 sfr.bit".
- (8) This description corresponds to "SET1 A.bit".
- (9) This description corresponds to "SET1 PSW.bit".

Names that have defined "A.bit", and "PSW.bit" as in (4) through (5) can be referenced only within the same module.

A name that has defined "sfr.bit", "saddr.bit", "expression.bit" can also be referenced from another module as an external definition symbol (see "4.2.5 Linkage directives").

As a result of assembling the source module in the application example, the following assemble list is generated.

Assemble list						
ALNO	STNO	ADRS	OBJECT	M I	SOURCE STATEMENT	
1	1				NAME SAMP	
2	2					
3	3		( FFE20 )	WORK1	EQU 0FFE20H	; (1)
4	4		( FFE20.0 )	WORK10	EQU WORK1.0	; (2)
5	5		( FFF00.2 )	P02	EQU P0.2	; (3)
6	6		( 00001.4 )	A4	EQU A.4	; (4)
7	7		( FFFFA.5 )	PSW5	EQU PSW.5	; (5)
8	8					
9	9	00000	710220		SET1 WORK10	; (6)
10	10	00003	712200		SET1 P02	; (7)
11	11	00006	71CA		SET1 A4	; (8)
12	12	00008	715AFA		SET1 PSW5	; (9)
13	13				END	

On lines (2) through (5) of the assemble list, the bit address values of the bit values defined as names are indicated in the object code field.

**SET**

The value of the expression specified by operand and the variable with attribute are defined as a name.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>name</i>	SET	<i>absolute-expression</i>	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The SET directive defines a name that has the value and attributes (symbol attribute and relocation attribute) of the expression specified in the operand field.
- The value and attribute of a name defined with the SET directive can be redefined within the same module. These values and attribute are valid until the same name is redefined.

**[Use]**

- Define numerical data (a variable) to be used in the source module as a name and describe it in the operand of an instruction in place of the numerical data (a variable).

If you wish to change the value of a name in the source module, a different value can be defined for the same name using the SET directive again.

**[Description]**

- An absolute expression must be described in the operand field of the SET directive.
- The SET directive may be described anywhere in a source program. However, a name that has been defined with the SET directive cannot be forward-referenced.
- If an error is detected in the statement in which a name is defined with the SET directive, the assembler outputs an error message but will attempt to store the value of the operand as the value of the name described in the symbol field to the extent that it can analyze.
- A symbol defined with the EQU directive cannot be redefined with the SET directive. A symbol defined with the SET directive cannot be redefined with the EQU directive.
- A bit symbol cannot be defined.

**[Example]**

```
NAME      SAMP1
COUNT   SET      10H          ; (1)

        CSEG
        MOV      B, #COUNT    ; (2)
LOOP :
        DEC      B
        BNZ     $LOOP

COUNT   SET      20H          ; (3)

        MOV      B, #COUNT    ; (4)
        END
```

- (1) The name "COUNT" has the value "10H", the symbol attribute "NUMBER", and relocation attribute "ABSOLUTE". The value and attributes are valid until they are redefined by the SET directive in (3) below.
- (2) The value "10H" of the name "COUNT" is transferred to register B.
- (3) The value of the name "COUNT" is changed to "20H".
- (4) The value "20H" of the name "COUNT" is transferred to register B.

#### 4.2.4 Memory initialization, area reservation directives

The memory initialization directive defines the constant data used by the program.

The defined data value is generated as object code.

The area reservation directive secures the area for memory used by the program.

The following memory initialization and partitioning directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">DB</a>	Initialization of byte area
<a href="#">DW</a>	Initialization of word area
<a href="#">DG</a>	Initialization of 20 bit area in 32 bits (4 bytes)
<a href="#">DS</a>	Secures the memory area of the number of bytes specified by operand.
<a href="#">DBIT</a>	Secures 1 bit of memory area in bit segment.

**DB**

Initialization of byte area

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	DB	(size)	[: comment]
		or	
[label:]	DB	initial-value[, ...]	[: comment]

**[Function]**

- The DB directive tells the assembler to initialize a byte area. The number of bytes to be initialized can be specified as "size".
- The DB directive also tells the assembler to initialize a memory area in byte units with the initial value(s) specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- Use the DB directive when defining an expression or character string used in the program.

**[Description]**

- If a value in the operand field is parenthesized, the assembler assumes that a size is specified. Otherwise, an initial value is assumed.

**(1) With size specification:**

- (a) If a size is specified in the operand field, the assembler initializes an area equivalent to the specified number of bytes with the value "00H".**
- (b) An absolute expression must be described as a size. If the size description is illegal, the assembler outputs an error message and will not execute initialization.**

**(2) With initial value specification:****(a) Expression**

The value of an expression must be 8-bit data. Therefore, the value of the operand must be in the range of 0H to 0FFH. If the value exceeds 8 bits, the assembler will use only lower 8 bits of the value as valid data and output an error.

**(b) Character string**

If a character string is described as the operand, an 8-bit ASCII code will be reserved for each character in the string.

- The DB directive cannot be described in a bit segment.
- Two or more initial values may be specified within a statement line of the DB directive.
- As an initial value, an expression that includes a relocatable symbol or external reference symbol may be described.

**[Example]**

```
NAME      SAMP1
CSEG
WORK1 :   DB      ( 1 )           ; (1)
WORK2 :   DB      ( 2 )           ; (1)
CSEG
MASSAG :   DB      'ABCDEF'       ; (2)
DATA1 :   DB      0AH, 0BH, 0CH   ; (3)
DATA2 :   DB      ( 3 + 1 )       ; (4)
DATA3 :   DB      'AB' + 1        ; (5)  <- Error
END
```

- (1) Because the size is specified, the assembler will initialize each byte area with the value "00H".
- (2) A 6-byte area is initialized with character string 'ABCDEF'.
- (3) A 3-byte area is initialized with "0AH, 0BH, 0CH".
- (4) A 4-byte area is initialized with "00H".
- (5) Because the value of expression "AB" + 1 is 4143H (4142H + 1) and exceeds the range of 0 to 0FFH, this description occurs in an error.

**DW**

Initialization of word area

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	DW	(size)	[: comment]
		or	
[label:]	DW	initial-value[, ...]	[: comment]

**[Function]**

- The DW directive tells the assembler to initialize a word area.  
The number of words to be initialized can be specified as "size".
- The DW directive also tells the assembler to initialize a memory area in word units (2 bytes) with the initial value(s) specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- Use the DW directive when defining a 16-bit numeric constant such as an address or data used in the program.

**[Description]**

- If a value in the operand field is parenthesized, the assembler assumes that a size is specified; otherwise an initial value is assumed.

**(1) With size specification:**

- If a size is specified in the operand field, the assembler will initialize an area equivalent to the specified number of words with the value "00H".**
- An absolute expression must be described as a size. If the size description is illegal, the assembler outputs an error and will not execute initialization.**

**(2) With initial value specification:****(a) Constant**

16 bits or less.

**(b) Expression**

The value of an expression must be stored as a 16-bit data.

No character string can be described as an initial value.

- The DW directive cannot be described in a bit segment.
- The upper 2 digits of the specified initial value are stored in the HIGH address and the lower 2 digits of the value in the LOW address.
- Two or more initial values may be specified within a statement line of the DW directive.
- As an initial value, an expression that includes a relocatable symbol or external reference symbol may be described.

[Example]

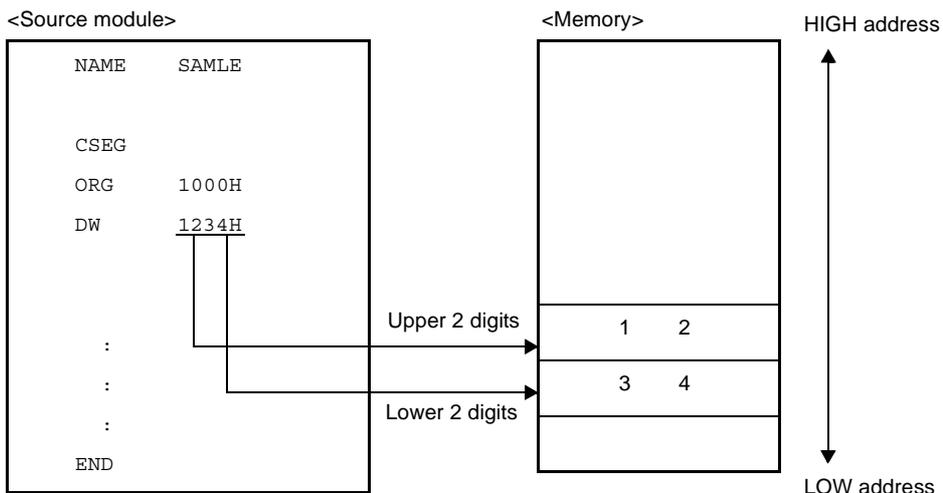
```

NAME      SAMP1
CSEG
WORK1 :   DW      ( 10 )      ; (1)
WORK2 :   DW      ( 128 )     ; (1)
CSEG
ORG       10H
DW        MAIN      ; (2)
DW        SUB1      ; (2)
CSEG
MAIN :
CSEG
SUB1 :
DATA :    DW      1234H, 5678H ; (3)
END
    
```

- (1) Because the size is specified, the assembler will initialize each word with the value "00H".
- (2) Vector entry addresses are defined with the DW directives.
- (3) A 2-word area is initialized with value "34127856".

**Caution** The HIGH address of memory is initialized with the upper 2 digits of the word value. The LOW address of memory is initialized with the lower 2 digits of the word value.

<Example>



**DG**

Initialization of 20 bit area in 32 bits (4 bytes)

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	DG	(size)	[: comment]
		or	
[label:]	DG	initial-value[, ...]	[: comment]

**[Function]**

- The DG directive tells the assembler to initialize a 20-bit area in 32-bit (4-byte) units. The initial value or size can be specified as an operand.
- The DG directive also tells the assembler to initialize a memory area in 4 bytes units with the initial value(s) specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- Use the DG directive when defining a 20-bit numeric constant such as an address or data used in the program.

**[Description]**

- If a value in the operand field is parenthesized, the assembler assumes that a size is specified; otherwise an initial value is assumed.

**(1) With size specification:**

- If a size is specified in the operand field, the assembler will initialize an area equivalent to the specified numbers x 4 bytes, with "00H".**
- An absolute expression must be described as a size. If the size description is illegal, the assembler outputs an error and will not execute initialization.**

**(2) With initial value specification:****(a) Constant**

20 bits or less.

**(b) Expression**

The value of an expression must be stored as a 16-bit data.

No character string can be described as an initial value.

- The DG directive cannot be described in a bit segment.
- The highest byte of the specified initial value is stored in the HIGH WORD address, the lowest byte is stored in the LOW address, and the higher byte of the lowest 2 bytes is stored in the HIGH address in the memory.
- Two or more initial values may be specified within a statement line of the DW directive.
- As an initial value, an expression that includes a relocatable symbol or external reference symbol may be described.

[Example]

```

NAME      SAMP1

DATA1 :   DG      12345H, 56789H      ; (1)
DATA2 :   DG      ( 10 )              ; (2)
END
    
```

(1) A 4-byte area is initialized with value "4523010089670500".

(2) The 40-byte (10 x 4 bytes) area is initialized with "00H".

**Caution** For the 20-bit value, the HIGH WORD address in the memory is initialized with the highest byte, the LOW address in the memory is initialized with the lowest byte, and the HIGH address is initialized with the higher byte of the lowest 2 bytes.

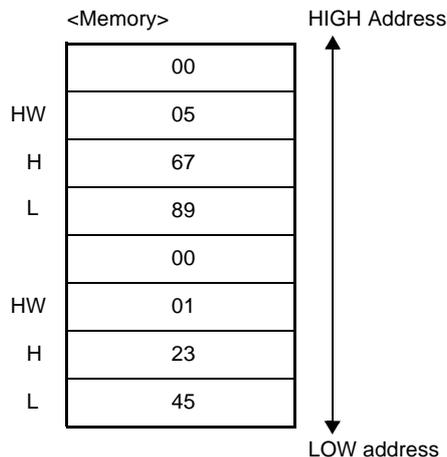
<Example>

<Source module>

```

NAME      SAMP1
          CSEG
DATA1 :   DG      12345H, 56789H
          :
          END
    
```

<Memory>



HW : HIGH WORD

H : HIGH

L : LOW

**DS**

Secures the memory area of the number of bytes specified by operand.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	DS	<i>absolute-expression</i>	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The DS directive tells the assembler to reserve a memory area for the number of bytes specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- The DS directive is mainly used to reserve a memory (RAM) area to be used in the program. If a label is specified, the value of the first address of the reserved memory area is assigned to the label. In the source module, this label is used for description to manipulate the memory.

**[Description]**

- The contents of an area to be reserved with this DS directive are unknown (indefinite).
- The specified absolute expression will be evaluated with unsigned 16 bits.
- When the operand value is "0", no area can be reserved.
- The DS directive cannot be described within a bit segment.
- The symbol (label) defined with the DS directive can be referenced only in the backward direction.
- Only the following parameters extended from an absolute expression can be described in the operand field:
  - A constant
  - An expression with constants in which an operation is to be performed (constant expression)
  - EQU symbol or SET symbol defined with a constant or constant expression ADDRESS
  - Expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute - expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute  
If both label 1 in "expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute" and label 2 in "expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute" are relocatable, both labels must be defined in the same segment.  
However, an error occurs in either of the following two cases:
    - If label 1 and label 2 belong to the same segment and if a BR directive for which the number of bytes of the object code cannot be determined is described between the two labels
    - If label 1 and label 2 differ in segment and if a BR directive for which the number of bytes of the object code cannot be determined is described between either label and the beginning of the segment to which the label belongs
  - Any of the expressions (1) through (4) above on which an operation is to be performed.
- The following parameters cannot be described in the operand field:
  - External reference symbol
  - Symbol that has defined "expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute - expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute" with the EQU directive
  - Location counter (\$) is described in either expression 1 or expression 2 in the form of "expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute - expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute"
  - Symbol that defines with the EQU directive an expression with the ADDRESS attribute on which the HIGH/LOW/DATAPOS/BITPOS operator is to be operated

**[Example]**

```

                NAME    SAMPLE
                DSEG
TABLE1 :        DS      10          ; (1)
WORK1  :        DS      2          ; (2)
WORK2  :        DS      1          ; (3)
                CSEG
                MOVW   HL, #TABLE1
                MOV    A, !WORK2
                MOVW   BC, #WORK1
                END
```

- (1) A 10-byte working area is reserved, but the contents of the area are unknown (indefinite). Label "TABLE1" is allocated to the start of the address.
- (2) A 1-byte working area is reserved.
- (3) A 2-byte working area is reserved.

**DBIT**

Secures 1 bit of memory area in bit segment.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[name]	DBIT	None	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The DBIT directive tells the assembler to reserve a 1-bit memory area within a bit segment.

**[Use]**

- Use the DBIT directive to reserve a bit area within a bit segment.

**[Description]**

- The DBIT directive is described only in a bit segment.
- The contents of a 1-bit area reserved with the DBIT directive are unknown (indefinite).
- If a name is specified in the Symbol field, the name has an address and a bit position as its value.
- The defined name can be described at the place where `saddr.bit`, `addr16.bit`, `ES:addr16.bitt` is required.

**[Example]**

```

NAME      SAMPLE
BSEG
BIT1      DBIT          ; (1)
BIT2      DBIT          ; (1)
BIT3      DBIT          ; (1)

CSEG
SET1      BIT1          ; (2)

CLR1      BIT2          ; (3)
END
    
```

- (1) By these three DBIT directives, the assembler will reserve three 1-bit areas and define names (BIT1, BIT2, and BIT3) each having an address and a bit position as its value.
- (2) This description corresponds to "SET1 saddr.bit" and describes the name "BIT1" of the bit area reserved in (1) above as operand "saddr.bit".
- (3) This description corresponds to "CLR1 saddr.bit" and describes name "BIT2" as "saddr.bit".

4.2.5 Linkage directives

Linkage directives clarify associations when referring to symbols defined by other modules. This is thought to be in cases when one program is written that divides module 1 and module 2.

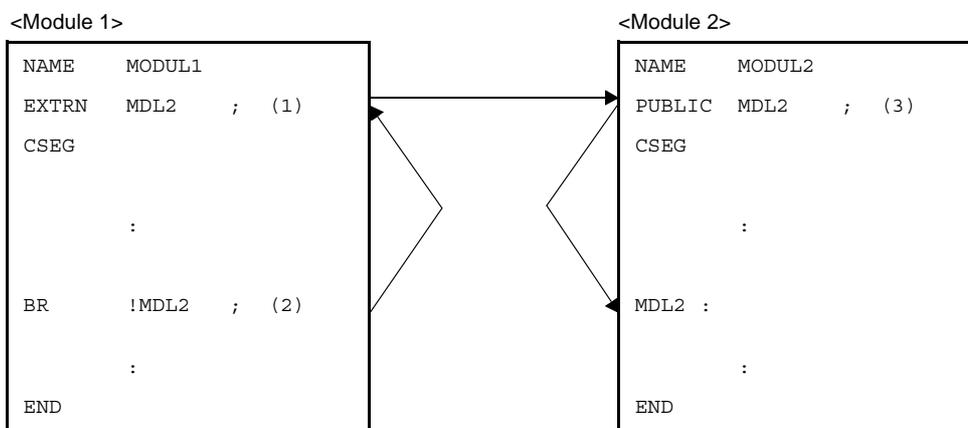
In cases when you want to see to a symbol defined in module 2 in module 1, there is nothing declared in either module and so the symbol cannot be used. Due to this, there is a need to display "I want to use" or "I don't want to use" in respective modules.

An "I want to see to a symbol defined in another module" external reference declaration is made in module 1. At the same time, a "This symbol may be referred to by other symbols" external definition declaration is made in module 2.

This symbol can only begin to be referred to after both external reference and external definition declarations in effect. Linkage directives are used to form this relationship and the following instructions are available.

- Symbol external reference declaration: EXTRN, and also EXTBIT directive.
- Symbol external definition declaration: PUBLIC directive.

Figure 4-7. Relationship of Symbols Between 2 Modules



In the above modules, in order for the "MDL2" symbol defined in module 2 to be referred to in (2), an external reference is declared via an EXTRN directive in (1).

In module 2 (3), an external definition declaration is undergone of the "MDL2" symbol referenced from module 1 via a PUBLIC directive.

Whether or not this external reference and external definition symbols are correctly responding or not is checked via a linker.

The following linkage directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
EXTRN	Declares to the linker that a symbol (other than bit symbols) in another module is to be referenced in this module.
EXTBIT	Directive declares to the linker that a bit symbol in another module is to be referenced in this module.
PUBLIC	Declares to the linker that the symbol described in the operand field is a symbol to be referenced from another module.

**EXTRN**

Declares to the linker that a symbol (other than bit symbols) in another module is to be referenced in this module.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	EXTRN	symbol-name[, ...]	[; comment]
		or	
[label:]	EXTRN	BASE(symbol-name[, ...])	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The EXTRN directive declares to the linker that a symbol (other than bit symbols) in another module is to be referenced in this module.

**[Use]**

- When referencing a symbol defined in another module, the EXTRN directive must be used to declare the symbol as an external reference.
- The resulting operation varies depending on the description format for operands.

BASE(symbol-name[, ...])	The specified symbol is regarded as a symbol in an area within a 64 KB area (0H to 0FFFF) and can be referenced.
No relocation attribute specified	After located by the linker, processing is performed in accordance with the area for which PUBLIC is declared and then can be referenced.

**[Description]**

- The EXTRN directive may be described anywhere in a source program (see "4.1.1 Basic configuration").
- Up to 20 symbols can be specified in the operand field by delimiting each symbol name with a comma ( , ).
- When referencing a symbol having a bit value, the symbol must be declared as an external reference with the EXTBIT directive.
- The symbol declared with the EXTRN directive must be declared in another module with a PUBLIC directive.
- No error is output even if a symbol declared with the EXTRN directive is not referenced in the module.
- No macro name can be described as the operand of EXTRN directive (see "4.4 Macros" for the macro name).
- The EXTRN directive enables only one EXTRN declaration for a symbol in an entire module. For the second and subsequent EXTRN declarations for the symbol, the linker will output a warning.
- A symbol that has been declared cannot be described as the operand of the EXTRN directive. Conversely, a symbol that has been declared as EXTRN cannot be redefined or declared with any other directive.
- An area within a 64 KB area (0H to 0FFFFH) can be referenced using a symbol defined with the EXTRN directive. A symbol name declared in the format of "BASE(symbol name)" can be referenced from the 64 KB area.

**[Example]**

- Module 1

```

NAME      SAMP1
EXTRN    SYM1, SYM2, BASE (SYM3) ; (1)
CSEG
S1 :    DW      SYM1                ; (2)
        MOV     A, SYM2                ; (3)
        BR     !SYM3                ; (4)
END

```

- Module 2

```

NAME      SAMP2
PUBLIC   SYM1, SYM2, SYM3          ; (5)
CSEG
SYM1    EQU    0FFH                ; (6)
DATA1   DSEG   SADDR
SYM2 :   DB    012H                ; (7)
C1      CSEG   BASE
SYM3 :   MOV   A, #20H              ; (8)
END

```

- (1) This EXTRN directive declares symbols "SYM1", "SYM2" and "SYM3" to be referenced in (2), (3) and (4) as external references. Two or more symbols may be described in the operand field.
- (2) This DW instruction references symbol "SYM1".
- (3) This MOV instruction references symbol "SYM2" and outputs a code that references an saddr area.
- (4) This BR instruction references symbol "SYM3" and outputs a code that references an area within a 64 KB area (0H to 0FFFFH).
- (5) The symbols "SYM1", "SYM2" and "SYM3" are declared as external definitions.
- (6) The symbol "SYM1" is defined.
- (7) The symbol "SYM2" is defined.
- (8) The symbol "SYM3" is defined.

**EXTBIT**

Directive declares to the linker that a bit symbol in another module is to be referenced in this module.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	EXTBIT	bit-symbol-name[, ...]	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The EXTBIT directive declares to the linker that a bit symbol in another module is to be referenced in this module.

**[Use]**

- When referencing a symbol that has a bit value and has been defined in another module, the EXTBIT directive must be used to declare the symbol as an external reference.

**[Description]**

- The EXTBIT directive may be described anywhere in a source program.
- Up to 20 symbols can be specified in the operand field by delimiting each symbol with a comma ( , ).
- A symbol declared with the EXTBIT directive must be declared with a PUBLIC directive in another module.
- The EXTBIT directive enables only one EXTBIT declaration for a symbol in an entire module. For the second and subsequent EXTBIT declarations for the symbol, the linker will output a warning.
- No error is output even if a symbol declared with the EXTRN directive is not referenced in the module.

**[Example]**

- Module 1

```

NAME      SAMP1
EXTBIT    FLAG1, FLAG2          ; (1)
CSEG
SET1      FLAG1                 ; (2)
CLR1      FLAG2                 ; (3)
END
    
```

- Module 2

```

NAME      SAMP2
PUBLIC    FLAG1, FLAG2         ; (4)
BSEG
FLAG1     DBIT                 ; (5)
FLAG2     DBIT                 ; (6)
CSEG
NOP
END
    
```

- (1) This EXTBIT directive declares symbols "FLAG1" and "FLAG2" to be referenced as external references. Two or more symbols may be described in the operand field.
- (2) This SET1 instruction references symbol "FLAG1". This description corresponds to "SET1 saddr.bit".
- (3) This CLR1 instruction references symbol "FLAG2". This description corresponds to "CLR1 saddr.bit".
- (4) This PUBLIC directive defines symbols "FLAG1" and "FLAG2".
- (5) This DBIT directive defines symbol "FLAG1" as a bit symbol of SADDR area.
- (6) This DBIT directive defines symbol "FLAG2" as a bit symbol of SADDR area.

**PUBLIC**

Declares to the linker that the symbol described in the operand field is a symbol to be referenced from another module.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	PUBLIC	symbol-name[, ...]	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The PUBLIC directive declares to the linker that the symbol described in the operand field is a symbol to be referenced from another module.

**[Use]**

- When defining a symbol (including bit symbol) to be referenced from another module, the PUBLIC directive must be used to declare the symbol as an external definition.

**[Description]**

- The PUBLIC directive may be described anywhere in a source program.
- Up to 20 symbols can be specified in the operand field by delimiting each symbol name with a comma ( , ).
- Symbol(s) to be described in the operand field must be defined within the same module.
- The PUBLIC directive enables only one PUBLIC declaration for a symbol in an entire module. The second and subsequent PUBLIC declarations for the symbol will be ignored by the linker.
- Bit symbols in each bit area can be declared with PUBLIC.
- The following symbols cannot be used as the operand of the PUBLIC directive:

- (1) Name defined with the SET directive
- (2) Symbol defined with the EXTRN or EXTBIT directive within the same module
- (3) Segment name
- (4) Module name
- (5) Macro name
- (6) Symbol not defined within the module
- (7) Symbol defining an operand with a SFBIT attribute with the EQU directive
- (8) Symbol defining an sfr and 2ndSFR with the EQU directive (however, the place where sfr area and saddr area are overlapped is excluded)

**[Example]**

- Module 1

```
NAME    SAMP1
PUBLIC  A1, A2          ; (1)
EXTRN   B1
EXTBIT  C1

A1      EQU    10H
A2      EQU    OFFE20H.1

CSEG

BR      B1
SET1    C1

END
```

- Module 2

```
NAME    SAMP2
PUBLIC  B1              ; (2)
EXTRN   A1
CSEG

B1 :
MOV     C, #LOW ( A1 )

END
```

- Module 3

```
NAME    SAMP3
PUBLIC  C1              ; (3)
EXTBIT  A2
C1      EQU    OFFE21H.0
CSEG

CLR1    A2

END
```

- (1) This PUBLIC directive declares that symbols "A1" and "A2" are to be referenced from other modules.
- (2) This PUBLIC directive declares that symbol "B1" is to be referenced from another module.
- (3) This PUBLIC directive declares that symbol "C1" is to be referenced from another module.

#### 4.2.6 Object module name declaration directive

An object module name directive gives a name to an object module generated by the assembler.

The following object module name declaration directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
NAME	Assign the object module name described in the operand field to an object module to be output by the assembler.

**NAME**

Assign the object module name described in the operand field to an object module to be output by the assembler.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	NAME	object-module-name	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The NAME directive assigns the object module name described in the operand field to an object module to be output by the assembler.

**[Use]**

- A module name is required for each object module in symbolic debugging with a debugger.

**[Description]**

- The NAME directive may be described anywhere in a source program.
- For the conventions of module name description, see the conventions on symbol description in "(3) Symbol field".
- Characters that can be specified as a module name are those characters permitted by the operating system of the assembler software other than "(" (28H) or ")" (29H) or 2-byte characters.
- No module name can be described as the operand of any directive other than NAME or of any instruction.
- If the NAME directive is omitted, the assembler will assume the primary name (first 256 characters) of the input source module file as the module name. The primary name is converted to capital letters for retrieval. If two or more module names are specified, the assembler will output a warning and ignore the second and subsequent module name declarations.
- A module name to be described in the operand field must not exceed 256 characters.
- The uppercase and lowercase characters of a symbol name are distinguished.

**[Example]**

```

NAME    SAMPLE ; (1)
DSEG
BIT1 : DBIT

CSEG
MOV    A, B
END

```

- (1) This NAME directive declares "SAMPLE" as a module name.

#### 4.2.7 Branch instruction automatic selection directives

There are unconditional branch instructions which write the branch address to the operand directly, "BR \$addr20", "BR !addr16", "BR !\$!addr20", "BR !!addr20", and etc.

With regard to these instructions, because the number of bytes for instructions differs, it is necessary for the user to use them after selecting which operand is suitable depending on the range of the branch destination in order to create a program with good memory efficiency.

Due to this, the RL78,78K0R assembler has a directive to automatically select 2, 3 or 4-byte branch instructions depending on the range of the branch destination. This is called the branch destination instruction automatic selection directive.

The following branch instruction automatic selection directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
BR	Depending on the range of the value of the expression specified by the operand, the assembler automatically selects 2, 3 or 4-byte branch instructions and generates corresponding object code.
CALL	Depending on the range of the value of the expression specified by the operand, the assembler automatically selects 3 to 4-byte call branch instructions and generates corresponding object code.

**BR**

Tells the assembler to automatically select a 2-, 3-, or 4-byte BR branch instruction according to the value range of the expression specified in the operand field and to generate the object code applicable to the selected instruction.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	BR	expression	[: comment]

**[Function]**

- The BR directive tells the assembler to automatically select a 2-, 3-, or 4-byte BR branch instruction according to the value range of the expression specified in the operand field and to generate the object code applicable to the selected instruction.

**[Use]**

- Among the branch instructions listed below, the assembler determines the address range of the branch destination and automatically selects and outputs an instruction which uses the fewest number of bytes as much as possible. Use the BR directive if it is unclear whether a 2-byte branch instruction can be described.

Branch instruction	Explanation
"BR \$addr20" (2 bytes)	Can be used if the address range of the branch destination is within the range of -80H to +7FH, from an address following the BR directive.
"BR !addr16" (3 bytes)	Can be used if the address range of the branch destination is within 64 KB.
"BR \$!addr20" (3 bytes)	Calculates the displacement from the branch destination and can be used if the displacement is within the range of -8000H to +7FFFH
"BR !!addr20" (4 bytes)	Used in cases other than above

If an operand (branch destination) is located in a relocatable segment different from that to which the directive is located, and outside the BASE area, the directive will be substituted with a 4-byte instruction and the output.

If a directive and an operand (branch destination) are located in different segments and outside the BASE area, and their types are different, the directive will be substituted with a 4-byte instruction, even if the operand is located in an absolute segment.

If a directive and the branch destination are located in different segments and in the BASE area, the directive will be substituted with a 3-byte instruction (BR !addr16).

**Remark** The different type means the different relocatable segments if the BR directive is located in an absolute segment, or an absolute segment if the BR directive is located in a relocatable segment.

- If it is definitely known which of a 2-, 3-, or 4-byte branch instruction should be described, describe the applicable instruction. This shortens the assembly time in comparison with describing the BR directive.

**[Description]**

- The BR directive can only be used within a code segment.
- The direct jump destination is described as the operand of the BR directive. "\$" indicating the current location counter at the beginning of an expression cannot be described.
- For optimization, the following conditions must be satisfied.
  - No more than 1 label or forward-reference symbol in the expression.
  - Do not describe an EQU symbol with the ADDRESS attribute.
  - Do not describe an EQU defined symbol for "expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute - expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute".
  - Do not describe an expression with ADDRESS attribute on which the HIGH/LOW/HIGHW/LOWW/MIRHW/MIRLW/DATAPOS/BITPOS operator has been operated.

If these conditions are not met, the 4-byte BR instruction will be selected.

Even if these conditions are met, however, the 4-byte BR instruction may be selected if the branch address is around 10000H and forward and backward references are included.

**[Example]**

ADDRESS		NAME	SAMPLE	
	C1	CSEG	AT	50H
00050H		BR	L1	; (1)
00052H		BR	L2	; (2)
00055H		BR	L3	; (3)
0007DH	L1 :			
0FFFFH	L2 :			
10000H	L3 :			
	C2	CSEG	AT	20050H
20050H		BR	L4	; (4)
27FFFH	L4 :			
		END		

- (1) This BR directive generates a 2-byte branch instruction (BR \$addr20) because the displacement between this line and the branch destination is within the range of -80H and +7FH.
- (2) The branch destination of this BR directive is within 64 KB, so the BR directive will be substituted with a 3-byte branch instruction (BR !addr16).
- (3) This BR directive will be substituted with the 4-byte branch instruction (BR !!addr20).
- (4) This BR directive will be substituted with the 3-byte branch instruction (BR \$!addr20) because the displacement between this line and the branch destination is without the range of -8000H and +7FFFH.

**CALL**

Tells the assembler to automatically select a 3- or 4-byte CALL branch instruction according to the value range of the expression specified in the operand field and to generate the object code applicable to the selected instruction.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	CALL	expression	[: comment]

**[Function]**

- The CALL directive tells the assembler to automatically select a 3- or 4-byte CALL branch instruction according to the value range of the expression specified in the operand field and to generate the object code applicable to the selected instruction.

**[Use]**

- Among the branch instructions listed below, the assembler determines the address range of the branch destination and automatically selects and outputs an instruction which uses the fewest number of bytes as much as possible. Use the CALL directive if it is unclear whether a 3-byte branch instruction can be described.

Branch Instruction	Explanation
"CALL !addr16" (3 bytes)	Can be used if the address range of the branch destination is within 64 KB.
"CALL \$!addr20" (3 bytes)	Calculates the displacement from the branch destination and can be used if the displacement is within the range of -8000H to +7FFFH
"CALL !!addr20" (4 bytes)	Used in cases other than above

If an operand (branch destination) is located in a relocatable segment different from that to which the directive is located, and outside the BASE area, the directive will be substituted with a 4-byte instruction and the output.

If a directive and an operand (branch destination) are located in different segments and outside the BASE area, and their types are different<sup>Note</sup>, the directive will be substituted with a 4-byte instruction, even if the operand is located in an absolute segment.

If a directive and the branch destination are located in different segments and in the BASE area, the directive will be substituted with a 3-byte instruction (BR !addr16).

**Note** The different type means the different relocatable segments if the CALL directive is located in an absolute segment, or an absolute segment if the CALL directive is located in a relocatable segment.

- If it is definitely known which of a 3- or 4-byte branch instruction should be described, describe the applicable instruction. This shortens the assembly time in comparison with describing the CALL directive.

[Description]

- The CALL directive can only be used within a code segment.
- The direct jump destination is described as the operand of the CALL directive.
- For optimization, the following conditions must be satisfied.
  - No more than 1 label or forward-reference symbol in the expression.
  - Do not describe an EQU symbol with the ADDRESS attribute.
  - Do not describe an EQU defined symbol for "expression 1 with ADDRESS attribute - expression 2 with ADDRESS attribute".
  - Do not describe an expression with ADDRESS attribute
  - Do not describe an expression with ADDRESS attribute on which the HIGH/LOW/HIGHW/LOWW/MIRHW/MIRLW/DATAPOS/BITPOS operator has been operated.

If these conditions are not met, the 4-byte CALL instruction will be selected.

Even if these conditions are met, however, the 4-byte BR instruction may be selected if the branch address is around 10000H and forward and backward references are included.

[Example]

ADDRESS		NAME	SAMPLE	
	C1	CSEG	AT	50H
00050H		CALL	L1	; (1)
00053H		CALL	L2	; (2)
08052H	L1 :			
0FFFFH	L2 :			
	C2	CSEG	AT	20050H
20050H		CALL	L3	; (3)
27FFFH	L3 :			
		END		

- (1) The branch destination of this CALL directive is within 64 KB, so the CALL directive will be substituted with a 3-byte branch instruction (CALL !addr16).
- (2) This CALL directive will be substituted with the 4-byte branch instruction (CALL !!addr20).
- (3) This CALL directive will be substituted with the 3-byte branch instruction (CALL \$!addr20) because the displacement between this line and the branch destination is without the range of -8000H and +7FFFH.

#### 4.2.8 Macro directives

When describing a source it is inefficient to have to describe for each series of high usage frequency instruction groups. This is also the source of increased errors.

Via macro directives, using macro functions it becomes unnecessary to describe many times to the same kind of instruction group series, and coding efficiency can be improved.

Macro basic functions are in substitution of a series of statements.

The following macro directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
MACRO	Executes a macro definition by assigning the macro name specified in the symbol field to a series of statements described between MACRO directive and the ENDM directive.
LOCAL	Declares that the symbol name specified in the operand column is a local symbol only effective in that macro body.
REPT	Only the value of the expression specified by the series of statements written between the REPT directive and the ENDM directive is developed repeatedly.
IRP	Only the number of actual arguments is repeatedly developed while the dummy argument is replaced by the actual argument specified by the operand in the series of statements between the IRP directive and ENDM directive.
EXITM	Develops the macro body defined with the MACRO directive, and also via REPT-ENDM, IRP-END M repeat is forced to complete.
ENDM	Completes a set of statements defined as a macro function.

**MACRO**

Executes a macro definition by assigning the macro name specified in the symbol field to a series of statements described between MACRO directive and the ENDM directive.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>macro-name</i>	MACRO	[ <i>formal-parameter</i> [, ...]]	[; comment]
	:		
	<i>Macro body</i>		
	:		
	ENDM		[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The MACRO directive executes a macro definition by assigning the macro name specified in the symbol field to a series of statements (called a macro body) described between this directive and the ENDM directive.

**[Use]**

- Define a series of frequently used statements in the source program with a macro name. After its definition only describe the defined macro name (see "(2) Referencing macros" ), and the macro body corresponding to the macro name is expanded.

**[Description]**

- The MACRO directive must be paired with the ENDM directive.
- For the macro name to be described in the symbol field, see the conventions of symbol description in "(3) Symbol field".
- To reference a macro, describe the defined macro name in the mnemonic field.
- For the formal parameter(s) to be described in the operand field, the same rules as the conventions of symbol description will apply.
- Up to 16 formal parameters can be described per macro directive.
- Formal parameters are valid only within the macro body.
- An error occurs if any reserved word is described as a formal parameter. However, if a user-defined symbol is described, its recognition as a formal parameter will take precedence.
- The number of formal parameters must be the same as the number of actual parameters.
- A name or label defined within the macro body if declared with the LOCAL directive becomes effective with respect to one-time macro expansion.
- Nesting of macros (i.e., to see to other macros within the macro body) is allowed up to eight levels including REPT and IRP directives.
- The number of macros that can be defined within a single source module is not specifically limited. In other words, macros may be defined as long as there is memory space available.
- Formal parameter definition lines, reference lines, and symbol names are not output to a cross-reference list.
- Two or more segments must not be defined in a macro body. If defined, an error will be output.

**[Example]**

```
NAME      SAMPLE

ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2    ; (1)
          MOV   A, #PARA1
          ADD  A, #PARA2
          ENDM                    ; (2)

ADMAC    10H, 20H              ; (3)
          END
```

- (1) A macro is defined by specifying macro name "ADMAC" and two formal parameters "PARA1" and "PARA2".
- (2) This directive indicates the end of the macro definition.
- (3) Macro "ADMAC" is referenced.

**LOCAL**

Declares that the symbol name specified in the operand field is a local symbol that is valid only within the macro body

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>None</i>	LOCAL	<i>symbol-name[, ...]</i>	<i>[: comment]</i>

**[Function]**

- The LOCAL directive declares that the symbol name specified in the operand field is a local symbol that is valid only within the macro body.

**[Use]**

- If a macro that defines a symbol within the macro body is referenced more than once, the assembler will output a double definition error for the symbol. By using the LOCAL directive, you can reference (or call) a macro, which defines symbol(s) within the macro body, more than once.

**[Description]**

- For the conventions on symbol names to be described in the operand field, see the conventions on symbol description in "(3) Symbol field".
- A symbol declared as LOCAL will be substituted with a symbol "??RAnnnn" (where n = 0000 to FFFF) at each macro expansion. The symbol "??RAnnnn" after the macro replacement will be handled in the same way as a global symbol and will be stored in the symbol table, and can thus be referenced under the symbol name "??RAnnnn".
- If a symbol is described within a macro body and the macro is referenced more than once, it means that the symbol would be defined more than once in the source module. For this reason, it is necessary to declare that the symbol is a local symbol that is valid only within the macro body.
- The LOCAL directive can be used only within a macro definition.
- The LOCAL directive must be described before using the symbol specified in the operand field (in other words, the LOCAL directive must be described at the beginning of the macro body).
- Symbol names to be defined with the LOCAL directive within a source module must be all different (in other words, the same name cannot be used for local symbols to be used in each macro).
- The number of local symbols that can be specified in the operand field is not limited as long as they are all within a line. However, the number of symbols within a macro body is limited to 64. If 65 or more local symbols are declared, the assembler will output an error and store the macro definition as an empty macro body. Nothing will be expanded even if the macro is called.
- Macros defined with the LOCAL directive cannot be nested.
- Symbols defined with the LOCAL directive cannot be called (referenced) from outside the macro.
- No reserved word can be described as a symbol name in the operand field. However, if a symbol same as the user-defined symbol is described, its recognition as a local symbol will take precedence.
- A symbol declared as the operand of the LOCAL directive will not be output to a cross-reference list and symbol table list.
- The statement line of the LOCAL directive will not be output at the time of the macro expansion.
- If a LOCAL declaration is made within a macro definition for which a symbol has the same name as a formal parameter of that macro definition, an error will be output.

**[Example]**

```

NAME      SAMPLE

; Macro definition
MAC1      MACRO
LOCAL    LLAB          ; (1)
LLAB :                ;
BR       $LLAB        ; (2)
ENDM
; Source text
REF1 : MAC1           ; (3)

??RA0000 :
BR       $??RA0000    ; (2)

BR       !LLAB        ; (4)    <- Error

REF2 : MAC1           ; (5)

??RA0001 :
BR       $??RA0001    ; (2)
END

```

- (1) This LOCAL directive defines symbol name "LLAB" as a local symbol.
- (2) This BR instruction references local symbol "LLAB" within macro MAC1.
- (3) This macro reference calls macro MAC1.
- (4) Because local symbol "LLAB" is referenced outside the definition of macro MAC1, this description results in an error.
- (5) This macro reference calls macro MAC1.

The assemble list of the above application example is shown below.

Assemble list						
ALNO	STNO	ADRS	OBJECT	M I	SOURCE STATEMENT	
1	1				NAME SAMPLE	
2	2			M	MAC1 MACRO	
3	3			M	LOCAL LLAB	; (1)
4	4			M	LLAB :	
5	5			M	BR \$LLAB	; (2)
6	6			M	ENDM	
7	7					
8	8	000000			REF1 : MAC1	; (3)
	9			#1	;	
10		000000		#1	??RA0000 :	
11		000000	14FE	#1	BR \$??RA0000	; (2)
9	12					
10	13	000002	2C0000		BR !LLAB	; (4)
*** ERROR E2407 , STNO 13 ( 0 ) Undefined symbol reference 'LLAB'						
*** ERROR E2303 , STNO 13 ( 13 ) Illegal expression						
11	14					
12	15	000005			REF2 : MAC1	; (5)
16				#1	;	
17		000005		#1	??RA0001 :	
18		000005	14FE	#1	BR \$??RA0001	; (2)
13	19					
14	20				END	

**REPT**

Tells the assembler to repeatedly expand a series of statements described between this directive and the ENDM directive the number of times equivalent to the value of the expression specified in the operand field.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	REPT	<i>absolute-expression</i>	[; <i>comment</i> ]
	:		
	ENDM		[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The REPT directive tells the assembler to repeatedly expand a series of statements described between this directive and the ENDM directive (called the REPT-ENDM block) the number of times equivalent to the value of the expression specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- Use the REPT and ENDM directives to describe a series of statements repeatedly in a source program.

**[Description]**

- An error occurs if the REPT directive is not paired with the ENDM directive.
- In the REPT-ENDM block, macro references, REPT directives, and IRP directives can be nested up to eight levels.
- If the EXITM directive appears in the REPT-ENDM block, subsequent expansion of the REPT-ENDM block by the assembler is terminated.
- Assembly control instructions may be described in the REPT-ENDM block.
- Macro definitions cannot be described in the REPT-ENDM block.
- The absolute expression described in the operand field is evaluated with unsigned 16 bits.  
If the value of the expression is 0, nothing is expanded.

**[Example]**

```

NAME      SAMP1
CSEG
      ; REPT-ENDM block
REPT     3          ; (1)
      INC      B
      DEC      C
      ; Source text
ENDM     ; (2)
END

```

(1) This REPT directive tells the assembler to expand the REPT-ENDM block three consecutive times.

(2) This directive indicates the end of the REPT-ENDM block.

When the above source program is assembled, the REPT-ENDM block is expanded as shown in the following assemble list:

```
NAME      SAMP1
CSEG
REPT      3
          INC      B
          DEC      C
ENDM
          INC      B
          DEC      C
          INC      B
          DEC      C
          INC      B
          DEC      C
END
```

The REPT-ENDM block defined by statements (1) and (2) has been expanded three times.

On the assemble list, the definition statements (1) and (2) by the REPT directive in the source module is not displayed.

**IRP**

Tells the assembler to repeatedly expand a series of statements described between IRP directive and the ENDM directive the number of times equivalent to the number of actual parameters while replacing the formal parameter with the actual parameters (from the left, the order) specified in the operand field.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	IRP	<i>formal-parameter</i> , <[ <i>actual-parameter</i> [, ...]]>	[; <i>comment</i> ]
	:		
	ENDM		[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The IRP directive tells the assembler to repeatedly expand a series of statements described between this directive and the ENDM directive (called the IRP-ENDM block) the number of times equivalent to the number of actual parameters while replacing the formal parameter with the actual parameters (from the left, the order) specified in the operand field.

**[Use]**

- Use the IRP and ENDM directives to describe a series of statements, only some of which become variables, repeatedly in a source program.

**[Description]**

- The IRP directive must be paired with the ENDM directive.
- Up to 16 actual parameters may be described in the operand field.
- In the IRP-ENDM block, macro references, REPT and IRP directives can be nested up to eight levels.
- If the EXITM directive appears in the IRP-ENDM block, subsequent expansion of the IRP-ENDM block by the assembler is terminated.
- Macro definitions cannot be described in the IRP-ENDM block.
- Assembly control instructions may be described in the IRP-ENDM block.

**[Example]**

```

NAME    SAMP1
CSEG

IRP     PARA, <0AH, 0BH, 0CH>           ; (1)
      ; IRP-ENDM block
ADD     A, #PARA
MOV     [DE], A
ENDM    ; (2)
      ; Source text
END

```

- (1) The formal parameter is "PARA" and the actual parameters are the following three: "0AH", "0BH", and "0CH".

This IRP directive tells the assembler to expand the IRP-ENDM block three times (i.e., the number of actual parameters) while replacing the formal parameter "PARA" with the actual parameters "0AH", "0BH", and "0CH".

- (2) This directive indicates the end of the IRP-ENDM block.

When the above source program is assembled, the IRP-ENDM block is expanded as shown in the following assemble list:

```
NAME      SAMP1
CSEG
      ; IRP-ENDM block
ADD      A, #0AH      ; (3)
MOV      [DE], A
ADD      A, #0BH      ; (4)
MOV      [DE], A
ADD      A, #0CH      ; (5)
MOV      [DE], A
      ;Source text
END
```

The IRP-ENDM block defined by statements (1) and (2) has been expanded three times (equivalent to the number of actual parameters).

- (3) In this ADD instruction, PARA is replaced with 0AH.

- (4) In this ADD instruction, PARA is replaced with 0BH.

- (5) In this ADD instruction, PARA is replaced with 0CH.

**EXITM**

Forcibly terminates the expansion of the macro body defined by the MACRO directive and the repetition by the REPT-ENDM or IRP-ENDM block.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[label:]	EXITM	None	[; comment]

**[Function]**

- The EXITM directive forcibly terminates the expansion of the macro body defined by the MACRO directive and the repetition by the REPT-ENDM or IRP-ENDM block.

**[Use]**

- This function is mainly used when a conditional assembly function (see ["4.3.7 Conditional assembly control instructions"](#)) is used in the macro body defined with the MACRO directive.
- If conditional assembly functions are used in combination with other instructions in the macro body, part of the source program that must not be assembled is likely to be assembled unless control is returned from the macro by force using this EXITM directive. In such cases, be sure to use the EXITM directive.

**[Description]**

- If the EXITM directive is described in a macro body, instructions up to the ENDM directive will be stored as the macro body.
- The EXITM directive indicates the end of a macro only during the macro expansion.
- If something is described in the operand field of the EXITM directive, the assembler will output an error but will execute the EXITM processing.
- If the EXITM directive appears in a macro body, the assembler will return by force the nesting level of IF/\_IF/ELSE/ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF/ENDIF blocks to the level when the assembler entered the macro body.
- If the EXITM directive appears in an INCLUDE file resulting from expanding the INCLUDE control instruction described in a macro body, the assembler will accept the EXITM directive as valid and terminate the macro expansion at that level.

**[Example]**

```

NAME      SAMP1
MAC1      MACRO                                ; (1)
          ; macro body
NOT1      CY
$         IF ( SW1 )                          ; (2)    <- IF block
          BT      A.1, $L1
          EXITM                                ; (3)
$         ELSE                                ; (4)    <- ELSE block
          MOV1    CY, A.1
          MOV     A, #0
$         ENDIF                              ; (5)
$         IF ( SW2 )                          ; (6)    <- IF block
          BR      [HL]
$         ELSE                                ; (7)    <- ELSE block
          BR      [DE]
$         ENDIF                              ; (8)
          ; Source text
          ENDM                                ; (9)

          CSEG
$         SET ( SW1 )                          ; (10)
          MAC1                                ; (11)    <- Macro reference
L1 :      NOP
          END

```

- (1) The macro "MAC1" uses conditional assembly functions (2) and (4) through (8) within the macro body.
- (2) An IF block for conditional assembly is defined here.  
If switch name "SW1" is true (not "0" ), the ELSE block is assembled.
- (3) This directive terminates by force the expansion of the macro body in (4) and thereafter.  
If this EXITM directive is omitted, the assembler proceeds to the assembly process in (6) and thereafter when the macro is expanded.
- (4) An ELSE block for conditional assembly is defined here.  
If switch name "SW1" is false ("0"), the ELSE block is assembled.
- (5) This ENDIF control instruction indicates the end of the conditional assembly.
- (6) Another IF block for conditional assembly is defined here.  
If switch name "SW2" is true (not "0" ), the following IF block is assembled.
- (7) Another ELSE block for conditional assembly is defined.  
If switch name "SW2" is false ("0"), the ELSE block is assembled.

(8) This ENDF instruction indicates the end of the conditional assembly processes in (6) and (7).

(9) This directive indicates the end of the macro body.

(10) This SET control instruction gives true value (not "0" ) to switch name "SW1" and sets the condition of the conditional assembly.

(11) This macro reference calls macro "MAC1".

**Remark** In the example here, conditional assembly control instructions are used. See ["4.3.7 Conditional assembly control instructions"](#). See ["4.4 Macros"](#) for the macro body and macro expansion.

The assemble list of the above application example is shown below.

```

NAME      SAMP1
MAC1      MACRO                ; (1)
          :
          ENDM                 ; (9)
          CSEG
$         SET ( SW1 )          ; (10)
          MAC1                 ; (11)
          ; Macro-expanded part
          NOT1      CY
$         IF ( SW1 )
          BT        A.1, $L1
          ; Source text
L1 :     NOP
          END

```

The macro body of macro "MAC1" is expanded by referring to the macro in (11).

Because true value is set in switch name "SW1" in (10), the first IF block in the macro body is assembled. Because the EXITM directive is described at the end of the IF block, the subsequent macro expansion is not executed.

**ENDM**

Instructs the assembler to terminate the execution of a series of statements defined as the functions of the macro.

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>None</i>	ENDM	<i>None</i>	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The ENDM directive instructs the assembler to terminate the execution of a series of statements defined as the functions of the macro.

**[Use]**

- The ENDM directive must always be described at the end of a series of statements following the MACRO, REPT, and/or the IRP directives.

**[Description]**

- A series of statements described between the MACRO directive and ENDM directive becomes a macro body.
- A series of statements described between the REPT directive and ENDM directive becomes a REPT-ENDM block.
- A series of statements described between the IRP directive and ENDM directive becomes an IRP-ENDM block.

**[Example]**

**(1) MACRO-ENDM**

```

NAME      SAMP1
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV   A, #PARA1
          ADD   A, #PARA2
          ENDM
          :
          END
    
```

**(2) REPT-ENDM**

```

NAME      SAMP2
CSEG
:
REPT     3
          INC   B
          DEC   C
          ENDM
          :
          END
    
```

## (3) IRP-ENDM

```
NAME    SAMP3
CSEG
:
IRP     PARA, <1, 2, 3>
        ADD    A, #PARA
        MOV    [DE], A
ENDM
:
END
```

#### 4.2.9 Assemble termination directive

The assemble termination directive specifies completion of the source module to the assembler. This assembly termination directive must always be described at the end of each source module.

The assembler processes as a source module until the assemble completion directive. Consequently, with REPT block and IRP Block, if the assemble directive is before ENDM, the REPT block and IRP block become ineffective.

The following assemble termination directives are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
END	Declares termination of the source module

**END**

Declares termination of the source module

**[Description Format]**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>None</i>	END	<i>None</i>	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**[Function]**

- The END directive indicates to the assembler the end of a source module.

**[Use]**

- The END directive must always be described at the end of each source module.

**[Description]**

- The assembler continues to assemble a source module until the END directive appears in the source module. Therefore, the END directive is required at the end of each source module.
- Always input a line-feed (LF) code after the END directive.
- If any statement other than blank, tab, LF, or comments appears after the END directive, the assembler outputs a warning message.

**[Example]**

```

NAME      SAMPLE
DSEG
:
CSEG
:
END                ; (1)
    
```

- (1) Always describe the END directive at the end of each source module.**

### 4.3 Control Instructions

This chapter describes control instructions.

Control Instructions provide detailed instructions for assembler operation.

#### 4.3.1 Overview

Control instructions provide detailed instructions for assembler operation and so are written in the source.

Control instructions do not become the target of object code generation.

Control instruction categories are displayed below.

**Table 4-20. Control Instruction List**

Control Instruction Type	Control Instruction
Assemble target type specification control instruction	PROCESSOR
Debug information output control instructions	DEBUG, NODEBUG, DEBUGA, NODEBUGA
Cross-reference list output specification control instructions	XREF, NOXREF, SYMLIST, NOSYMLIST
Include control instruction	INCLUDE
Assembly list control instructions	EJECT, LIST, NOLIST, GEN, NOGEN, COND, NOCOND, TITLE, SUBTITLE, FORMFEED, NOFORMFEED, WIDTH, LENGTH, TAB
Conditional assembly control instructions	IF, _IF, ELSEIF, _ELSEIF, ELSE, ENDIF, SET, RESET
Kanji code control instruction	KANJICODE
RAM area allocation-specification control instruction	RAM_ALLOCATE
Other control instructions	TOL_INF, DGS, DGL

As with directives, control instructions are specified in the source.

Also, among the control instructions displayed in "Table 4-20. Control Instruction List", the following can be written as an assembler option even in the command line when the assembler is activated.

**Table 4-21. Control Instructions and Assembler Options**

Control Instruction	Assembler Options
PROCESSOR	-c
DEBUG/NODEBUG	-g/-ng
DEBUGA/NODEBUGA	-ga/-nga
XREF/NOXREF	-kx/-nkx
SYMLIST/NOSYMLIST	-ks/-nks
TITLE	-lh
FORMFEED/NOFORMFEED	-lf/-nlf
WIDTH	-lw
LENGTH	-ll
TAB	-lt
KANJICODE	-zs/-ze/-zn

### 4.3.2 Assemble target type specification control instruction

Assemble target type specification control instructions specify the assemble target type in the source module file. The following assemble target type specification control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
PROCESSOR	Specifies in a source module file the assemble target type.

**PROCESSOR**

Specifies in a source module file the assemble target type.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]PROCESSOR[ ]([ ]processor-type[ ])
[ ]$[ ]PC[ ]([ ]processor-type[ ])           ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The PROCESSOR control instruction specifies in a source module file the processor type of the target device subject to assembly.

**[Use]**

- The processor type of the target device subject to assembly must always be specified in the source module file or in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If you omit the processor type specification for the target device subject to assembly in each source module file, you must specify the processor type at each assembly operation. Therefore, by specifying the target device subject to assembly in each source module file, you can save time and trouble when starting up the assembler.

**[Description]**

- The PROCESSOR control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file. If the control instruction is described elsewhere, the assembler will be aborted.
- For the specifiable processor name, see the user's manual of the device used or "Functions Supported by CubeSuite+".
- If the specified processor type differs from the actual target device subject to assembly, the assembler will be aborted.
- Only one PROCESSOR control instruction can be specified in the module header.
- The processor type of the target device subject to assembly may also be specified with the assembler option (-c) in the startup command line of the assembler. If the specified processor type differs between the source module file and the startup command line, the assembler will output a warning message and give precedence to the processor type specification in the startup command line.
- Even when the assembler option (-c) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the PROCESSOR control instruction.
- If the processor type is not specified in either the source module file or the startup command line, the assembler will be aborted.

**[Application example]**

```
$      PROCESSOR ( f1166a0 )
$      DEBUG
$      XREF

      NAME      TEST
      :
      CSEG
```

### 4.3.3 Debug information output control instructions

With debug information output control instructions it is possible to specify the output of debug information for the object module file in the source module file.

The following debug information output control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
<code>DEBUG</code>	Adds local symbol information in the object module file.
<code>NODEBUG</code>	Does not add local symbol information in the object module file.
<code>DEBUGA</code>	Adds assembler source debug information in the object module file.
<code>NODEBUGA</code>	Does not add assembler source debug information in the object module file.

**DEBUG**

Adds local symbol information in the object module file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]DEBUG          ; Default assumption  
[ ]$[ ]DG            ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The DEBUG control instruction tells the assembler to add local symbol information to an object module file.
- The NODEBUG control instruction tells the assembler not to add local symbol information to an object module file. However, in this case as well, the segment name is output to an object module file.

**[Use]**

- Use the DEBUG control instruction when symbolic debugging including local symbols is to be performed.

**[Description]**

- The DEBUG or NODEBUG control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If the DEBUG or NODEBUG control instruction is omitted, the assembler will assume that the DEBUG control instruction has been specified.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- The addition of local symbol information can be specified using the assembler option (-g/-ng) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line takes precedence.
- Even when the assembler option (-ng) has been specified, the assembler performs a syntax check on the DEBUG or NODEBUG control instruction.

**NODEBUG**

Does not add local symbol information in the object module file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ] NODEBUG  
[ ]$ [ ] NODG ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The NODEBUG control instruction tells the assembler not to add local symbol information to an object module file. However, in this case as well, the segment name is output to an object module file.
- "Local symbol information" refers to symbols other than module names and PUBLIC, EXTRN, and EXTBIT symbols.

**[Use]**

- Use the NODEBUG control instruction when:
  - Symbolic debugging is to be performed for global symbols only
  - Debugging is to be performed without symbols
  - Only objects are required (as for evaluation with PROM)

**[Description]**

- The DEBUG or NODEBUG control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If the DEBUG or NODEBUG control instruction is omitted, the assembler will assume that the DEBUG control instruction has been specified.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- The addition of local symbol information can be specified using the assembler option (-g/-ng) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line takes precedence.
- Even when the assembler option (-ng) has been specified, the assembler performs a syntax check on the DEBUG or NODEBUG control instruction.

**DEBUGA**

Adds assembler source debug information in the object module file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]DEBUGA ; Default assumption
```

**[Function]**

- The DEBUGA control instruction tells the assembler to add assembler source debugging information to an object module file.

**[Use]**

- Use the DEBUGA control instruction when debugging is to be performed at the assembler source level. An integrated debugger will be necessary for debugging at the source level.

**[Description]**

- The DEBUGA or NODEBUGA control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If the DEBUGA or NODEBUGA control instruction is omitted, the assembler will assume that the DEBUGA control instruction has been specified.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- The addition of assembler source debugging information can be specified using the assembler option (-ga/-nga) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line takes precedence.
- Even when the assembler option (-nga) has been specified, the assembler performs a syntax check on the DEBUGA or NODEBUGA control instruction.
- If compiling the debug information output by the C compiler, do not describe the debug information output control instructions when assembling the output assemble source. The control instructions necessary at assembly are output to assembler source as control statements by the C compiler.

**NODEBUGA**

Does not add assembler source debug information in the object module file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ] $ [ ] NODEBUGA
```

**[Function]**

- The NODEBUGA control instruction tells the assembler not to add assembler source debugging information to an object module file.

**[Use]**

- Use the NODEBUGA control instruction when:
  - Debugging is to be performed without the assembler source
  - Only objects are required (as for evaluation with PROM)

**[Description]**

- The DEBUGA or NODEBUGA control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If the DEBUGA or NODEBUGA control instruction is omitted, the assembler will assume that the DEBUGA control instruction has been specified.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- The addition of assembler source debugging information can be specified using the assembler option (-ga/-nga) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line takes precedence.
- Even when the assembler option (-nga) has been specified, the assembler performs a syntax check on the DEBUGA or NODEBUGA control instruction.
- If compiling the debug information output by the C compiler, do not describe the debug information output control instructions when assembling the output assemble source. The control instructions necessary at assembly are output to assembler source as control statements by the C compiler.

#### 4.3.4 Cross-reference list output specification control instructions

cross-reference list output specification control instructions specify cross-reference list output in a source module file.

The following cross-reference list output specification control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">XREF</a>	Outputs a cross-reference list to an assemble list file.
<a href="#">NOXREF</a>	Does not output a cross-reference list to an assemble list file.
<a href="#">SYMLIST</a>	Outputs a symbol list to a list file.
<a href="#">NOSYMLIST</a>	Does not output a symbol list to a list file.

**XREF**

Outputs a cross-reference list to an assemble list file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]XREF  
[ ]$ [ ]XR ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The XREF control instruction tells the assembler to output a cross-reference list to an assembly list file.

**[Use]**

- Use the XREF control instruction to output a cross-reference list when you want information on where each of the symbols defined in the source module file is referenced or how many such symbols are referenced in the source module file.
- If you must specify the output or non-output of a cross-reference list at each assembly operation, you may save time and labor by specifying the XREF and NOXREF control instruction in the source module file.

**[Description]**

- The XREF or NOXREF control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- Output or non-output of a cross-reference list can also be specified by the assembler option (-kx/-nkx) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the assembler option specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the XREF/NOXREF control instruction.

**NOXREF**

Does not output a cross-reference list to an assemble list file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]NOXREF          ; Default assumption  
[ ]$ [ ]NOXR          ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The NOXREF control instruction tells the assembler not to output a cross-reference list to an assembly list file.

**[Use]**

- Use the XREF control instruction to output a cross-reference list when you want information on where each of the symbols defined in the source module file is referenced or how many such symbols are referenced in the source module file.
- If you must specify the output or non-output of a cross-reference list at each assembly operation, you may save time and labor by specifying the XREF and NOXREF control instruction in the source module file.

**[Description]**

- The XREF or NOXREF control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- Output or non-output of a cross-reference list can also be specified by the assembler option (-kx/-nkx) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the assembler option specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the XREF/NOXREF control instruction.

**SYMLIST**

Outputs a symbol list to a list file

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]SYMLIST
```

**[Function]**

- The SYMLIST control instruction tells the assembler to output a symbol list to a list file.

**[Use]**

- Use the SYMLIST control instruction to output a symbol list.

**[Description]**

- The SYMLIST or NOSYMLIST control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- Output of a symbol list can also be specified by the assembler option (-ks/-nks) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the assembler option specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the SYMLIST/NOSYMLIST control instruction.

**NOSYMLIST**

Does not output a symbol list to a list file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]NOSYMLIST ; Default assumption
```

**[Function]**

- The NOSYMLIST control instruction tells the assembler not to output a symbol list to a list file.

**[Use]**

- Use the NOSYMLIST control instruction not to output a symbol list.

**[Description]**

- The SYMLIST or NOSYMLIST control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more of these control instructions are specified, the last specified control instruction takes precedence over the others.
- Output of a symbol list can also be specified by the assembler option (-ks/-nks) in the startup command line.
- If the control instruction specification in the source module file differs from the assembler option specification in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the SYMLIST/NOSYMLIST control instruction.

#### 4.3.5 Include control instruction

Include control instructions are used when quoting other source module files in the source module

By using include control instructions effectively, the labor hours for describing source can be reduced.

The following include control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
INCLUDE	Quote a series of statements from another source module file.

**INCLUDE**

Quote a series of statements from another source module file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ] INCLUDE [ ] ( [ ] filename [ ] )
[ ]$ [ ] IC [ ] ( [ ] filename [ ] ) ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The INCLUDE control instruction tells the assembler to insert and expand the contents of a specified file beginning on a specified line in the source program for assembly.

**[Use]**

- A relatively large group of statements that may be shared by two or more source modules should be combined into a single file as an INCLUDE file.  
If the group of statements must be used in each source module, specify the filename of the required INCLUDE file with the INCLUDE control instruction.  
With this control instruction, you can greatly reduce time and labor in describing source modules.

**[Description]**

- The INCLUDE control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- The pathname or drive name of an INCLUDE file can be specified with the assembler option (-I).
- The assembler searches INCLUDE file read paths in the following sequence:

**(1) When an INCLUDE file is specified without pathname specification**

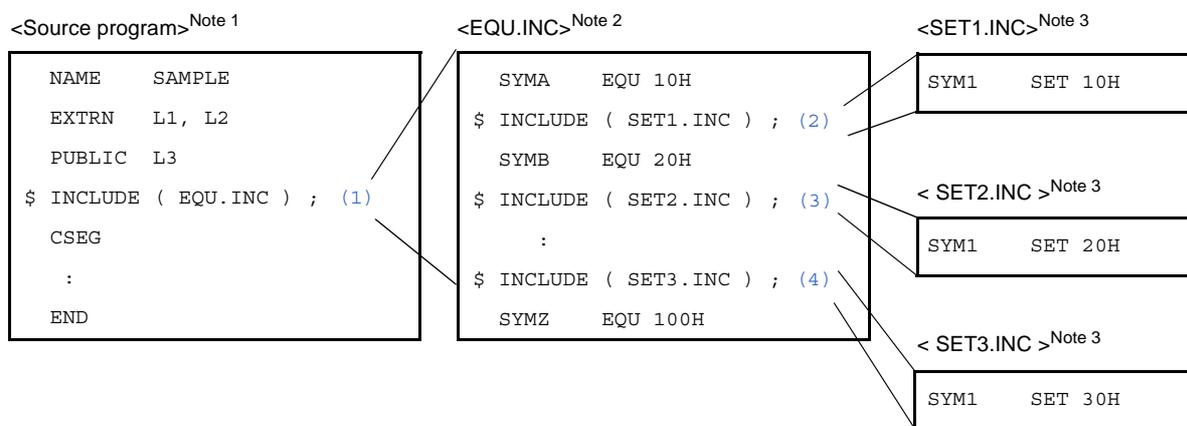
- Path in which the source file exists**
- Path specified by the assembler option (-I)**
- Path specified by the environment variable INC78K0R**

**(2) When an INCLUDE file is specified with a pathname**

If the INCLUDE file is specified with a drive name or a pathname which begins with backslash (\), the path specified with the INCLUDE file will be prefixed to the INCLUDE filename. If the INCLUDE file is specified with a relative path (which does not begin with \), a pathname will be prefixed to the INCLUDE filename in the order described in (1) above.

- Nesting of INCLUDE files is allowed up to seven levels. In other words, the nesting level display of INCLUDE files in the assembly list is up to 8 (the term "nesting" here refers to the specification of one or more other INCLUDE files in an INCLUDE file).
- The END directive need not be described in an INCLUDE file.
- If the specified INCLUDE file cannot be opened, the assembler will abort operation.

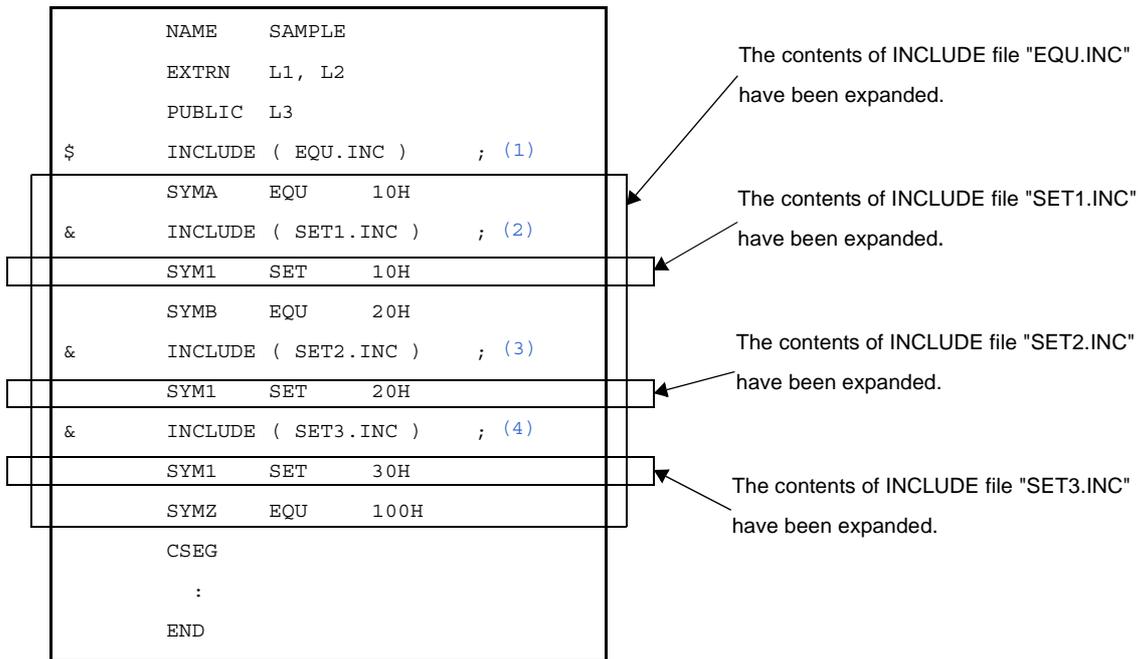
- An INCLUDE file must be closed with IF or \_IF control instruction that is properly paired with an ENDIF control instruction within the INCLUDE file. If the IF level at the entry of the INCLUDE file expansion does not correspond with the IF level immediately after the INCLUDE file expansion, the assembler will output an error message and force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the INCLUDE file expansion.
- When defining a macro in an INCLUDE file, the macro definition must be closed in the INCLUDE file. If an ENDM directive appears unexpectedly (without the corresponding MACRO directive) in the INCLUDE file, an error message will be output and the ENDM directive will be ignored. If an ENDM directive is missing for the MACRO directive described in the INCLUDE file, the assembler will output an error message but will process the macro definition by assuming that the corresponding ENDM directive has been described.
- Two or more segments cannot be defined in an include file. An error is output, if defined.

**[Application example]**

- (1) This control instruction specifies "EQU.INC" as the INCLUDE file.
- (2) This control instruction specifies "SET1.INC" as the INCLUDE file.
- (3) This control instruction specifies "SET2.INC" as the INCLUDE file.
- (4) This control instruction specifies "SET3.INC" as the INCLUDE file.

- Notes 1.** Two or more \$IC control instructions can be specified in the source file. The same INCLUDE file may also be specified more than once.
2. Two or more \$IC control instructions may be specified for INCLUDE file "EQU.INC".
  3. No \$IC control instruction can be specified in any of the INCLUDE files "SET1.INC", "SET2.INC", and "SET3.INC".

When this source program is assembled, the contents of the INCLUDE file will be expanded as follows:



### 4.3.6 Assembly list control instructions

The assembly list control instructions are used in a source module file to control the output format of an assembly list such as page ejection, suppression of list output, and subtitle output.

The following assembly list control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
EJECT	Indicates an Assembly List page break.
LIST	Indicates starting location of output of assembly list.
NOLIST	Indicates stop location of output of assembly list.
GEN	Outputs macro definition lines, reference line and also macro-expanded lines to assembly list.
NOGEN	Does not output macro definition lines, reference line and also macro-expanded lines to assembly list.
COND	Outputs approved and failed sections of the conditional assemble to the assembly list.
NOCOND	Does not output approved and failed sections of the conditional assemble to the assembly list
TITLE	Prints character strings in the TITLE column at each page header of an assembly list, symbol table list, or cross-reference list.
SUBTITLE	Prints character strings in the SUBTITLE column at header of an assembly list.
FORMFEED	Outputs form feed at the end of a list file.
NOFORMFEED	Does not output form feed at the end of a list file.
WIDTH	Specifies the maximum number of characters for one line of a list file.
LENGTH	Specifies the number of lines for 1 page of a list file.
TAB	Specifies the number of characters for list file tabs.

**EJECT**

Indicates an assembly list page break.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]EJECT
[ ]$[ ]EJ      ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Default Assumption]**

- EJECT control instruction is not specified.

**[Function]**

- The EJECT control instruction causes the assembler to execute page ejection (formfeed) of an assembly list.

**[Use]**

- Describe the EJECT control instruction in a line of the source module at which page ejection of the assembly list is required.

**[Description]**

- The EJECT control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- Page ejection of the assembly list is executed after the image of the EJECT control instruction itself is output.
- If the assembler option (-np) or (-llo) is specified in the startup command line or if the assembly list output is disabled by another control instruction, the EJECT control instruction becomes invalid.
- If an illegal description follows the EJECT control instruction, the assembler will output an error message.

**[Application example]**

```
      :
      MOV      [DE+], A
      BR      $$
$     EJECT          ; (1)
      :
      CSEG
      :
      END
```

- (1) Page ejection is executed with the EJECT control instruction.

The assemble list of the above application example is shown below.

```
      :  
      MOV      [DE+], A  
      BR      $$  
$      EJECT          ; (1)  
-----page ejection-----  
      :  
      CSEG  
      :  
      END
```

**LIST**

Indicates starting location of output of assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]LIST           ; Default assumption
[ ]$[ ]LI            ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The LIST control instruction indicates to the assembler the line at which assembly list output must start.

**[Use]**

- LUse the LIST control instruction to cancel the assembly list output suppression specified by the NOLIST control instruction.
- By using a combination of NOLIST and LIST control instructions, you can control the amount of assembly list output as well as the contents of the list.

**[Description]**

- The LIST control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- If the LIST control instruction is specified after the NOLIST control instruction, statements described after the LIST control instruction will be output again on the assembly list. The image of the LIST or NOLIST control instruction will also be output on the assembly list.
- If neither the LIST nor NOLIST control instruction is specified, all statements in the source module will be output to an assembly list.

**[Application example]**

```

NAME      SAMP1
$      NOLIST           ; (1)
DATA1   EQU      10H   ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
DATA2   EQU      11H   ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
        :
DATA3   EQU      20H   ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
DATA4   EQU      20H   ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
$      LIST           ; (2)
        CSEG
        :
        END
```

- (1) Because the NOLIST control instruction is specified here, statements after "\$ NOLIST" and up to the LIST control instruction in (2) will not be output on the assembly list.**

**The image of the NOLIST control instruction itself will be output on the assembly list.**

- (2) Because the LIST control instruction is specified here, statements after this control instruction will be output again on the assembly list.

The image of the LIST control instruction itself will also be output on the assembly list.

**NOLIST**

Indicates stop location of output of assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]NOLIST
[ ]$ [ ]NOLI      ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Function]**

- The NOLIST control instruction indicates to the assembler the line at which assembly list output must be suppressed.
- All source statements described after the NOLIST control instruction specification will be assembled, but will not be output on the assembly list until the LIST control instruction appears in the source program.

**[Use]**

- Use the NOLIST control instruction to limit the amount of assembly list output.
  - Use the LIST control instruction to cancel the assembly list output suppression specified by the NOLIST control instruction.
- By using a combination of NOLIST and LIST control instructions, you can control the amount of assembly list output as well as the contents of the list.

**[Description]**

- The NOLIST control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- The NOLIST control instruction functions to suppress assembly list output and is not intended to stop the assembly process.
- If the LIST control instruction is specified after the NOLIST control instruction, statements described after the LIST control instruction will be output again on the assembly list. The image of the LIST or NOLIST control instruction will also be output on the assembly list.
- If neither the LIST nor NOLIST control instruction is specified, all statements in the source module will be output to an assembly list.

**[Application example]**

```

NAME      SAMP1
$         NOLIST      ; (1)
DATA1    EQU      10H    ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
DATA2    EQU      11H    ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
          :              ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
DATA3    EQU      20H    ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
DATA4    EQU      20H    ; The statement will not be output to the assembly list.
$         LIST       ; (2)
          CSEG
          :
          END
```

- (1) Because the NOLIST control instruction is specified here, statements after "\$ NOLIST" and up to the LIST control instruction in (2) will not be output on the assembly list.

The image of the NOLIST control instruction itself will be output on the assembly list.

- (2) Because the LIST control instruction is specified here, statements after this control instruction will be output again on the assembly list.

The image of the LIST control instruction itself will also be output on the assembly list.

**GEN**

Outputs macro definition lines, reference line and also macro-expanded lines to assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]GEN          ; Default assumption
```

**[Function]**

- The GEN control instruction tells the assembler to output macro definition lines, macro reference lines, and macro-expanded lines to an assembly list.

**[Use]**

- Use the GEN control instruction to limit the amount of assembly list output.

**[Description]**

- The GEN control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- If neither the GEN nor NOGEN control instruction is specified, macro definition lines, macro reference lines, and macro-expanded lines will be output to an assembly list.
- The specified list control takes place after the image of the GEN or NOGEN control instruction itself has been printed on the assembly list.
- If the GEN control instruction is specified after the NOGEN control instruction, the assembler will resume the output of macro-expanded lines.

**[Application example]**

```

NAME      SAMP
$         NOGEN                      ; (1)
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV    A, #PARA1
          ADD    A, #PARA2
          ENDM
          CSEG
          ADMAC  10H, 20H
          END

```

The assemble list of the above application example is shown below.

```
NAME      SAMP1
$         NOGEN                               ; (1)
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV    A, #PARA1
          ADD    A, #PARA2
          ENDM
          CSEG
          ADMAC  10H, 20H
          MOV    A, #10H                       ; The macro-expanded lines will not be output.
          AUD    A, #20H                       ; The macro-expanded lines will not be output.
          END
```

**(1) Because the NOGEN control instruction is specified, the macro-expanded lines will not be output to the assembly list.**

**NOGEN**

Does not output macro definition lines, reference line and also macro-expanded lines to assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ] $ [ ] NOGEN
```

**[Function]**

- The NOGEN control instruction tells the assembler to output macro definition lines and macro reference lines but to suppress macro-expanded lines.

**[Use]**

- Use the NOGEN control instruction to limit the amount of assembly list output.

**[Description]**

- The NOGEN control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- If neither the GEN nor NOGEN control instruction is specified, macro definition lines, macro reference lines, and macro-expanded lines will be output to an assembly list.
- The specified list control takes place after the image of the GEN or NOGEN control instruction itself has been printed on the assembly list.
- The assembler continues its processing and increments the statement number (STNO) count even after the list output control by the NOGEN control instruction.
- If the GEN control instruction is specified after the NOGEN control instruction, the assembler will resume the output of macro-expanded lines.

**[Application example]**

```

NAME      SAMP
$         NOGEN                      ; (1)
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV   A, #PARA1
          ADD   A, #PARA2
          ENDM
          CSEG
          ADMAC 10H, 20H
          END

```

The assemble list of the above application example is shown below.

```
NAME      SAMP1
$         NOGEN                               ; (1)
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV    A, #PARA1
          ADD    A, #PARA2
          ENDM
          CSEG
          ADMAC  10H, 20H
          MOV    A, #10H                       ; The macro-expanded lines will not be output.
          AUD    A, #20H                       ; The macro-expanded lines will not be output.
          END
```

**(1) Because the NOGEN control instruction is specified, the macro-expanded lines will not be output to the assembly list.**

**COND**

Outputs approved and failed sections of the conditional assemble to the assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ] COND          ; Default assumption
```

**[Function]**

- The COND control instruction tells the assembler to output lines that have satisfied the conditional assembly condition as well as those which have not satisfied the conditional assembly condition to an assembly list.

**[Use]**

- Use the COND control instruction to limit the amount of assembly list output.

**[Description]**

- The COND control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- If neither the COND nor NOCOND control instruction is specified, the assembler will output lines that have satisfied the conditional assembly condition as well as those which have not satisfied the conditional assembly condition to an assembly list.
- The specified list control takes place after the image of the COND or NOCOND control instruction itself has been printed on the assembly list.
- If the COND control instruction is specified after the NOCOND control instruction, the assembler will resume the output of lines that have not satisfied the conditional assembly condition and lines in which IF/\_IF, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, and ENDIF have been described.

**[Application example]**

```

NAME      SAMP
$         NOCOND
$         SET ( SW1 )
$         IF ( SW1 )                ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
                MOV      A, #1H
$         ELSE                    ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
                MOV      A, #0H    ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
$         ENDIF                  ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
END
```

**NOCOND**

Does not output approved and failed sections of the conditional assemble to the assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ] $ [ ] NOCOND
```

**[Function]**

- The NOCOND control instruction tells the assembler to output only lines that have satisfied the conditional assembly condition to an assembly list. The output of lines that have not satisfied the conditional assembly condition and lines in which IF/\_IF, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, and ENDIF have been described will be suppressed.

**[Use]**

- Use the NOCOND control instruction to limit the amount of assembly list output.

**[Description]**

- The NOCOND control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- If neither the COND nor NOCOND control instruction is specified, the assembler will output lines that have satisfied the conditional assembly condition as well as those which have not satisfied the conditional assembly condition to an assembly list.
- The specified list control takes place after the image of the COND or NOCOND control instruction itself has been printed on the assembly list.
- The assembler increments the ALNO and STNO counts even after the list output control by the NOCOND control instruction.
- If the COND control instruction is specified after the NOCOND control instruction, the assembler will resume the output of lines that have not satisfied the conditional assembly condition and lines in which IF/\_IF, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, and ENDIF have been described.

**[Application example]**

```

NAME      SAMP
$         NOCOND
$         SET ( SW1 )
$         IF ( SW1 )                ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
                MOV      A, #1H
$         ELSE                    ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
                MOV      A, #0H    ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
$         ENDIF                  ; This part, though assembled, will not be outout
                                        ; to the list.
END

```

**TITLE**

Prints character strings in the TITLE column at each page header of an assembly list, symbol table list, or cross-reference list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]TITLE[ ]( [ ]'title-string' [ ] )
[ ]$[ ]TT[ ]( [ ]'title-string' [ ] ) ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Default Assumption]**

- When the TITLE control instruction is not specified, the TITLE column of the assembly list header is left blank.

**[Function]**

- The TITLE control instruction specifies the character string to be printed in the TITLE column at each page header of an assembly list, symbol table list, or cross-reference list.

**[Use]**

- Use the TITLE control instruction to print a title on each page of a list so that the contents of the list can be easily identified.
- If you need to specify a title with the assembler option at each assembly time, you can save time and labor in starting the assembler by describing this control instruction in the source module file.

**[Description]**

- The TITLE control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more TITLE control instructions are specified at the same time, the assembler will accept only the last specified TITLE control instruction as valid.
- Up to 60 characters can be specified as the title string. If the specified title string consists of 61 or more characters, the assembler will accept only the first 60 characters of the string as valid. However, if the character length specification per line of an assembly list file (a quantity "X" ) is 119 characters or less, "X - 60 characters" will be acceptable.
- If a single quotation mark ( ' ) is to be used as part of the title string, describe the single quotation mark twice in succession.
- If no title string is specified (the number of characters in the title string = 0), the assembler will leave the TITLE column blank.
- If any character not included in "(2) Character set" is found in the specified title string, the assembler will output "!" in place of the illegal character in the TITLE column.
- A title for an assembly list can also be specified with the assembler option (-lh) in the startup command line of the assembler.

[Application example]

```

$      PROCESSOR ( f1166a0 )
$      TITLE ( 'THIS IS TITLE' )
      NAME      SAMPLE
      CSEG
      MOV      A, B
      END
    
```

The assemble list of the above application example is shown below. (with the number of lines per page specified as 72).

```

78K0R Assembler Vx.xx   THIS IS TITLE   Date:xx xxx xx   Page:1

Command :      -l172 sample.asm
Para-file :
In-file  :      sample.asm
Obj-file :      sample.rel
Prn-file :      sample.prn

      Assemble list

ALNO   STNO   ADRS   OBJECT  M I   SOURCE STATEMENT

  1     1           $      PROCESSOR ( f1166a0 )
  2     2           $      TITLE ( 'THIS IS TITLE' )
  3     3           NAME      SAMPLE
  4     4     ----   CSEG
  5     5     00000  63     MOV      A, B
  6     6           END

Segment information :

ADRS   LEN    NAME

00000  00001H  ?CSEG

Target chip : uPD78F1166_A0
Device file : Vx.xx

Assembly complete, 0 error(s) and 0 warning(s) found. (0)
    
```

**SUBTITLE**

Prints character strings in the SUBTITLE column at header of an assembly list.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]SUBTITLE[ ]([ ]'title-string' [ ])  
[ ]$[ ]ST[ ]([ ]'title-string' [ ]) ; Abbreviated format
```

**[Default Assumption]**

- When the SUBTITLE control instruction is not specified, the SUBTITLE section of the assembly list header is left blank.

**[Function]**

- The SUBTITLE control instruction specifies the character string to be printed in the SUBTITLE section at each page header of an assembly list.

**[Use]**

- Use the SUBTITLE control instruction to print a subtitle on each page of an assembly list so that the contents of the assembly list can be easily identified.  
The character string of a subtitle may be changed for each page.

**[Description]**

- The SUBTITLE control instruction can only be described in ordinary source programs.
- Up to 72 characters can be specified as the subtitle string.  
If the specified title string consists of 73 or more characters, the assembler will accept only the first 72 characters of the string as valid. A 2-byte character is counted as two characters, and tab is counted as one character.
- The character string specified with the SUBTITLE control instruction will be printed in the SUBTITLE section on the page after the page on which the SUBTITLE control instruction has been specified. However, if the control instruction is specified at the top (first line) of a page, the subtitle will be printed on that page.
- If the SUBTITLE control instruction has not been specified, the assembler will leave the SUBTITLE section blank.
- If a single quotation mark ( ' ) is to be used as part of the character string, describe the single quotation mark twice in succession.
- If the character string in the SUBTITLE section is 0, the SUBTITLE column will be left blank.
- If any character not included in "(2) Character set" is found in the specified subtitle string, the assembler will output "!" in place of the illegal character in the SUBTITLE column. If CR (ODH) is described, an error occurs and nothing will be output in the assembly list. If 00H is described, nothing from that point to the closing single quotation mark ( ' ) will be output.

[Application example]

```

NAME      SAMP
CSEG
$         SUBTITLE ( 'THIS IS SUBTITLE 1' )      ; (1)
$         EJECT                                  ; (2)
CSEG
$         SUBTITLE ( 'THIS IS SUBTITLE 2' )      ; (3)
$         EJECT                                  ; (4)
$         SUBTITLE ( 'THIS IS SUBTITLE 3' )      ; (5)
END
    
```

(1) This control instruction specifies the character string "THIS IS SUBTITLE 1".

(2) This control instruction specifies a page ejection.

(3) This control instruction specifies the character string "THIS IS SUBTITLE 2".

(4) This control instruction specifies a page ejection.

(5) This control instruction specifies the character string "THIS IS SUBTITLE 3".

The assembly list for this example appears as follows (with the number of lines per page specified as 80).

```

78K0R Assembler Vx.xx                               Date:xx xxx xx Page:1

Command :      -cf1166a0 -l180 sample.asm
Para-file :
In-file  :      sample.asm
Obj-file  :      sample.rel
Prn-file  :      sample.prn
          Assemble list

ALNO  STNO  ADRS  OBJECT  M I SOURCE STATEMENT

 1     1           NAME SAMP
 2     2     ----- CSEG
 3     3           $  SUBTITLE ( 'THIS IS SUBTITLE 1' )      ; (1)
 4     4           $  EJECT                                  ; (2)
-----page ejection-----
78K0R Assembler Vx.xx                               Date:xx xxx xx Page:2

THIS IS SUBTITLE 1

ALNO  STNO  ADRS  OBJECT  M I SOURCE STATEMENT
    
```

```
5      5      -----          CSEG
6      6          $  SUBTITLE ( 'THIS IS SUBTITLE 2' ) ; (3)
7      7          $  EJECT                               ; (4)
-----page ejection-----
78K0R Assembler Vx.xx                      Date:xx xxx xx  Page:3

THIS IS SUBTITLE 2

ALNO  STNO  ADRS  OBJECT  M I SOURCE STATEMENT

8      8          $  SUBTITLE ( 'THIS IS SUBTITLE 3' ) ; (5)
9      9          END

Segment informations :

ADRS  LEN      NAME

00000 00000H  ?CSEG

Target chip : uPD78F1166_A0
Device file : Vx.xx
Assembly complete, 0 error(s) and 0 warning(s) found. (0)
```

**FORMFEED**

Outputs form feed at the end of a list file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ] $ [ ] FORMFEED
```

**[Function]**

- The FORMFEED control instruction tells the assembler to output a FORMFEED code at the end of an assembly list file.

**[Use]**

- Use the FORMFEED control instruction when you want to start a new page after printing the contents of an assembly list file.

**[Description]**

- The FORMFEED control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- At the time of printing an assembly list, the last page of the list may not come out if printing ends in the middle of a page.  
In such a case, add a FORMFEED code to the end of the assembly list using the FORMFEED control instruction or assembler option (-lf).
- In many cases, a FORMFEED code will be output at the end of a file. For this reason, if a FORMFEED code exists at the end of a list file, an unwanted white page may be ejected. To prevent this, the NOFORMFEED control instruction or assembler option (-nlf) has been set by default value.
- If two or more FORMFEED/NOFORMFEED control instructions are specified at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- The output or non-output of a formfeed code may also be specified with the assembler option (-lf) or (-nlf) in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If the control instruction specification (FORMFEED/NOFORMFEED) in the source module differs from the specification (-lf/-nlf) in the startup command line, the specification in the startup command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the FORMFEED or NOFORMFEED control instruction.

**NOFORMFEED**

Does not output form feed at the end of a list file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]NOFORMFEED ; Default assumption
```

**[Function]**

- The NOFORMFEED control instruction tells the assembler not to output a FORMFEED code at the end of an assembly list file.

**[Use]**

- Use the FORMFEED control instruction when you want to start a new page after printing the contents of an assembly list file.

**[Description]**

- The NOFORMFEED control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- At the time of printing an assembly list, the last page of the list may not come out if printing ends in the middle of a page.  
In such a case, add a FORMFEED code to the end of the assembly list using the FORMFEED control instruction or assembler option (-lf).
- In many cases, a FORMFEED code will be output at the end of a file. For this reason, if a FORMFEED code exists at the end of a list file, an unwanted white page may be ejected. To prevent this, the NOFORMFEED control instruction or assembler option (-nlf) has been set by default value.
- If two or more FORMFEED/NOFORMFEED control instructions are specified at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- The output or non-output of a formfeed code may also be specified with the assembler option (-lf) or (-nlf) in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If the control instruction specification (FORMFEED/NOFORMFEED) in the source module differs from the specification (-lf/-nlf) in the startup command line, the specification in the startup command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the FORMFEED or NOFORMFEED control instruction.

**WIDTH**

Specifies the maximum number of characters for one line of a list file.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]WIDTH [ ] ( [ ] columns-per-line [ ] )
```

**[Default Assumption]**

\$WIDTH ( 132 )

**[Function]**

- The WIDTH control instruction specifies the number of columns (characters) per line of a list file. "columns-per-line" must be a value in the range of 72 to 260.

**[Use]**

- Use the WIDTH control instruction when you want to change the number of columns per line of a list file.

**[Description]**

- The WIDTH control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more WIDTH control instructions are specified at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- The number of columns per line of a list file may also be specified with the assembler option (-lw) in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If the control instruction specification (WIDTH) in the source module differs from the specification (-lw) in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the WIDTH control instruction.

**LENGTH**

Specifies the number of lines for 1 page of a list file

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]LENGTH [ ] ( [ ] lines-per-page [ ] )
```

**[Default Assumption]**

\$LENGTH ( 66 )

**[Function]**

- The LENGTH control instruction specifies the number of lines per page of a list file. "lines-per-page" may be "0" or a value in the range of 20 to 32767.

**[Use]**

- Use the LENGTH control instruction when you want to change the number of lines per page of a list file.

**[Description]**

- The LENGTH control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more LENGTH control instructions are specified at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- The number of columns per line of a list file may also be specified with the assembler option (-ll) in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If the control instruction specification (LENGTH) in the source module differs from the specification (-ll) in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the LENGTH control instruction.

**TAB**

Specifies the number of characters for list file tabs.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]TAB [ ] ( [ ] number-of-columns [ ] )
```

**[Default Assumption]**

\$TAB ( 8 )

**[Function]**

- The TAB control instruction specifies the number of columns as tab stops on a list file. "number-of-columns" may be a value in the range of 0 to 8.
- The TAB control instruction specifies the number of columns that becomes the basis of tabulation processing to output any list by replacing a HT (Horizontal Tabulation) code in a source module with several blank characters on the list.

**[Use]**

- Use HT code to reduce the number of blanks when the number of characters per line of any list is reduced using the TAB control instruction.

**[Description]**

- The TAB control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more TAB control instructions are specified at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- The number of tab stops may also be specified with the assembler option (-lt) in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If the control instruction specification (TAB) in the source module differs from the specification (-lt) in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-np) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the TAB control instruction.

#### 4.3.7 Conditional assembly control instructions

Conditional assembly control instructions select, with the conditional assemble switch, whether to make a series of statements in the source module into an assemble target or not.

If conditional assemble instructions are made effective, it is possible to assemble without unnecessary statements and hardly changing the source module.

The following conditional assembly control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
IF	Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.
_IF	
ELSEIF	
_ELSEIF	
ELSE	
ENDIF	
SET	Sets value for switch name specified by IF/ELSEIF control instruction.
RESET	

**IF**

Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ] IF [ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ELSEIF [ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ELSE
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ENDIF
```

**[Function]**

- The control instructions set the conditions to limit source statements subject to assembly. Source statements described between the IF control instruction and the ENDIF control instruction are subject to conditional assembly.
- If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the IF control instruction (i.e., IF or \_IF condition) is true (other than 00H), source statements described after this IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the IF condition is false (00H), source statements described after this IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- The ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction is checked for true/false status only when the conditions of all the conditional assembly control instructions described before this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction are not satisfied (i.e. the evaluated values are false).  
If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction (i.e. ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition) is true, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition is false, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- If the conditions of all the IF/\_IF and ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF control instructions described before the ELSE control instruction are not satisfied (i.e., all the switch names are false), source statements described after this ELSE control instruction until the appearance of the ENDIF control instruction in the source program will be assembled.
- The ENDIF control instruction indicates to the assembler the termination of source statements subject to conditional assembly.

**[Use]**

- With these conditional assembly control instructions, source statements subject to assembly can be changed without major modifications to the source program.
- If a statement for debugging that becomes necessary only during the program development is described in a source program, whether or not the debugging statement should be assembled (translated into machine language) can be specified by setting switches for conditional assembly.

**[Description]**

- The IF and ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with switch name(s), whereas the \_IF and \_ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with a conditional expression. Both IF/ELSEIF and \_IF/\_ELSEIF may be used in combination. In other words, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF may be used in a pair with IF or \_IF and ENDIF.
- Describe absolute expression for a conditional expression.
- The rules of describing switch names are the same as the conventions of symbol description (for details, see "(3) Symbol field" ).  
However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.
- If the two or more switch names are to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ).  
Up to five switch names can be used per module.
- When two or more switch names have been specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, the IF or ELSEIF condition is judged to be satisfied if one of the switch name values is true.
- The value of each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined with the SET/RESET control instruction.  
Therefore, if the value of the switch name specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction is not set in the source module with the SET or RESET control instruction in advance, it is assumed to be reset.
- If the specified switch name or conditional expression contains an illegal description, the assembler will output an error message and determine that the evaluated value is false.
- When describing the IF or \_IF control instruction, the IF or \_IF control instruction must always be paired with the ENDIF control instruction.
- If an IF-ENDIF block is described in a macro body and control is transferred back from the macro at that level by EXITM processing, the assembler will force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the macro body. In this case, no error occurs.
- Description of an IF-ENDIF block in another IF-ENDIF block is referred to as nesting of IF control instructions.  
Nesting of IF control instructions is allowed up to 8 levels.
- In conditional assembly, object codes will not be generated for statements not assembled, but these statements will be output without change on the assembly list. If you do not wish to output these statements, use the \$NOCOND control instruction.

**[Application example]**

- Example 1

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 )           ; (1)
           text1
$   ENDIF               ; (2)
           :
           END

```

- (1) If the value of switch name "SW1" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled.  
If the value of switch name "SW1" is false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled.  
The value of switch name "SW1" has been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".
- (2) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

- Example 2

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 )           ; (1)
      text1
$   ELSE                 ; (2)
      text2
$   ENDIF               ; (3)
      :
      END

```

- (1) The value of switch name "SW1" has been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".  
If the value of switch name "SW1" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2" will not be assembled.
- (2) If the value of switch name "SW1" in (1) is false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements in "text2" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

- Example 3

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 : SW2 )     ; (1)
      text1
$   ELSEIF ( SW3 )      ; (2)
      text2
$   ELSEIF ( SW4 )      ; (3)
      text3
$   ELSE                 ; (4)
      text4
$   ENDIF               ; (5)
      :
      END

```

- (1) The values of switch names "SW1", "SW2", and "SW3" have been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".  
If the value of switch name "SW1" or "SW2" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.

If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" are false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements after (2) will be conditionally assembled.

- (2) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) are false and the value of switch name "SW3" is true, statements in "text2" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.
- (3) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) and "SW3" in (2) are false and the value of switch statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be will not be assembled.
- (4) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1), "SW3" in (2), and "SW4" in (3) are all false, statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be assembled.
- (5) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

**\_IF**

Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]_IF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ]_ELSEIF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ]ELSE
      :
[ ]$ [ ]ENDIF
```

**[Function]**

- The control instructions set the conditions to limit source statements subject to assembly. Source statements described between the \_IF control instruction and the ENDIF control instruction are subject to conditional assembly.
- If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the \_IF control instruction (i.e., IF or \_IF condition) is true (other than 00H), source statements described after this \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the \_IF condition is false (00H), source statements described after this \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- The ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction is checked for true/false status only when the conditions of all the conditional assembly control instructions described before this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction are not satisfied (i.e. the evaluated values are false).  
If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction (i.e. ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition) is true, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition is false, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- If the conditions of all the IF/\_IF and ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF control instructions described before the ELSE control instruction are not satisfied (i.e., all the switch names are false), source statements described after this ELSE control instruction until the appearance of the ENDIF control instruction in the source program will be assembled.
- The ENDIF control instruction indicates to the assembler the termination of source statements subject to conditional assembly.

**[Use]**

- With these conditional assembly control instructions, source statements subject to assembly can be changed without major modifications to the source program.
- If a statement for debugging that becomes necessary only during the program development is described in a source program, whether or not the debugging statement should be assembled (translated into machine language) can be specified by setting switches for conditional assembly.

**[Description]**

- The IF and ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with switch name(s), whereas the \_IF and \_ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with a conditional expression. Both IF/ELSEIF and \_IF/\_ELSEIF may be used in combination. In other words, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF may be used in a pair with IF or \_IF and ENDIF.
- Describe absolute expression for a conditional expression.
- The rules of describing switch names are the same as the conventions of symbol description (for details, see "(3) Symbol field" ).

However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.

- If the two or more switch names are to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ).  
Up to five switch names can be used per module.
- When two or more switch names have been specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, the IF or ELSEIF condition is judged to be satisfied if one of the switch name values is true.
- The value of each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined with the SET/RESET control instruction.  
Therefore, if the value of the switch name specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction is not set in the source module with the SET or RESET control instruction in advance, it is assumed to be reset.
- If the specified switch name or conditional expression contains an illegal description, the assembler will output an error message and determine that the evaluated value is false.
- When describing the IF or \_IF control instruction, the IF or \_IF control instruction must always be paired with the ENDIF control instruction.
- If an IF-ENDIF block is described in a macro body and control is transferred back from the macro at that level by EXITM processing, the assembler will force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the macro body. In this case, no error occurs.
- Description of an IF-ENDIF block in another IF-ENDIF block is referred to as nesting of IF control instructions.  
Nesting of IF control instructions is allowed up to 8 levels.
- In conditional assembly, object codes will not be generated for statements not assembled, but these statements will be output without change on the assembly list. If you do not wish to output these statements, use the \$NOCOND control instruction.

**[Application example]**

```

text0
$  _IF ( SYMA )           ; (1)
    text1
$  _ELSEIF ( SYMB = SYMC ) ; (2)
    text2
$  ENDIF                 ; (3)
:
END

```

- (1) The value of switch name "SYMA" has been defined with the EQU or SET directive described in "text0". If the symbol name "SYMA" is true (not "0" ), statements in "text1" will be assembled and "text2" will not be assembled.
- (2) If the value of the symbol name "SYMA" is "0", and "SYMB" and "SYMC" have the same value, statements in "text2" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

**ELSEIF**

Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]IF[ ]([ ]switch-name[ ]:[ ]switch-name) ... [ ]
      :
[ ]$[ ]ELSEIF[ ]([ ]switch-name[ ]:[ ]switch-name) ... [ ]
      :
[ ]$[ ]ELSE
      :
[ ]$[ ]ENDIF
```

**[Function]**

- The control instructions set the conditions to limit source statements subject to assembly. Source statements described between the IF or \_IF control instruction and the ENDIF control instruction are subject to conditional assembly.
- If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the IF or \_IF control instruction (i.e., IF or \_IF condition) is true (other than 00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the IF or \_IF condition is false (00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- The ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction is checked for true/false status only when the conditions of all the conditional assembly control instructions described before this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction are not satisfied (i.e. the evaluated values are false).  
If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction (i.e. ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition) is true, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition is false, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- If the conditions of all the IF/\_IF and ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF control instructions described before the ELSE control instruction are not satisfied (i.e., all the switch names are false), source statements described after this ELSE control instruction until the appearance of the ENDIF control instruction in the source program will be assembled.
- The ENDIF control instruction indicates to the assembler the termination of source statements subject to conditional assembly.

**[Use]**

- With these conditional assembly control instructions, source statements subject to assembly can be changed without major modifications to the source program.
- If a statement for debugging that becomes necessary only during the program development is described in a source program, whether or not the debugging statement should be assembled (translated into machine language) can be specified by setting switches for conditional assembly.

**[Description]**

- The IF and ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with switch name(s), whereas the \_IF and \_ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with a conditional expression. Both IF/ELSEIF and \_IF/\_ELSEIF may be used in combination. In other words, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF may be used in a pair with IF or \_IF and ENDIF.
- Describe absolute expression for a conditional expression.
- The rules of describing switch names are the same as the conventions of symbol description (for details, see "(3) Symbol field" ).  
However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.
- If the two or more switch names are to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ).  
Up to five switch names can be used per module.
- When two or more switch names have been specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, the IF or ELSEIF condition is judged to be satisfied if one of the switch name values is true.
- The value of each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined with the SET/RESET control instruction.  
Therefore, if the value of the switch name specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction is not set in the source module with the SET or RESET control instruction in advance, it is assumed to be reset.
- If the specified switch name or conditional expression contains an illegal description, the assembler will output an error message and determine that the evaluated value is false.
- When describing the IF or \_IF control instruction, the IF or \_IF control instruction must always be paired with the ENDIF control instruction.
- If an IF-ENDIF block is described in a macro body and control is transferred back from the macro at that level by EXITM processing, the assembler will force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the macro body. In this case, no error occurs.
- Description of an IF-ENDIF block in another IF-ENDIF block is referred to as nesting of IF control instructions.  
Nesting of IF control instructions is allowed up to 8 levels.
- In conditional assembly, object codes will not be generated for statements not assembled, but these statements will be output without change on the assembly list. If you do not wish to output these statements, use the \$NOCOND control instruction.

**[Application example]**

```
text0
$   IF ( SW1 : SW2 )           ; (1)
    text1
$   ELSEIF ( SW3 )           ; (2)
    text2
$   ELSEIF ( SW4 )           ; (3)
    text3
$   ELSE                       ; (4)
    text4
$   ENDIF                     ; (5)
    :
    END
```

- (1) The values of switch names "SW1", "SW2", and "SW3" have been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".  
If the value of switch name "SW1" or "SW2" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.  
If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" are false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements after (2) will be conditionally assembled.
- (2) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) are false and the value of switch name "SW3" is true, statements in "text2" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.
- (3) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) and "SW3" in (2) are false and the value of switch statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be will not be assembled.
- (4) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1), "SW3" in (2), and "SW4" in (3) are all false, statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be assembled.
- (5) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

**\_ELSEIF**

Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]_IF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ]_ELSEIF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ]ELSE
      :
[ ]$ [ ]ENDIF
```

**[Function]**

- The control instructions set the conditions to limit source statements subject to assembly. Source statements described between the IF or \_IF control instruction and the ENDIF control instruction are subject to conditional assembly.
- If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the IF or \_IF control instruction (i.e., IF or \_IF condition) is true (other than 00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the IF or \_IF condition is false (00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- The ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction is checked for true/false status only when the conditions of all the conditional assembly control instructions described before this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction are not satisfied (i.e. the evaluated values are false).  
If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction (i.e. ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition) is true, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition is false, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- If the conditions of all the IF/\_IF and ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF control instructions described before the ELSE control instruction are not satisfied (i.e., all the switch names are false), source statements described after this ELSE control instruction until the appearance of the ENDIF control instruction in the source program will be assembled.
- The ENDIF control instruction indicates to the assembler the termination of source statements subject to conditional assembly.

**[Use]**

- With these conditional assembly control instructions, source statements subject to assembly can be changed without major modifications to the source program.
- If a statement for debugging that becomes necessary only during the program development is described in a source program, whether or not the debugging statement should be assembled (translated into machine language) can be specified by setting switches for conditional assembly.

**[Description]**

- The IF and ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with switch name(s), whereas the \_IF and \_ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with a conditional expression. Both IF/ELSEIF and \_IF/\_ELSEIF may be used in combination. In other words, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF may be used in a pair with IF or \_IF and ENDIF.
- Describe absolute expression for a conditional expression.
- The rules of describing switch names are the same as the conventions of symbol description (for details, see "(3) Symbol field" ).

However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.

- If the two or more switch names are to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ).  
Up to five switch names can be used per module.
- When two or more switch names have been specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, the IF or ELSEIF condition is judged to be satisfied if one of the switch name values is true.
- The value of each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined with the SET/RESET control instruction.  
Therefore, if the value of the switch name specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction is not set in the source module with the SET or RESET control instruction in advance, it is assumed to be reset.
- If the specified switch name or conditional expression contains an illegal description, the assembler will output an error message and determine that the evaluated value is false.
- When describing the IF or \_IF control instruction, the IF or \_IF control instruction must always be paired with the ENDIF control instruction.
- If an IF-ENDIF block is described in a macro body and control is transferred back from the macro at that level by EXITM processing, the assembler will force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the macro body. In this case, no error occurs.
- Description of an IF-ENDIF block in another IF-ENDIF block is referred to as nesting of IF control instructions.  
Nesting of IF control instructions is allowed up to 8 levels.
- In conditional assembly, object codes will not be generated for statements not assembled, but these statements will be output without change on the assembly list. If you do not wish to output these statements, use the \$NOCOND control instruction.

**[Application example]**

```

text0
$   _IF ( SYMA )           ; (1)
      text1
$   _ELSEIF ( SYMB = SYMC ) ; (2)
      text2
$   ENDIF                 ; (3)
      :
      END

```

- (1) The value of switch name "SYMA" has been defined with the EQU or SET directive described in "text0". If the symbol name "SYMA" is true (not "0" ), statements in "text1" will be assembled and "text2" will not be assembled.
- (2) If the value of the symbol name "SYMA" is "0", and "SYMB" and "SYMC" have the same value, statements in "text2" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

**ELSE**

Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ] IF [ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
or [ ]$ [ ] _IF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ELSEIF [ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
or [ ]$ [ ] _ELSEIF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ELSE
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ENDIF
```

**[Function]**

- The control instructions set the conditions to limit source statements subject to assembly. Source statements described between the IF or \_IF control instruction and the ENDIF control instruction are subject to conditional assembly.
- If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the IF or \_IF control instruction (i.e., IF or \_IF condition) is true (other than 00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the IF or \_IF condition is false (00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- The ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction is checked for true/false status only when the conditions of all the conditional assembly control instructions described before this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction are not satisfied (i.e. the evaluated values are false).  
If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction (i.e. ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition) is true, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition is false, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- If the conditions of all the IF/\_IF and ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF control instructions described before the ELSE control instruction are not satisfied (i.e., all the switch names are false), source statements described after this ELSE control instruction until the appearance of the ENDIF control instruction in the source program will be assembled.
- The ENDIF control instruction indicates to the assembler the termination of source statements subject to conditional assembly.

**[Use]**

- With these conditional assembly control instructions, source statements subject to assembly can be changed without major modifications to the source program.
- If a statement for debugging that becomes necessary only during the program development is described in a source program, whether or not the debugging statement should be assembled (translated into machine language) can be specified by setting switches for conditional assembly.

**[Description]**

- The IF and ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with switch name(s), whereas the \_IF and \_ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with a conditional expression. Both IF/ELSEIF and \_IF/\_ELSEIF may be used in combination. In other words, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF may be used in a pair with IF or \_IF and ENDIF.
- Describe absolute expression for a conditional expression.
- The rules of describing switch names are the same as the conventions of symbol description (for details, see "(3) Symbol field" ).  
However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.
- If the two or more switch names are to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ).  
Up to five switch names can be used per module.
- When two or more switch names have been specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, the IF or ELSEIF condition is judged to be satisfied if one of the switch name values is true.
- The value of each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined with the SET/RESET control instruction.  
Therefore, if the value of the switch name specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction is not set in the source module with the SET or RESET control instruction in advance, it is assumed to be reset.
- If the specified switch name or conditional expression contains an illegal description, the assembler will output an error message and determine that the evaluated value is false.
- When describing the IF or \_IF control instruction, the IF or \_IF control instruction must always be paired with the ENDIF control instruction.
- If an IF-ENDIF block is described in a macro body and control is transferred back from the macro at that level by EXITM processing, the assembler will force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the macro body. In this case, no error occurs.
- Description of an IF-ENDIF block in another IF-ENDIF block is referred to as nesting of IF control instructions. Nesting of IF control instructions is allowed up to 8 levels.
- In conditional assembly, object codes will not be generated for statements not assembled, but these statements will be output without change on the assembly list. If you do not wish to output these statements, use the \$NOCOND control instruction.

**[Application example]**

- Example 1

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 )           ; (1)
      text1
$   ELSE                 ; (2)
      text2
$   ENDIF                ; (3)
:
END

```

(1) The value of switch name "SW1" has been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".

If the value of switch name "SW1" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2" will not be assembled.

(2) If the value of switch name "SW1" in (1) is false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements in "text2" will be assembled.

(3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

- Example 2

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 : SW2 )     ; (1)
      text1
$   ELSEIF ( SW3 )       ; (2)
      text2
$   ELSEIF ( SW4 )       ; (3)
      text3
$   ELSE                 ; (4)
      text4
$   ENDIF                ; (5)
:
END

```

(1) The values of switch names "SW1", "SW2", and "SW3" have been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".

If the value of switch name "SW1" or "SW2" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.

If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" are false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements after (2) will be conditionally assembled.

(2) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) are false and the value of switch name "SW3" is true, statements in "text2" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.

- (3) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) and "SW3" in (2) are false and the value of switch statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be will not be assembled.
- (4) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1), "SW3" in (2), and "SW4" in (3) are all false, statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be assembled.
- (5) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

**ENDIF**

Sets conditions in order to limit the assembly target source statements.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ] IF [ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
or [ ]$ [ ] _IF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ELSEIF [ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
or [ ]$ [ ] _ELSEIF conditional-expression
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ELSE
      :
[ ]$ [ ] ENDIF
```

**[Function]**

- The control instructions set the conditions to limit source statements subject to assembly. Source statements described between the IF or \_IF control instruction and the ENDIF control instruction are subject to conditional assembly.
- If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the IF or \_IF control instruction (i.e., IF or \_IF condition) is true (other than 00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the IF or \_IF condition is false (00H), source statements described after this IF or \_IF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- The ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction is checked for true/false status only when the conditions of all the conditional assembly control instructions described before this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction are not satisfied (i.e. the evaluated values are false).  
If the evaluated value of the conditional expression or the switch name specified by the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction (i.e. ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition) is true, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will be assembled. For subsequent assembly processing, the assembler will proceed to the statement next to the ENDIF control instruction.  
If the ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF condition is false, source statements described after this ELSEIF or \_ELSEIF control instruction until the appearance of the next conditional assembly control instruction (ELSEIF/ \_ELSEIF, ELSE, or ENDIF) in the source program will not be assembled.
- If the conditions of all the IF/\_IF and ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF control instructions described before the ELSE control instruction are not satisfied (i.e., all the switch names are false), source statements described after this ELSE control instruction until the appearance of the ENDIF control instruction in the source program will be assembled.
- The ENDIF control instruction indicates to the assembler the termination of source statements subject to conditional assembly.

**[Use]**

- With these conditional assembly control instructions, source statements subject to assembly can be changed without major modifications to the source program.
- If a statement for debugging that becomes necessary only during the program development is described in a source program, whether or not the debugging statement should be assembled (translated into machine language) can be specified by setting switches for conditional assembly.

**[Description]**

- The IF and ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with switch name(s), whereas the \_IF and \_ELSEIF control instructions are used for true/false condition judgment with a conditional expression. Both IF/ELSEIF and \_IF/\_ELSEIF may be used in combination. In other words, ELSEIF/\_ELSEIF may be used in a pair with IF or \_IF and ENDIF.
- Describe absolute expression for a conditional expression.
- The rules of describing switch names are the same as the conventions of symbol description (for details, see "(3) Symbol field" ).  
However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.
- If the two or more switch names are to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ).  
Up to five switch names can be used per module.
- When two or more switch names have been specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction, the IF or ELSEIF condition is judged to be satisfied if one of the switch name values is true.
- The value of each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined with the SET/RESET control instruction.  
Therefore, if the value of the switch name specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction is not set in the source module with the SET or RESET control instruction in advance, it is assumed to be reset.
- If the specified switch name or conditional expression contains an illegal description, the assembler will output an error message and determine that the evaluated value is false.
- When describing the IF or \_IF control instruction, the IF or \_IF control instruction must always be paired with the ENDIF control instruction.
- If an IF-ENDIF block is described in a macro body and control is transferred back from the macro at that level by EXITM processing, the assembler will force the IF level to return to that level at the entry of the macro body. In this case, no error occurs.
- Description of an IF-ENDIF block in another IF-ENDIF block is referred to as nesting of IF control instructions. Nesting of IF control instructions is allowed up to 8 levels.
- In conditional assembly, object codes will not be generated for statements not assembled, but these statements will be output without change on the assembly list. If you do not wish to output these statements, use the \$NOCOND control instruction.

**[Application example]**

- Example 1

```

        text0
$      IF ( SW1 )          ; (1)
                text1
$      ENDIF              ; (2)
        :
        END

```

- (1) If the value of switch name "SW1" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled.  
If the value of switch name "SW1" is false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled.  
The value of switch name "SW1" has been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".
- (2) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

- Example 2

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 )           ; (1)
      text1
$   ELSE                 ; (2)
      text2
$   ENDIF                ; (3)
      :
      END

```

- (1) The value of switch name "SW1" has been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".  
If the value of switch name "SW1" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2" will not be assembled.
- (2) If the value of switch name "SW1" in (1) is false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements in "text2" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

- Example 3

```

text0
$   IF ( SW1 : SW2 )     ; (1)
      text1
$   ELSEIF ( SW3 )      ; (2)
      text2
$   ELSEIF ( SW4 )      ; (3)
      text3
$   ELSE                 ; (4)
      text4
$   ENDIF                ; (5)
      :
      END

```

- (1) The values of switch names "SW1", "SW2", and "SW3" have been set to true or false with the SET or RESET control instruction described in "text0".  
If the value of switch name "SW1" or "SW2" is true, statements in "text1" will be assembled and statements in "text2", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.

If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" are false, statements in "text1" will not be assembled and statements after (2) will be conditionally assembled.

- (2) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) are false and the value of switch name "SW3" is true, statements in "text2" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text3", and "text4" will not be assembled.
- (3) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1) and "SW3" in (2) are false and the value of switch statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be will not be assembled.
- (4) If the values of switch names "SW1" and "SW2" in (1), "SW3" in (2), and "SW4" in (3) are all false, statements in "text4" will be assembled and statements in "text1", "text2", and "text3" will not be assembled.
- (5) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

- Example 4

```
text0
$   _IF ( SYMA )           ; (1)
      text1
$   _ELSEIF ( SYMB = SYMC ) ; (2)
      text2
$   ENDIF                 ; (3)
      :
      END
```

- (1) The value of switch name "SYMA" has been defined with the EQU or SET directive described in "text0". If the symbol name "SYMA" is true (not "0" ), statements in "text1" will be assembled and "text2" will not be assembled.
- (2) If the value of the symbol name "SYMA" is "0", and "SYMB" and "SYMC" have the same value, statements in "text2" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly.

**SET**

Sets value for switch name specified by IF/ELSEIF control instruction.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]SET[ ]([ ]switch-name[ ]:[ ]switch-name) ... [ ])
```

**[Function]**

- The SET control instructions give a value to each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction.
- The SET control instruction gives a true value (0FFH) to each switch name specified in its operand.

**[Use]**

- Describe the SET control instruction to give a true value (0FFH) to each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction.

**[Description]**

- With the SET and RESET control instructions, at least one switch name must be described.  
The conventions for describing switch names are the same as the conventions for describing symbols (see "(3) Symbol field" ).  
However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.
- The specified switch name(s) may be the same as user-defined symbol(s) other than reserved words and other switch names.
- If two or more switch names are to be specified with the SET or RESET control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ). Up to 1,000 switch names can be used per module.
- A switch name once set to "true" with the SET control instruction can be changed to "false" with the RESET control instruction, and vice versa.
- A switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined at least once with the SET or RESET control instruction in the source module before describing the IF or ELSEIF control instruction.
- Switch names will not be output to a cross-reference list.

**[Application example]**

```
$      SET ( SW1 )          ; (1)
      :
$      IF ( SW1 )          ; (2)
      text1
$      ENDIF              ; (3)
      :
$      RESET ( SW1 : SW2 ) ; (4)
      :
$      IF ( SW1 )          ; (5)
      text2
$      ELSEIF ( SW2 )     ; (6)
      text3
$      ELSE                ; (7)
      text4
$      ENDIF              ; (8)
      :
      END
```

- (1) This instruction gives a true value (0FFH) to switch name "SW1".
- (2) Because the true value has been given to switch name "SW1" in (1) above, statements in "text1" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly that starts from (2).
- (4) This instruction gives a false value (00H) to switch names "SW1" and "SW2", respectively.
- (5) Because the false value has been given to switch name "SW1" in (4) above, statements in "text2" will not be assembled.
- (6) Because the false value has also been given to switch name "SW2" in (4) above, statements in "text3" will not be assembled.
- (7) Because both switch names "SW1" and "SW2" are false in (5) and (6) above, statements in "text4" will be assembled.
- (8) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly that starts from (5).

**RESET**

Sets value for switch name specified by IF/ELSEIF control instruction.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$[ ]RESET[ ] ( [ ] switch-name [ ] : [ ] switch-name ... [ ] )
```

**[Function]**

- The RESET control instructions give a value to each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction.
- The RESET control instruction gives a false value (00H) to each switch name specified in its operand.

**[Use]**

- Describe the RESET control instruction to give a false value (00H) to each switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction.

**[Description]**

- With the SET and RESET control instructions, at least one switch name must be described.  
The conventions for describing switch names are the same as the conventions for describing symbols (see "[\(3\) Symbol field](#)").  
However, the maximum number of characters that can be recognized as a switch name is always 31.
- The specified switch name(s) may be the same as user-defined symbol(s) other than reserved words and other switch names.
- If two or more switch names are to be specified with the SET or RESET control instruction, delimit each switch name with a colon ( : ). Up to 1,000 switch names can be used per module.
- A switch name once set to "true" with the SET control instruction can be changed to "false" with the RESET control instruction, and vice versa.
- A switch name to be specified with the IF or ELSEIF control instruction must be defined at least once with the SET or RESET control instruction in the source module before describing the IF or ELSEIF control instruction.
- Switch names will not be output to a cross-reference list.

**[Application example]**

```
$      SET ( SW1 )          ; (1)
      :
$      IF ( SW1 )          ; (2)
      text1
$      ENDIF              ; (3)
      :
$      RESET ( SW1 : SW2 ) ; (4)
      :
$      IF ( SW1 )          ; (5)
      text2
$      ELSEIF ( SW2 )     ; (6)
      text3
$      ELSE                ; (7)
      text4
$      ENDIF              ; (8)
      :
      END
```

- (1) This instruction gives a true value (0FFH) to switch name "SW1".
- (2) Because the true value has been given to switch name "SW1" in (1) above, statements in "text1" will be assembled.
- (3) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly that starts from (2).
- (4) This instruction gives a false value (00H) to switch names "SW1" and "SW2", respectively.
- (5) Because the false value has been given to switch name "SW1" in (4) above, statements in "text2" will not be assembled.
- (6) Because the false value has also been given to switch name "SW2" in (4) above, statements in "text3" will not be assembled.
- (7) Because both switch names "SW1" and "SW2" are false in (5) and (6) above, statements in "text4" will be assembled.
- (8) This instruction indicates the end of the source statement range for conditional assembly that starts from (5).

#### 4.3.8 Kanji code control instruction

This is a control instruction which specifies which character code to use to interpret kanji characters described in the comment.

The following kanji code control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
KANJICODE	Interprets Kanji character code for specified Kanji characters described in the comment.

**KANJICODE**

Interprets Kanji character code for specified Kanji characters described in the comment.

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ] $ [ ] KANJICODE [ ] kanji-code
```

**[Default Assumption]**

\$KANJICODE SJIS

**[Function]**

- Interprets Kanji character code for specified Kanji characters described in the comment.
- A kanji code can describe SJIS/EUC/NONE.
  - SJIS : Interpreted as a Shift JIS code.
  - EUC : Interpreted as a EUC code.
  - NONE : Not interpreted as a kanji.

**[Use]**

- Use to specify the interpretation of the kanji code (2-byte code) of the kanji (2-byte character) in the comment line.

**[Description]**

- The KANJICODE control instruction can be described only in the header section of a source module file.
- If two or more KANJICODE control instructions are specified in the header section of a source module file at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- Kanji code specification stops may also be specified with the assembler option (-zs/-ze/-zn) in the startup command line of the assembler.
- If the control instruction specification (KANJICODE) in the source module differs from the specification (-zs/-ze/-zn) in the startup command line, the specification in the command line will take precedence over that in the source module.
- Even when the assembler option (-zs/-ze/-zn) has been specified in the startup command line, the assembler performs a syntax check on the KANJICODE control instruction.

#### 4.3.9 RAM area allocation-specification control instruction

This is a control instruction for allocating the segment with the specified segment name to the memory area name "RAM".

The following RAM area allocation-specification control instructions are available.

Control Instruction	Overview
RAM_ALLOCATE	Allocate the segment with the specified segment name to the memory area name "RAM".

**RAM\_ALLOCATE**

Allocate the segment with the specified segment name to the memory area name "RAM".

**[Description Format]**

```
[ ]$ [ ]RAM_ALLOCATE [ ] ( [ ] segment-name [ ] [ , ... ] ) [ ] [ ; comment ]
```

**[Default Assumption]**

- Allocate in memory area name "ROM".

**[Function]**

- Allocate the segment with the specified segment name to the memory area name "RAM".

**[Description]**

- If two or more RAM\_ALLOCATE control instructions are specified in the source module file at the same time, only the last specified control instruction will become valid.
- The only segment that can be specified are CSEG. If all except for CSEG was specified, a warning is output and the description is ignored.
- If the two or more segment are to be specified with 1 RAM area allocation-specification control instruction, delimit each segment name with ",".  
Up to 256 segment can be specified per module.

#### 4.3.10 Other control instructions

The control instructions shown below are special control instructions output by an upper level program such as C compiler.

- \$TOL\_INF
- \$DGS
- \$DGL

## 4.4 Macros

This section explains how to use macros.

Macros are very useful when you need to use a series of statements repeatedly in a source program.

### 4.4.1 Overview

Macros make it easy to repeat a series of statements over and over again in a source program.

A macro contains a series of instructions in a macro body, which is defined between MACRO and ENDM directives.

These instructions are inserted into the source program at any location that references the macro.

Macros make it easier to write source programs. They are different from subroutines.

The difference between macros and subroutines is explained below. For effective use, select either a macro or a subroutine according to the specific purpose.

#### (1) Subroutines

- Subroutines handle processing that must be repeated many times in a program. A subroutine is converted into machine language once by the assembler.
- To use a subroutine, simply call it with a subroutine call instruction. (Usually you will also need to set the arguments of the subroutine before calling it, and adjust for them afterwards.)  
Effective use of subroutines enables program memory to be used with high efficiency.
- Subroutines are also important in structured programming. Dividing the program into functional blocks clarifies the overall structure of the program and makes it easier to understand. There are benefits for design, coding, and maintenance.

#### (2) Macros

- The basic function of macros is to replace a series of instructions with a macro name.  
A macro is defined as a series of instruction between MACRO and ENDM directives. When the macro name appears in the source code, the instructions are inserted at that location. The assembler replaces any formal parameters of the macro with actual parameters and converts the instructions into machine language.
- Macros can have parameters.  
For example, if there are instruction groups that are the same in processing procedure but are different in the data to be described in the operand, define a macro by assigning formal parameter(s) to the data. By describing the macro name and the actual parameter(s) at macro reference time, the assembler can cope with various instruction groups that differ only in part of the statement description.

Subroutines are used mainly to reduce memory requirements and clarify the structure of programs. Macros are used to make programs easier to describe and understand.

### 4.4.2 Using macros

#### (1) Macro definitions

Use the MACRO and ENDM directives to define macros.

**(a) Format**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
<i>macro-name</i>	MACRO	[ <i>formal-parameter</i> [, ...]]	[; <i>comment</i> ]
	:		
	ENDM		[; <i>comment</i> ]

**(b) Function**

Define a macro, assigning the macro name specified in the symbol field to the series of statements (called the macro body) between the MACRO directive and the ENDM directive

**(c) Example**

ADMAC	MACRO	PARA1, PARA2	
	MOV	A, #PARA1	
	ADD	A, #PARA2	
	ENDM		

The above example shows a simple example that adds the two values PARA1 and PARA2, and stores the result in register A. The macro is named ADMAC. PARA1 and PARA2 are formal parameters.

For details, see "[4.2.8 Macro directives](#)".

**(2) Referencing macros**

To reference an already defined macro, specify the macro name in the mnemonic field.

**(a) Format**

Symbol field	Mnemonic field	Operand field	Comment field
[ <i>label</i> :]	<i>macro-name</i>	[ <i>actual-parameter</i> [, ...]]	[; <i>comment</i> ]

**(b) Function**

Reference the macro body to which the specified name has been assigned.

**(c) Use**

Use the above format to reference a macro body.

**(d) Explanation**

- The macro name specified in the mnemonic field must have been defined before the macro reference.
  - Delimit actual parameters with commas ( , ). Up to 16 actual parameters can be specified, provided that they all appear in the same line.
  - Space characters cannot appear in an actual parameter string.
  - If an actual parameter string contains a comma ( , ), semicolon ( ; ), blank, or a tab, enclose the string in single quotation marks ( ' ).
  - Formal parameter are converted to actual parameters from the left, in the order that they occur in the macro definition.
- The number of actual parameters must match the number of formal parameters. If it does not, a warning is issued.

**(e) Example**

```

NAME      SAMPLE
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV    A, #PARA1
          ADD    A, #PARA2
        ENDM

        CSEG
        :
ADMAC    10H, 20H
        :
        END

```

The already defined macro "ADMAC" is referenced.  
10H and 20H are actual parameters.

**(3) Macro expansion**

The assembler processes a macro as follows:

- When it encounters a macro name, the assembler inserts the corresponding macro body at the location of the macro name.
- The inserted macro body is then assembled in the same way as other statements.

**(4) Example**

When the macro shown above in "[\(2\) Referencing macros](#)" is referenced, it is expanded as shown below.

```

NAME      SAMPLE

        ; Macro definition
ADMAC    MACRO  PARA1, PARA2
          MOV    A, #PARA1
          ADD    A, #PARA2
        ENDM

        ; Source code
        CSEG
        :

        ; Macro expansion
ADMAC    10H, 20H           ; (a)
MOV      A, #10H
ADD      A, #20H
        ; Source code
        :
        END

```

- (a) The macro body is inserted when the macro name is referenced.  
In the macro body, formal parameters are replaced by actual parameters.

#### 4.4.3 Symbols in macros

Two types of symbols can be defined in macros: global symbols and local symbols.

##### (1) Global symbols

- A global symbol is a symbol that can be referenced from any statement in a source program.  
Therefore, if a macro that defines a global symbol is referenced more than once when expanding a series of statements, a double definition error will occur.
- Symbols not defined with the LOCAL directive are global symbols.

##### (2) Local symbols

- A local symbol is a symbol defined with the LOCAL directive (see "4.2.8 Macro directives").
- A local symbol can be referenced only within the macro that declares it as LOCAL.
- No local symbol can be referenced from outside the macro that declares it

<Application example>

```

NAME      SAMPLE
          ; Macro definition
MAC1      MACRO
          LOCAL  LLAB          ; (a)
LLAB :    ; (b)
          :
GLAB :    ; (c)
          BR     LLAB          ; (d)
          BR     GLAB          ; (e)
          ENDM
          :
          ; Source code
REF1 :    MAC1                ; (f) <- Macro reference
          :
          BR     LLAB          ; (g) <- Error

REF2 :    MAC1                ; (h) <- Macro reference
          :
GLAB :    ; (i) <- Error
          :
          END

```

- (a) This declares label LLAB as a local symbol.
- (b) This defines label LLAB as a local symbol.
- (c) This defines label GLAB as a global symbol.
- (d) This references the local symbol LLAB in macro MAC1.

- (e) This references the global symbol GLAB from inside the definition of macro MAC1.
- (f) This references macro MAC1.
- (g) This reference the local symbol LLAB from outside the definition of macro MAC1, causing an error when the program is assembled.
- (h) This references macro MAC1  
The same macro is referenced twice.
- (i) This defines the label GLAB as a global symbol.  
The same label is already defined, so this causes an error when the program is assembled.

<Assemble list for the above application example>

```
NAME      SAMPLE
:
REF1 : MAC1
        ; Macro expansion
??RA0000 :
:
GLAB :                                <- Error
BR      ??RA0000
BR      GLAB
        ; Source code
:
BR      !LLAB                        <- Error
BR      !GLAB
:
REF2 : MAC1
        ; Macro expansion
??RA0001 :
:
GLAB :                                <- Error
BR      ??RA0001
BR      GLAB
        ; Source code
:
END
```

Macro MAC1 defines the global symbol GLAB.

Macro MAC1 is referenced twice. An error occurs when the macro is expanded the second time, because the global symbol GLAB is defined twice.

#### 4.4.4 Macro operators

There are two macro operators: "&" (ampersand) and "'", "" (single quotation mark).

##### (1) & (Concatenation)

- The ampersand "&" concatenates one character string to another within a macro body.  
At macro expansion time, the character string on the left of the ampersand is concatenated to the character string on the right of the sign. The "&" itself disappears after concatenating the strings.
- At macro definition time, strings before and after "&" in symbols are recognized as local symbols and formal parameters. At macro expansion time, strings before and after the "&" in the symbol are evaluated as the local symbols and formal parameters, and concatenated into single symbols.
- The "&" sign enclosed in a pair of single quotation marks is simply handled as data.
- Two "&" signs in succession are handled as a single "&" sign.

Following is an application example.

##### (a) Macro definition

```

MAC      MACRO   P
LAB&P :                               <- Formal parameter P is recognized
        D&B     10H
        DB      'P'
        DB      P
        DB      '&P'
        ENDM

```

##### (b) Macro reference

```

        MAC     1H
LAB1H :
        DB     10H    <- D&B has been concatenated to DB
        DB     'P'
        DB     1H
        DB     '&P'  <- Quoted '&' is simply data

```

##### (2) ' (Single quotation mark)

- If a character string enclosed by a pair of single quotation marks appears at the beginning of an actual parameter in a macro reference line or an IRP directive, or if it appears after a delimiting character, the character string is interpreted as an actual parameter. The character string is passed as a actual parameter without the enclosing single quotation marks.
- If a character string enclosed by a pair of single quotation marks appears in a macro body, it is simply handled as data.
- To use a single quotation mark as a single quotation mark in text, write the single quotation mark twice in succession.

<Application example>

```

NAME      SAMP
MAC1      MACRO  P
            IRP   Q, <P>
                MOV   A, #Q
            ENDM
ENDM

MAC1      '10, 20, 30'
```

When the source code in the above example is assembled, macro MAC1 is expanded as shown below.

```

IRP   Q, <10, 20, 30>
    MOV A, #Q
ENDM

    MOV   A, #10      ; IRP expansion
    MOV   A, #20      ; IRP expansion
    MOV   A, #30      ; IRP expansion
```

### 4.5 Reserved Words

Reserved words are character strings reserved in advance by the assembler. They include machine language instructions, directives, control instructions, operators, register names, and sfr symbols. Reserved words cannot be used for other than the intended purposes.

The following tables explain where reserved words can appear in source code statements and list the words reserved by the assembler.

**Table 4-22. Fields Where Reserved Words Can Appear**

Field	Explanation
Symbol field	No reserved words can appear in this field.
Mnemonic field	Only machine language instructions and directives can appear in this field.
Operand field	Only operators, sfr symbols, and register names can appear in this field.
Comment field	All reserved words can appear in this field.

**Table 4-23. List of Reserved Words**

Type	Reserved Word
Operators	AND, BITPOS, DATAPOS, EQ (=), GE (>=), GT (>), HIGH, HIGHW, LE (<=), LOW, LOWW, LT (<), MASK, MIRHW, MIRLW, MOD, NE (<>), NOT, OR, SHL, SHR, XOR
Directives	AT, BASE, BASEP, BR, BSEG, CALL, CALLT0, CSEG, DB, DBIT, DG, DS, DSEG, DSPRAM, DW, END, ENDM, ENDS, EQU, EXITM, EXTBIT, EXTRN, FIXED, IHRAM, IRP, IXRAM, LOCAL, LRAM, MACRO, MIRRORP, NAME, OPT_BYTE, ORG, PAGE64KP, PUBLIC, REPT, SADDR, SADDRP, SECUR_ID, SET, UNIT, UNIT64KP, UNITP

Type	Reserved Word
Control instructions	COND, NOCOND, DEBUG, NODEBUG, DEBUGA [DG], NODEBUGA [NODG], EJECT [EJ], FORMFEED, NOFORMFEED, GEN, NOGEN, IF, _IF, ELSEIF, _ELSEIF, ELSE, ENDF, INCLUDE [IC], KANJI-CODE, LENGTH, LIST [LI], NOLIST [NOLI], PROCESSOR [PC], SET, RESET, SUBTITLE [ST], SYMLIST, NOSYMLIST, TAB, TITLE [TT], WIDTH, XREF[XR], NOXREF [NOXR]
Other	DGL, DGS, SFR, SFRP, TOL_INF

**Remark** Items in brackets following control instructions indicate the abbreviated format.

See the user's manual of the target device for a list of sfr names, a list of interrupt request sources, and lists of machine language instructions and register names.

## 4.6 Instructions

This section explains the functions of RL78 family, 78K0R microcontroller instructions.

**Caution** For details of each operation and instruction code, see to the separate document "RL78 family User's Manual: Software"/"78K0R Microcontrollers Instructions User's Manual".  
And, see to the user's manual of the target microcontroller.

### 4.6.1 Differences from 78K0 microcontrollers

This section explains differences from 78K0 microcontrollers (for assembler users).

- The new pipeline architecture reduces the number of clock cycles for all instructions. Existing programs must be re-evaluated.
- All instruction code maps have changed. Programs must be reassembled. When you reassemble, the code size is likely to increase, but in some cases the overall code size may shrink if old instructions are replaced with new ones.
- The memory space has changed from 64 KB to 1 MB, allowing greater stack depth. Address changes are required if assembly programs manipulate RAM that is accessed with the stack pointer. Depending on the multiple CALL and multiple interrupt depth, the stack size should be set to slightly more than is normally required.
- The CALLT table has been moved from [0040H to 007FH] to [0080H to 00BFH]. References to CALLT table addresses must be changed.
- Assembler programs must be rewritten if they utilized the bank switching mechanisms of 78K0 microcontrollers.
- Addresses have changed when expansion RAM is used. Update these addresses.
- If your programs execute instructions from expansion RAM, they will be affected by changes in memory space addresses. Change BR !addr16 statements to BR !!addr20, and change CALL !addr16 statements to CALL !!addr20.
- There are no IMS or IXS registers (used to set memory space). Unless external memory is used, code that uses those registers must be deleted. If external memory is used, note that the specifications of the MM/MEM registers (used to set memory space) have changed. For details, see to the user's manual of the target microcontroller.
- The following instructions have been deleted, and alternative code is output, resulting in code size increases. These instructions can still be used by specifying the -compati option, but the assembler replaces them automatically with the replacement code.

Instruction	Operand	Remarks
DIVUW	C	The alternative instructions divide while shifting, which increases execution time. A shift instruction has been added, so it is recommended that this instruction be changed to the new shift instruction.

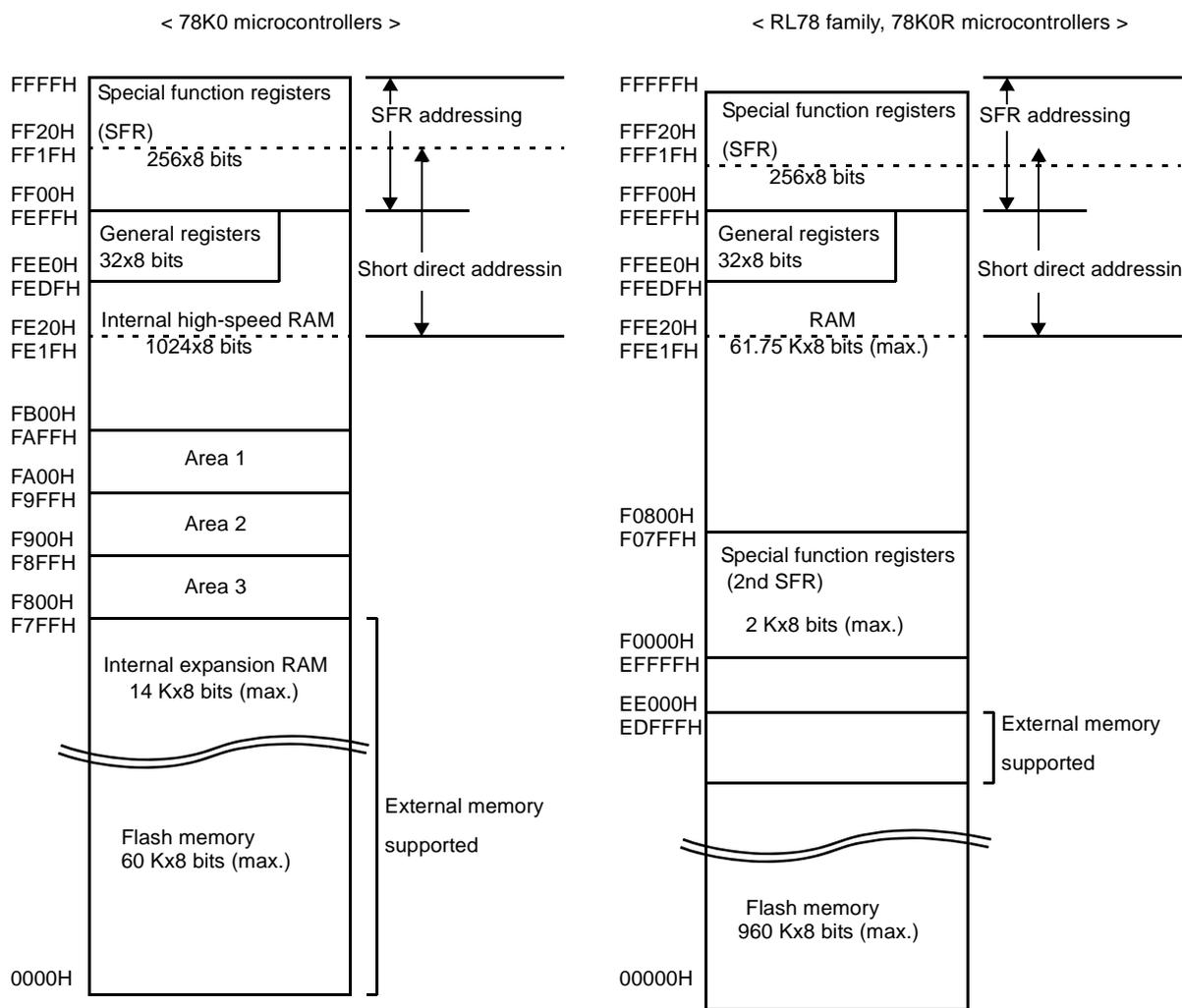
Instruction	Operand	Remarks
ROR4	[HL]	The alternative instructions take longer to execute. A shift instruction has been added, so it is recommended that this instruction be changed to the new shift instruction.
ROL4	[HL]	The alternative instructions take longer to execute. A shift instruction has been added, so it is recommended that this instruction be changed to the new shift instruction.
ADJBA	None	The alternative instructions take longer to execute. There is no equivalent additional instruction.
ADJBS	None	The alternative instructions take longer to execute. There is no equivalent additional instruction.
CALLF	!addr11	CALLF is changed automatically to a 3-byte CALL !addr16 instruction. This instruction can still be used with no modifications required.
DBNZ	B, \$addr16 C, \$addr16 saddr, \$addr16	This instruction is split into the following instructions: DEC B / DEC C / DEC saddr, and BNZ \$addr20. This instruction can still be used with no modifications required.

4.6.2 Memory space

(1) Memory space

The memory space of 78K0 microcontrollers was limited to 64 KB, but this has been expanded to 1 MB in RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.

Figure 4-8. Memory Maps of 78K0 and RL78 family, 78K0R Microcontrollers



- Program memory space is 60 KB (max.).
- Internal high-speed RAM area is 1 KB (max.) (stackenable).
- Internal expansion RAM area is 14 KB (max.) (fetchenable).
- Area 1, area 2, and area 3 are from F800H to FAFFH (fixed).
- External expansion memory supported.

- Program memory space is 960 KB (max.).
- RAM space is 61.75 KB (max.) (stack enable, fetchenable).
- 2nd SFR area (name changed) is 2 KB (max.), from F0000H to F07FFH.
- Supports external expansion memory. The external expansion memory space can be allocated from the product-mounted flash memory area to EDDFFH.

(2) Internal program memory space

In RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, the address range of program memory space is from 00000H to EDDFFH. For information about the maximum size of internal ROM (flash memory), see to the user's manual of the target microcontroller.

(a) Mirror area

In the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, the data flash areas from 00000H to 0FFFFH (when MAA = 0) and from 10000H to 1FFFFH (when MAA = 1) are mirrored to the addresses from F0000H to FFFFFH. Data flash contents can be read with shorter code by reading from F0000H to FFFFFH. However, data flash areas are not mirrored to the SFR, second SFR, RAM, and use-prohibited areas.

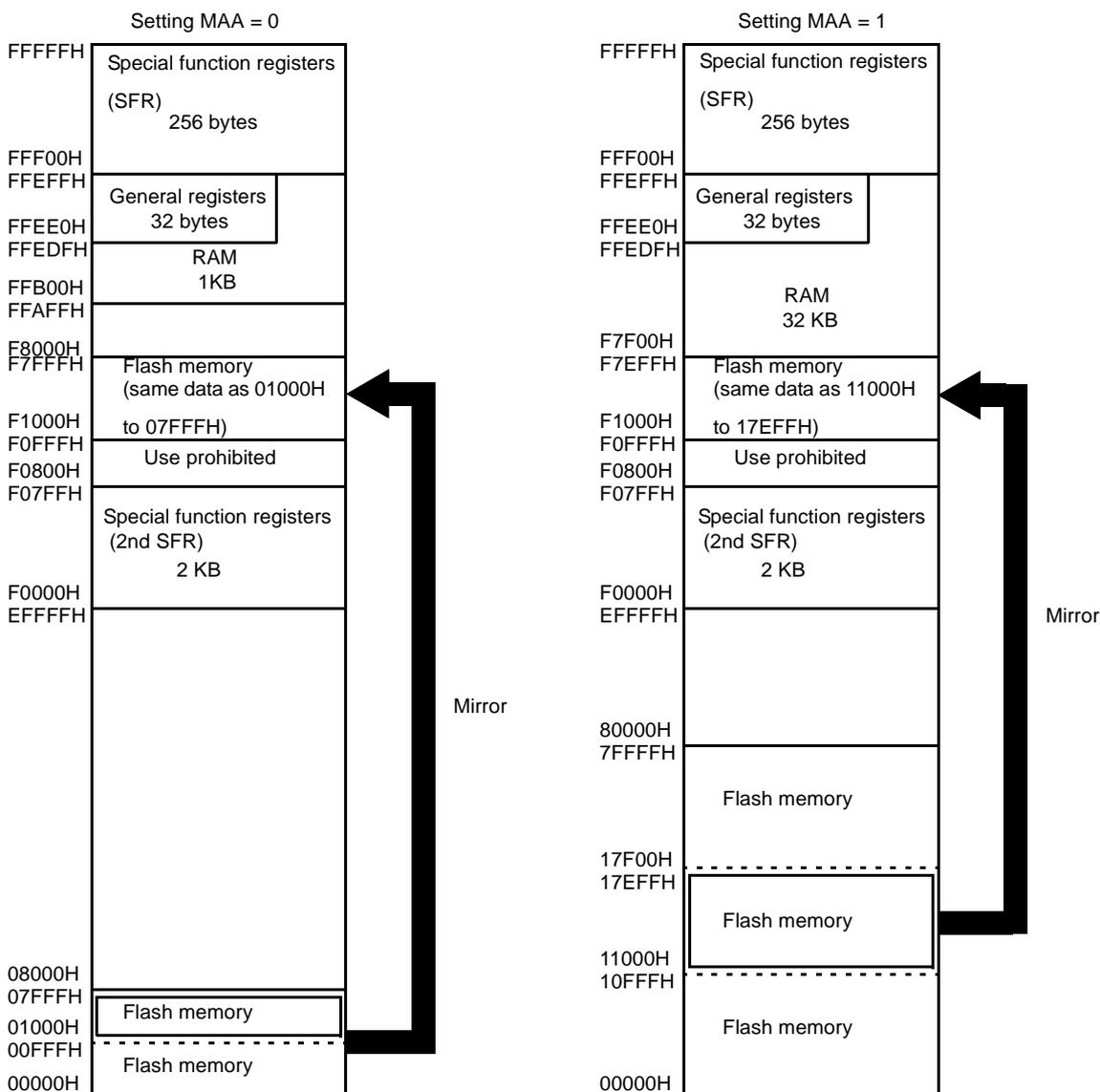
Mirror areas can only be read, and instruction fetch is not possible.

The following figure shows two examples. Specifications vary for each product, so for details see to the user's manual of the target microcontroller.

Figure 4-9. Mirror Area Examples

Example 1 (Flash memory: 32 KB, RAM: 1 KB)

Example 2 (Flash memory: 512 KB, RAM: 32 KB)



**Remark** MAA: Bit 0 of the processor mode control register (PMC). (For details, see "(a) Processor mode control register (PMC)".)

**(b) Vector table area**

In the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, the 128-byte area from 0000H to 007FH is reserved as the vector table area. The number of interrupts is 61 (maximum) + RESET vector + on-chip debugging vector + software break vector. Since a vector is only 2 bytes of code, the interrupt branch destination address range is 64 KB from 00000H to 0FFFFH. In the 78K0 microcontrollers, addresses from 0040H to 007FH are used for the CALLT table, but in the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers they have been changed to vector addresses.

**(c) CALLT instruction table area**

In the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, the 64-byte area from 0080H to 00BFH is reserved as the CALLT instruction table area.

In 78K0 microcontrollers, the CALL instruction is 1 byte, but RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers have 2-byte CALL instructions. Addresses have also changed.

Since address codes are only 2 bytes long, interrupt branch destination addresses are the 64 KB from 00000H to 0FFFFH.

**(3) Internal data memory (internal RAM) space**

78K0 microcontrollers have internal high-speed RAM and internal expansion RAM. The internal high-speed RAM can be used for stack, and the internal expansion RAM can be used for fetch. By contrast, RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers have just one RAM area that can be used for both stack and fetch.

The upper address limit is fixed at FFEFFH, and the lower limit extends downward according to the amount of RAM mounted on the product. The maximum size is 61.75 KB. For more information about the lower limit, see to the user's manual of the target microcontroller.

The general register area and saddr space (from FFEE0H to FFEFFH) have the same addresses in the 78K0 microcontrollers and the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers. The stack can be located anywhere within the mounted RAM.

**(4) Special function register (SFR) area**

Unlike general registers, SFRs have special functions.

The SFR space is allocated to the area from FFF00H to FFFFFH.

Although SFR specifications are the same as for 78K0 microcontrollers, there have been changes that affect some registers that had fixed addresses in the 78K0 series. For details, see to the user's manual of the target microcontroller.

**(5) Extended SFR (2nd SFR) area**

Unlike general registers, 2nd SFRs have special functions.

The, 2nd SFR space is from F0000H to F07FFH. SFRs outside of the SFR area (from FFF00H to FFFFFH) are assigned to this extended SFR space. However, instructions to access the extended SFR area are 1 byte longer than instructions to access the SFR area.

**(6) External memory space**

The external memory space is space that can be accessed by setting the memory expansion mode register. This memory space is extends up from flash memory to EDFFFH.

In separate mode, 28 external pins (A19 to A0 and D7 to D0) are available. In multiplexed mode, 20 external pins (A19 to A0, D7 to D0) area available.

For pin settings when using external memory, see to the chapter describing port functions in the user's manual of the target device.

**Caution** To fetch instructions from the external memory area, start with a branch instruction (CALL or BR) in flash or RAM memory and end with a return instruction (RET, RETB, or RETI) in the external memory area.

Although the flash memory area is adjacent to the external memory area, programs cannot be located so as to straddle these two areas.

4.6.3 Registers

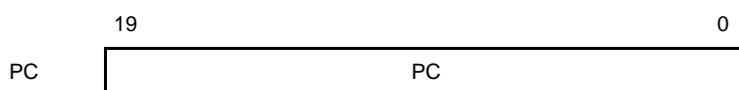
(1) Control registers

Control registers are registers with special functions for controlling the program sequence, program status, and stack memory. They include the program counter, the program status word, and the stack pointer.

(a) Program counter (PC)

The program counter is a 20-bit register that holds the address of the next program to be executed.

Figure 4-10. Configuration of Program Counter



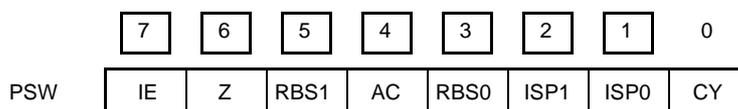
(b) Program status word (PSW)

The program status word is an 8-bit register consisting of flags that are set and reset by instruction execution. The ISP1 flag is added as bit 2 in products that support 4 interrupt levels.

The program status word is automatically saved on the stack when an interrupt request occurs and a PUSH PSW instruction is executed, and is automatically restored when an RETB or RETI instruction and a POP PSW instruction are executed.

The PSW is set to 06H on reset signal input.

Figure 4-11. Configuration of Program Status Word



- Interrupt enable flag (IE)

This flag controls interrupt request acknowledgement by the CPU.

When IE = 0, interrupts are disabled (DI), and interrupts other than non-maskable interrupts are all disabled.

When IE = 1, interrupts are enabled (EI), and interrupt request acknowledgement is controlled by the interrupt mask flags for the various interrupt sources, and by the priority specification flags.

This flag is reset (0) by execution of the DI instruction or by interrupt request acknowledgment. It is set (1) by execution of the EI instruction.

- Zero flag (Z)

This flag is set (1) when the result of an operation is zero. It is reset (0) in all other cases.

- Register bank selection flags (RBS0,RBS1)

These are two 1-bit flags used to select one of the 4 register banks.

The 2 bits of information in these flags indicate the bank selected by execution of an SBL Rn instruction.

- Auxiliary carry flag (AC)

This flag is set (1) if an operation has a carry from bit 3 or a borrow to bit 3. It is reset (0) in all other cases.

- In-service priority flags (ISP0 and ISP1)

These flags manage the priority of acknowledgeable maskable vectored interrupts. Acknowledgment is disabled for vectored interrupt requests with priorities lower than the ISP0 and ISP1 values, as specified by the priority specification flag registers (PR). Actual acknowledgment for interrupt requests is controlled by the state of the interrupt enable flag (IE).

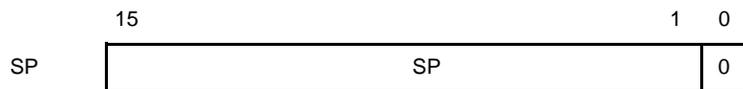
- Carry flag (CY)

This flag stores overflow or underflow on execution of an add/subtract instruction. It stores the shift-out value on execution of a rotate instruction, and functions as a bit accumulator during execution of bit manipulation instructions.

(c) Stack pointer (SP)

This is a 16-bit register that holds the start address of the stack. The stack can be located in internal RAM.

Figure 4-12. Configuration of Stack Pointer



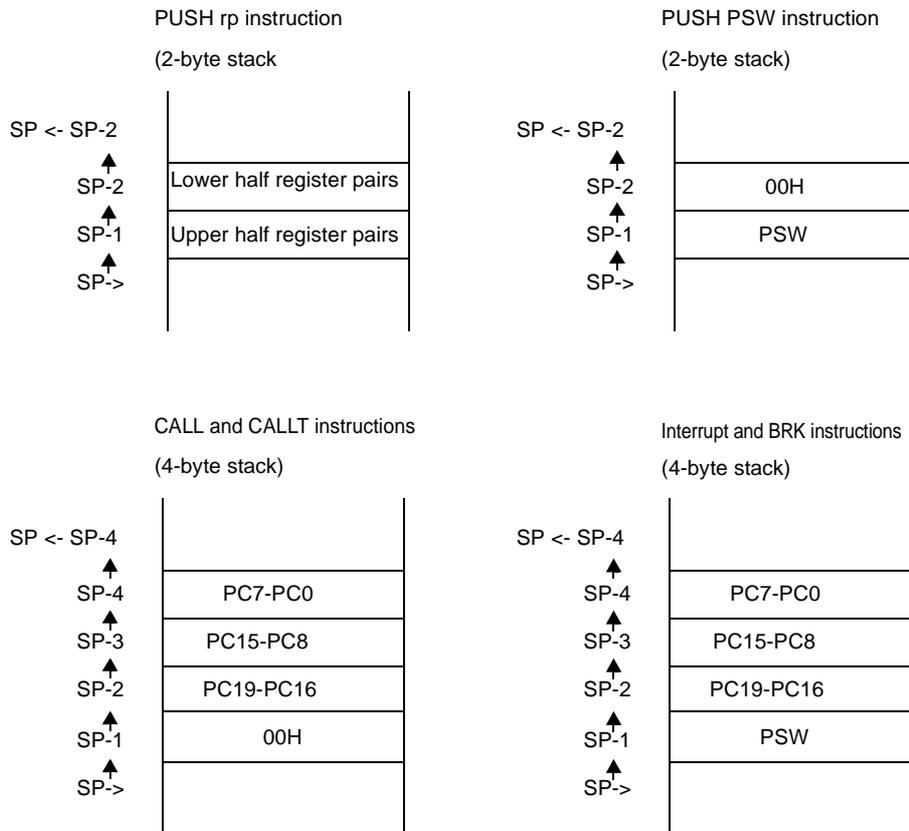
SP is decremented before write (save) to the stack and is incremented after read (restored) from the stack. RESET input leaves the contents of SP undefined, so be sure to initialize SP before instruction execution. Always specify the SP address as an even address. If an odd address is specified, the LSB is set to fixed 0. Because the memory space of RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers has been expanded, stack addresses used for call instructions and interrupts are 1 byte longer. Due to the 16-bit width of stack RAM, the stack data size is 2 bytes or 4 bytes. (See the following "Table 4-24. Stack Data Size Differences Between 78K0 and RL78 family, 78K0R Microcontrollers".)

Table 4-24. Stack Data Size Differences Between 78K0 and RL78 family, 78K0R Microcontrollers

Save Instruction	Restore Instruction	Stack Data Sizes of 78K0 Microcontrollers	Stack Data Sizes of RL78 family, 78K0R Microcontrollers
PUSH rp	POP rp	2 bytes	2 bytes
PUSH PSW	POP PSW	1 byte	2 bytes
CALL, CALLT	RET	2 bytes	4 bytes
Interrupt	RETI	3 bytes	4 bytes
BRK	RETB	3 bytes	4 bytes

The following figure shows the data saved by stack operations in RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.

Figure 4-13. Data Saved to Stack Memory



The stack pointer may point to internal RAM only. It is possible to specify addresses in the range F0000H to FFFFFH, so be careful not to exceed the memory space of internal RAM. If an address outside the internal RAM space is specified, write operations to that address are ignored and read operations return undefined values.

**(2) General registers**

On-chip general registers are mapped to RAM addresses FFEE0H to FFEFFH. There are 4 register banks, each bank consisting of eight 8-bit registers (X, A, C, B, E, D, L and H). The CPU control instruction "SEL RBn" selects the bank to be used in instruction execution.

Each register can be used as an 8-bit register, and register pairs of two 8-bit registers can be used as 16-bit registers.

Programs can specify registers by their function names (X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H, AX, BC, DE, HL) or by their absolute names (R0 to R7, RP0 to RP3).

**Caution Use of the general register space (FFEE0H to FFEFFH) as an instruction fetch area or stack area is prohibited.**

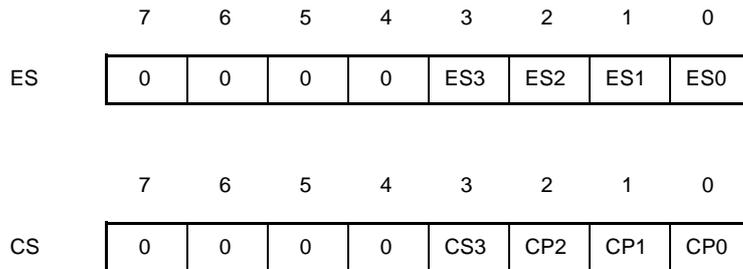
Table 4-25. List of General-purpose Registers (78K0 Compatible)

Bank Name	Register				Absolute Address
	Function Name		Absolute Name		
	16-bit	8-bit	16-bit	8-bit	
BANK0	HL	H	RP3	R7	FFEFFH
		L		R6	FFEFEH
	DE	D	RP2	R5	FFEFDH
		E		R4	FFEFCH
	BC	B	RP1	R3	FFEFBH
		C		R2	FFEFAH
AX	A	RP0	R1	FFEF9H	
	X		R0	FFEF8H	
BANK1	HL	H	RP3	R7	FFEF7H
		L		R6	FFEF6H
	DE	D	RP2	R5	FFEF5H
		E		R4	FFEF4H
	BC	B	RP1	R3	FFEF3H
		C		R2	FFEF2H
AX	A	RP0	R1	FFEF1H	
	X		R0	FFEF0H	
BANK2	HL	H	RP3	R7	FFEEFH
		L		R6	FFEEEH
	DE	D	RP2	R5	FFEEDH
		E		R4	FFEECH
	BC	B	RP1	R3	FFEEBH
		C		R2	FFEEAH
AX	A	RP0	R1	FFEE9H	
	X		R0	FFEF8H	
BANK3	HL	H	RP3	R7	FFEE7H
		L		R6	FFEE6H
	DE	D	RP2	R5	FFEE5H
		E		R4	FFEE4H
	BC	B	RP1	R3	FFEE3H
		C		R2	FFEE2H
AX	A	RP0	R1	FFEE1H	
	X		R0	FFEE0H	

**(3) ES and CS registers**

The ES and CS registers were added for the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers. The ES register specifies the high-order address byte for data instructions, and the CS register specifies the high-order address byte for branch instructions. See "(2) Addressing of data addresses" for more information about how to use the ES register, and see "(1) Addressing of instruction addresses" for more information about how to use the CS register. On reset, ES is set to 0FH and CS is set to 00H

**Figure 4-14. Configurations of ES and CS Registers**



**(4) Special function registers (SFR)**

The following table lists the fixed-address SFRs of RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.

**Table 4-26. List of Fixed-address SFRs**

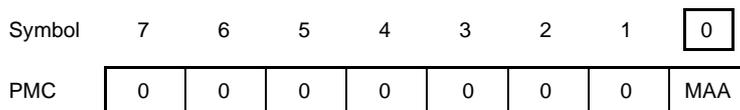
Address	Register Name
FFFF8H	SPL
FFFF9H	SPH
FFFFAH	PSW
FFFFBH	Reserve
FFFFCH	CS
FFFFDH	ES
FFFFEH	PMC
FFFFFH	MEM

**(a) Processor mode control register (PMC)**

This is an 8-bit register for control of processor modes. For details, see "(2) Internal program memory space". On reset, PMC is set to 00H.

**Figure 4-15. Configuration of Processor Mode Control Register**

Address:FFFFEH On reset:00H R/W



MAA	Flash Memory Space Mirrored to Area F0000H to FFFFFH <sup>Note</sup>
0	00000H to 0FFFFH is mirrored to F0000H to FFFFFH
1	10000H to 1FFFFH is mirrored to F0000H to FFFFFH

**Note** SFR and RAM areas are also allocated to the range from F0000H to FFFFFH. In areas of overlap, they take priority.

- Cautions 1.** The processor mode control should be set once only, when it is first initialized. After initialization, writing to PMC is prohibited.
- 2.** After setting PMC, wait for at least one instruction before accessing the mirror area.

**4.6.4 Addressing**

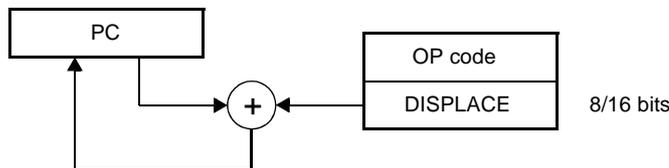
There are two types of addressing: addressing of data addresses, and addressing of program addresses. This section describes the addressing modes of both types of addressing.

**(1) Addressing of instruction addresses**

**(a) Relative addressing**

Relative addressing adds a displacement value from the instruction word (signed complement data: -128 to +127 or -32768 to +32767) to the value in the program counter (PC), and stores the sum in the program counter. Execution branches to the specified program address. Relative addressing is applied only to branch instructions.

**Figure 4-16. How Relative Addressing Works**



**(b) Immediate addressing**

Immediate addressing specifies a branch destination program address by storing immediate data from the program word in the program counter. There are two types of Immediate addressing: CALL !!addr20 or BR !!addr20 specifies 20-bit addresses, and CALL !addr16 or BR !addr16 specifies 16-bit addresses. When a 16-bit address is specified, 0000 is set in the high-order 4 bits.

**Figure 4-17. Example of CALL !!addr20/BR !!addr20 Addressing**

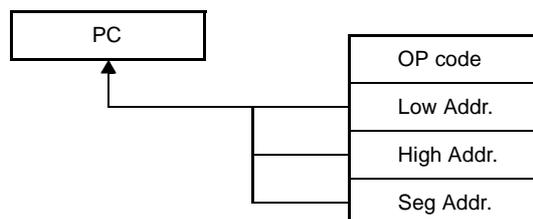
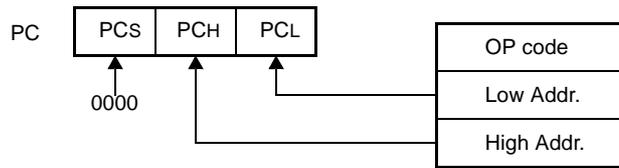


Figure 4-18. Example of CALL !addr16/BR !addr16 Addressing

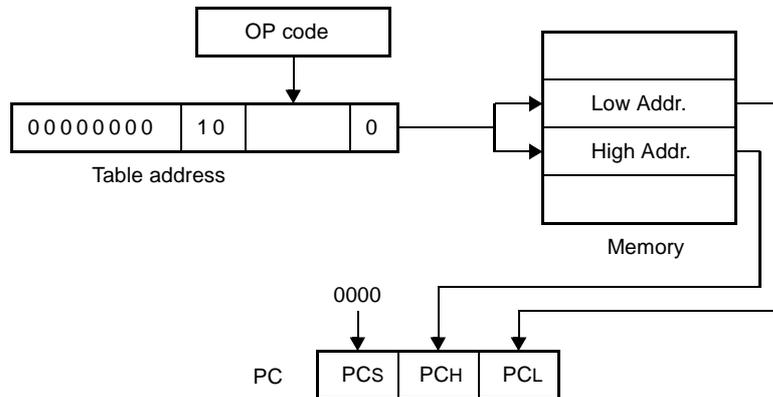


(c) Table indirect addressing

Table indirect addressing specifies an address in the CALLT table area (0080H to 00BFH) with 5 bits of immediate data in the instruction word. Then it stores the contents of that CALLT table address, and the next CALLT table address, as 16-bit data in the program counter. This specifies a program address to be called. Table indirect addressing is applied only to the CALLT instruction.

In RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, branching is enabled only to the 64 KB space from 00000H to 0FFFFH.

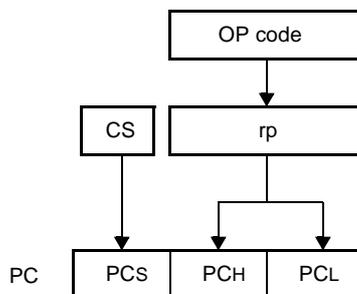
Figure 4-19. How Table Indirect Addressing Works



(d) Register direct addressing

In register direct addressing, the program instruction word specifies a general-purpose register pair (AX/BC/DE/HL) in the current register bank. The content of that register pair and the current CS register is then stored in the program counter as 20-bit data. This specifies a call or branch program address. Register direct addressing is applied only to the CALL AX/BC/DE/HL instructions and the BR AX instruction.

Figure 4-20. How register Direct Addressing Works



(2) Addressing of data addresses

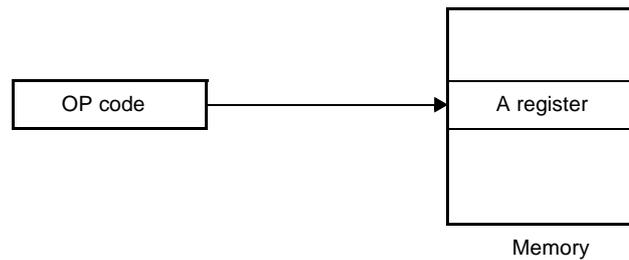
(a) Implied addressing

Implied addressing is used by instructions that access a register with a special function, such as the accumulator. The instruction word contains no special field to specify a register. The register specification is implied by the instruction word itself.

Because register specification is implied, the instruction has no operand.

In RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers, implied addressing is applied to the MULU X instruction only.

Figure 4-21. How Implied Addressing Works



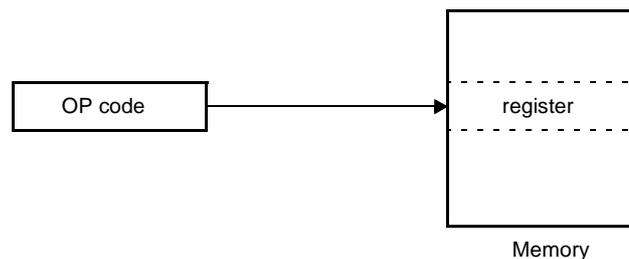
(b) Register addressing

Register addressing accesses memory using a general register as an operand. It uses 3 bits in the instruction word to specify an 8-bit register, or 2 bits to specify a 16-bit register.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
r	X, A, C, B, E, D, L, H
rp	AX, BC, DE, HL

Figure 4-22. How Register Addressing Works



(c) Direct addressing

Direct addressing uses immediate data in the instruction word as the operand. It specifies the target address directly.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
ADDR16	Label, or 16-bit immediate data (F0000H to FFFFFH only)
ES:ADDR16	Label, or 16-bit immediate data (high-order 4 bits specified by ES register)

Figure 4-23. Example of ADDR16 Addressing

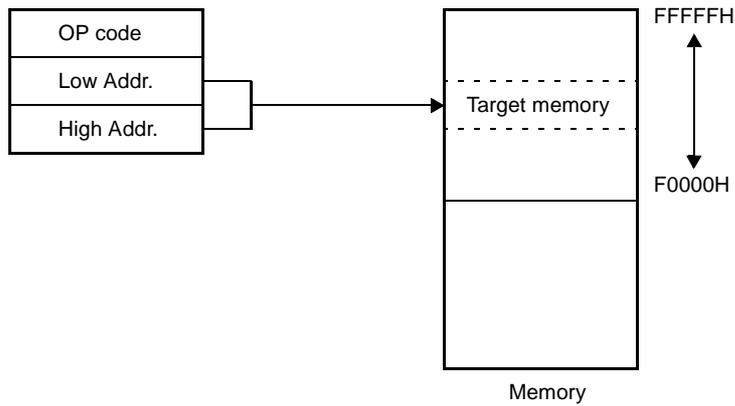
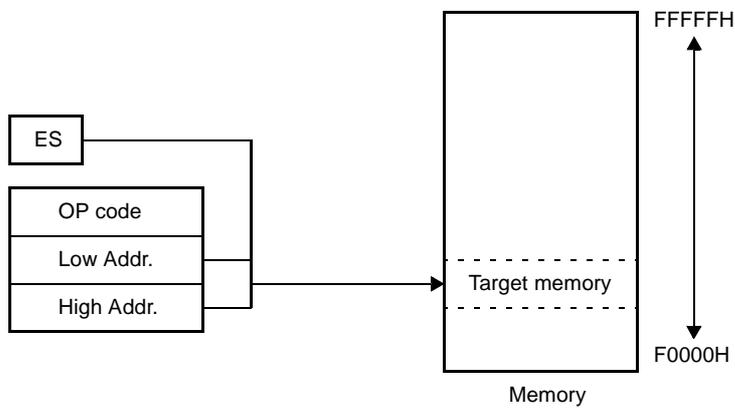


Figure 4-24. Example of ES:ADDR16 Addressing

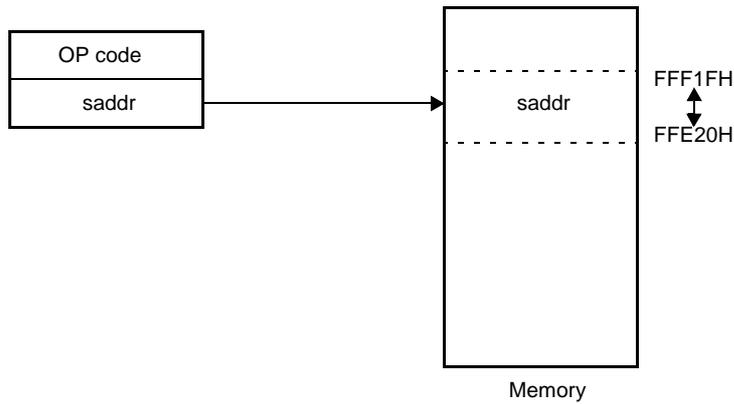


(d) Short direct addressing

Short direct addressing specifies the target address directly using 8 bits of data in the instruction word. This type of addressing is applied only to the space from FFE20H to FFF1FH. The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
SADDR	Label, or immediate data for FFE20H to FFF1FH, or immediate data for 0FE20H to 0FF1FH (Limited to space from FFE20H to FFF1FH)
SADDRP	Label, or immediate data for FFE20H to FFF1FH, or immediate data for 0FE20H to 0FF1FH (even addresses only) (Limited to space from FFE20H to FFF1FH)

Figure 4-25. How Short Direct Addressing Works



**Remark** A SADDR or SADDRP specification (omitting the high-order 4 bits of the address) can specify the values FE20H to FF1FH as 16 bits of immediate data or the values FFE20H to FFF1FH as 20 bits of immediate data.

Regardless of which format is used, the specified addresses are those in the memory space FFE20H to FFF1FH.

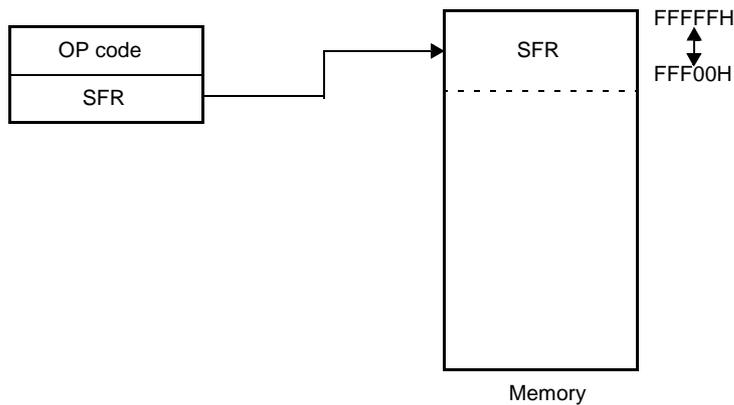
**(e) SFR addressing**

SFR addressing specifies a target SFR address directly using 8 bits of data in the instruction word. This type of addressing is applied only to the space from FFF00H to FFFFFH.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
SFR	SFR register name
SFRP	16-bit SFR register name (even address only)

Figure 4-26. How SFR Addressing Works



(f) Register indirect addressing

Register indirect addressing uses data in the instruction word to specify a register pair. The contents of the specified register pair are then used as the operand to specify the target memory address.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
-	[DE], [HL] (F0000H to FFFFFH only)
-	ES:[DE], ES:[HL] (high-order 4 bits of address specified by ES register)

Figure 4-27. Example of [DE] and [HL] Addressing

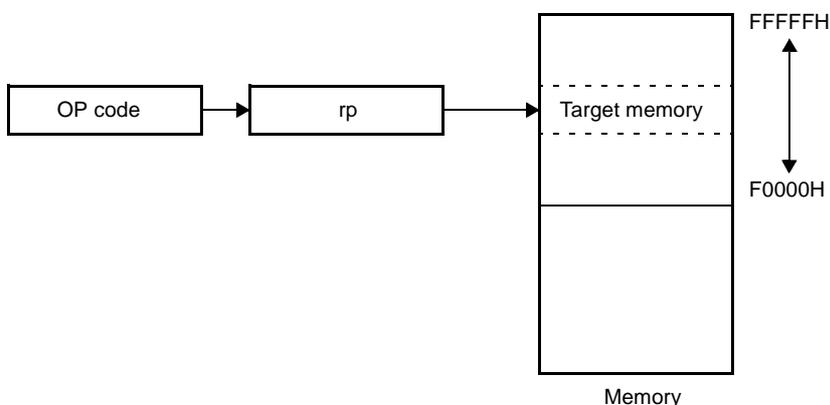
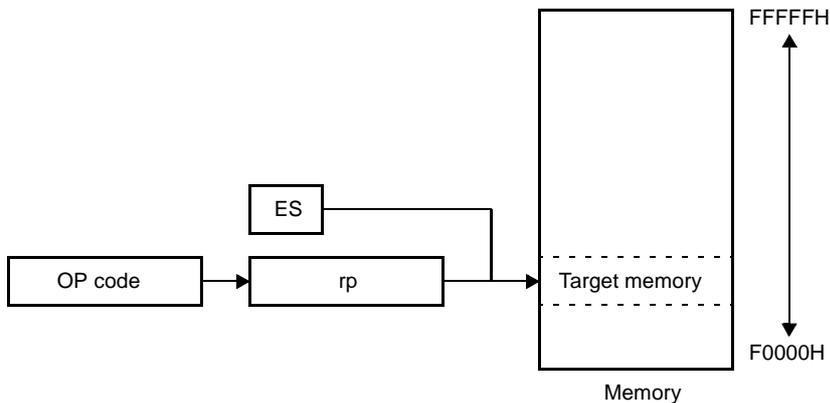


Figure 4-28. Example of ES:[DE] and ES:[HL] Addressing



(g) Based addressing

In based addressing, the instruction word specifies a register pair and an offset. The offset (8-bit or 16-bit immediate data) is added to the contents of the base register pair to specify the target address.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
-	[HL + byte], [DE + byte], [SP + byte] (F0000H to FFFFFH only)
-	word[B], word[C] (F0000H to FFFFFH only)
-	word[BC] (F0000H to FFFFFH only)
-	ES:[HL + byte], ES:[DE + byte] (high-order 4 bits of address specified by ES register)
-	ES:word[B], ES:word[C] (high-order 4 bits of address specified by ES register)
-	ES:word[BC] (high-order 4 bits of address specified by ES register)

Figure 4-29. Example of [SP+byte] Addressing

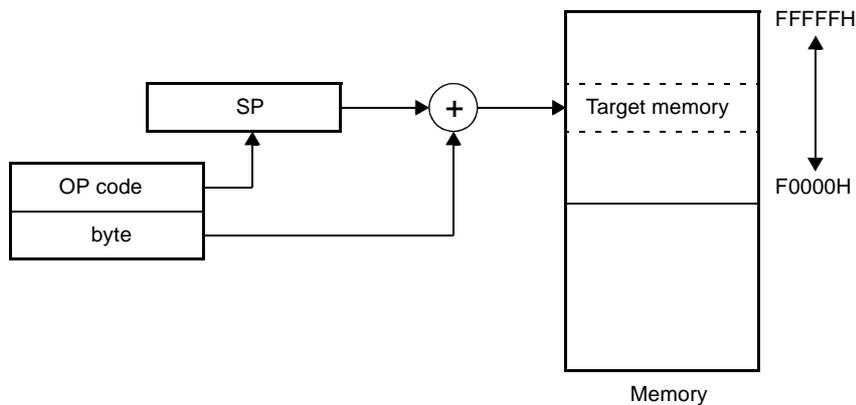


Figure 4-30. Example of [HL+byte] and [DE+byte] Addressing

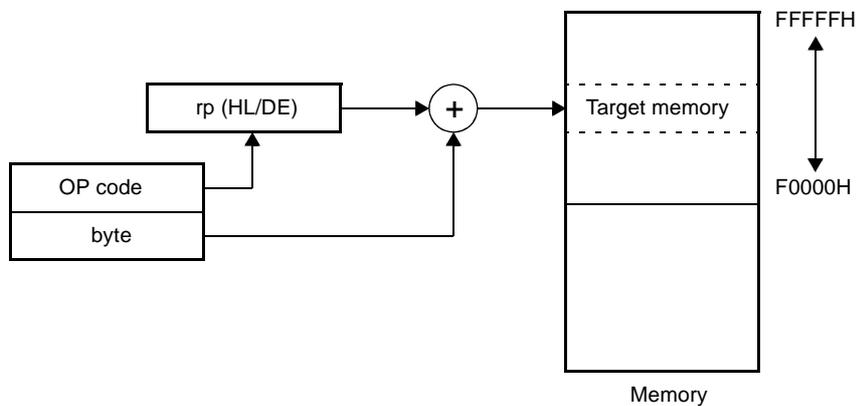


Figure 4-31. Example of word[B] and word[C] Addressing

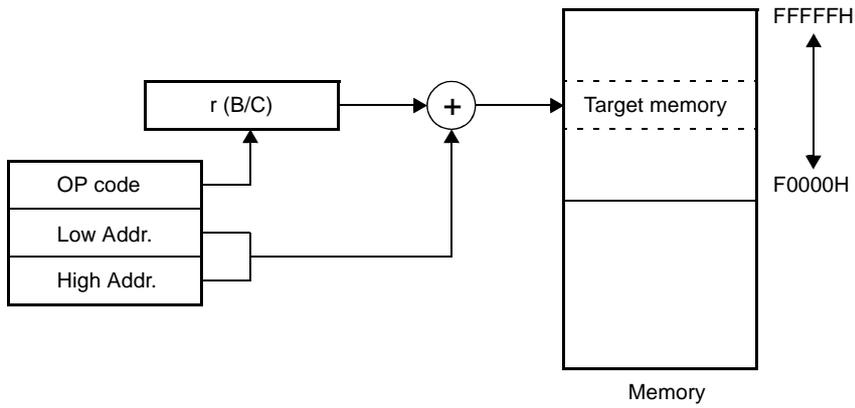


Figure 4-32. Example of word[BC] Addressing

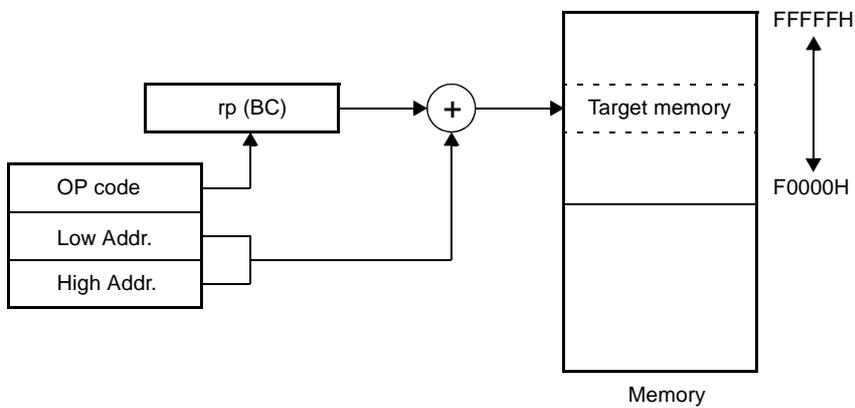


Figure 4-33. Example of ES:[HL+byte] and ES:[DE+byte] Addressing

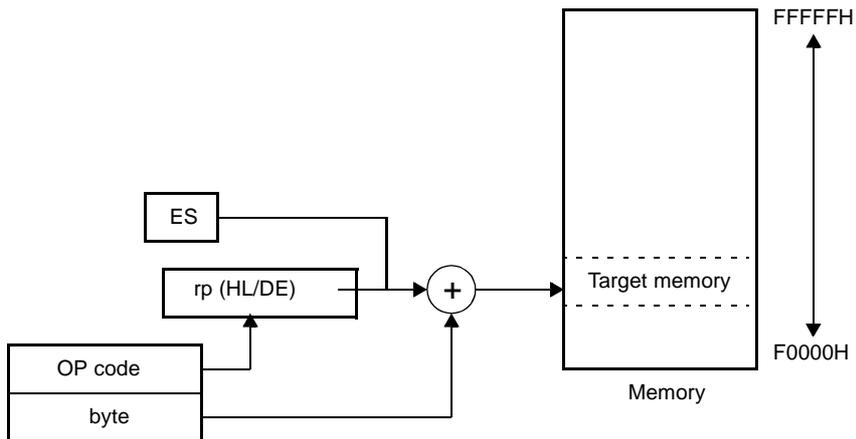


Figure 4-34. Example of ES:word[B] and ES:word[C] Addressing

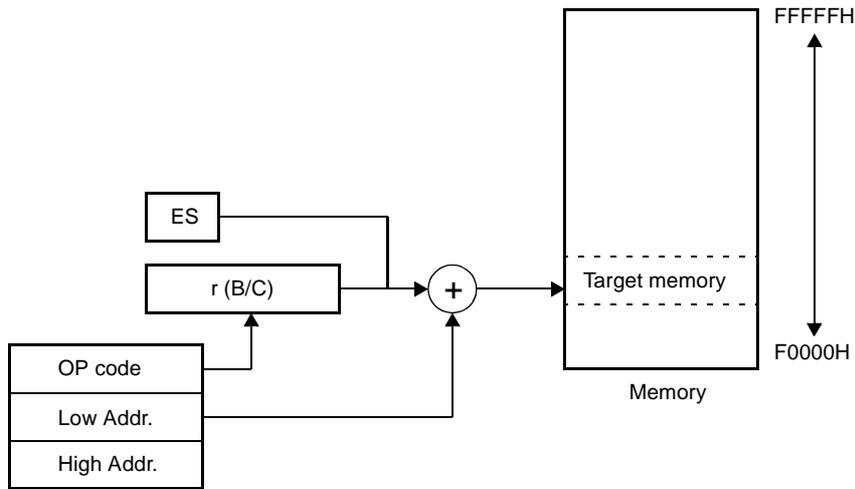
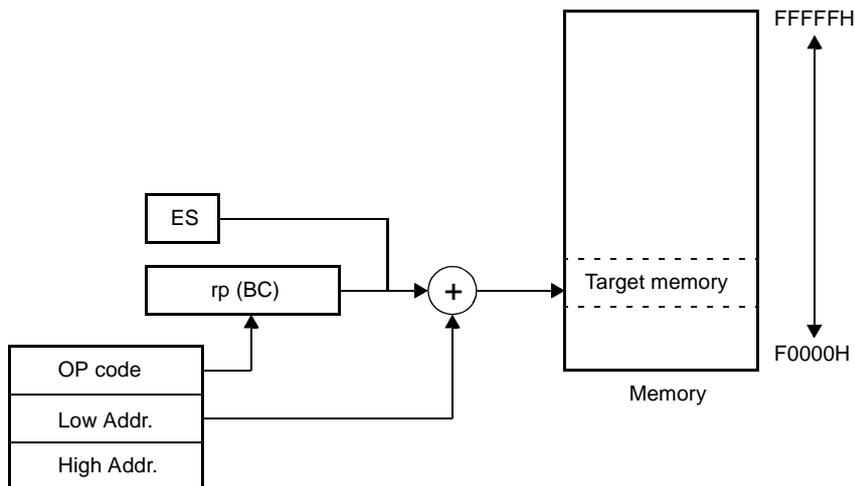


Figure 4-35. Example of ES:word[BC] Addressing



**(h) Based indexed addressing**

In based index addressing, the instruction word specifies a register pair as a base register and either the B or C register as an offset register. The contents of the base register are added to the contents of the offset register to specify the target address.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
-	[HL + B], [HL + C] (F0000H to FFFFFH only)
-	ES:[HL + B], ES:[HL + C] (high-order 4 bits of address specified by ES register)

Figure 4-36. Example of [HL+B] and [HL+C] Addressing

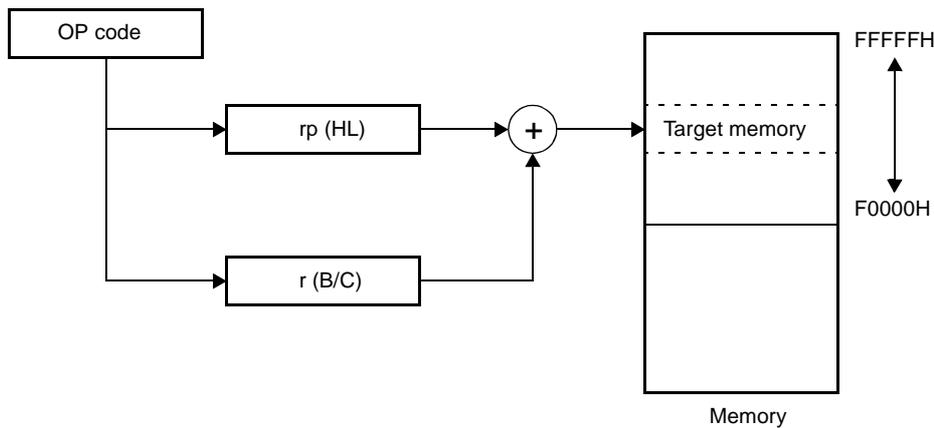
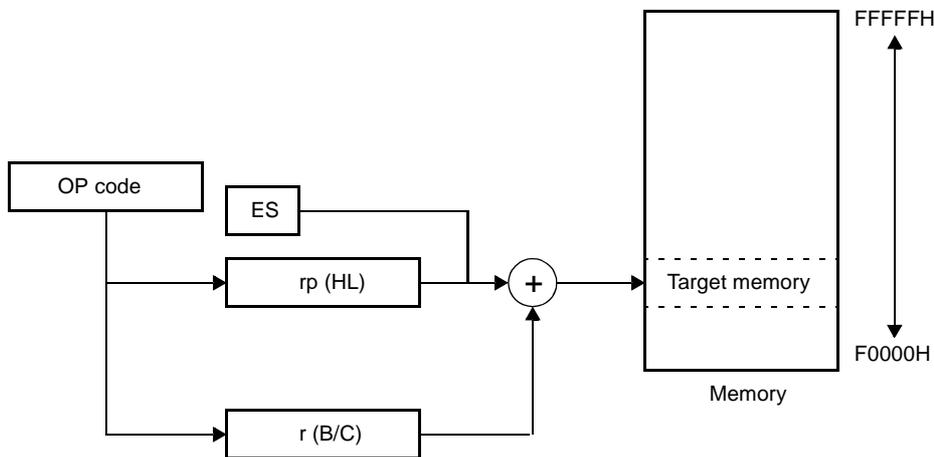


Figure 4-37. Example of ES:[HL+B] and ES:[HL+C] Addressing



(i) Stack addressing

Stack addressing accesses the stack indirectly using the contents of the stack pointer (SP). This type of addressing is employed automatically when the PUSH and POP instructions are executed, when subroutine call and return instructions are executed, and when registers are saved and restored upon generation of an interrupt request.

Stack addressing is applied only to the internal RAM area.

The operand format is shown below.

Format	Description
-	PUSH AX/BC/DE/HL POP AX/BC/DE/HL CALL/CALLT RET BRK RETB (interrupt request generated) RETI

#### 4.6.5 Instruction set

This chapter lists the instructions of the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontroller instruction set.

These instructions are common to all microcontrollers in the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontroller.

##### (1) Expressive form of the operand and description method

The operands in the "Operands" field of each instruction are shown in the representation for that type of operand. (For details, see the assembler specifications.) When there are two or more ways to specify an operand in source code, select one of them. Alphabetic characters written by a capital letter, the symbols #, !, !!, \$, \$!, [ ], and ES: are keywords and should be written just as they appear. Symbols have the following meanings.

#	Immediate data specification
!	16-bit absolute address specification
!!	20-bit absolute address specification
\$	8-bit relative address specification
\$!	16-bit relative address specification
[ ]	Indirect address specification
ES	Extension address specification

Specify immediate data with an appropriate value or label. When specifying a label, be sure to include the #, !, !!, \$, \$!, [ ], or ES: symbol.

For register operands, r and rp can be replaced by register function names (X, A, C, etc.) or register absolute names (R0, R1, R2, etc., as shown in parentheses in the following table).

**Table 4-27. Operand Type Representations and Source Code Formats**

Format	Description
r	X(R0), A(R1), C(R2), B(R3), E(R4), D(R5), L(R6), H(R7)
rp	AX(RP0), BC(RP1), DE(RP2), HL(RP3)
sfr	Special-function register name (SFR name)
sfrp	Special-function register name (16-bit SFR, even addresses only <sup>Note</sup> )
saddr	FFE20H to FFF1FH : Immediate data or label
saddrp	FFE20H to FFF1FH : Immediate data or labels (even addresses only <sup>Note</sup> )
addr20	00000H to FFFFFH : Immediate data or label
addr16	0000H to 0FFFFH : Immediate data or label (even addresses only for 16-bit data transfer instructions <sup>Note</sup> )
addr5	0080H to 00BFH : Immediate data or label (even addresses only)
word	16-bit immediate data or label
byte	8-bit immediate data or label
bit	3-bit immediate data or label
RBn	RB0, RB1, RB2, RB3

**Note** Bit 0 = 0 when an odd address is specified.

**(2) Operation field symbols**

The "Operation" field uses the following symbols to designate the operation that occurs when the instruction is executed.

**Table 4-28. Operation Field Symbols**

Symbol	Function
A	A register:8-bit accumulator
X	X register
B	B register
C	C register
D	D register
E	E register
H	H register
L	L register
ES	ES register
CS	CS register
AX	AX register pair:16-bit accumulator
BC	BC register pair
DE	DE register pair
HL	HL register pair
PC	Program counter
SP	Stack pointer
PSW	Program status word
CY	Carry flag
AC	Auxiliary carry flag
Z	Zero flag
RBS	Register bank selection flag
IE	Interrupt request enable flag
( )	Memory contents indicated by address or register contents in parentheses
XH, XL XS, XH, XL	16-bit registers: XH = high-order 8 bits, XL = low-order 8 bits 20-bit registers: XS = bits 19 to 16, XH = bits 15 to 8, XL = bits 7 to 0
^	Logical AND
v	Logical OR
∨	Exclusive OR
—	Inverted data
addr16	16-bit immediate data
addr20	20-bit immediate data
jdisp8	Signed 8-bit data (displacement value)
jdisp16	Signed 16-bit data (displacement value)

**(3) Flag field symbols**

The "Flag" field uses the following symbols to designate flag changes that occur when the instruction is executed.

**Table 4-29. Flag Field Symbols**

Symbol	Flag Change
(Blank)	Unchanged
0	Cleared to 0
1	Set to 1
x	Set or cleared according to the result
R	Previously saved value is restored

**(4) PREFIX instructions**

Some instructions are shown with the ES: prefix. The addition of the prefix makes it possible to expand the accessible data space from the 64 KB space [F0000H to FFFFFH] to the 1 MB space [00000H to FFFFFH]. This is done by adding the value of the ES register to the address specification. When a PREFIX operation code is attached as a prefix to the target instruction, only one instruction immediately after the PREFIX operation code is executed as the addresses with the ES register value added.

**Table 4-30. Examples of PREFIX Instructions in Use**

Instruction	Opcode				
	1	2	3	4	5
MOV !addr16, #byte	CFH	!addr16		#byte	-
MOV ES:!addr16, #byte	11H	CFH	!addr16		#byte
MOV A, [HL]	8BH	-	-	-	-
MOV A, ES:[HL]	11H	8BH	-	-	-

**Caution** Before executing a PREFIX instruction, always set the correct value in the ES register, for example with MOV ES, A.

(5) Operation list

(a) 8-bit data transfer instructions

Table 4-31. Operation List (8-bit Data Transfer Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
MOV	r, #byte	2	1	-	r <- byte			
	saddr, #byte	3	1	-	(saddr) <- byte			
	sfr, #byte	3	1	-	sfr <- byte			
	!addr16, #byte	4	1	-	(addr16) <- byte			
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	1	1	-	A <- r			
	r, A <sup>Note 3</sup>	1	1	-	r <- A			
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A <- (saddr)			
	saddr, A	2	1	-	(saddr) <- A			
	A, sfr	2	1	-	A <- sfr			
	sfr, A	2	1	-	sfr <- A			
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	A <- (addr16)			
	!addr16, A	3	1	-	(addr16) <- A			
	PSW, #byte	3	3	-	PSW <- byte	x	x	x
	A, PSW	2	1	-	A <- PSW			
	PSW, A	2	3	-	PSW <- A	x	x	x
	ES, #byte	2	1	-	ES <- byte			
	ES, saddr	3	1	-	ES <- (saddr)			
	A, ES	2	1	-	A <- ES			
	ES, A	2	1	-	ES <- A			
	CS, #byte	3	1	-	CS <- byte			
	A, CS	2	1	-	A <- CS			
	CS, A	2	1	-	CS <- A			
	A, [DE]	1	1	4	A <- (DE)			
	[DE], A	1	1	-	(DE) <- A			
	[DE+byte], #byte	3	1	-	(DE + byte) <- byte			
	A, [DE+byte]	2	1	4	A <- (DE + byte)			
	[DE+byte], A	2	1	-	(DE + byte) <- A			
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	A <- (HL)			
	[HL], A	1	1	-	(HL) <- A			
	[HL+byte], #byte	3	1	-	(HL + byte) <- byte			
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	A <- (HL + byte)			
	[HL+byte], A	2	1	-	(HL + byte) <- A			

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	A <- (HL + B)			
	[HL+B], A	2	1	-	(HL + B) <- A			
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	A <- (HL + C)			
	[HL+C], A	2	1	-	(HL + C) <- A			
	word[B], #byte	4	1	-	(B + word) <- byte			
	A, word[B]	3	1	4	A <- (B + word)			
	word[B], A	3	1	-	(B + word) <- A			
	word[C], #byte	4	1	-	(C + word) <- byte			
	A, word[C]	3	1	4	A <- (C + word)			
	word[C], A	3	1	-	(C + word) <- A			
	word[BC], #byte	4	1	-	(BC + word) <- byte			
	A, word[BC]	3	1	4	A <- (BC + word)			
	word[BC], A	3	1	-	(BC + word) <- A			
	[SP+byte], #byte	3	1	-	(SP + byte) <- byte			
	A, [SP+byte]	2	1	-	A <- (SP + byte)			
	[SP+byte], A	2	1	-	(SP + byte) <- A			
	B, saddr	2	1	-	B <- (saddr)			
	B, !addr16	3	1	4	B <- (addr16)			
	C, saddr	2	1	-	C <- (saddr)			
	C, !addr16	3	1	4	C <- (addr16)			
	X, saddr	2	1	-	X <- (saddr)			
	X, !addr16	3	1	4	X <- (addr16)			
	ES:!addr16, #byte	5	2	-	(ES, addr16) <- byte			
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	A <- (ES, addr16)			
	ES:!addr16, A	4	2	-	(ES, addr16) <- A			
	A, ES:[DE]	2	2	5	A <- (ES, DE)			
	ES:[DE], A	2	2	-	(ES, DE) <- A			
	ES:[DE+byte], #byte	4	2	-	((ES, DE) + byte) <- byte			
	A, ES:[DE+byte]	3	2	5	A <- ((ES, DE) + byte)			
	ES:[DE+byte], A	3	2	-	((ES, DE) + byte) <- A			
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	A <- (ES, HL)			
	ES:[HL], A	2	2	-	(ES, HL) <- A			
	ES:[HL+byte], #byte	4	2	-	((ES, HL) + byte) <- byte			
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	A <- ((ES, HL) + byte)			
	ES:[HL+byte], A	3	2	-	((ES, HL) + byte) <- A			
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	A <- ((ES, HL) + B)			

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
	ES:[HL+B], A	3	2	-	((ES, HL) + B) <- A			
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	A <- ((ES, HL) + C)			
	ES:[HL+C], A	3	2	-	((ES, HL) + C) <- A			
	ES:word[B], #byte	5	2	-	((ES, B) + word) <- byte			
	A, ES:word[B]	4	2	5	A <- ((ES, B) + word)			
	ES:word[B], A	4	2	-	((ES, B) + word) <- A			
	ES:word[C], #byte	5	2	-	((ES, C) + word) <- byte			
	A, ES:word[C]	4	2	5	A <- ((ES, C) + word)			
	ES:word[C], A	4	2	-	((ES, C) + word) <- A			
	ES:word[BC], #byte	5	2	-	((ES, BC) + word) <- byte			
	A, ES:word[BC]	4	2	5	A <- ((ES, BC) + word)			
	ES:word[BC], A	4	2	-	((ES, BC) + word) <- A			
	B, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	B <- (ES, addr16)			
	C, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	C <- (ES, addr16)			
	X, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	X <- (ES, addr16)			
XCH	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	1 (r = X) 2 (except r = X)	1	-	A <-> r			
	A, saddr	3	2	-	A <-> (saddr)			
	A, sfr	3	2	-	A <-> sfr			
	A, !addr16	4	2	-	A <-> (addr16)			
	A, [DE]	2	2	-	A <-> (DE)			
	A, [DE+byte]	3	2	-	A <-> (DE + byte)			
	A, [HL]	2	2	-	A <-> (HL)			
	A, [HL+byte]	3	2	-	A <-> (HL + byte)			
	A, [HL+B]	2	2	-	A <-> (HL + B)			
	A, [HL+C]	2	2	-	A <-> (HL + C)			
	A, ES:!addr16	5	3	-	A <-> (ES, addr16)			
	A, ES:[DE]	3	3	-	A <-> (ES, DE)			
	A, ES:[DE+byte]	4	3	-	A <-> ((ES, DE) + byte)			
	A, ES:[HL]	3	3	-	A <-> (ES, HL)			
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	4	3	-	A <-> ((ES, HL) + byte)			
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	3	-	A <-> ((ES, HL) + B)			
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	3	-	A <-> ((ES, HL) + C)			

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
ONEB	A	1	1	-	A <- 01H			
	X	1	1	-	X <- 01H			
	B	1	1	-	B <- 01H			
	C	1	1	-	C <- 01H			
	saddr	2	1	-	(saddr) <- 01H			
	!addr16	3	1	-	(addr16) <- 01H			
	ES:!addr16	4	2	-	(ES, addr16) <- 01H			
CLRB	A	1	1	-	A <- 00H			
	X	1	1	-	X <- 00H			
	B	1	1	-	B <- 00H			
	C	1	1	-	C <- 00H			
	saddr	2	1	-	(saddr) <- 00H			
	!addr16	3	1	-	(addr16) <- 00H			
	ES:!addr16	4	2	-	(ES,addr16) <- 00H			
MOVS	[HL+byte], X	3	1	-	(HL + byte) <- X	x		x
	ES:[HL+byte], X	4	2	-	(ES, HL + byte) <- X	x		x

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.
- When program memory area is accessed.
  - Except r = A.
  - The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

0 : Cleared to 0

1 : Set to 1

x : Set or cleared according to the result

R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
- Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
  - In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (b) 16-bit data transfer instructions

Table 4-32. Operation List (16-bit Data Transfer Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
MOVW	rp, #word	3	1	-	rp <- word			
	saddrp, #word	4	1	-	(saddrp) <- word			
	sfrp, #word	4	1	-	sfrp <- word			
	AX, saddrp	2	1	-	AX <- (saddrp)			
	saddrp, AX	2	1	-	(saddrp) <- AX			
	AX, sfrp	2	1	-	AX <- sfrp			
	sfrp, AX	2	1	-	sfrp <- AX			
	AX, rp <sup>Note 3</sup>	1	1	-	AX <- rp			
	rp, AX <sup>Note 3</sup>	1	1	-	rp <- AX			
	AX, !addr16	3	1	4	AX <- (addr16)			
	!addr16, AX	3	1	-	(addr16) <- AX			
	AX, [DE]	1	1	4	AX <- (DE)			
	[DE], AX	1	1	-	(DE) <- AX			
	AX, [DE+byte]	2	1	4	AX <- (DE + byte)			
	[DE+byte], AX	2	1	-	(DE + byte) <- AX			
	AX, [HL]	1	1	4	AX <- (HL)			
	[HL], AX	1	1	-	(HL) <- AX			
	AX, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	AX <- (HL + byte)			
	[HL+byte], AX	2	1	-	(HL + byte) <- AX			
	AX, word[B]	3	1	4	AX <- (B + word)			
	word[B], AX	3	1	-	(B + word) <- AX			
	AX, word[C]	3	1	4	AX <- (C + word)			
	word[C], AX	3	1	-	(C + word) <- AX			
	AX, word[BC]	3	1	4	AX <- (BC + word)			
	word[BC], AX	3	1	-	(BC + word) <- AX			
	AX, [SP+byte]	2	1	-	AX <- (SP + byte)			
	[SP+byte], AX	2	1	-	(SP + byte) <- AX			
	BC, saddrp	2	1	-	BC <- (saddrp)			
	BC, !addr16	3	1	4	BC <- (addr16)			
	DE, saddrp	2	1	-	DE <- (saddrp)			
	DE, !addr16	3	1	4	DE <- (addr16)			
	HL, saddrp	2	1	-	HL <- (saddrp)			
HL, !addr16	3	1	4	HL <- (addr16)				
AX, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	AX <- (ES, addr16)				

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
	ES:!addr16, AX	4	2	-	(ES, addr16) <- AX			
	AX, ES:[DE]	2	2	5	AX <- (ES, DE)			
	ES:[DE], AX	2	2	-	(ES, DE) <- AX			
	AX, ES:[DE+byte]	3	2	5	AX <- ((ES, DE) + byte)			
	ES:[DE+byte], AX	3	2	-	((ES, DE) + byte) <- AX			
	AX, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	AX <- (ES, HL)			
	ES:[HL], AX	2	2	-	(ES, HL) <- AX			
	AX, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	AX <- ((ES, HL) + byte)			
	ES:[HL+byte], AX	3	2	-	((ES, HL) + byte) <- AX			
	AX, ES:word[B]	4	2	5	AX <- ((ES, B) + word)			
	ES:word[B], AX	4	2	-	((ES, B) + word) <- AX			
	AX, ES:word[C]	4	2	5	AX <- ((ES, C) + word)			
	ES:word[C], AX	4	2	-	((ES, C) + word) <- AX			
	AX, ES:word[BC]	4	2	5	AX <- ((ES, BC) + word)			
	ES:word[BC], AX	4	2	-	((ES, BC) + word) <- AX			
	BC, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	BC <- (ES, addr16)			
	DE, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	DE <- (ES, addr16)			
	HL, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	HL <- (ES, addr16)			
<b>XCHW</b>	AX, rp <sup>Note 3</sup>	1	1	-	AX <-> rp			
<b>ONEW</b>	AX	1	1	-	AX <- 0001H			
	BC	1	1	-	BC <- 0001H			
<b>CLRW</b>	AX	1	1	-	AX <- 0000H			
	BC	1	1	-	BC <- 0000H			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** Except rp = AX  
**4.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1  
x : Set or cleared according to the result  
R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the

instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (c) 8-bit operation instructions

Table 4-33. Operation List (8-bit Operation Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
ADD	A, #byte	2	1	-	A, CY ← A + byte	x	x	x
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	(saddr), CY ← (saddr) + byte	x	x	x
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	A, CY ← A + r	x	x	x
	r, A	2	1	-	r, CY ← r + A	x	x	x
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A, CY ← A + (saddr)	x	x	x
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	A, CY ← A + (addr16)	x	x	x
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL + byte)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL + B)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL + C)	x	x	x
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	A, CY ← A + (ES, addr16)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	A, CY ← A + (ES, HL)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	A, CY ← A + ((ES, HL) + byte)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	A, CY ← A + ((ES, HL) + B)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	A, CY ← A + ((ES, HL) + C)	x	x	x
ADDC	A, #byte	2	1	-	A, CY ← A + byte + CY	x	x	x
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	(saddr), CY ← (saddr) + byte + CY	x	x	x
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	A, CY ← A + r + CY	x	x	x
	r, A	2	1	-	r, CY ← r + A + CY	x	x	x
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A, CY ← A + (saddr) + CY	x	x	x
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	A, CY ← A + (addr16) + CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL) + CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL + byte) + CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL + B) + CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	A, CY ← A + (HL + C) + CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	A, CY ← A + (ES, addr16) + CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	A, CY ← A + (ES, HL) + CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	A, CY ← A + ((ES, HL) + byte) + CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	A, CY ← A + ((ES, HL) + B) + CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	A, CY ← A + ((ES, HL) + C) + CY	x	x	x
SUB	A, #byte	2	1	-	A, CY ← A - byte	x	x	x

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	(saddr), CY <- (saddr) - byte	x	x	x
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	A, CY <- A - r	x	x	x
	r, A	2	1	-	r, CY <- r - A	x	x	x
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A, CY <- A - (saddr)	x	x	x
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	A, CY <- A - (addr16)	x	x	x
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL + byte)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL + B)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL + C)	x	x	x
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	A, CY <- A - (ES:addr16)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	A, CY <- A - (ES:HL)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	A, CY <- A - ((ES:HL) + byte)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	A, CY <- A - ((ES:HL) + B)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	A, CY <- A - ((ES:HL) + C)	x	x	x
SUBC	A, #byte	2	1	-	A, CY <- A - byte - CY	x	x	x
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	(saddr), CY <- (saddr) - byte - CY	x	x	x
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	A, CY <- A - r - CY	x	x	x
	r, A	2	1	-	r, CY <- r - A - CY	x	x	x
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A, CY <- A - (saddr) - CY	x	x	x
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	A, CY <- A - (addr16) - CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL) - CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL + byte) - CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL + B) - CY	x	x	x
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	A, CY <- A - (HL + C) - CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	A, CY <- A - (ES:addr16) - CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	A, CY <- A - (ES:HL) - CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	A, CY <- A - ((ES:HL) + byte) - CY	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	A, CY <- A - ((ES:HL) + B) - CY	x	x	x
A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	A, CY <- A - ((ES:HL) + C) - CY	x	x	x	
AND	A, #byte	2	1	-	A <- A ^ byte	x		
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	(saddr) <- (saddr) ^ byte	x		
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	A <- A ^ r	x		
	r, A	2	1	-	r <- r ^ A	x		
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A <- A ^ (saddr)	x		

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{addr16})$	x		
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL})$	x		
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$	x		
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL} + \text{B})$	x		
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{HL} + \text{C})$	x		
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{ES:addr16})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge (\text{ES:HL})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge ((\text{ES:HL}) + \text{byte})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge ((\text{ES:HL}) + \text{B})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \wedge ((\text{ES:HL}) + \text{C})$	x		
OR	A, #byte	2	1	-	$A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$	x		
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$	x		
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$	x		
	r, A	2	1	-	$r \leftarrow r \vee A$	x		
	A, saddr	2	1	-	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$	x		
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr16})$	x		
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$	x		
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$	x		
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{B})$	x		
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{C})$	x		
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{ES:addr16})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{ES:HL})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee ((\text{ES:HL}) + \text{byte})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee ((\text{ES:HL}) + \text{B})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee ((\text{ES:HL}) + \text{C})$	x		
XOR	A, #byte	2	1	-	$A \leftarrow A \vee \text{byte}$	x		
	saddr, #byte	3	2	-	$(\text{saddr}) \leftarrow (\text{saddr}) \vee \text{byte}$	x		
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	$A \leftarrow A \vee r$	x		
	r, A	2	1	-	$r \leftarrow r \vee A$	x		
	A, saddr	2	1	-	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{saddr})$	x		
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{addr16})$	x		
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL})$	x		
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{byte})$	x		
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{B})$	x		
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{HL} + \text{C})$	x		
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \vee (\text{ES:addr16})$	x		

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla (ES:HL)$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla ((ES:HL) + \text{byte})$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla ((ES:HL) + B)$	x		
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	$A \leftarrow A \nabla ((ES:HL) + C)$	x		
CMP	A, #byte	2	1	-	A - byte	x	x	x
	saddr, #byte	3	1	-	(saddr) - byte	x	x	x
	A, r <sup>Note 3</sup>	2	1	-	A - r	x	x	x
	r, A	2	1	-	r - A	x	x	x
	A, saddr	2	1	-	A - (saddr)	x	x	x
	A, !addr16	3	1	4	A - (addr16)	x	x	x
	A, [HL]	1	1	4	A - (HL)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+byte]	2	1	4	A - (HL + byte)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+B]	2	1	4	A - (HL + B)	x	x	x
	A, [HL+C]	2	1	4	A - (HL + C)	x	x	x
	!addr16, #byte	4	1	4	(addr16) - byte	x	x	x
	A, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	A - (ES:addr16)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL]	2	2	5	A - (ES:HL)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+byte]	3	2	5	A - ((ES:HL) + byte)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+B]	3	2	5	A - ((ES:HL) + B)	x	x	x
	A, ES:[HL+C]	3	2	5	A - ((ES:HL) + C)	x	x	x
	ES:!addr16, #byte	5	2	5	(ES:addr16) - byte	x	x	x
CMP0	A	1	1	-	A - 00H	x	x	x
	X	1	1	-	X - 00H	x	x	x
	B	1	1	-	B - 00H	x	x	x
	C	1	1	-	C - 00H	x	x	x
	saddr	2	1	-	(saddr) - 00H	x	x	x
	!addr16	3	1	4	(addr16) - 00H	x	x	x
	ES:!addr16	4	2	5	(ES:addr16) - 00H	x	x	x
CMPS	X, [HL+byte]	3	1	4	X - (HL + byte)	x	x	x
	X, ES:[HL+byte]	4	2	5	X - ((ES:HL) + byte)	x	x	x

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** Except r = A.  
**4.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1

- x : Set or cleared according to the result
- R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
2. Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
  3. In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (d) 16-bit operation instructions

Table 4-34. Operation List (16-bit Operation Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
ADDW	AX, #word	3	1	-	AX, CY <- AX + word	x	x	x
	AX, AX	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX + AX	x	x	x
	AX, BC	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX + BC	x	x	x
	AX, DE	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX + DE	x	x	x
	AX, HL	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX + HL	x	x	x
	AX, saddrp	2	1	-	AX, CY <- AX + (saddrp)	x	x	x
	AX, !addr16	3	1	4	AX, CY <- AX + (addr16)	x	x	x
	AX, [HL+byte]	3	1	4	AX, CY <- AX + (HL + byte)	x	x	x
	AX, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	AX, CY <- AX + (ES:addr16)	x	x	x
	AX, ES:[HL+byte]	4	2	5	AX, CY <- AX + ((ES:HL) + byte)	x	x	x
SUBW	AX, #word	3	1	-	AX, CY <- AX - word	x	x	x
	AX, BC	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX - BC	x	x	x
	AX, DE	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX - DE	x	x	x
	AX, HL	1	1	-	AX, CY <- AX - HL	x	x	x
	AX, saddrp	2	1	-	AX, CY <- AX - (saddrp)	x	x	x
	AX, !addr16	3	1	4	AX, CY <- AX - (addr16)	x	x	x
	AX, [HL+byte]	3	1	4	AX, CY <- AX - (HL - byte)	x	x	x
	AX, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	AX, CY <- AX - (ES:addr16)	x	x	x
	AX, ES:[HL+byte]	4	2	5	AX, CY <- AX - ((ES:HL) + byte)	x	x	x
CMPW	AX, #word	3	1	-	AX - word	x	x	x
	AX, BC	1	1	-	AX - BC	x	x	x
	AX, DE	1	1	-	AX - DE	x	x	x
	AX, HL	1	1	-	AX - HL	x	x	x
	AX, saddrp	2	1	-	AX - (saddrp)	x	x	x
	AX, !addr16	3	1	4	AX - (addr16)	x	x	x
	AX, [HL+byte]	3	1	4	AX - (HL + byte)	x	x	x
	AX, ES:!addr16	4	2	5	AX - (ES:addr16)	x	x	x
	AX, ES:[HL+byte]	4	2	5	AX - ((ES:HL) + byte)	x	x	x

**Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.

**2.** When program memory area is accessed.

**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

- 0 : Cleared to 0
- 1 : Set to 1
- x : Set or cleared according to the result
- R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
2. Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
  3. In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (e) Multiply/Divide/Multiply &amp; Accumulate instructions

Table 4-35. Operation List (Multiply/Divide/Multiply &amp; Accumulate instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
MULU	X	1	1	-	AX ← A x X			
MULHU <sup>Note 4</sup>	-	3	2	-	BCAX ← AX x BC			
MULH <sup>Note 4</sup>	-	3	2	-	BCAX ← AX x BC			
DIVHU <sup>Note 4</sup>	-	3	9	-	AX (quotient), DE (remainder) ← AX / DE			
DIVWU <sup>Note 4</sup>	-	3	17	-	BCAX (quotient), HLDE (remainder) ← BCAX / HLDE			
MACHU <sup>Note 4</sup>	-	3	3	-	MACR ← MACR + AX x BC		x	x
MACH <sup>Note 4</sup>	-	3	3	-	MACR ← MACR + AX x BC		x	x

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.
- 2.** When program memory area is accessed.
- 3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.
- Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1  
x : Set or cleared according to the result  
R : Previously saved value is restored
- 4.** These instructions are expanded instructions and mounted or not mounted by product. For details, see to user's manual of each product.

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
- 2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
- 3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (f) Increment/decrement instructions

Table 4-36. Operation List (Increment/Decrement Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
INC	r	1	1	-	$r \leftarrow r + 1$	x	x	
	saddr	2	2	-	$(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) + 1$	x	x	
	!addr16	3	2	-	$(addr16) \leftarrow (addr16) + 1$	x	x	
	[HL+byte]	3	2	-	$(HL + byte) \leftarrow (HL + byte) + 1$	x	x	
	ES:!addr16	4	3	-	$(ES, addr16) \leftarrow (ES, addr16) + 1$	x	x	
	ES: [HL+byte]	4	3	-	$((ES:HL) + byte) \leftarrow ((ES:HL) + byte) + 1$	x	x	
DEC	r	1	1	-	$r \leftarrow r - 1$	x	x	
	saddr	2	2	-	$(saddr) \leftarrow (saddr) - 1$	x	x	
	!addr16	3	2	-	$(addr16) \leftarrow (addr16) - 1$	x	x	
	[HL+byte]	3	2	-	$(HL + byte) \leftarrow (HL + byte) - 1$	x	x	
	ES:!addr16	4	3	-	$(ES, addr16) \leftarrow (ES, addr16) - 1$	x	x	
	ES: [HL+byte]	4	3	-	$((ES:HL) + byte) \leftarrow ((ES:HL) + byte) - 1$	x	x	
INCW	rp	1	1	-	$rp \leftarrow rp + 1$			
	saddrp	2	2	-	$(saddrp) \leftarrow (saddrp) + 1$			
	!addr16	3	2	-	$(addr16) \leftarrow (addr16) + 1$			
	[HL+byte]	3	2	-	$(HL + byte) \leftarrow (HL + byte) + 1$			
	ES:!addr16	4	3	-	$(ES, addr16) \leftarrow (ES, addr16) + 1$			
	ES: [HL+byte]	4	3	-	$((ES:HL) + byte) \leftarrow ((ES:HL) + byte) + 1$			
DECW	rp	1	1	-	$rp \leftarrow rp - 1$			
	saddrp	2	2	-	$(saddrp) \leftarrow (saddrp) - 1$			
	!addr16	3	2	-	$(addr16) \leftarrow (addr16) - 1$			
	[HL+byte]	3	2	-	$(HL + byte) \leftarrow (HL + byte) - 1$			
	ES:!addr16	4	3	-	$(ES, addr16) \leftarrow (ES, addr16) - 1$			
	ES: [HL+byte]	4	3	-	$((ES:HL) + byte) \leftarrow ((ES:HL) + byte) - 1$			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

- 0 : Cleared to 0
- 1 : Set to 1
- x : Set or cleared according to the result
- R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
2. Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
  3. In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (g) Shift instructions

Table 4-37. Operation List (Shift Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
SHR	A, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> <- A <sub>m</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
SHRW	AX, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- AX <sub>0</sub> , AX <sub>m-1</sub> <- AX <sub>m</sub> , AX <sub>15</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
SHL	A, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>m</sub> <- A <sub>m-1</sub> , A <sub>0</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
	B, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- B <sub>7</sub> , B <sub>m</sub> <- B <sub>m-1</sub> , B <sub>0</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
	C, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- C <sub>7</sub> , C <sub>m</sub> <- C <sub>m-1</sub> , C <sub>0</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
SHLW	AX, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- AX <sub>15</sub> , AX <sub>m</sub> <- AX <sub>m-1</sub> , AX <sub>0</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
	BC, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- BC <sub>15</sub> , BC <sub>m</sub> <- BC <sub>m-1</sub> , BC <sub>0</sub> <- 0) x cnt			x
SAR	A, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> <- A <sub>m</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> <- A <sub>7</sub> ) xcnt			x
SARW	AX, cnt	2	1	-	(CY <- AX <sub>0</sub> , AX <sub>m-1</sub> <- AX <sub>m</sub> , AX <sub>15</sub> <- AX <sub>15</sub> ) x cnt			x

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

0 : Cleared to 0

1 : Set to 1

x : Set or cleared according to the result

R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** cnt is the number of bit shifts.  
**4.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) Access to external memory contents as data" for wait numbers.

## (h) Rotate instructions

Table 4-38. Operation List (Rotate Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
ROR	A, 1	2	1	-	(CY, A <sub>7</sub> <- A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>m-1</sub> <- A <sub>m</sub> )x1			x
ROL	A, 1	2	1	-	(CY, A <sub>0</sub> <- A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>m+1</sub> <- A <sub>m</sub> )x1			x
RORC	A, 1	2	1	-	(CY <- A <sub>0</sub> , A <sub>7</sub> <- CY, A <sub>m-1</sub> <- A <sub>m</sub> )x1			x
ROLC	A, 1	2	1	-	(CY <- A <sub>7</sub> , A <sub>0</sub> <- CY, A <sub>m+1</sub> <- A <sub>m</sub> )x1			x
ROLWC	AX, 1	2	1	-	(CY <- AX <sub>15</sub> , AX <sub>0</sub> <- CY, AX <sub>m+1</sub> <- AX <sub>m</sub> )x1			x
	BC, 1	2	1	-	(CY <- BC <sub>15</sub> , BC <sub>0</sub> <- CY, BC <sub>m+1</sub> <- BC <sub>m</sub> )x1			x

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1  
x : Set or cleared according to the result  
R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (i) Bit manipulation instructions

Table 4-39. Operation List (Bit Manipulation Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
MOV1	CY, saddr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← (saddr).bit			x
	CY, sfr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← sfr.bit			x
	CY, A.bit	2	1	-	CY ← A.bit			x
	CY, PSW.bit	3	1	-	CY ← PSW.bit			x
	CY, [HL].bit	2	1	4	CY ← (HL).bit			x
	saddr.bit, CY	3	2	-	(saddr).bit ← CY			
	sfr.bit, CY	3	2	-	sfr.bit ← CY			
	A.bit, CY	2	1	-	A.bit ← CY			
	PSW.bit, CY	3	4	-	PSW.bit ← CY	x	x	
	[HL].bit, CY	2	2	-	(HL).bit ← CY			
	CY, ES:[HL].bit	3	2	5	CY ← (ES, HL).bit			x
	ES:[HL].bit, CY	3	3	-	(ES, HL).bit ← CY			
AND1	CY, saddr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ∧ (saddr).bit			x
	CY, sfr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ∧ sfr.bit			x
	CY, A.bit	2	1	-	CY ← CY ∧ A.bit			x
	CY, PSW.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ∧ PSW.bit			x
	CY, [HL].bit	2	1	4	CY ← CY ∧ (HL).bit			x
	CY, ES:[HL].bit	3	2	5	CY ← CY ∧ (ES, HL).bit			x
OR1	CY, saddr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ∨ (saddr).bit			x
	CY, sfr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ∨ sfr.bit			x
	CY, A.bit	2	1	-	CY ← CY ∨ A.bit			x
	CY, PSW.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ∨ PSW.bit			x
	CY, [HL].bit	2	1	4	CY ← CY ∨ (HL).bit			x
	CY, ES:[HL].bit	3	2	5	CY ← CY ∨ (ES, HL).bit			x
XOR1	CY, saddr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ⊕ (saddr).bit			x
	CY, sfr.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ⊕ sfr.bit			x
	CY, A.bit	2	1	-	CY ← CY ⊕ A.bit			x
	CY, PSW.bit	3	1	-	CY ← CY ⊕ PSW.bit			x
	CY, [HL].bit	2	1	4	CY ← CY ⊕ (HL).bit			x
	CY, ES:[HL].bit	3	2	5	CY ← CY ⊕ (ES, HL).bit			x

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
SET1	saddr.bit	3	2	-	(saddr).bit <- 1			
	sfr.bit	3	2	-	sfr.bit <- 1			
	A.bit	2	1	-	A.bit <- 1			
	!addr16.bit	4	2	-	(addr16).bit <- 1			
	PSW.bit	3	4	-	PSW.bit <- 1	x	x	x
	[HL].bit	2	2	-	(HL).bit <- 1			
	ES:!addr16.bit	5	3	-	(ES, addr16).bit <- 1			
	ES:[HL].bit	3	3	-	(ES, HL).bit <- 1			
	CY	2	1	-	CY <- 1			1
CLR1	saddr.bit	3	2	-	(saddr).bit <- 0			
	sfr.bit	3	2	-	sfr.bit <- 0			
	A.bit	2	1	-	A.bit <- 0			
	!addr16.bit	4	2	-	(addr16).bit <- 0			
	PSW.bit	3	4	-	PSW.bit <- 0	x	x	x
	[HL].bit	2	2	-	(HL).bit <- 0			
	ES:!addr16.bit	5	3	-	(ES, addr16).bit <- 0			
	ES:[HL].bit	3	3	-	(ES, HL).bit <- 0			
	CY	2	1	-	CY <- 0			0
NOT1	CY	2	1	-	CY <- $\overline{\text{CY}}$			x

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1  
x : Set or cleared according to the result  
R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) Access to external memory contents as data" for wait numbers.

## (j) Call return instructions

Table 4-40. Operations List (Call Return Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
CALL	rp	2	3	-	(SP - 2) <- (PC + 2) <sub>s</sub> , (SP - 3) <- (PC + 2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP - 4) <- (PC + 2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <- CS, rp, SP <- SP - 4			
	\$!addr20	3	3	-	(SP - 2) <- (PC + 3) <sub>s</sub> , (SP - 3) <- (PC + 3) <sub>H</sub> , (SP - 4) <- (PC + 3) <sub>L</sub> , PC <- PC + 3 + jdisp16, SP <- SP - 4			
	!addr16	3	3	-	(SP - 2) <- (PC + 3) <sub>s</sub> , (SP - 3) <- (PC + 3) <sub>H</sub> , (SP - 4) <- (PC + 3) <sub>L</sub> , PC <- 0000, addr16, SP <- SP - 4			
	!!addr20	4	3	-	(SP - 2) <- (PC + 4) <sub>s</sub> , (SP - 3) <- (PC + 4) <sub>H</sub> , (SP - 4) <- (PC + 4) <sub>L</sub> , PC <- addr20, SP <- SP - 4			
CALLT	[addr5]	2	5	-	(SP - 2) <- (PC + 2) <sub>s</sub> , (SP - 3) <- (PC + 2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP - 4) <- (PC + 2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>s</sub> <- 0000, PC <sub>H</sub> <- (000000000000, addr5 + 1), PC <sub>L</sub> <- (000000000000, addr5), SP <- SP - 4			
BRK	-	2	5	-	(SP - 1) <- PSW, (SP - 2) <- (PC + 2) <sub>s</sub> , (SP - 3) <- (PC + 2) <sub>H</sub> , (SP - 4) <- (PC + 2) <sub>L</sub> , PC <sub>s</sub> <- 0000, PC <sub>H</sub> <- (0007FH), PC <sub>L</sub> <- (0007EH), SP <- SP - 4, IE <- 0			
RET	-	1	6	-	PC <sub>L</sub> <- (SP), PC <sub>H</sub> <- (SP + 1), PC <sub>s</sub> <- (SP + 2), SP <- SP + 4			

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
RETI	-	2	6	-	PC <sub>L</sub> <- (SP), PC <sub>H</sub> <- (SP + 1), PC <sub>S</sub> <- (SP + 2), PSW <- (SP + 3), SP <- SP + 4	R	R	R
RETB	-	2	6	-	PC <sub>L</sub> <- (SP), PC <sub>H</sub> <- (SP + 1), PC <sub>S</sub> <- (SP + 2), PSW <- (SP + 3), SP <- SP + 4	R	R	R

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.
2. When program memory area is accessed.
  3. The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

0 : Cleared to 0

1 : Set to 1

x : Set or cleared according to the result

R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
2. Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
  3. In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (k) Stack manipulation instructions

Table 4-41. Operation List (Stack Manipulation Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
PUSH	PSW	2	1	-	(SP - 1) <- PSW, (SP - 2) <- 00H, SP <- SP - 2			
	rp	1	1	-	(SP - 1) <- rpH, (SP - 2) <- rpL, SP <- SP - 2			
POP	PSW	2	3	-	PSW <- (SP + 1), SP <- SP + 2	R	R	R
	rp	1	1	-	rpL <- (SP), rpH <- (SP + 1), SP <- SP + 2			
MOVW	SP, #word	4	1	-	SP <- word			
	SP, AX	2	1	-	SP <- AX			
	AX, SP	2	1	-	AX <- SP			
	HL, SP	3	1	-	HL <- SP			
	BC, SP	3	1	-	BC <- SP			
	DE, SP	3	1	-	DE <- SP			
ADDW	SP, #byte	2	1	-	SP <- SP + byte			
SUBW	SP, #byte	2	1	-	SP <- SP - byte			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1  
x : Set or cleared according to the result  
R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (I) Unconditional branch instructions

Table 4-42. Operation List (Unconditional Branch Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
BR	AX	2	3	-	PC ← CS, AX			
	\$addr20	2	3	-	PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8			
	!addr20	3	3	-	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp16			
	!addr16	3	3	-	PC ← 0000, addr16			
	!!addr20	4	3	-	PC ← addr20			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

0 : Cleared to 0

1 : Set to 1

x : Set or cleared according to the result

R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (m) Conditional branch instructions

Table 4-43. Operation List (Conditional Branch Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
BC	\$addr20	2	2/4 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8 if CY = 1			
BNC	\$addr20	2	2/4 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8 if CY = 0			
BZ	\$addr20	2	2/4 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8 if Z = 1			
BNZ	\$addr20	2	2/4 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 2 + jdisp8 if Z = 0			
BH	\$addr20	3	2/4 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (Z v CY) = 0			
BNH	\$addr20	3	2/4 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (Z v CY) = 1			
BT	saddr.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if (saddr).bit = 1			
	sfr.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 1			
	A.bit, \$addr20	3	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if A.bit = 1			
	PSW.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 1			
	[HL].bit, \$addr20	3	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	6/8	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 1			
	ES:[HL].bit, \$addr20	4	4/6 <sup>Note 3</sup>	7/9	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if (ES, HL).bit = 1			
BF	saddr.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if (saddr).bit = 0			
	sfr.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 0			
	A.bit, \$addr20	3	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if A.bit = 0			
	PSW.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 0			
	[HL].bit, \$addr20	3	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	6/8	PC ← PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 0			
	ES:[HL].bit, \$addr20	4	4/6 <sup>Note 3</sup>	7/9	PC ← PC + 4 + jdisp8 if (ES, HL).bit = 0			

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 4</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
BTCLR	saddr.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC <- PC + 4 + jdisp8 if (saddr).bit = 1 then reset (saddr).bit			
	sfr.bit, \$addr20	4	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC <- PC + 4 + jdisp8 if sfr.bit = 1 then reset sfr.bit			
	A.bit, \$addr20	3	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC <- PC + 3 + jdisp8 if A.bit = 1 then reset A.bit			
	PSW.bit, \$addr20	4	5/7 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC <- PC + 4 + jdisp8 if PSW.bit = 1 then reset PSW.bit	x	x	x
	[HL].bit, \$addr20	3	3/5 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC <- PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (HL).bit = 1 then reset (HL).bit			
	ES:[HL].bit, \$addr20	4	4/6 <sup>Note 3</sup>	-	PC <- PC + 4 + jdisp8 if (ES, HL).bit = 1 then reset (ES, HL).bit			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.
2. When program memory area is accessed.
  3. The clock number shows the condition satisfied or condition unsatisfied.
  4. The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
 0 : Cleared to 0  
 1 : Set to 1  
 x : Set or cleared according to the result  
 R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).
2. Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.
  3. In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (n) Conditional skip instructions

Table 4-44. Operation List (Conditional Skip Instructions)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
SKC	-	2	1	-	Next instruction skip if CY = 1			
SKNC	-	2	1	-	Next instruction skip if CY = 0			
SKZ	-	2	1	-	Next instruction skip if Z = 1			
SKNZ	-	2	1	-	Next instruction skip if Z = 0			
SKH	-	2	1	-	Next instruction skip if (Z v CY) = 0			
SKNH	-	2	1	-	Next instruction skip if (Z v CY) = 1			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged  
0 : Cleared to 0  
1 : Set to 1  
x : Set or cleared according to the result  
R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) [Access to external memory contents as data](#)" for wait numbers.

## (o) CPU control instruction

Table 4-45. Operation List (CPU Control Instruction)

Mnemonic	Operand	Byte	Clock		Operation	Flag <sup>Note 3</sup>		
			Note 1	Note 2		Z	AC	CY
SEL	RBn	2	1	-	RBS[1:0] <- n			
NOP	-	1	1	-	No Operation			
EI	-	3	4	-	IE <- 1 (Enable Interrupt)			
DI	-	3	4	-	IE <- 0 (Disable Interrupt)			
HALT	-	2	3	-	Set HALT Mode			
STOP	-	2	3	-	Set STOP Mode			

- Notes 1.** When internal RAM area or SFR area is accessed or using the instruction for no data access.  
**2.** When program memory area is accessed.  
**3.** The flag field symbol shows the flag change at the time the instruction is executed.

Blank : Unchanged

0 : Cleared to 0

1 : Set to 1

x : Set or cleared according to the result

R : Previously saved value is restored

- Remarks 1.** One clock of the instruction is one clock of the CPU clock (fCLK) that is selected by the processor clock control register (PCC).  
**2.** Clock number when there is a program in the internal ROM (Flash memory) area.  
**3.** n is the number of register banks (n = 0 to 3).  
**4.** In products in which external memory area connects to internal flash area, when using external bus interface function, wait number is added to the instruction execution clock number that is mapped to the final address of Flash (maximum 16 bytes). This is because when carrying out a prior read of the instruction code, flash space is exceeded and external memory space is accessed and so an external memory wait is entered. Please see "(b) Access to external memory contents as data" for wait numbers.

#### 4.6.6 Explanation of instructions

This section explains the instructions of RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers.

**Table 4-46. Assembly Language Instruction List**

Function	Instruction
8-bit data transmission instructions	MOV, XCH, ONEB, CLRB, MOVS
16-bit data transmission instructions	MOVW, XCHW, ONEW, CLRW
8-bit operation instructions	ADD, ADDC, SUB, SUBC, AND, OR, XOR, CMP, CMP0, CMPS
16-bit operation instructions	ADDW, SUBW, CMPW
Multiply/Divide/Multiply & Accumulate instructions	MULU, MULHU, MULH, DIVHU, DIVWU, MACHU, MACH
Increment/Decrement instructions	INC, DEC, INCW, DECW
Shift instructions	SHR, SHRW, SHL, SHLW, SAR, SARW
Rotate instructions	ROR, ROL, RORC, ROLC, ROLWC
Bit manipulation instructions	MOV1, AND1, OR1, XOR1, SET1, CLR1, NOT1
Call return instructions	CALL, CALLT, BRK, RET, RETI, RETB
Stack manipulation instructions	PUSH, POP, MOVW, ADDW, SUBW
Unconditional branch instruction	BR
Conditional branch instructions	BC, BNC, BZ, BNZ, BH, BNH, BT, BF, BTCLR
Conditional skip instructions	SKC, SKNC, SKZ, SKNZ, SKH, SKNH
CPU control instructions	SEL, NOP, EI, DI, HALT, STOP

The following information explains the individual instructions.

#### [Instruction format]

Shows the basic written format of the instruction.

#### [Operation]

The instruction operation is shown by using the code address.

#### [Operand]

The operand that can be specified with this instruction is shown. Please see "(2) Operation field symbols" for descriptions of each operand.

**[Flag]**

Indicates the flag operation that changes by instruction execution.

Each flag operation symbol is shown in the conventions.

Symbol	Description
Blank	Unchanged
0	Cleared to 0
1	Set to 1
x	Set or cleared according to the result
R	Previously saved value is restored

**[Description]**

Describes the instruction operation in detail.

**[Description example]**

Description example of an instruction is indicated.

**(1) 8-bit data transmission instructions**

The following 8-bit data transmission instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
MOV	Byte data transfer
XCH	Byte data exchange
ONEB	Byte data 01H set
CLRB	Byte data clear
MOVS	Byte data transfer and PSW change

**MOV**

Byte data transfer

**[Instruction format]**

MOV dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst &lt;- src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
r, #byte
saddr, #byte
sfr, #byte
!addr16, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A <sup>Note</sup>
A, saddr
saddr, A
A, sfr
sfr, A
A, !addr16
!addr16, A
PSW, #byte
A, PSW
PSW, A
ES, #byte
ES, saddr
A, ES
ES, A
CS, #byte
A, CS
CS, A
A, [DE]
[DE], A
[DE+byte], #byte
A, [DE+byte]
[DE+byte], A

Operand (dst, src)
A, [HL]
[HL], A
[HL+byte], #byte
A, [HL+byte]
[HL+byte], A
A, [HL+B]
[HL+B], A
A, [HL+C]
[HL+C], A
word[B], #byte
A, word[B]
word[B], A
word[C], #byte
A, word[C]
word[C], A
word[BC], #byte
A, word[BC]
word[BC], A
[SP+byte], #byte
A, [SP+byte]
[SP+byte], A
B, saddr
B, !addr16
C, saddr
C, !addr16
X, saddr
X, !addr16
ES:!addr16, #byte
A, ES:!addr16
ES:!addr16, A
A, ES:[DE]
ES:[DE], A
ES:[DE+byte], #byte
A, ES:[DE+byte]
ES:[DE+byte], A
A, ES:[HL]
ES:[HL], A

Operand (dst, src)
ES:[HL+byte], #byte
A, ES:[HL+byte]
ES:[HL+byte], A
A, ES:[HL+B]
ES:[HL+B], A
A, ES:[HL+C]
ES:[HL+C], A
ES:word[B], #byte
A, ES:word[B]
ES:word[B], A
ES:word[C], #byte
A, ES:word[C]
ES:word[C], A
ES:word[BC], #byte
A, ES:word[BC]
ES:word[BC], A
B, ES:laddr16
C, ES:laddr16
X, ES:laddr16

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

**(1) PSW, #byte and PSW, A operands**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**(2) All other operand combinations**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The contents of the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand are transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.
- No interrupts are acknowledged between the MOV PSW, #byte instruction/MOV PSW, A instruction and the next instruction.

**[Description example]**

MOV     A, #4DH           ;   (1)
-----------------------------------

**(1) 4DH is transferred to the A register.**

**XCH**

Byte data exchange

**[Instruction format]**

XCH dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <--> src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
A, saddr
A, sfr
A, !addr16
A, [DE]
A, [DE+byte]
A, [HL]
A, [HL + byte]
A, [HL + B]
A, [HL + C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[DE]
A, ES:[DE+byte]
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The 1st and 2nd operand contents are exchanged.

**[Description example]**

XCH      A, FFEBCH      ; (1)
-------------------------------

(1) The A register contents and address FFEBCH contents are exchanged.

**ONEB**

Byte data 01H set

**[Instruction format]**

ONEB dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- 01H

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
A
X
B
C
saddr
!addr16
ES:!addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- 01H is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand.

**[Description example]**

ONEB A ; (1)

(1) Transfers 01H to the A register.

**CLRB**

Byte data clear

**[Instruction format]**

CLRB dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- 00H

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
A
X
B
C
saddr
!addr16
ES:!addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- 00H is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand.

**[Description example]**

```
CLRB A ; (1)
```

(1) Transfers 00H to the A register.

**MOVS**

Byte data transfer and PSW change

**[Instruction format]**

MOVS dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
[HL+byte], X
ES:[HL+byte], X

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The contents of the source operand specified by the second operand is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand.
- If the src value is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the register A value is 0 or if the src value is 0, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
MOVS [HL+2H], X ; (1)
```

- (1) When HL = FE00H, X = 55H, A = 0H : "X = 55H" is stored at address FE02H.  
**Z flag = 0 CY flag = 1 (since A register = 0)**

**(2) 16-bit data transmission instructions**

The following 16-bit data transmission instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">MOVW</a>	Word data transfer
<a href="#">XCHW</a>	Word data exchange
<a href="#">ONEW</a>	Word data 0001H set
<a href="#">CLRW</a>	Word data clear

**MOVW**

Word data transfer

**[Instruction format]**

MOVW dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst &lt;- src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
rp, #word
saddrp, #word
sfrp, #word
AX, saddrp
saddrp, AX
AX, sfrp
sfrp, AX
AX, rp <sup>Note</sup>
rp, AX <sup>Note</sup>
AX, !addr16
!addr16, AX
AX, [DE]
[DE], AX
AX, [DE+byte]
[DE+byte], AX
AX, [HL]
[HL], AX
AX, [HL+byte]
[HL+byte], AX
AX, word[B]
word[B], AX
AX, word[C]
word[C], AX
AX, word[BC]
word[BC], AX
AX, [SP+byte]
[SP+byte], AX

Operand (dst, src)
BC, saddrp
BC, !addr16
DE, saddrp
DE, !addr16
HL, saddrp
HL, !addr16
AX, ES:!addr16
ES:!addr16, AX
AX, ES:[DE]
ES:[DE], AX
AX, ES:[DE+byte]
ES:[DE+byte], AX
AX, ES:[HL]
ES:[HL], AX
AX, ES:[HL+byte]
ES:[HL+byte], AX
AX, ES:word[B]
ES:word[B], AX
AX, ES:word[C]
ES:word[C], AX
AX, ES:word[BC]
ES:word[BC], AX
BC, ES:!addr16
DE, ES:!addr16
HL, ES:!addr16

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE or HL

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The contents of the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand are transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.

**[Description example]**

MOVW	AX, HL	;	(1)
------	--------	---	-----

(1) The HL register contents are transferred to the AX register.

**[Cautions]**

- Only an even address can be specified. An odd address cannot be specified.

**XCHW**

Word data exchange

**[Instruction format]**

XCHW dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <--> src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
AX, rp <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Only when rp = BC, DE or HL

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The 1st and 2nd operand contents are exchanged.

**[Description example]**

XCHW AX, BC ; (1)
-------------------

(1) The memory contents of the AX register are exchanged with those of the BC register.

**ONEW**

Word data 0001H set

**[Instruction format]**

ONEW dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- 0001H

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
AX
BC

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- 0001H is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand.

**[Description example]**

ONEW AX ; (1)

(1) 0001H is transferred to the AX register.

**CLRW**

Word data clear

**[Instruction format]**

CLRW dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- 0000H

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
AX
BC

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- 0000H is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand.

**[Description example]**

CLRW AX ; (1)

(1) 0000H is transferred to the AX register.

**(3) 8-bit operation instructions**

The following 8-bit operation instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">ADD</a>	Byte data addition
<a href="#">ADDC</a>	Byte data addition including carry
<a href="#">SUB</a>	Byte data subtraction
<a href="#">SUBC</a>	Byte data subtraction including carry
<a href="#">AND</a>	Byte data AND operation
<a href="#">OR</a>	Byte data OR operation
<a href="#">XOR</a>	Byte data exclusive OR operation
<a href="#">CMP</a>	Byte data comparison
<a href="#">CMP0</a>	Byte data zero comparison
<a href="#">CMPS</a>	Byte data comparison

**ADD**

Byte data addition

**[Instruction format]**

ADD dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst, CY &lt;- dst + src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand is added to the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the CY flag and the destination operand (dst).
- If the addition result shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the addition generates a carry out of bit 7, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- If the addition generates a carry for bit 4 out of bit 3, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

ADD      CR10, #56H      ;    (1)
-----------------------------------

**(1) 56H is added to the CR10 register and the result is stored in the CR10 register.**

**ADDC**

Byte data addition including carry

**[Instruction format]**

ADDC dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst, CY <- dst + src + CY

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand, the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the CY flag are added and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst) and the CY flag. The CY flag is added to the least significant bit. This instruction is mainly used to add two or more bytes.
- If the addition result shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the addition generates a carry out of bit 7, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- If the addition generates a carry for bit 4 out of bit 3, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

ADDC	A,	[HL+B]	;	(1)
------	----	--------	---	-----

- (1) The A register contents and the contents at address (HL register + (B register) ) and the CY flag are added and the result is stored in the A register.

**SUB**

Byte data subtraction

**[Instruction format]**

SUB dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst, CY <- dst - src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst) and the CY flag.  
The destination operand can be cleared to 0 by equalizing the source operand (src) and the destination operand (dst).
- If the subtraction shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 7, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
SUB    D, A        ; (1)
```

- (1) The A register is subtracted from the D register and the result is stored in the D register.

**SUBC**

Byte data subtraction including carry

**[Instruction format]**

SUBC dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst, CY <- dst - src - CY

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the CY flag are subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).  
The CY flag is subtracted from the least significant bit. This instruction is mainly used for subtraction of two or more bytes.
- If the subtraction shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 7, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
SUBC  A, [HL]      ; (1)
```

- (1) The (HL register) address contents and the CY flag are subtracted from the A register and the result is stored in the A register.**

**AND**

Byte data AND operation

**[Instruction format]**

AND dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst ^ src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x		

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- Bit-wise logical product is obtained from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the logical product shows that all bits are 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
AND    FFEBAH, #11011100B    ; (1)
```

- (1) Bit-wise logical product of FFEBAH contents and 11011100B is obtained and the result is stored at FFEBAH.

**OR**

Byte data OR operation

**[Instruction format]**

OR dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst v src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x		

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The bit-wise logical sum is obtained from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the logical sum shows that all bits are 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
OR    A, FFE98H    ; (1)
```

- (1) The bit-wise logical sum of the A register and FFE98H is obtained and the result is stored in the A register.

**XOR**

Byte data exclusive OR operation

**[Instruction format]**

XOR dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst ∨ src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x		

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The bit-wise exclusive logical sum is obtained from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst). Logical negation of all bits of the destination operand (dst) is possible by selecting #0FFH for the source operand (src) with this instruction.
- If the exclusive logical sum shows that all bits are 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

XOR	A, L	; (1)
-----	------	-------

- (1) The bit-wise exclusive logical sum of the A and L registers is obtained and the result is stored in the A register.

**CMP**

Byte data comparison

**[Instruction format]**

CMP dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst - src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
A, #byte
saddr, #byte
A, r <sup>Note</sup>
r, A
A, saddr
A, !addr16
A, [HL]
A, [HL+byte]
A, [HL+B]
A, [HL+C]
!addr16, #byte
A, ES:!addr16
A, ES:[HL]
A, ES:[HL+byte]
A, ES:[HL+B]
A, ES:[HL+C]
ES:!addr16, #byte

**Note** Except r = A.

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.  
The subtraction result is not stored anywhere and only the Z, AC and CY flags are changed.
- If the subtraction result is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 7, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
CMP    FFE38H, #38H          ; (1)
```

- (1) 38H is subtracted from the contents at address FFE38H and only the flags are changed (comparison of contents at address FFE38H and the immediate data).**

**CMP0**

Byte data zero comparison

**[Instruction format]**

CMP0 dst

**[Operation]**

dst - 00H

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
A
X
B
C
saddr
!addr16
ES:!addr16

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- 00H is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand.
- The subtraction result is not stored anywhere and only the Z, AC and CY flags are changed.
- If the dst value is already 00H, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- The AC and CY flags are always cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
CMP0 A ; (1)
```

**(1) The Z flag is set if the A register value is 0.**

**CMPS**

Byte data comparison

**[Instruction format]**

CMPS dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst - src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
X, [HL+byte]
X, ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.  
The subtraction result is not stored anywhere and only the Z, AC and CY flags are changed.
- If the subtraction result is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- When the calculation result is not 0 or when the value of either register A or dst is 0, then the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 4 to bit 3, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
CMPS    X, [HL+FOH]    ; (1)
```

- (1) **When HL = FD12H : The value of X is compared with the contents of address FFE02H, and the Z flag is set if the two values match. The value of X is compared with the contents of address FFE02H, and the CY flag is set if the two values do not match.**

**The CY flag is set when the value of register A is 0. The CY flag is set when the value of register X is 0.**

**The AC flag is set by borrowing from bit 4 to bit 3, similar to the CMP instruction.**

**(4) 16-bit operation instructions**

The following 16-bit operation instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">ADDW</a>	Word data addition
<a href="#">SUBW</a>	Word data subtraction
<a href="#">CMPW</a>	Word data comparison

**ADDW**

Word data addition

**[Instruction format]**

ADDW dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst, CY <- dst + src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
AX, #word
AX, AX
AX, BC
AX, DE
AX, HL
AX, saddrp
AX, !addr16
AX, [HL+byte]
AX, ES:!addr16
AX, ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand is added to the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- If the addition result shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the addition generates a carry out of bit 15, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- As a result of addition, the AC flag becomes undefined.

**[Description example]**

```
ADDW    AX, #ABCDH    ;    (1)
```

**(1) ABCDH is added to the AX register and the result is stored in the AX register.**

**SUBW**

Word data subtraction

**[Instruction format]**

SUBW dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst, CY <- dst - src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
AX, #word
AX, BC
AX, DE
AX, HL
AX, saddrp
AX, !addr16
AX, [HL+byte]
AX, ES:!addr16
AX, ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst) and the CY flag.
- If the subtraction shows that dst is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 15, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- As a result of subtraction, the AC flag becomes undefined.

**[Description example]**

```
SUBW AX, #ABCDH ; (1)
```

(1) ABCDH is subtracted from the AX register contents and the result is stored in the AX register.

**CMPW**

Word data comparison

**[Instruction format]**

CMPW dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst - src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
AX, #word
AX, BC
AX, DE
AX, HL
AX, saddrp
AX, !addr16
AX, [HL+byte]
AX, ES:!addr16
AX, ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is subtracted from the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.  
The subtraction result is not stored anywhere and only the Z, AC and CY flags are changed.
- If the subtraction result is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the subtraction generates a borrow out of bit 15, the CY flag is set (1). In all other cases, the CY flag is cleared (0).
- As a result of subtraction, the AC flag becomes undefined.

**[Description example]**

CMPW	AX, #ABCDH	;	(1)
------	------------	---	-----

- (1) **ABCDH is subtracted from the AX register and only the flags are changed.**  
(comparison of the AX register and the immediate data)

**(5) Multiply/Divide/Multiply & Accumulate instructions**

The following multiply/divide/multiply & accumulate instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">MULU</a>	Unsigned data multiplication
<a href="#">MULHU</a> <sup>Note</sup>	Unsigned data 16-bit multiplication
<a href="#">MULH</a> <sup>Note</sup>	Signed data 16-bit multiplication
<a href="#">DIVHU</a> <sup>Note</sup>	Unsigned 16-bit division
<a href="#">DIVWU</a> <sup>Note</sup>	Unsigned 32-bit division
<a href="#">MACHU</a> <sup>Note</sup>	Unsigned multiply and accumulation
<a href="#">MACH</a> <sup>Note</sup>	Signed multiply and accumulation

**Note** These instructions are expanded instructions and mounted or not mounted by product. For details, see to user's manual of each product.

**MULU**

Unsigned data multiplication

**[Instruction format]**

MULU src

**[Operation]**

AX <- A x src

**[Operand]**

Operand (src)
X

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The A register contents and the source operand (src) data are multiplied as unsigned data and the result is stored in the AX register.

**[Description example]**

```
MULU X ; (1)
```

- (1) The A register contents and the X register contents are multiplied and the result is stored in the AX register.

**MULHU**

Unsigned data 16-bit multiplication

**[Instruction format]**

MULHU

**[Operation]**

BCAX <- AX x BC

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The content of AX register and the content of BC register are multiplied as unsigned data, upper 16 bits of the result are stored in the BC register, and lower 16 bits of the result are stored in the AX register.

**[Description example]**

```

MOVW    AX, #0C000H
MOVW    BC, #1000H
MULHU
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, BC
MOVW    !addr16, AX    ; (1)
    
```

(1) C000H and 1000H are multiplied, and the result C000000H is stored in memory indicated by !addr16.

**MULH**

Signed data 16-bit multiplication

**[Instruction format]**

MULH

**[Operation]**

BCAX <- AX x BC

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The content of AX register and the content of BC register are multiplied as signed data, upper 16 bits of the result are stored in the BC register, and lower 16 bits of the result are stored in the AX register.

**[Description example]**

```

MOVW    AX, #0C000H
MOVW    BC, #1000H
MULH
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, BC
MOVW    !addr16, AX    ; (1)
    
```

(1) C000H and 1000H are multiplied, and the result FC000000H is stored in memory indicated by !addr16.

**DIVHU**

Unsigned 16-bit division

**[Instruction format]**

DIVHU

**[Operation]**

AX (quotient), DE (remainder) <- AX / DE

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The content of AX register is divided by the content of DE register, the quotient is stored in AX register, and the remainder is stored in DE register. The division treats the content of AX register and DE register as unsigned data. However, when the content of DE register is 0, the content of AX register is stored in DE register and then the content of AX register becomes 0FFFFH.

**[Description example]**

```

MOVW    AX, #8081H
MOVW    DE, #0002H
DIVHU
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, DE
MOVW    !addr16, AX    ; (1)
    
```

**(1) 8081H is divided by 0002H, and the quotient in AX register (4040H) and the remainder (0001H) in DE register are stored in memory indicated by !addr16.**

**DIVWU**

Unsigned 32-bit division

**[Instruction format]**

DIVWU

**[Operation]**

BCAX (quotient), HLDE (remainder) <- BCAX / HLDE

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The content of BCAX register is divided by the content of HLDE register, the quotient is stored in BCAX register, and the remainder is stored in HLDE register. The division treats the content of BCAX register and HLDE register as unsigned data.
- However, when the content of HLDE register is 0, the content of BCAX register is stored in HLDE register and then the content of BCAX register becomes 0FFFFFFFH.

**[Description example]**

```

MOVW    AX, #8081H
MOVW    BC, #8080H
MOVW    DE, #0002H
MOVW    HL, #0000H
DIVWU
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, BC
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, DE
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, HL
MOVW    !addr16, AX    ; (1)
    
```

**(1) 80808081H is divided by 00000002H, and the quotient (40404040H) in BCAX register and the remainder (00000001H) in HLDE register are stored in memory indicated by !addr16.**

**MACHU**

Unsigned multiply and accumulation

**[Instruction format]**

MACHU

**[Operation]**

MACR <- MACR + AX x BC

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
	x	x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The content of AX register and the content of BC register are multiplied; the result and the content of MACR register are accumulated and then stored in MACR register.
- As a result of accumulation, when overflow occurs, CY flag is set (1), and when not, CY flag is cleared (0).
- AC flag becomes 0.
- Before multiplication and accumulation, set an initial value in MACR register. In addition since MACR register is fixed, if more than one result of multiplication and accumulation are needed, save the content of MACR register first.

**[Description example]**

```

MOVW    AX, #00000H
MOVW    !0FFF2H, AX
MOVW    !0FFF0H, AX
MOVW    AX, #0C000H
MOVW    BC, #01000H
MACHU
MOVW    AX, !0FFF2H
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, !0FFF0H
MOVW    !addr16, AX    ; (1)
    
```

- (1) The content of AX register and the content of BC register are multiplied, the result and the content of MACR register are accumulated and then stored in MACR register.

**MACH**

Signed multiply and accumulation

**[Instruction format]**

MACH

**[Operation]**

MACR <- MACR + AX x BC

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
	x	x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The content of AX register and the content of BC register are multiplied; the result and the content of MACR register are accumulated and then stored in MACR register.
- As a result of accumulation, if overflow occurs, CY flag is set (1), and if not, CY flag is cleared (0). The overflow means cases that an added result of a plus accumulated value and a plus multiplied value has exceeded 7FFFFFFFH and that an added result of a minus accumulated value and a minus multiplied value has exceeded 80000000H.
- As a result of operations, when MACR register has a plus value, AC flag is cleared (0), and when it has a minus value, AC flag is set (1).
- Before multiplication and accumulation, set an initial value in MACR register. In addition since MACR register is fixed, if more than one result of multiplication and accumulation are needed, save the content of MACR register first.

**[Description example]**

```
MOVW    AX, #00000H
MOVW    !0FFF0H, AX
MOVW    AX, #08000H
MOVW    !0FFF2H, AX
MOVW    AX, #00001H
MOVW    !0FFF0H, AX
MOVW    AX, #07FFFH
MOVW    BC, #0FFFFH
MACH
MOVW    AX, !0FFF2H
MOVW    !addr16, AX
MOVW    AX, !0FFF0H
MOVW    !addr16, AX    ; (1)
```

- (1) The content of AX register and that of BC register are multiplied, the result and the content of MACR register are accumulated and then stored in MACR register.

**(6) Increment/Decrement instructions**

The following increment/decrement instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">INC</a>	Byte adta increment
<a href="#">DEC</a>	Byte data decrement
<a href="#">INCW</a>	Word data increment
<a href="#">DECW</a>	Word data decrement

**INC**

Byte adta increment

**[Instruction format]**

INC dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst + 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (src)
r
saddr
!addr16
[HL+byte]
ES:!addr16
ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are incremented by only one.
- If the increment result is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the increment generates a carry for bit 4 out of bit 3, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).
- Because this instruction is frequently used for increment of a counter for repeated operations and an indexed addressing offset register, the CY flag contents are not changed (to hold the CY flag contents in multiple-byte operation).

**[Description example]**

```
INC    B            ; (1)
```

(1) The B register is incremented.

**DEC**

Byte data decrement

**[Instruction format]**

DEC dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst - 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (src)
r
saddr
!addr16
[HL+byte]
ES:!addr16
ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are decremented by only one.
- If the decrement result is 0, the Z flag is set (1). In all other cases, the Z flag is cleared (0).
- If the decrement generates a carry for bit 3 out of bit 4, the AC flag is set (1). In all other cases, the AC flag is cleared (0).
- Because this instruction is frequently used for a counter for repeated operations, the CY flag contents are not changed (to hold the CY flag contents in multiple-byte operation).
- If dst is the B or C register or saddr, and it is not desired to change the AC and CY flag contents, the DBNZ instruction can be used.

**[Description example]**

```
DEC    FFE92H    ; (1)
```

(1) The contents at address FFE92H are decremented.

**INCW**

Word data increment

**[Instruction format]**

INCW dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst + 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (src)
rp
saddrp
!addr16
[HL+byte]
ES:!addr16
ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are incremented by only one.
- Because this instruction is frequently used for increment of a register (pointer) used for addressing, the Z, AC and CY flag contents are not changed.

**[Description example]**

```
INCW HL ; (1)
```

(1) The HL register is incremented.

**DECW**

Word data decrement

**[Instruction format]**

DECW dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst - 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (src)
rp
saddrp
!addr16
[HL+byte]
ES:!addr16
ES:[HL+byte]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents are decremented by only one.
- Because this instruction is frequently used for decrement of a register (pointer) used for addressing, the Z, AC and CY flag contents are not changed.

**[Description example]**

```
DECW DE ; (1)
```

**(1) The DE register is decremented.**

**(7) Shift instructions**

The following shift instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
SHR	Logical shift to the right
SHRW	Logical shift to the right
SHL	Logical shift to the left
SHLW	Logical shift to the left
SAR	Arithmetic shift to the right
SARW	Arithmetic shift to the right

**SHR**

Logical shift to the right

**[Instruction format]**

SHR dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY ← dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>m-1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>, dst<sub>7</sub> ← 0) × cnt

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, cnt

**[Flag]**

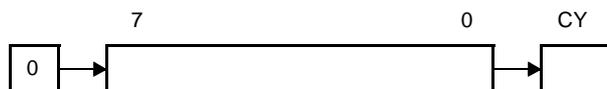
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand is shifted to the right the number of times specified by cnt.
- "0" is entered to the MSB (bit 7) and the value shifted last from bit 0 is entered to CY.
- cnt can be specified as any value from 1 to 7.



**[Description example]**

```
SHR    A, 3    ; (1)
```

(1) When the A register's value is F5H, A = 1EH and CY = 1.

A = F5H CY = 0

A = 7AH CY = 1 1 time

A = 3DH CY = 0 2 times

A = 1EH CY = 1 3 times

**SHRW**

Logical shift to the right

**[Instruction format]**

SHRW dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY ← dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>m-1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>, dst<sub>15</sub> ← 0) × cnt

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
AX, cnt

**[Flag]**

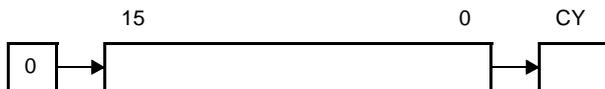
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand is shifted to the right the number of times specified by cnt.
- "0" is entered to the MSB (bit 15) and the value shifted last from bit 0 is entered to CY.
- cnt can be specified as any value from 1 to 15.



**[Description example]**

```
SHRW AX, 3 ; (1)
```

(1) When the AX register's value is AAF5H, AX = 155EH and CY = 1.

- AX = AAF5H CY = 0
- AX = 557AH CY = 1 1 time
- AX = 2ABDH CY = 0 2 times
- AX = 155EH CY = 1 3 times

**SHL**

Logical shift to the left

**[Instruction format]**

SHL dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY <- dst7, dstm <- dstm-1, dst0 <- 0) x cnt

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, cnt
B, cnt
C, cnt

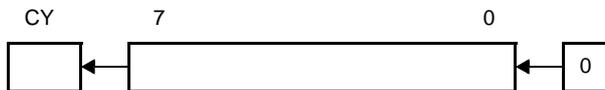
**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged  
 x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand is shifted to the left the number of times specified by cnt.
- "0" is entered to the LSB (bit 0) and the value shifted last from bit 7 is entered to CY.
- cnt can be specified as any value from 1 to 7.



**[Description example]**

SHL A, 3 ; (1)

(1) When the A register's value is 5DH, A = E8H and CY = 0.

- A = 5DH CY = 0
- A = BAH CY = 0 1 time
- A = 74H CY = 1 2 times
- A = E8H CY = 0 3 times

**SHLW**

Logical shift to the left

**[Instruction format]**

SHLW dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY ← dst<sub>15</sub>, dst<sub>m</sub> ← dst<sub>m-1</sub>, dst<sub>0</sub> ← 0) × cnt

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
AX, cnt
BC, cnt

**[Flag]**

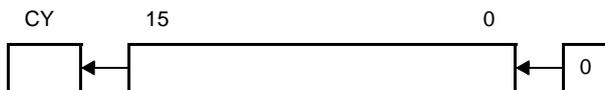
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand is shifted to the left the number of times specified by cnt.
- "0" is entered to the LSB (bit 0) and the value shifted last from bit 15 is entered to CY.
- cnt can be specified as any value from 1 to 15.



**[Description example]**

```
SHLW BC, 3 ; (1)
```

(1) When the BC register's value is C35DH, BC = 1AE8H and CY = 0.

- BC = C35DH CY = 0
- BC = 86BAH CY = 1 1 time
- BC = 0D74H CY = 1 2 times
- BC = 1AE8H CY = 0 3 times

**SAR**

Arithmetic shift to the right

**[Instruction format]**

SAR dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY ← dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>m-1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>, dst<sub>7</sub> ← dst<sub>7</sub>) x cnt

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, cnt

**[Flag]**

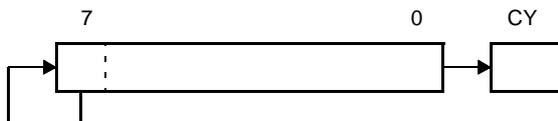
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand is shifted to the right the number of times specified by cnt.
- The same value is retained in the MSB (bit 7), and the value shifted last from bit 0 is entered to CY.
- cnt can be specified as any value from 1 to 7.



**[Description example]**

```
SAR    A, 4    ; (1)
```

(1) When the A register's value is 8CH, A = F8H and CY = 1.

- A = 8CH CY = 0
- A = C6H CY = 0 1 time
- A = E3H CY = 0 2 times
- A = F1H CY = 1 3 times
- A = F8H CY = 1 4 times

**SARW**

Arithmetic shift to the right

**[Instruction format]**

SARW dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY <- dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>m-1</sub> <- dst<sub>m</sub>, dst<sub>15</sub> <- dst<sub>15</sub>) x cnt

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
AX, cnt

**[Flag]**

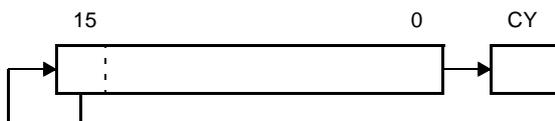
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) specified by the first operand is shifted to the right the number of times specified by cnt.
- The same value is retained in the MSB (bit 15), and the value shifted last from bit 0 is entered to CY.
- cnt can be specified as any value from 1 to 15.



**[Description example]**

```
SAR    AX, 4 ; (1)
```

(1) When the AX register's value is A28CH, AX = FA28H and CY = 1.

- AX = A28CH CY = 0
- AX = D146H CY = 0 1 time
- AX = E8A3H CY = 0 2 times
- AX = F451H CY = 1 3 times
- AX = FA28H CY = 1 4 times

**(8) Rotate instructions**

The following rotation instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
ROR	Byte data rotation to the right
ROL	Byte data rotation to the left
RORC	Byte data rotation to the right with carry
ROLC	Byte data rotation to the left with carry
ROLWC	Word data rotation to the left with carry

**ROR**

Byte data rotation to the right

**[Instruction format]**

ROR dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY, dst<sub>7</sub> <- dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>m-1</sub> <- dst<sub>m</sub>) x one time

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, 1

**[Flag]**

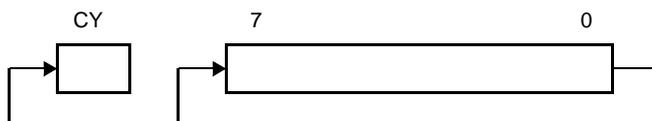
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified by the 1st operand are rotated to the right just once.
- The LSB (bit 0) contents are simultaneously rotated to the MSB (bit 7) and transferred to the CY flag.



**[Description example]**

```
ROR    A, 1    ; (1)
```

(1) The A register contents are rotated to the right by one bit.

**ROL**

Byte data rotation to the left

**[Instruction format]**

ROL dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY, dst<sub>0</sub> <- dst<sub>7</sub>, dst<sub>m+1</sub> <- dst<sub>m</sub>) x one time

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, 1

**[Flag]**

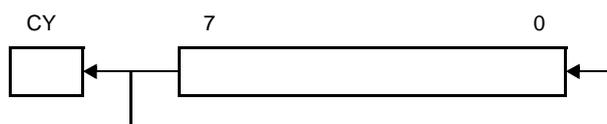
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified by the 1st operand are rotated to the left just once.
- The MSB (bit 7) contents are simultaneously rotated to the LSB (bit 0) and transferred to the CY flag.



**[Description example]**

```
ROL    A, 1    ; (1)
```

(1) The A register contents are rotated to the left by one bit.

**RORC**

Byte data rotation to the right with carry

**[Instruction format]**

RORC dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY <- dst<sub>0</sub>, dst<sub>7</sub> <- CY, dst<sub>m-1</sub> <- dst<sub>m</sub>) x one time

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, 1

**[Flag]**

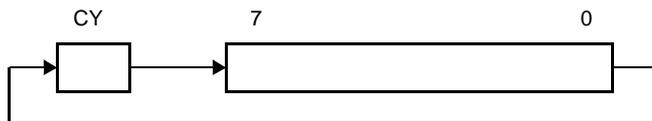
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified by the 1st operand are rotated just once to the right with carry.



**[Description example]**

```
RORC A, 1 ; (1)
```

(1) The A register contents are rotated to the right by one bit including the CY flag.

**ROLC**

Byte data rotation to the left with carry

**[Instruction format]**

ROLC dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY ← dst<sub>7</sub>, dst<sub>0</sub> ← CY, dst<sub>m+1</sub> ← dst<sub>m</sub>) x one time

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
A, 1

**[Flag]**

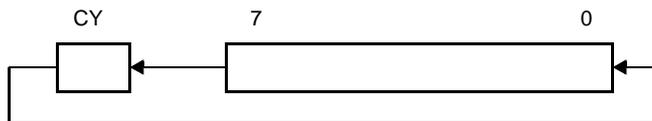
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified by the 1st operand are rotated just once to the left with carry.



**[Description example]**

```
ROLC A, 1 ; (1)
```

(1) The A register contents are rotated to the left by one bit including the CY flag.

**ROLWC**

Word data rotation to the left with carry

**[Instruction format]**

ROLWC dst, cnt

**[Operation]**

(CY <- dst<sub>15</sub>, dst<sub>0</sub> <- CY, dst<sub>m+1</sub> <- dst<sub>m</sub>) x one time

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, cnt)
AX, 1
BC, 1

**[Flag]**

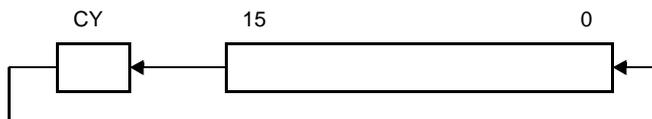
Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) contents specified by the 1st operand are rotated just once to the left with carry.



**[Description example]**

```
ROLWC BC, 1 ; (1)
```

(1) The BC register contents are rotated to the left by one bit including the CY flag.

**(9) Bit manipulation instructions**

The following bit manipulation instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">MOV1</a>	1-bit data transfer
<a href="#">AND1</a>	1-bit data AND operation
<a href="#">OR1</a>	1-bit data OR operation
<a href="#">XOR1</a>	1-bit data exclusive OR operation
<a href="#">SET1</a>	1-bit data set
<a href="#">CLR1</a>	1-bit data clear
<a href="#">NOT1</a>	1-bit data logical negation

**MOV1**

1-bit data transfer

**[Instruction format]**

MOV1 dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
CY, saddr.bit
CY, sfr.bit
CY, A.bit
CY, PSW.bit
CY, [HL].bit
saddr.bit, CY
sfr.bit, CY
A.bit, CY
PSW.bit, CY
[HL].bit, CY
CY, ES:[HL].bit
ES:[HL].bit, CY

**[Flag]**

**(1) dst = CY**

Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**(2) dst = PSW.bit**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**(3) All other operand combinations**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- Bit data of the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is transferred to the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.
- When the destination operand (dst) is CY or PSW.bit, only the corresponding flag is changed.

**[Description example]**

```
MOV1    P3.4, CY    ; (1)
```

- (1) The CY flag contents are transferred to bit 4 of port 3.**

**AND1**

1-bit data AND operation

**[Instruction format]**

AND1 dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst ^ src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
CY, saddr.bit
CY, sfr.bit
CY, A.bit
CY, PSW.bit
CY, [HL].bit
CY, ES:[HL].bit

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- Logical product of bit data of the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is obtained and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- The operation result is stored in the CY flag (because of the destination operand (dst) ).

**[Description example]**

```
AND1 CY, FFE7FH.3 ; (1)
```

(1) Logical product of FFE7FH bit 3 and the CY flag is obtained and the result is stored in the CY flag.

**OR1**

1-bit data OR operation

**[Instruction format]**

OR1 dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst v src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
CY, saddr.bit
CY, sfr.bit
CY, A.bit
CY, PSW.bit
CY, [HL].bit
CY, ES:[HL].bit

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The logical sum of bit data of the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is obtained and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- The operation result is stored in the CY flag (because of the destination operand (dst) ).

**[Description example]**

```
OR1    CY, P2.5    ; (1)
```

(1) The logical sum of port 2 bit 5 and the CY flag is obtained and the result is stored in the CY flag.

**XOR1**

1-bit data exclusive OR operation

**[Instruction format]**

XOR1 dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- dst ∨ src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
CY, saddr.bit
CY, sfr.bit
CY, A.bit
CY, PSW.bit
CY, [HL].bit
CY, ES:[HL].bit

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The exclusive logical sum of bit data of the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand and the source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is obtained and the result is stored in the destination operand (dst).
- The operation result is stored in the CY flag (because of the destination operand (dst) ).

**[Description example]**

```
XOR1 CY, A.7 ; (1)
```

- (1) The exclusive logical sum of the A register bit 7 and the CY flag is obtained and the result is stored in the CY flag.

**SET1**

1-bit data set

**[Instruction format]**

SET1 dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
saddr.bit
sfr.bit
A.bit
!addr16.bit
PSW.bit
[HL].bit
ES:!addr16.bit
ES:[HL].bit
CY

**[Flag]**

**(1) dst = PSW.bit**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**(2) dst = CY**

Z	AC	CY
		1

Blank : Unchanged

1 : Set to 1

**(3) All other operand combinations**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) is set (1).
- When the destination operand (dst) is CY or PSW.bit, only the corresponding flag is set (1).

**[Description example]**

```
SET1    FFE55H.1    ; (1)
```

**(1) Bit 1 of FFE55H is set (1).**

**CLR1**

1-bit data clear

**[Instruction format]**

CLR1 dst

**[Operation]**

dst <- 0

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
saddr.bit
sfr.bit
A.bit
!addr16.bit
PSW.bit
[HL].bit
ES:!addr16.bit
ES:[HL].bit
CY

**[Flag]**

**(1) dst = PSW.bit**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**(2) dst = CY**

Z	AC	CY
		0

Blank : Unchanged

0 : Cleared to 0

**(3) All other operand combinations**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The destination operand (dst) is cleared (0).
- When the destination operand (dst) is CY or PSW.bit, only the corresponding flag is cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
CLR1    P3.7        ; (1)
```

**(1) Bit 7 of port 3 is cleared (0).**

**NOT1**

1-bit data logical negation

**[Instruction format]**

NOT1 dst

**[Operation]**

dst <-  $\overline{\text{dst}}$

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
CY

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
		x

Blank : Unchanged

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**[Description]**

- The CY flag is inverted.

**[Description example]**

```
NOT1    CY    ; (1)
```

(1) The CY flag is inverted.

**(10) Call return instructions**

The following call return instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
CALL	Subroutine call
CALLT	Subroutine call (call table reference)
BRK	Software vector interrupt
RET	Return from subroutine
RETI	Return from hardware vector interrupt
RETB	Return from software interrupt

**CALL**

Subroutine call

**[Instruction format]**

CALL target

**[Operation]**

(SP - 2) <- (PC + n)<sub>s</sub>,  
 (SP - 3) <- (PC + n)<sub>H</sub>,  
 (SP - 4) <- (PC + n)<sub>L</sub>,  
 SP <- SP - 4,  
 PC <- target

**Remark** n is 4 when using !!addr20, 3 when using !addr16 or \$!addr20, and 2 when using AX, BC, DE, or HL.

**[Operand]**

Operand (target)
AX
BC
DE
HL
\$!addr20
!addr16
!!addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This is a subroutine call with a 20/16-bit absolute address or a register indirect address.
- The start address (PC+n) of the next instruction is saved in the stack and is branched to the address specified by the target operand (target).

**[Description example]**

```
CALL    !!3E000H    ; (1)
```

(1) Subroutine call to 3E000H.

**CALLT**

Subroutine call (call table reference)

**[Instruction format]**

CALLT [addr5]

**[Operation]**

(SP - 2) <- (PC + 2)<sub>s</sub>,  
 (SP - 3) <- (PC + 2)<sub>H</sub>,  
 (SP - 4) <- (PC + 2)<sub>L</sub>,  
 PC<sub>s</sub> <- 0000,  
 PC<sub>H</sub> <- (000000000000, addr5 + 1),  
 PC<sub>L</sub> <- (000000000000, addr5),  
 SP <- SP - 4

**[Operand]**

Operand ([addr5])
[addr5]

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This is a subroutine call for call table reference.
- The start address (PC+2) of the next instruction is saved in the stack and is branched to the address indicated with the word data of a call table (with the higher 12 bits of the address fixed to 000000000000B, and the lower 5 bits out of 8 bits indicated with addr5).

**[Description example]**

```
CALLT [80H] ; (1)
```

(1) Subroutine call to the word data addresses 00080H and 00081H.

**[Remark]**

- Only even-numbered addresses can be specified (odd-numbered addresses cannot be specified).  
 addr5: Immediate data or label from 00080H to 000BEH (even-numbered addresses only)

<b>BRK</b>
------------

Software vector interrupt

**[Instruction format]**

BRK

**[Operation]**

(SP - 1) <- PSW,  
 (SP - 2) <- (PC + 2)<sub>s</sub>,  
 (SP - 3) <- (PC + 2)<sub>H</sub>,  
 (SP - 4) <- (PC + 2)<sub>L</sub>,  
 PC<sub>s</sub> <- 0000,  
 PC<sub>H</sub> <- (0007FH),  
 PC<sub>L</sub> <- (0007EH),  
 SP <- SP - 4,  
 IE <- 0

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This is a software interrupt instruction.
- PSW and the next instruction address (PC+2) are saved to the stack. After that, the IE flag is cleared (0) and the saved data is branched to the address indicated with the word data at the vector address (0007EH, 0007FH). Because the IE flag is cleared (0), the subsequent maskable vectored interrupts are disabled.
- The RETB instruction is used to return from the software vectored interrupt generated with this instruction.

**RET**

Return from subroutine

**[Instruction format]**

RET

**[Operation]**

$PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$   
 $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1),$   
 $PC_S \leftarrow (SP + 2),$   
 $SP \leftarrow SP + 4,$

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This is a return instruction from the subroutine call made with the CALL and CALLT instructions.
- The word data saved to the stack returns to the PC, and the program returns from the subroutine.

**RETI**

Return from hardware vector interrupt

**[Instruction format]**

RETI

**[Operation]**

$PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$   
 $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1),$   
 $PC_S \leftarrow (SP + 2),$   
 $PSW \leftarrow (SP + 3),$   
 $SP \leftarrow SP + 4$

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
R	R	R

R : Previously saved value is restored

**[Description]**

- This is a return instruction from the vectored interrupt.
- The data saved to the stack returns to the PC and the PSW, and the program returns from the interrupt servicing routine.
- This instruction cannot be used for return from the software interrupt with the BRK instruction.
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next instruction to be executed.
- The NMIS flag is set to 1 by the non-maskable interrupt acceptance, and cleared to 0 by the RETI instruction.

**[Cautions]**

- Any interrupt (including non-maskable interrupts) is not accepted because the NMIS flag is not cleared to 0 when returning from the non-maskable interrupt processing by the instructions other than the RETI instruction.

**RETB**

Return from software interrupt

**[Instruction format]**

RETB

**[Operation]**

$PC_L \leftarrow (SP),$   
 $PC_H \leftarrow (SP + 1),$   
 $PC_S \leftarrow (SP + 2),$   
 $PSW \leftarrow (SP + 3),$   
 $SP \leftarrow SP + 4$

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY
R	R	R

R : Previously saved value is restored

**[Description]**

- This is a return instruction from the software interrupt generated with the BRK instruction.
- The data saved in the stack returns to the PC and the PSW, and the program returns from the interrupt servicing routine.
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next instruction to be executed.

**(11) Stack manipulation instructions**

The following stack manipulation instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
<a href="#">PUSH</a>	Push
<a href="#">POP</a>	Pop
<a href="#">MOVW</a>	Stack pointer and word data transfer
<a href="#">ADDW</a>	Stack pointer addition
<a href="#">SUBW</a>	Stack pointer subtraction

**PUSH**

Push

**[Instruction format]**

PUSH src

**[Operation]**

- (1) **src = rp**  
 (SP - 1) <- rpH,  
 (SP - 2) <- rpL,  
 SP <- SP - 2
  
- (2) **src = PSW**  
 (SP - 1) <- PSW,  
 (SP - 2) <- 00H,  
 SP <- SP - 2

**[Operand]**

Operand (src)
PSW
rp

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The data of the register specified by the source operand (src) is saved to the stack.

**[Description example]**

```
PUSH    AX                ; (1)
```

(1) **AX register contents are saved to the stack.**

**POP**

Pop

**[Instruction format]**

POP dst

**[Operation]**

**(1) dst = rp**

rpL <- (SP),  
 rpH <- (SP + 1),  
 SP <- SP + 2

**(2) dst = PSW**

PSW <- (SP + 1),  
 SP <- SP + 2

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst)
PSW
rp

**[Flag]**

**(1) dst = rp**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**(2) dst = PSW**

Z	AC	CY
R	R	R

R : Previously saved value is restored

**[Description]**

- Data is returned from the stack to the register specified by the destination operand (dst).
- When the operand is PSW, each flag is replaced with stack data.
- None of interrupts are acknowledged between the POP PSW instruction and the subsequent instruction.

**[Description example]**

POP	AX	;	(1)
-----	----	---	-----

(1) The stack data is returned to the AX register.

**MOVW**

Stack pointer and word data transfer

**[Instruction format]**

MOVW dst, src

**[Operation]**

dst <- src

**[Operand]**

Operand (dst, src)
SP, #word
SP, AX
AX, SP
HL, SP
BC, SP
DE, SP

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This is an instruction to manipulate the stack pointer contents.
- The source operand (src) specified by the 2nd operand is stored in the destination operand (dst) specified by the 1st operand.

**[Description example]**

```
MOVW    SP, #FE1FH          ; (1)
```

(1) FE1FH is stored in the stack pointer.

**ADDW**

Stack pointer addition

**[Instruction format]**

ADDW SP, src

**[Operation]**

SP <- SP + src

**[Operand]**

Operand (SP, src)
SP, #byte

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The stack pointer specified by the first operand and the source operand (src) specified by the second operand are added and the result is stored in the stack pointer.

**[Description example]**

```
ADDW    SP, #12H    ; (1)
```

(1) Stack pointer and 12H are added, and the result is stored in the stack pointer.

**SUBW**

Stack pointer subtraction

**[Instruction format]**

SUBW SP, src

**[Operation]**

SP <- SP - src

**[Operand]**

Operand (SP, src)
SP, #byte

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- Source operand (src) specified by the second operand is subtracted from the stack pointer specified by the first operand, and the result is stored in the stack pointer.

**[Description example]**

```
SUBW    SP, #12H    ; (1)
```

(1) 12H is subtracted from the stack pointer, and the result is stored in the stack pointer.

**(12) Unconditional branch instruction**

The following unconditional branch instructions are available

Instruction	Overview
BR	Unconditional branch

**BR**

Unconditional branch

**[Instruction format]**

BR target

**[Operation]**

PC <- target

**[Operand]**

Operand (target)
AX
\$addr20
\$!addr20
!addr16
!!addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This is an instruction to branch unconditionally.
- The word data of the target address operand (target) is transferred to PC and branched.

**[Description example]**

```
BR    !!12345H    ; (1)
```

(1) Branch to address 12345H.

**(13) Conditional branch instructions**

The following conditional branch instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
BC	Conditional branch with carry flag (CY = 1)
BNC	Conditional branch with carry flag (CY = 0)
BZ	Conditional branch with zero flag (Z = 1)
BNZ	Conditional branch with zero flag (Z = 0)
BH	Conditional branch by numerical size ( (Z v CY) = 0)
BNH	Conditional branch by numerical size ((Z v CY) = 1)
BT	Conditional branch by bit test (byte data bit = 1)
BF	Conditional branch by bit test (byte data bit = 0)
BTCLR	Conditional branch and clear by bit test (byte data bit = 1)

**BC**

Conditional branch with carry flag (CY = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

BC \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + 2 + jdisp8 if CY = 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (\$addr20)
\$addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When CY = 1, data is branched to the address specified by the operand.
- When CY = 0, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
BC    $00300H    ; (1)
```

(1) When CY = 1, data is branched to 00300H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 0027FH to 0037EH).

**BNC**

Conditional branch with carry flag (CY = 0)

**[Instruction format]**

BNC \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + 2 + jdisp8 if CY = 0

**[Operand]**

Operand (\$addr20)
\$addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When CY = 0, data is branched to the address specified by the operand.
- When CY = 1, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
BNC    $00300H    ; (1)
```

(1) When CY = 0, data is branched to 00300H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 0027FH to 0037EH).

**BZ**

Conditional branch with zero flag (Z = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

BZ \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + 2 + jdisp8 if Z = 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (\$addr20)
\$addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When Z = 1, data is branched to the address specified by the operand.
- When Z = 0, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
DEC B
BZ    $003C5H    ; (1)
```

(1) When the B register is 0, data is branched to 003C5H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 00344H to 00443H).

**BNZ**

Conditional branch with zero flag (Z = 0)

**[Instruction format]**

BNZ \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + 2 + jdisp8 if Z = 0

**[Operand]**

Operand (\$addr20)
\$addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When Z = 0, data is branched to the address specified by the operand.
- When Z = 1, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

CMP	A,	#55H			
BNZ	\$00A39H		;	(1)	

(1) If the A register is not 55H, data is branched to 00A39H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 009B8H to 00AB7H).

**BH**

Conditional branch by numerical size (  $Z \vee CY = 0$  )

**[Instruction format]**

BH \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + 3 + jdisp8 if  $(Z \vee CY) = 0$

**[Operand]**

Operand (\$addr20)
\$addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When  $(Z \vee CY) = 0$ , data is branched to the address specified by the operand.  
When  $(Z \vee CY) = 1$ , no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.
- This instruction is used to judge which of the unsigned data values is higher. It is detected whether the first operand is higher than the second operand in the CMP instruction immediately before this instruction.

**[Description example]**

CMP	A, C	
BH	\$00356H	; (1)

**(1) Branch to address 00356H when the A register contents are greater than the C register contents (start of the BH instruction, however, is in addresses 002D4H to 003D3H).**

**BNH**

Conditional branch by numerical size ((Z v CY) = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

BNH \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + 3 + jdisp8 if (Z v CY) = 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (\$addr20)
\$addr20

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When (Z v CY) = 1, data is branched to the address specified by the operand.  
When (Z v CY) = 0, no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.
- This instruction is used to judge which of the unsigned data values is higher. It is detected whether the first operand is not higher than the second operand (the first operand is equal to or lower than the second operand) in the CMP instruction immediately before this instruction.

**[Description example]**

CMP     A, C
BNH     \$00356H     ; (1)

**(1) Branch to address 00356H when the A register contents are equal to or lower than the C register contents (start of the BNH instruction, however, is in addresses 002D4H to 003D3H).**

**BT**

Conditional branch by bit test (byte data bit = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

BT bit, \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + b + jdisp8 if bit = 1

**[Operand]**

Operand (bit, \$addr20)	b (Number of Bytes)
saddr.bit, \$addr20	4
sfr.bit, \$addr20	4
A.bit, \$addr20	3
PSW.bit, \$addr20	4
[HL].bit, \$addr20	3
ES:[HL].bit, \$addr20	4

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have been set (1), data is branched to the address specified by the 2nd operand (\$addr20).
- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have not been set (1), no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
BT    FFE47H.3, $0055CH ; (1)
```

(1) When bit 3 at address FFE47H is 1, data is branched to 0055CH (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 004DAH to 005D9H).

**BF**

Conditional branch by bit test (byte data bit = 0)

**[Instruction format]**

BF bit, \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + b + jdisp8 if bit = 0

**[Operand]**

Operand (bit, \$addr20)	b (Number of Bytes)
saddr.bit, \$addr20	4
sfr.bit, \$addr20	4
A.bit, \$addr20	3
PSW.bit, \$addr20	4
[HL].bit, \$addr20	3
ES:[HL].bit, \$addr20	4

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have been cleared (0), data is branched to the address specified by the 2nd operand (\$addr20).
- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have not been cleared (0), no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

BF P2.2, \$01549H ; (1)

- (1) When bit 2 of port 2 is 0, data is branched to address 01549H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 014C6H to 015C5H).

**BTCLR**

Conditional branch and clear by bit test (byte date bit = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

BTCLR bit, \$addr20

**[Operation]**

PC <- PC + b + jdisp8 if bit = 1, then bit <- 0

**[Operand]**

Operand (bit, \$addr20)	b (Number of Bytes)
saddr.bit, \$addr20	4
sfr.bit, \$addr20	4
A.bit, \$addr20	3
PSW.bit, \$addr20	4
[HL].bit, \$addr20	3
ES:[HL].bit, \$addr20	4

**[Flag]**

**(1) bit = PSW.bit**

Z	AC	CY
x	x	x

x : Set or cleared according to the result

**(2) All other operand combinations**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have been set (1), they are cleared (0) and branched to the address specified by the 2nd operand.
- If the 1st operand (bit) contents have not been set (1), no processing is carried out and the subsequent instruction is executed.
- When the 1st operand (bit) is PSW.bit, the corresponding flag contents are cleared (0).

**[Description example]**

```
BTCLR PSW.0, $00356H ; (1)
```

- (1) When bit 0 (CY flag) of PSW is 1, the CY flag is cleared to 0 and branched to address 00356H (with the start of this instruction set in the range of addresses 002D4H to 003D3H).

**(14) Conditional skip instructions**

The following conditional skip instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
SKC	Skip with carry flag (CY = 1)
SKNC	Skip with carry flag (CY = 0)
SKZ	Skip with zero flag (Z = 1)
SKNZ	Skip with zero flag (Z = 0)
SKH	Skip by numerical size ( (Z v CY) = 0)
SKNH	Skip by numerical size ( (Z v CY) = 1)

**SKC**

Skip with carry flag (CY = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

SKC

**[Operation]**

Next instruction skip if CY = 1

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When CY = 1, the next instruction is skipped. The subsequent instruction is a NOP and one clock of execution time is consumed. However, if the next instruction is a PREFIX instruction (indicated by "ES:"), two clocks of execution time are consumed.
- When CY = 0, the next instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
MOV    A, #55H
SKC
ADD    A, #55H    ; (1)
```

(1) The A register's value = AAH when CY = 0, and 55H when CY = 1.

**SKNC**

Skip with carry flag (CY = 0)

**[Instruction format]**

SKNC

**[Operation]**

Next instruction skip if CY = 0

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When CY = 0, the next instruction is skipped. The subsequent instruction is a NOP and one clock of execution time is consumed. However, if the next instruction is a PREFIX instruction (indicated by "ES:"), two clocks of execution time are consumed.
- When CY = 1, the next instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
MOV    A, #55H
SKNC
ADD    A, #55H    ; (1)
```

(1) The A register's value = AAH when CY = 1, and 55H when CY = 0.

**SKZ**

Skip with zero flag (Z = 1)

**[Instruction format]**

SKZ

**[Operation]**

Next instruction skip if Z = 1

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When Z = 1, the next instruction is skipped. The subsequent instruction is a NOP and one clock of execution time is consumed. However, if the next instruction is a PREFIX instruction (indicated by "ES:"), two clocks of execution time are consumed.
- When Z = 0, the next instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
MOV    A, #55H
SKZ
ADD    A, #55H    ; (1)
```

(1) The A register's value = AAH when Z = 0, and 55H when Z = 1.

**SKNZ**

Skip with zero flag (Z = 0)

**[Instruction format]**

SKNZ

**[Operation]**

Next instruction skip if Z = 0

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When Z = 0, the next instruction is skipped. The subsequent instruction is a NOP and one clock of execution time is consumed. However, if the next instruction is a PREFIX instruction (indicated by "ES:"), two clocks of execution time are consumed.
- When Z = 1, the next instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
MOV    A, #55H
SKNZ
ADD    A, #55H    ; (1)
```

(1) The A register's value = AAH when Z = 1, and 55H when Z = 0.

**SKH**

Skip by numerical size ( Z v CY) = 0)

**[Instruction format]**

SKH

**[Operation]**

Next instruction skip if (Z v CY) = 0

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When (Z v CY) = 0, the next instruction is skipped. The subsequent instruction is a NOP and one clock of execution time is consumed. However, if the next instruction is a PREFIX instruction (indicated by "ES:"), two clocks of execution time are consumed.
- When (Z v CY) = 1, the next instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
CMP    A, #80H
SKH
CALL   !!TARGET    ; (1)
```

**(1) When the A register contents are higher than 80H, the CALL instruction is skipped and the next instruction is executed. When the A register contents are 80H or lower, the next CALL instruction is executed and execution is branched to the target address.**

**SKNH**

Skip by numerical size ( Z v CY ) =1

**[Instruction format]**

SKNH

**[Operation]**

Next instruction skip if (Z v CY) = 1

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- When (Z v CY) = 1, the next instruction is skipped. The subsequent instruction is a NOP and one clock of execution time is consumed. However, if the next instruction is a PREFIX instruction (indicated by ES:), two clocks of execution time are consumed.
- When (Z v CY) = 0, the next instruction is executed.

**[Description example]**

```
CMP    A, #80H
SKNH
CALL   !!TARGET    ; (1)
```

**(1) When the A register contents are 80H or lower, the CALL instruction is skipped and the next instruction is executed. When the A register contents are higher than 80H, the next CALL instruction is executed and execution is branched to the target address.**

**(15) CPU control instructions**

The following CPU control instructions are available.

Instruction	Overview
SEL	Register bank selection
NOP	No operation
EI	Interrupt enabled
DI	Interrupt disabled
HALT	Halt mode set
STOP	Stop mode set

**SEL**

Register bank selection

**[Instruction format]**

SEL RBn

**[Operation]**

RBS0, RBS1 <- n ; (n = 0 to 3)

**[Operand]**

Operand (RBn)
RBn

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The register bank specified by the operand (RBn) is made a register bank for use by the next and subsequent instructions.
- RBn ranges from RB0 to RB3.

**[Description example]**

```
SEL    RB2    ;    (1)
```

(1) Register bank 2 is selected as the register bank for use by the next and subsequent instructions.

**NOP**

No operation

**[Instruction format]**

NOP

**[Operation]**

no operation

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- Only the time is consumed without processing.

EI

Interrupt enabled

**[Instruction format]**

EI

**[Operation]**

IE <- 1

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- The maskable interrupt acknowledgeable status is set (by setting the interrupt enable flag (IE) to (1) ).
- No interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next instruction.
- If this instruction is executed, vectored interrupt acknowledgment from another source can be disabled. For details, see the description of interrupt functions in the user's manual for each product.

<b>DI</b>
-----------

Interrupt disabled

**[Instruction format]**

DI

**[Operation]**

IE <- 0

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- Maskable interrupt acknowledgment by vectored interrupt is disabled (with the interrupt enable flag (IE) cleared (0)).
- No interrupts are acknowledged between this instruction and the next instruction.
- For details of interrupt servicing, see the description of interrupt functions in the user's manual for each product.

**HALT**

Halt mode set

**[Instruction format]**

HALT

**[Operation]**

Set HALT Mode

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

- This instruction is used to set the HALT mode to stop the CPU operation clock. The total power consumption of the system can be decreased with intermittent operation by combining this mode with the normal operation mode.

**STOP**

Stop mode set

**[Instruction format]**

STOP

**[Operation]**

Set STOP Mode

**[Operand]**

None

**[Flag]**

Z	AC	CY

Blank : Unchanged

**[Description]**

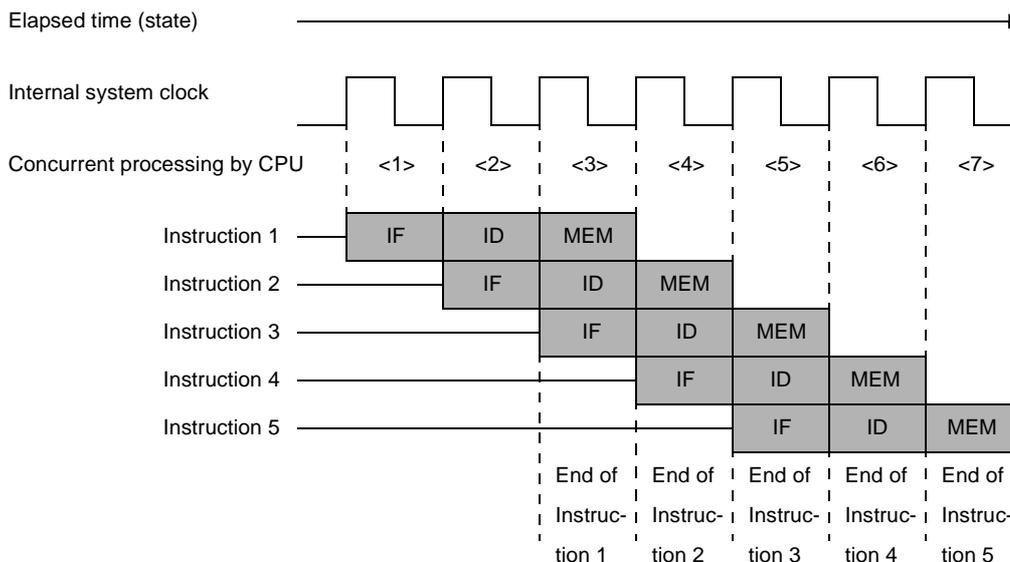
- This instruction is used to set the STOP mode to stop the main system clock oscillator and to stop the whole system. Power consumption can be minimized to only leakage current.

4.6.7 Pipeline

(1) Features

RL78 family, 78K0R microcontrollers use three-stage pipeline control to enable single-cycle execution of almost all instructions. Instructions are executed in three stages: instruction fetch (IF), instruction decode (ID), and memory access (MEM).

Figure 4-38. Pipeline Execution of Five Typical Instructions (Example)



IF (instruction fetch)	Instruction is fetched and fetch pointer is incremented.
ID (instruction decode)	Instruction is decoded and address is calculated.
MEM (memory access)	Decoded instruction is executed and memory at target address is accessed.

(2) Number of operation clocks

An inherent problem in some microcontroller pipeline architectures is that it is impossible to predict the number of clocks required for instruction execution. In the RL78 family, 78K0R microcontroller, this problem has been solved. Instructions always execute in the same number of clocks, allowing stable program execution.

Except in the cases listed below, the number of execution clocks is as shown in "(5) Operation list".

(a) Access to flash memory contents as data

When the contents of flash memory are accessed as data, the pipeline stalls at the MEM stage. This adds a certain number of clocks to the number shown in the operation list. For details, see "(5) Operation list".

(b) Access to external memory contents as data

A CPU wait occurs when the content of external memory is accessed as data. This adds a certain number of clocks to the number shown in the operation list.

The following table lists the number of increased clocks.

External Expansion Clock Output (CLKOUT) Selection Clocks	Wait Cycles
fCLK	3 clocks
fCLK/2	5 or 6 clocks

External Expansion Clock Output (CLKOUT) Selection Clocks	Wait Cycles
fCLK/3	7 to 9 clocks
fCLK/4	9 to 12 clocks

**(c) Instruction fetch from RAM**

When instructions are fetched from RAM, the instruction queue empties because reading from RAM is late. The CPU must wait until instructions are ready in the queue. The CPU also waits if RAM is accessed during instruction fetching from RAM.

**(d) Instruction fetch from external memory**

When instructions are fetched from external memory, the instruction queue empties because reading from external memory is late. The CPU must wait until instructions are ready in the queue. The CPU also waits if external memory is accessed during instruction fetching from external memory.

The following table lists the number of increased clocks

External Expansion Clock Output (CLKOUT) Selection Clocks	Wait Cycles
fCLK	3 clocks
fCLK/2	5 or 6 clocks
fCLK/3	7 to 9 clocks
fCLK/4	9 to 12 clocks

**(e) Hazards related to instruction combinations**

A 1-clock wait occurs when a register is used for indirect memory access immediately after data has been written to that register.

Register	Previous Instruction	Operand of Next Instruction, or Next Instruction
DE	Write instruction to D register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to E register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to DE register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	[DE], [DE+byte]
HL	Write instruction to H register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to L register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to HL register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	[HL], [HL+byte], [HL+B], [HL+C], [HL].bit
B	Write instruction to B register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	word[B], [HL+B]
C	Write instruction to C register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	word[C], [HL+C]
BC	Write instruction to B register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to C register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to BC register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	word[BC], [HL+B], [HL+C]

Register	Previous Instruction	Operand of Next Instruction, or Next Instruction
SP	MOVW SP, #word MOVW SP, AX ADDW SP, #byte SUBW SP, #byte	[SP+byte] CALL instruction, CALLT instruction, BRK instruction, SOFT instruction, RET instruction, RETI instruction, RETB instruction, interrupt, PUSH instruction, POP instruction
CS	MOV CS, #byte MOV CS, A	CALL rp BR AX
AX	Write instruction to A register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to X register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to AX register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	BR AX
AX BC DE HL	Write instruction to A register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to X register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to B register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to C register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to D register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to E register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to H register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to L register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to AX register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to BC register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to DE register <sup>Note</sup> Write instruction to HL register <sup>Note</sup> SEL RBn	CALL rp

**Note** Write instructions to register also require wait insertions when overwriting the target register values by direct addressing, short direct addressing, register indirect addressing, based addressing, or based indexed addressing.

## CHAPTER 5 LINK DIRECTIVE SPECIFICATIONS

This chapter explains the necessary items for link directives and how to write a directive file.

## 5.1 Coding Method

This section explains coding method of link directives.

### 5.1.1 Link directives

Link directives (referred to as directives from here on) are a group of commands for performing various directions during linking such as input files for the linker, useable memory areas, and segment location.

There are the following two kinds of directives.

Directive Type	Purpose
<a href="#">Memory directive</a>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Declares a installed memory address.</li> <li>- Divides memory into a number of areas and specifies the memory area.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CALLT area</li> <li>Internal ROM</li> <li>External ROM</li> <li>SADDR</li> <li>Internal RAM other than SADDR</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<a href="#">Segment location directive</a>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Specifies a segment location.</li> <li>- Specifies the following contents for each segment.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Absolute address</li> <li>Specify only the memory area</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Create a file (directive file) containing directives using a text editor and specify the -d option when starting the linker. The linker will read the directive file and perform link processing while it interprets the file.

#### (1) Directive file

The format for specifying directives in the directive file is shown next.

- Memory directive

```
MEMORY memory-area-name: (start-address-value, size) [/memory-space-name]
```

- Segment Allocation Directives

```
MERGE segment-name: [AT (start-address)] [=memory-area-name-specification] [/memory-space-name]
MERGE segment-name: [merge-attribute] [=memory-area-name-specification] [/memory-space-name]
```

In addition, multiple directives can be specified in a single directive file.

For details about each directive, see "[\(2\) Memory directive](#)" and "[\(3\) Segment location directive](#)".

#### (a) Symbols

There is a distinction between uppercase and lowercase in the segment name, memory area name, and memory space name.

**(b) Numerical values**

When specifying numerical constants for the items in each directive, they can be specified as decimal or hexadecimal numbers.

Specifying numbers is the same as in source code, for hexadecimal numbers attach an "H" to the end of the number. Also, when the first digit is A - F, add a "0" to the beginning of the number.

Examples are shown below.

```
23H, 0FC80H
```

**(c) Comments**

When ";" or "#" is specified in a directive file, the text from that character to the line feed (LF) is treated as a comment. In addition, if the directive file ends before a line feed appears, the text up to the end of the file is treated as a comment.

Examples are shown below.

The underlined portions are comments.

```
; DIRECTIVE FILE FOR 78F1166_A0  
MEMORY MEM1 : ( 40000H, 10000H ) #SECOND MEMORY AREA
```

**(2) Memory directive**

The memory directive is a directive to define a memory area (the address of memory to implement and its name). The defined memory area can be referenced by the segment location directive using this name (memory area name).

Up to 100 memory areas can be defined, including the memory area defined by default.

The syntax is shown below.

```
MEMORY memory-area-name : ( start-address , size ) [ / memory-space-name ]
```

**(a) Memory area name**

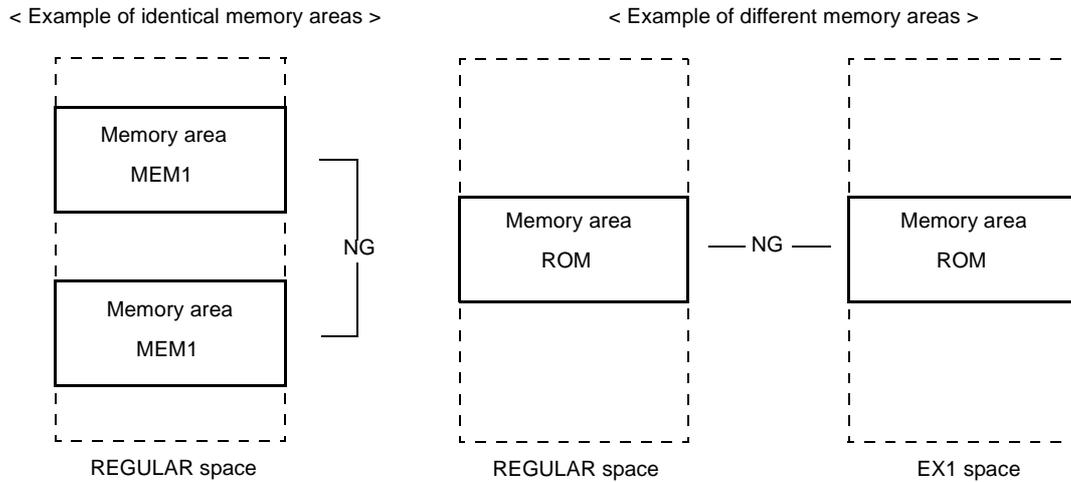
Specifies the name of the memory area to define.

Conditions when specifying are as follows.

- Characters that can be used in the memory area name are A - Z, a - z, 0 - 9, \_, ?, @.
- However, 0 - 9 cannot be used as the first character of the memory area name.
- Uppercase and lowercase characters are distinguished as separate characters.
- Uppercase and lowercase characters can be mixed together.
- The length of the memory area name is a maximum of 256 characters.
- 257characters or more will result in an error.
- There must be a only a single memory area name for each one throughout all memory spaces.

Attaching the same memory area name to differing memory areas, when the memory space is the same or when it is different, is not permitted.

Figure 5-1. Example of Memory Area Name that Cannot Be Specified

**(b) Start address**

Specifies the start address of the memory area to define.  
Write as a numerical constant between 0H - 0FFFFFFH.

**(c) Size**

Specifies the size of the memory area to define.  
Conditions when specifying are as follows.

- A numerical constant 1 or greater.
- When re-specifying the size of the memory area the linker defines by default, there is a restriction in the range that can be defined.

For the size of the memory area defined by default for each device and the range it can be redefined, see "Functions Supported by CubeSuite+".

**(d) Memory area name**

The memory space name is indicated by one of the following 16 names.

REGULAR, EX1, EX2, EX3, EX4, EX5, EX6, EX7, EX8, EX9, EX10, EX11, EX12, EX13, EX14, EX15

When assigning memory segments, memory space names are used to specify where the segment should be assigned.

Conditions when specifying are shown next.

- The memory space name is specified in all uppercase.
- When the memory space name is omitted, the linker will consider REGULAR to have been specified.
- If the memory space name is omitted after "/" is written, an error occurs.

The function is shown below.

- The memory area with the name specified by the memory area name is defined in the specified memory space.
- 1 memory area can be defined with 1 memory directive.
- There can be multiple memory directives themselves. When there multiple definitions in the specified order an error will result.
- The default memory area is valid so long as the same memory area is not redefined by a memory directive.  
When memory directives are omitted, the linker specifies only the default memory area for each device.

- When not using the default memory space and using it with a different area name, set the default area name's size to "0".

A usage example is shown below.

- Defines memory space address 0H to 1FFH as memory area ROMA.

```
MEMORY ROMA : ( 0H, 200H )
```

### (3) Segment location directive

The segment location directive is a directive which places a specified segment in a specified memory area or places it at specific address.

The syntax is shown below.

```
MERGE segment-name : [AT ( start-address )] [= memory-area-name] [ / memory-space-name]  
MERGE segment-name : [merge-attribute] [= memory-area-name] [ / memory-space-name]
```

#### (a) Segment name

The segment name contained in the object module file input to the linker.

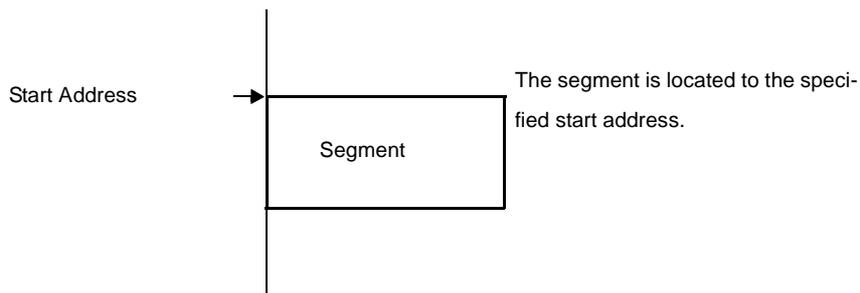
- A segment name other than the input segment cannot be specified.
- The segment name must be specified as specified in the assembler source.

#### (b) Start address

Allocates the segment at the area specified by the "start address".

- The reserved word AT must be specified in all uppercase or lowercase characters. It cannot mix uppercase and lowercase characters.
- The start address is specified as a numerical constant.

Figure 5-2. Specified Start Address and Segment Location



- Cautions 1.** When locating a segment according to the specified start address, if the range of the memory area where it is being located is exceeded, an error will result.
- 2.** The start address cannot be specified by a link directive for segments specified a location address by the segment directive AT assignment or the ORG directive.

**(c) Merge attribute**

When there are multiple segments with the same name in the source, specify in the directive "COMPLETE" to error without merging or "SEQUENT (default)" to merge.

SEQUENT	Merge sequentially in the order the segments appear so as to not leave free space. BSEG is merged in bit units in the order the segments appear.
COMPLETE	An error will occur if there are multiple segments with the same name.

Examples are shown below.

```
MERGE DSEG1 : COMPLETE = RAM
```

**(d) Memory area name**

The memory space name specifies a memory space to locate a segment.

- Memory name specifications are limited to the following 16 memory space names.  
REGULAR, EX1, EX2, EX3, EX4, EX5, EX6, EX7, EX8, EX9, EX10, EX11, EX12, EX13, EX14, EX15
- The memory space name is specified in all uppercase.
- When the memory space name is omitted, the linker will consider REGULAR to have been specified.

Segment location is shown next.

Memory Area	Memory Space	Segment Location
Not specified	Not specified	The memory area located in REGULAR space at the default
No specification	Memory space name	Any area in the specified memory space
Memory Area Name	Not specified	The specified memory area in REGULAR space
Memory area name	Memory space name	The specified memory area in the specified memory space

This table emphasizes declaring the memory area which will be the target for the segment location. In addition, if "AT(start address)" is specified when the actual location address is decided, the segment will be located from that address.

For example, for a segment with a relocation attribute of "CSEG FIXED", if memory name "EX1" is specified, the segment will be located so that it takes up position within C0H to FFFFH.

Notes are shown below.

- Input segments that are not specified with the segment location directive have their location address determined according to the relocation attribute specified with the segment definition directive during assembly.
- If a segment doesn't exist that is specified as a segment name, an error will result.
- If multiple segment location directives are specified for the same segment, an error will result.

## 5.2 Reserved Words

Reserved words for use in the directive file are shown next.

Reserved words in the directive file cannot be used for other purposes (segment names, memory area names, etc.).

Reserved Words	Explanation
MEMORY	Specifies the memory directives
MERGE	Specifies the segment location directive
AT	Specifies the location attribute (start address) of the segment location directive
SEQUENT	Specifies the merge attribute (merges a segment) of the segment location directive
COMPLETE	Specifies the merge attribute (does not merge a segment) of the segment location directive
WALIGN	Specifies the merge attribute (with alignment to 2-byte boundaries) of the segment location directive
LALIGN	Specifies the merge attribute (with alignment to 4-byte boundaries) of the segment location directive

**Caution** Reserved words can be specified in uppercase or lowercase. However, it cannot mix uppercase and lowercase characters.

**Example** MEMORY : Acceptable  
memory : Acceptable  
Memory : Not acceptable

## 5.3 Coding Examples

Link directive coding examples are shown next.

### 5.3.1 When specifying link directive

- An address is allocated for segment SEG1 with a segment type, relocation attribute of "CSEG UNIT".  
The declared memory area is as follows.

```
MEMORY ROM : ( 0000H, 1000H )
MEMORY MEM1 : ( 1000H, 2000H )
```

- When allocating input segment SEG1 to 500H inside area ROM (see the following diagram(1) ).

```
MERGE SEG1 : AT ( 500H )
```

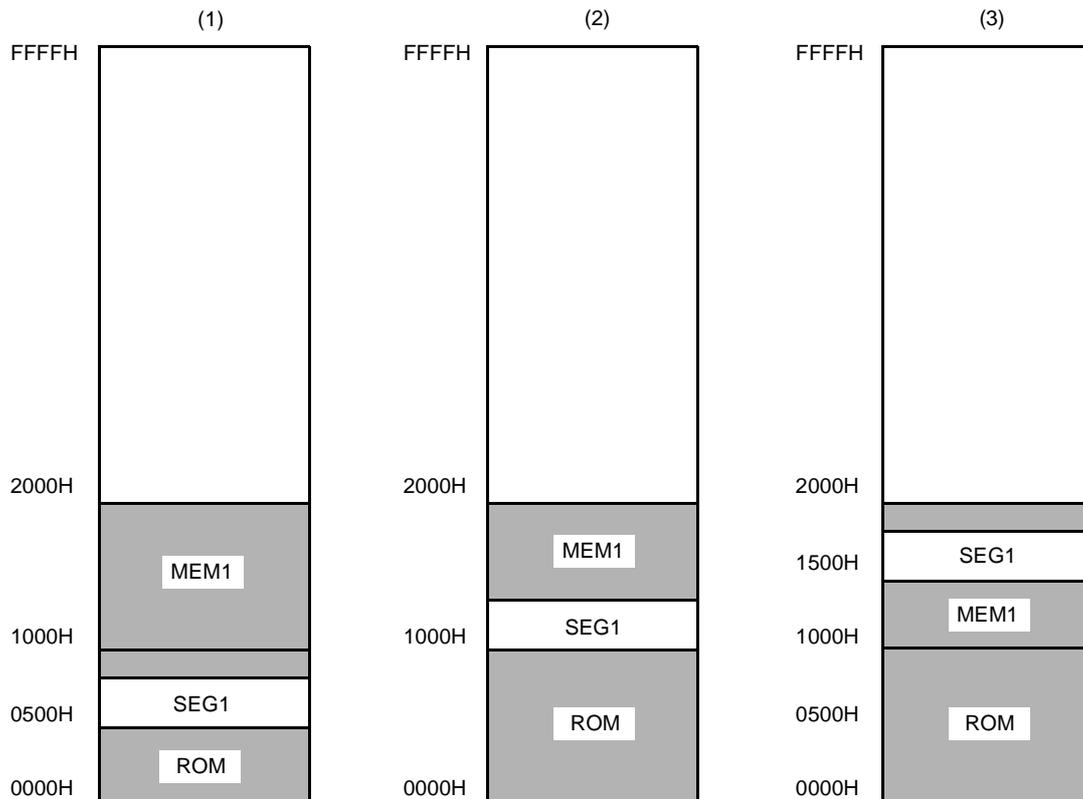
- When allocating input segment SEG1 inside memory area MEM1 (see the following diagram(2) ).

```
MERGE SEG1 : = MEM1
```

- When allocating input segment SEG1 to 1500H inside memory area MEM1 (see the following diagram(3)).

```
MERGE SEG1 : AT (1500H)=MEM178
```

Figure 5-3. Example Allocations of Input Segment SEG1



### 5.3.2 When using the compiler

This section explains how to create a link directive file when using the compiler. Create the file matched to the actual target system and specify the created file with the `-d` option when linking.

Additionally, be aware of the following cautions when creating the file.

- RL78,78K0R C compiler may use a portion of the short direct address area (saddr area) for specific purposes as shown next.

Specifically, the 44 byte area FFEB4H to FFEDFH.

- (a) When the `-qr` option is specified, register variables [FFEB4H to FFEC3H]
- (b) `norec` function arguments, automatic variables [FFEC4H to FFED3H]
- (c) Segment information [FFED4H to FFED7H]
- (d) Runtime library arguments [FFED8H to FFEDFH]
- (e) For standard library operation (a portion of areas (a) and (b))

**Caution** When the user is not using the standard library, area (e) is not used.

The following shows an example changing the RAM size with a link directive file (lk78k0r.dr).

When changing the memory size, be careful so that the memory does not overlap with other areas. When making changes, see the memory map of the target device to use.

	Start address	size	
memory RAM :	( 0fcf00H, 002f20H )		-> Make this size bigger.
memory SDR :	( 0ffe20H, 000098H )		(Also change the start address as necessary.)
merge @@INIS :	= SDR		-> Specifying the segment location.
merge @@DATS :	= SDR		-> Specifying the segment location.
merge @@BITS :	= SDR		-> Specifying the segment location.

When you want to change location of a segment, add the merge statement.. When the function to change the compiler output section name is used, segments can be located individually (for details see "[Changing compiler output section name \(#pragma section\)](#)").

The result of changing the segment location, when there is insufficient memory to locate the segment, change the corresponding memory statement.

## CHAPTER 6 FUNCTION SPECIFICATIONS

In the C language there are no commands to perform input/output with external (peripheral) devices or equipment. This is because the designers of the C language designed it to keep its functions to a minimum. However, input/output operations are necessary in the development of actual systems. For this reason, library functions for performing input/output operations have been prepared in RL78,78K0R C compiler.

This chapter explains the library functions that RL78,78K0R C compiler has and the functions that can be used with the simulator.

## 6.1 Distribution Libraries

The libraries distributed with RL78,78K0R C compiler are described below.

When using the standard library inside an application, include the relevant header files and use the library functions.

The runtime library is a portion of the standard library, but the routines are called by RL78,78K0R C compiler automatically, they are not functions described in C or assembly language source code.

**Table 6-1. Distribution Libraries**

Library Type	Included Functions
Standard library	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Character/String Functions</li> <li>- Program Control Functions</li> <li>- Special Functions</li> <li>- Input and Output Functions</li> <li>- Utility Functions</li> <li>- String and Memory Functions</li> <li>- Mathematical Functions</li> <li>- Diagnostic Function</li> </ul>
Runtime library	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Increment</li> <li>- Decrement</li> <li>- Sign reverse</li> <li>- 1's complement</li> <li>- Logical negation</li> <li>- Multiplication</li> <li>- Division</li> <li>- Remainder arithmetic</li> <li>- Addition</li> <li>- Subtraction</li> <li>- Left shift</li> <li>- Right shift</li> <li>- Compare</li> <li>- Bit AND</li> <li>- Bit OR</li> <li>- Bit XOR</li> <li>- Conversion from floating point number</li> <li>- Conversion to floating point number</li> <li>- Conversion from bit</li> <li>- Startup routine</li> <li>- Flash startup routine</li> <li>- Main for boot</li> </ul>

Library Type	Included Functions
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Flash vector table</li> <li>- Function pre- and post-processing</li> <li>- Initialization</li> <li>- BCD-type conversion</li> <li>- Auxiliary</li> </ul>

### 6.1.1 Standard library

This section shows the functions included in the standard library.

The standard library is fully supported when the -zf option is specified.

#### (1) Character/String Functions

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">isalpha</a>	Judges if a character is an alphabetic character (A to Z, a to z)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isupper</a>	Judges if a character is an uppercase alphabetic character (A to Z)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">islower</a>	Judges if a character is an lowercase alphabetic character (a to z)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isdigit</a>	Judges if a character is a numeric (0 to 9)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isalnum</a>	Judges if a character is an alphanumeric character (0 to 9, A to Z, a to z)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isxdigit</a>	Judges if a character is a hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, A to F, a to f)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isspace</a>	Judges if a character is a whitespace character (whitespace, tab, carriage return, line feed, vertical, tab, form feed)	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">ispunct</a>	Judges if a character is a printable character other than a whitespace character or alphanumeric character	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isprint</a>	Judges if a character is a printable character	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isgraph</a>	Judges if a character is a printable character other than whitespace	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">iscntrl</a>	Judges if a character is a control character	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">isascii</a>	Judges if a character is an ASCII code	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">toupper</a>	Converts a lowercase alphabetic character to uppercase	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">tolower</a>	Converts an uppercase alphabetic character to lowercase	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">toascii</a>	Converts the input to an ASCII code	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">_toupper</a>	Subtracts "a" from the input character and adds "A"	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">toup</a>		ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">_tolower</a>	Subtracts "A" from the input character and adds "a"	ctype.h	OK
<a href="#">tolow</a>		ctype.h	OK

OK : Re-entrant

**(2) Program Control Functions**

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">setjmp</a>	Saves the environment at the time of the call	setjmp.h	-
<a href="#">longjmp</a>	Restores the environment saved with setjmp	setjmp.h	-

- : Not re-entrant

**(3) Special Functions**

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">va_start</a>	Settings for processing variable arguments	stdarg.h	OK
<a href="#">va_starttop</a>	Settings for processing variable arguments	stdarg.h	OK
<a href="#">va_arg</a>	Processes variable arguments	stdarg.h	OK
<a href="#">va_end</a>	Indicates the end of processing variable arguments	stdarg.h	OK

OK : Re-entrant

**(4) Input and Output Functions**

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">sprintf</a>	Writes data to a string according to a format	stdio.h	Δ
<a href="#">sscanf</a>	Reads data from the input string according to a format	stdio.h	Δ
<a href="#">printf</a>	Outputs data to SFR according to a format	stdio.h	Δ
<a href="#">scanf</a>	Reads data from SFR according to a format	stdio.h	Δ
<a href="#">vprintf</a>	Outputs data to SFR according to a format	stdio.h	Δ
<a href="#">vsprintf</a>	Writes data to a string according to a format	stdio.h	Δ
<a href="#">getchar</a>	Reads one character from SFR	stdio.h	OK
<a href="#">gets</a>	Reads a string	stdio.h	OK
<a href="#">putchar</a>	Outputs one character to SFR	stdio.h	OK
<a href="#">puts</a>	Outputs a string	stdio.h	OK
<a href="#">__putc</a>	Outputs one character to opaque	stdio.h	OK

OK : Re-entrant

Δ : Functions that do not support floating point are re-entrant

## (5) Utility Functions

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">atoi</a>	Converts a decimal integer string to int	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">atol</a>	Converts a decimal integer string to long	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strtol</a>	Converts a string to long	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strtoul</a>	Converts a string to unsigned long	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">calloc</a>	Allocates an array's region and initializes it to zero	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">free</a>	Releases a block of allocated memory	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">malloc</a>	Allocates a block	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">realloc</a>	Re-allocates a block	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">abort</a>	Abnormally terminates the program	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">atexit</a>	Registers a function to be called at normal termination	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">exit</a>	Terminates the program	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">abs</a>	Obtains the absolute value of an int type value	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">labs</a>	Obtains the absolute value of a long type value	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">div</a>	Performs int type division, obtains the quotient and remainder	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">ldiv</a>	Performs long type division, obtains the quotient and remainder	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">brk</a>	Sets the break value	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">sbrk</a>	Increases/decreases the break value	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">atof</a>	Converts a decimal integer string to double	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">strtod</a>	Converts a string to double	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">itoa</a>	Converts int to a string	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">ltoa</a>	Converts long to a string	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">ultoa</a>	Converts unsigned long to a string	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">rand</a>	Generates a pseudo-random number	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">srand</a>	Initializes the pseudo-random number generator state	stdlib.h	-
<a href="#">bsearch</a>	Binary search	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">qsort</a>	Quick sort	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strbrk</a>	Sets the break value	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strsbrk</a>	Increases/decreases the break value	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strtoa</a>	Converts int to a string	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strltoa</a>	Converts long to a string	stdlib.h	OK
<a href="#">strultoa</a>	Converts unsigned long to a string	stdlib.h	OK

OK : Re-entrant

- : Not re-entrant

## (6) String and Memory Functions

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">memcpy</a>	Copies a buffer for the specified number of characters	string.h	OK
<a href="#">memmove</a>	Copies a buffer for the specified number of characters	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strcpy</a>	Copies a string	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strncpy</a>	Copies the specified number of characters from the start of a string	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strcat</a>	Appends a string to a string	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strncat</a>	Appends the specified number of characters of a string to a string	string.h	OK
<a href="#">memcmp</a>	Compares the specified number of characters of two buffers	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strcmp</a>	Compares two strings	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strncmp</a>	Compares the specified number of characters of two strings	string.h	OK
<a href="#">memchr</a>	Searches for the specified string in the specified number of characters of a buffer	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strchr</a>	Searches for the specified character from within a string and returns the location of the first occurrence	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strrchr</a>	Searches for the specified character from within a string and returns the location of the last occurrence	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strspn</a>	Obtains the length from the start of a segment composed of only the characters included in the specified string within the string being searched	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strcspn</a>	Obtains the length from the start of a segment composed of characters other than those included in the specified string within the string being searched	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strpbrk</a>	Obtains the position of the first occurrence of any character in the specified string within the string being searched	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strstr</a>	Obtains the position of the first occurrence of the specified string within the string being searched	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strtok</a>	Decomposing character string into a string consisting of characters other than delimiters.	string.h	-
<a href="#">memset</a>	Initializes the specified number of characters of a buffer with the specified character	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strerror</a>	Returns a pointer to the area that stores the error message string which corresponds to the specified error number	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strlen</a>	Obtains the length of a string	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strcoll</a>	Compares two strings based on region specific information	string.h	OK
<a href="#">strxfrm</a>	Transforms a string based on region specific information	string.h	OK

OK : Re-entrant

- : Not re-entrant

## (7) Mathematical Functions

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">acos</a>	Finds acos	math.h	-
<a href="#">asin</a>	Finds asin	math.h	-
<a href="#">atan</a>	Finds atan	math.h	-
<a href="#">atan2</a>	Finds atan2	math.h	-
<a href="#">cos</a>	Finds cos	math.h	-
<a href="#">sin</a>	Finds sin	math.h	-
<a href="#">tan</a>	Finds tan	math.h	-
<a href="#">cosh</a>	Finds cosh	math.h	-
<a href="#">sinh</a>	Finds sinh	math.h	-
<a href="#">tanh</a>	Finds tanh	math.h	-
<a href="#">exp</a>	Finds the exponential function	math.h	-
<a href="#">frexp</a>	Finds mantissa and exponent part	math.h	-
<a href="#">ldexp</a>	Finds $x * 2^{exp}$	math.h	-
<a href="#">log</a>	Finds the natural logarithm	math.h	-
<a href="#">log10</a>	Finds the base 10 logarithm	math.h	-
<a href="#">modf</a>	Finds the decimal and integer parts	math.h	-
<a href="#">pow</a>	Finds yth power of x	math.h	-
<a href="#">sqrt</a>	Finds the square root	math.h	-
<a href="#">ceil</a>	Finds the smallest integer not smaller than x	math.h	-
<a href="#">fabs</a>	Finds the absolute value of floating point number x	math.h	-
<a href="#">floor</a>	Finds the largest integer not larger than x	math.h	-
<a href="#">fmod</a>	Finds the remainder of x/y	math.h	-
<a href="#">matherr</a>	Obtains the exception processing for the library handling floating point numbers	math.h	-
<a href="#">acosf</a>	Finds acos	math.h	-
<a href="#">asinf</a>	Finds asin	math.h	-
<a href="#">atanf</a>	Finds atan	math.h	-
<a href="#">atan2f</a>	Finds atan of y/x	math.h	-
<a href="#">cosf</a>	Finds cos	math.h	-
<a href="#">sinf</a>	Finds sin	math.h	-
<a href="#">tanf</a>	Finds tan	math.h	-
<a href="#">coshf</a>	Finds cosh	math.h	-
<a href="#">sinhf</a>	Finds sinh	math.h	-
<a href="#">tanhf</a>	Finds tanh	math.h	-
<a href="#">expf</a>	Finds the exponential function	math.h	-
<a href="#">frexpf</a>	Finds mantissa and exponent part	math.h	-

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">ldexpf</a>	Finds $x * 2^{\text{exp}}$	math.h	-
<a href="#">logf</a>	Finds the natural logarithm	math.h	-
<a href="#">log10f</a>	Finds the base 10 logarithm	math.h	-
<a href="#">modff</a>	Finds the decimal and integer parts	math.h	-
<a href="#">powf</a>	Finds yth power of x	math.h	-
<a href="#">sqrtf</a>	Finds the square root	math.h	-
<a href="#">ceilf</a>	Finds the smallest integer not smaller than x	math.h	-
<a href="#">fabsf</a>	Finds the absolute value of floating point number x	math.h	-
<a href="#">floorf</a>	Finds the largest integer not larger than x	math.h	-
<a href="#">fmodf</a>	Finds the remainder of x/y	math.h	-

- : Not re-entrant

### (8) Diagnostic Function

Function Name	Purpose	Header File	Re-entrant
<a href="#">__assertfail</a>	Supports the assert macro	assert.h	OK

OK : Re-entrant

### 6.1.2 Runtime library

This section shows the functions included in the runtime library.

These operation instructions are called in a format with @@ attached to the beginning of the function name. However, cstart, cstarte, cprep, and cdisp are called in a format with @\_ attached to the beginning of the function name.

In addition, operations that do not appear in the tables below have no library support. The compiler performs inline expansion.

long addition/subtraction, and/or/xor, and shift may also undergo inline expansion.

#### (1) Increment

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">lsinc</a>	Increments signed long
<a href="#">luinc</a>	Increments unsigned long
<a href="#">finc</a>	Increments float
<a href="#">lsincr</a>	Increments signed long (for allocation to RAM)
<a href="#">luincr</a>	Increments unsigned long (for allocation to RAM)
<a href="#">fincr</a>	Increments float (for allocation to RAM)

#### (2) Decrement

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">lsdec</a>	Decrements signed long

Function Name	Purpose
luddec	Decrements unsigned long
fdec	Decrements float
lsdecr	Decrements signed long (for allocation to RAM)
ludcrr	Decrements unsigned long (for allocation to RAM)
fdecrr	Decrements float (for allocation to RAM)

**(3) Sign reverse**

Function Name	Purpose
lsrev	Reverses the sign of signed long
lurev	Reverses the sign of unsigned long
frev	Reverses the sign of float
lsrevr	Reverses the sign of signed long (for allocation to RAM)
lurevr	Reverses the sign of unsigned long (for allocation to RAM)
frevr	Reverses the sign of float (for allocation to RAM)

**(4) 1's complement**

Function Name	Purpose
lscmr	Obtains 1's complement of signed long
lucom	Obtains 1's complement of unsigned long
lscmr	Obtains 1's complement of signed long (for allocation to RAM)
lucomr	Obtains 1's complement of unsigned long (for allocation to RAM)

**(5) Logical negation**

Function Name	Purpose
lsnot	Negates signed long
lunot	Negates unsigned long

**(6) Multiplication**

Function Name	Purpose
csmul	Performs multiplication between signed char data
cumul	Performs multiplication between unsigned char data
ismul	Performs multiplication between signed int data
iumul	Performs multiplication between unsigned int data
lsmul	Performs multiplication between signed long data (MDUC register are handled as a zero)
lumul	Performs multiplication between unsigned long data (MDUC register are handled as a zero)
fmul	Performs multiplication between float data

Function Name	Purpose
iumulr	Performs multiplication between unsigned int data (for allocation to RAM)
lsmulr	Performs multiplication between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lumulr	Performs multiplication between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
fmulr	Performs multiplication between float data (for allocation to RAM)

**(7) Division**

Function Name	Purpose
csdiv	Performs division between signed char data
cudiv	Performs division between unsigned char data
isdiv	Performs division between signed int data
iudiv	Performs division between unsigned int data
lsdiv	Performs division between signed long data
ludiv	Performs division between unsigned long data
fdiv	Performs division between float data
csdivr	Performs division between signed char data (for allocation to RAM)
cudivr	Performs division between unsigned char data (for allocation to RAM)
isdivr	Performs division between signed int data (for allocation to RAM)
iudivr	Performs division between unsigned int data (for allocation to RAM)
lsdivr	Performs division between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
ludivr	Performs division between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
fdivr	Performs division between float data (for allocation to RAM)

**(8) Remainder arithmetic**

Function Name	Purpose
csrem	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed char data
curem	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned char data
isrem	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed int data
iurem	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned int data
lsrem	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed long data
lurem	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned long data
csremr	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed char data (for allocation to RAM)
curemr	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned char data (for allocation to RAM)
isremr	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed int data (for allocation to RAM)
iuremr	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned int data (for allocation to RAM)
lsremr	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
luremr	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)

**(9) Addition**

Function Name	Purpose
lsadd	Performs addition between signed long data
luadd	Performs addition between unsigned long data
fadd	Performs addition between float data
lsaddr	Performs addition between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
luaddr	Performs addition between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
faddr	Performs addition between float data (for allocation to RAM)

**(10) Subtraction**

Function Name	Purpose
lssub	Performs subtraction between signed long data
lusub	Performs subtraction between unsigned long data
fsub	Performs subtraction between float data
lssubr	Performs subtraction between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lusubr	Performs subtraction between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
fsubr	Performs subtraction between float data (for allocation to RAM)

**(11) Left shift**

Function Name	Purpose
lslsh	Performs left shift of signed long data
lulsh	Performs left shift of unsigned long data
lslshr	Performs left shift of signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lulshr	Performs left shift of unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)

**(12) Right shift**

Function Name	Purpose
lsrsh	Performs right shift of signed long data
lursh	Performs right shift of unsigned long data
lsrsh	Performs right shift of signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lursh	Performs right shift of unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)

**(13) Compare**

Function Name	Purpose
cscmp	Compares signed char data
iscmp	Compares signed int data
lscmp	Compares signed long data

Function Name	Purpose
lucmp	Compares unsigned long data
fcmp	Compares float data
cscmpr	Compares signed char data (for allocation to RAM)
iscmpr	Compares signed int data (for allocation to RAM)
lscmpr	Compares signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lucmpr	Compares unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
fcmpr	Compares float data (for allocation to RAM)

**(14) Bit AND**

Function Name	Purpose
lsband	Performs AND operation between signed long data
luband	Performs AND operation between unsigned long data
lsbandr	Performs AND operation between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lubandr	Performs AND operation between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)

**(15) Bit OR**

Function Name	Purpose
lsbor	Performs OR operation between signed long data
lubor	Performs OR operation between unsigned long data
lsborr	Performs OR operation between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
luborr	Performs OR operation between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)

**(16) Bit XOR**

Function Name	Purpose
lsbxor	Performs XOR operation between signed long data
lubxor	Performs XOR operation between unsigned long data
lsbxorr	Performs XOR operation between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
lubxorr	Performs XOR operation between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)

**(17) Conversion from floating point number**

Function Name	Purpose
ftols	Converts from float to signed long
ftolu	Converts from float to unsigned long
ftolsr	Converts from float to signed long (for allocation to RAM)
ftolur	Converts from float to unsigned long (for allocation to RAM)

**(18) Conversion to floating point number**

Function Name	Purpose
Istof	Converts from signed long to float
Istof	Converts from unsigned long to float
Istofr	Converts from signed long to float (for allocation to RAM)
Istofr	Converts from unsigned long to float (for allocation to RAM)

**(19) Conversion from bit**

Function Name	Purpose
btol	Converts a bit to long
btolr	Converts a bit to long (for allocation to RAM)

**(20) Startup routine**

Function Name	Purpose
cstart	<p>Startup routine</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Acquires the area (4 * 32 bytes) to register functions with the atexit function and makes the beginning label name <code>_@FNCTBL</code></li> <li>- Acquires the break area (32 bytes) and makes the beginning label name <code>_@MEMTOP</code> and the area's next address label name <code>_@MEMBTM</code></li> <li>- Defines the reset vector table's segment in the following manner and specifies the startup routine's beginning address                             <pre style="margin-left: 20px;">                                 @@VECT00 CSEG AT 0000H                                 DW      _@cstart                             </pre> </li> <li>- Sets the register bank to RB0</li> <li>- Sets the mirror region</li> <li>- Sets the SP register to the end address of the stack area + 1</li> <li>- Calls the <code>hdwinit</code> function</li> <li>- Calls the <code>stkinit</code> function</li> <li>- Clears the <code>saddr</code> area (except for the register bank area) to 0</li> <li>- Perform copy processing of initialized data and execute 0 clear of external data without an initial value.</li> <li>- Set 1 as the initial value for the variable <code>_@SEED</code>, which is the source of pseudo random numbers for the <code>rand</code> function</li> <li>- Initializes the break value and sets <code>_@MEMTOP</code>'s address to the variable <code>_@BRKADR</code></li> <li>- Calls the <code>main</code> function (user program) (in the case of a startup module)</li> <li>- Calls the <code>exit</code> function with the argument 0 (in the case of a startup module)</li> <li>- Calls the <code>boot_main</code> function (in the case of a booting startup module)</li> <li>- Branches to the top (<code>ITBLTOP</code>) of the flash area branch table and moves the processing to the startup module for the flash area (in the case of a booting startup module)</li> </ul>

**(21) Flash startup routine**

Function Name	Purpose
cstarte	<p>Flash startup routine</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Define the reset vector table segment as follows, and specify the start address of the startup routine</li> <li>- Define the flash area branch table as follows (ITBLTOR is the start address of the flash area branch table) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>@EVECT00 CSEG AT ITBLTOP</li> <li>BR _@cstarte</li> </ul> </li> <li>- Sets the SP register to the end address of the stack area + 1</li> <li>- Calls the stkinit function</li> <li>- Perform copy processing of initialized data and execute 0 clear of external data without an initial value.</li> <li>- Calls the main function (user program)</li> <li>- Calls the exit function with the argument 0</li> </ul>

**(22) Main for boot**

Function Name	Purpose
boot_main	Performs the boot area's main function processing

**(23) Flash vector table**

Function Name	Purpose
vect00 - vect7e	Configures the interrupt vector table when the -zf option is specified

**(24) Function pre- and post-processing**

Function Name	Purpose
hdwinit	Performs initialization of peripheral devices (sfr) immediately after a CPU reset
cprep3	Performs pre-processing for functions (includes the saddr area for register variables)
cdisp3	Performs post-processing for functions (includes the saddr area for register variables)
cpre3e	Performs pre-processing for functions (includes the saddr area for register variables)
cdisp3e	Performs post-processing for functions (includes the saddr area for register variables)

**(25) Initialization**

Function Name	Purpose
stkinit	Stack area is initialized

**(26) BCD-type conversion**

Function Name	Purpose
bcdtob	Converts 1-byte bcd to 1-byte binary
btobcd	Converts 1-byte binary to 2-byte bcd
bcdtow	Converts 2-byte bcd to 2-byte binary
wtobcd	Converts 2-byte binary to 2-byte bcd
bbcd	Converts 1-byte binary to 2-byte bcd

**(27) Auxiliary**

Function Name	Purpose
indao	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
ifdao	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
inado	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
ifado	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
Ind0	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
lfd0	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
In0d	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
lf0d	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
Ind0o	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
lfd0o	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
In0do	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
lf0do	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df1in	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df1de	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4in	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4ip	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4in	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4ip	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4ino	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4ipo	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4ino	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4ipo	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4de	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4dp	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4de	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4dp	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4deo	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
dn4dpo	For replacing fixed instruction pattern

Function Name	Purpose
df4deo	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
df4dpo	For replacing fixed instruction pattern
divuw	78K0 divuw instruction compatibility
mulsw	Signed int multiplication
muluw	Unsigned int multiplication
macsw	Signed sum-of-products calculation
macuw	Unsigned sum-of-products calculation
divuwr	78K0 divuw instruction compatibility (for allocation to RAM)

## 6.2 Interface Between Functions

Library functions are used with function calls. Function calls are done with the call instruction. Arguments are passed on the stack, return values are passed by registers.

However, if possible, the first argument is also passed by registers.

### 6.2.1 Arguments

The function interface (passing arguments, storing return values) for the standard library is the same as that of regular functions.

For details see "[3.3.2 Ordinary function call interface](#)".

### 6.2.2 Return values

Return values are a minimum of 16 bits and are stored in 16-bit units from the low-order bits from register BC to DE. When returning a structure, the structure's starting address is stored in BC, DE.

For details see "[3.3.1 Return values](#)".

### 6.2.3 Saving registers used by separate libraries

Libraries that use HL save registers that use those to the stack.

Libraries that use the saddr area save the saddr area to use to the stack.

The work area used by libraries also use the stack area.

An example (for small model, medium model) of the procedure for passing arguments and return values is shown next.

The following show the function to call.

```
"long func ( int a, long b, char *c ) ;"
```

#### (1) Push arguments on the stack (function call source)

The arguments are pushed onto the stack in the order c, b in the high-order 16 bits, b in the low-order 16 bits. a is passed in the AX register.

#### (2) Call func with the call instruction (function call source)

After b in the low-order 16 bits, the return address is pushed onto the stack, control moves to the function func.

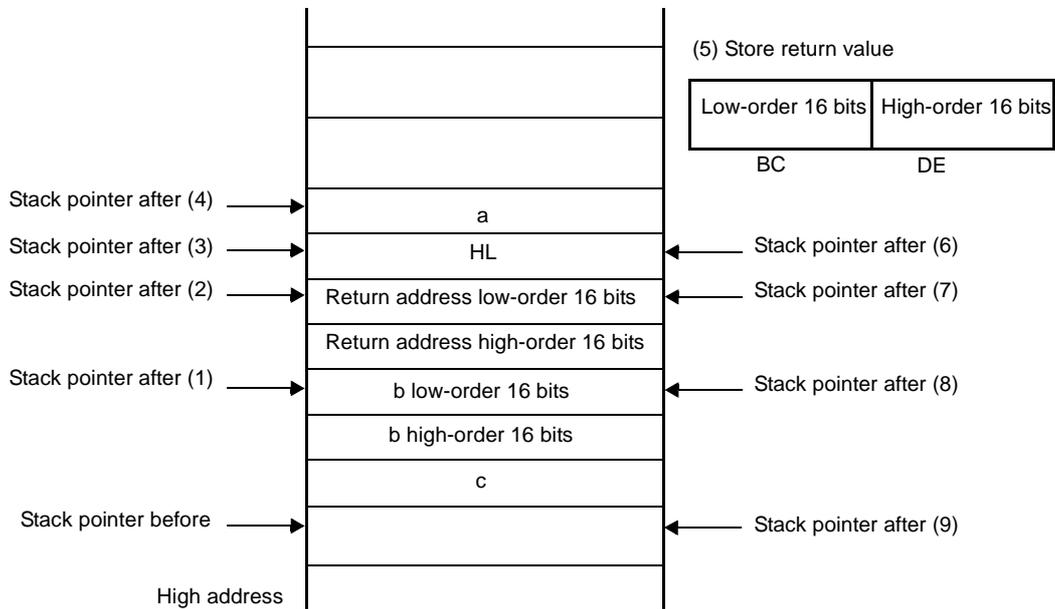
#### (3) Save the registers to use in the function (function call target)

When using HL, HL is pushed onto the stack.

#### (4) Push the first argument passed by the register onto the stack (function call target)

- (5) **Perform processing for the function func, store the return value in a register (function call target)**  
The low-order 16 bits of the return value "long" are stored in BC, the high-order 16 bits are stored in DE.
- (6) **Restore the stored first argument (function call target)**
- (7) **Restore the saved registers (function call target)**
- (8) **Return control to the calling function with the ret instruction (function call target)**
- (9) **Clear the arguments off the stack (function call source)**  
The number of bytes (2-byte units) of the arguments is added to the stack pointer.  
6 is added to the stack pointer.

Figure 6-1. Stack Area During Function Call



### 6.3 Header Files

There are 13 header files in RL78,78K0R C compiler and they define and declare the standard library functions, type names, and macro names.

RL78,78K0R C compiler header files are shown next.

#### 6.3.1 ctype.h

ctype.h defines character/string functions.

In ctype.h, the following functions are defined.

However, when compiler option -za (the option to turn off non-ANSI compliant functions and turn on a portion of ANSI compliant functions) is specified, \_toupper and \_tolower are not defined, in their place tolow and toup are defined. When -za is not specified, tolow and toup are not defined. The functions declared also vary depending on the options and specific model.

isalpha, isupper, islower, isdigit, isalnum, isxdigit, isspace, ispunct, isprint, isgraph, iscntrl, isascii, toupper, tolower, toascii, \_toupper/toup, \_tolower/tolow

### 6.3.2 setjmp.h

setjmp.h defines program control functions.

In setjmp.h, the following functions are defined. In addition, the functions declared also vary depending on the options and specific model.

```
setjmp, longjmp
```

In setjmp.h, the following object is declared.

- Declaration of the int array type "jmp\_buf"

```
typedef int jmp_buf[12]
```

### 6.3.3 stdarg.h

stdarg.h defines special functions.

In stdarg.h, the following functions are defined.

```
va_start, va_starttop, va_arg, va_end
```

In stdarg.h, the following object is defined.

- Declaration of the pointer type "va\_list" to char

```
typedef char *va_list ;
```

### 6.3.4 stdio.h

stdio.h defines input/output functions. In stdio.h, the following functions are defined.

However, the functions declared vary depending on the options and specific model

```
sprintf, sscanf, printf, scanf, vprintf, vsprintf, getchar, gets, putchar, puts, __putc
```

The following macro name is declared.

```
#define EOF (-1)
```

### 6.3.5 stdlib.h

stdlib.h defines character/string functions, memory functions, program control, math functions, and special functions.

In stdlib.h, the following functions are defined.

However, when compiler option -za (the option to turn off non-ANSI compliant functions and turn on a portion of ANSI compliant functions) is specified, brk, sbrk, itoa, ltoa, and ultoa are not defined, in their place strbrk, strnbrk, stritoa, strltoa, and strultoa are defined. When -za is not specified, these functions are not defined.

```
atoi, atol, strtol, strtoul, calloc, free, malloc, realloc, abort, atexit, exit, abs, labs,
div, ldiv, brk, sbrk, atof, strtod, itoa, ltoa, ultoa, rand, srand, bsearch, qsort, strbrk,
strnbrk, stritoa, strltoa, strultoa
```

In stdlib.h, the following objects are declared.

- Declaration of the structure type "div\_t" with int members "quot" and "rem".

```
typedef struct {  
    int    quot ;  
    int    rem  ;  
} div_t ;
```

- Definition of the macro name "RAND\_MAX"

```
#define RAND_MAX    32767
```

- Macro name declarations

```
#define EXIT_SUCCESS    0  
#define EXIT_FAILURE    1
```

### 6.3.6 string.h

string.h defines character/string functions, memory functions, and special functions.

In string.h, the following functions are defined.

However, the functions declared vary depending on the options and specific model.

```
memcpy, memmove, strcpy, strncpy, strcat, strncat, memcmp, strcmp, strncmp, memchr, strchr,  
strrchr, strspn, strcspn, strpbrk, strstr, strtok, memset, strerror, strlen, strcoll,  
strxfrm
```

### 6.3.7 error.h

error.h includes errno.h.

### 6.3.8 errno.h

The following objects are declared or defined

- Definition of the macro names "EDOM", "ERANGE", "ENOMEM"

```
#define EDOM    1  
#define ERANGE 2  
#define ENOMEM 3
```

- eclaration of the external variable "errno" of the volatile int type

```
extern volatile int errno ;
```

**6.3.9 limits.h**

In limits.h, the following macro names are defined.

```
#define CHAR_BIT      8
#define CHAR_MAX      +127
#define CHAR_MIN      -128
#define INT_MAX        +32767
#define INT_MIN        -32768
#define LONG_MAX       +2147483647
#define LONG_MIN       -2147483648

#define SCHAR_MAX      +127
#define SCHAR_MIN      -128
#define SHRT_MAX       +32767
#define SHRT_MIN       -32768
#define UCHAR_MAX      255U
#define UINT_MAX       65535U
#define ULONG_MAX     4294967295U
#define USHRT_MAX      65535U

#define SINT_MAX       +32767
#define SINT_MIN       -32768
#define SSHRT_MAX      +32767
#define SSHRT_MIN      -32768
```

However, when the -qu option is specified, which considers an unmodified char as an unsigned char, CHAR\_MAX and CHAR\_MIN are declared in the following manner by the macro \_\_CHAR\_UNSIGNED\_\_ declared by the compiler.

```
#define CHAR_MAX      ( 255U )
#define CHAR_MIN      ( 0 )
```

**6.3.10 stddef.h**

In stddef.h, the following objects are declared or defined.

- Declaration of the int type "ptrdiff\_t"

```
typedef int      ptrdiff_t ;
```

- Declaration of the unsigned int type "size\_t"

```
typedef unsigned int      size_t ;
```

- Definition of the macro name "NULL"

```
#define NULL      ( void * ) 0 ;
```

- Definition of the macro name "offsetof"

```
#define offsetof ( type, member ) ( (size_t) & ( ( (type*)0) -> member) )
```

**Remark** `offsetof ( type, member-designator )`

Expands to a general integer constant expression of type `size_t`, and that value is the offset value in bytes from the start of the structure (specified by the type) to the structure member (specified by the member designator).

When the member specifier has been declared as static type `t`;, the result of evaluating expression `&(t.member-specifier)` must be an address constant. When the specified member is a bit field, there is no guarantee of the operation.

### 6.3.11 math.h

In `math.h`, the following functions are defined

```
acos, asin, atan, atan2, cos, sin, tan, cosh, sinh, tanh, exp, frexp, ldexp, log, log10,
modf, pow, sqrt, ceil, fabs, floor, fmod, matherr, acosf, asinf, atanf, atan2f, cosf, sinf,
tanf, coshf, sinhf, tanhf, expf, frexpf, ldexpf, logf, log10f, modff, powf, sqrtf, ceilf,
fabsf, floorf, fmodf
```

The following objects are defined.

- Definition of the macro name "HUGE\_VAL"

```
#define HUGE_VAL DBL_MAX
```

### 6.3.12 float.h

In `float.h`, the following objects are defined.

The macros defined are split according to the macro `__DOUBLE_IS_32BITS__` which is declared by the compiler when the size of the double type is 32 bits.

```
#ifndef _FLOAT_H

#define FLT_ROUNDS      1
#define FLT_RADIX      2

#ifdef __DOUBLE_IS_32BITS__
#define FLT_MANT_DIG    24
#define DBL_MANT_DIG    24
#define LDBL_MANT_DIG   24

#define FLT_DIG         6
#define DBL_DIG         6
#define LDBL_DIG        6

#define FLT_MIN_EXP     -125
#define DBL_MIN_EXP     -125
```

```
#define LDBL_MIN_EXP    -125

#define FLT_MIN_10_EXP  -37
#define DBL_MIN_10_EXP  -37
#define LDBL_MIN_10_EXP -37

#define FLT_MAX_EXP     +128
#define DBL_MAX_EXP     +128
#define LDBL_MAX_EXP    +128

#define FLT_MAX_10_EXP  +38
#define DBL_MAX_10_EXP  +38
#define LDBL_MAX_10_EXP +38

#define FLT_MAX         3.40282347E+38F
#define DBL_MAX         3.40282347E+38F
#define LDBL_MAX        3.40282347E+38F

#define FLT_EPSILON     1.19209290E-07F
#define DBL_EPSILON     1.19209290E-07F
#define LDBL_EPSILON    1.19209290E-07F

#define FLT_MIN         1.17549435E-38F
#define DBL_MIN         1.17549435E-38F
#define LDBL_MIN        1.17549435E-38F

#define __DOUBLE_IS_32BITS__

#define FLT_MANT_DIG    24
#define DBL_MANT_DIG    53
#define LDBL_MANT_DIG   53

#define FLT_DIG         6
#define DBL_DIG         15
#define LDBL_DIG        15

#define FLT_MIN_EXP     -125
#define DBL_MIN_EXP     -1021
#define LDBL_MIN_EXP    -1021

#define FLT_MIN_10_EXP  -37
#define DBL_MIN_10_EXP  -307
#define LDBL_MIN_10_EXP -307

#define FLT_MAX_EXP     +128
#define DBL_MAX_EXP     +1024
```

```

#define LDBL_MAX_EXP    +1024

#define FLT_MAX_10_EXP  +38
#define DBL_MAX_10_EXP  +308
#define LDBL_MAX_10_EXP +308

#define FLT_MAX         3.40282347E+38F
#define DBL_MAX         1.7976931348623157E+308
#define LDBL_MAX        1.7976931348623157E+308

#define FLT_EPSILON     1.19209290E-07F
#define DBL_EPSILON     2.2204460492503131E-016
#define LDBL_EPSILON    2.2204460492503131E-016

#define FLT_MIN         1.17549435E-38F
#define DBL_MIN         2.225073858507201E-308
#define LDBL_MIN        2.225073858507201E-308
#endif /* __DOUBLE_IS_32BITS__ */

#define _FLOAT_H
#endif /* !_FLOAT_H */

```

### 6.3.13 assert.h

In assert.h, the following functions are defined.

```
__assertfail
```

In assert.h, the following objects are defined.

```

#ifdef NDEBUG
#define assert ( p )    ( ( void ) 0 )
#else
extern int    __assertfail ( char *__msg, char *__cond, char *__file, int__line ) ;
#define assert ( p )    ( ( p ) ? ( void ) 0 : ( void ) __assertfail (
                        "Assertion failed : %s, file %s, line %dn",
                        #p, __FILE__, __LINE__ ) )
#endif /* NDEBUG */

```

However, the assert.h header file references one more macro, NDEBUG, which is not defined in the assert.h header file. If NDEBUG is defined as a macro when assert.h is included in the source file, the assert macro is simply defined as shown next, and \_\_assertfail is also not defined.

```
#define assert ( p )    ( ( void ) 0 )
```

## 6.4 Re-entrant

Re-entrant is a state where it is possible for a function called by a program to be successively called by another program.

The RL78,78K0R C compiler standard library takes re-entrantability into consideration and does not use static areas. Therefore, the data in the memory area used by the function is not damaged by a call from another program.

However, be careful as the following functions are not re-entrant.

- Functions that cannot be made re-entrant

```
setjmp, longjmp, atexit, exit
```

- Functions that use the area acquired by the startup routine

```
div, ldiv, brk, sbrk, rand, srand, strtok
```

- Functions that handle floating point numbers

```
sprintf, sscanf, printf, scanf, vprintf, vsprintfNote  
atof, strtod, all math functions
```

**Note** Of sprintf, sscanf, printf, scanf, vprintf, and vsprintf, functions that do not support floating point are re-entrant.

## 6.5 Use of Arguments/Return Values Suitable for Standard Library

Functions that specify pointers to arguments/return values of the standard library are linked to the appropriate library according to the memory model.

To handle pointers that are not of the default memory model, it is possible to link to the appropriate library for that pointer by calling the functions with the standard function names below.

<function name>\_n: : always handles the pointer as near

<function name>\_f: : always handles the pointer as far

For example, when the small model is selected, the far pointers can be specified as an argument for the strcmp function.

An example is shown below.

```
#include <string.h>

__far char *sf1 ;
__far char *sf2 ;

void main ( void ) {
    :
    r = strcmp_f ( sf1, sf2 ) ;
    :
}
```

Cautions are shown below.

- When the small model and medium model are specified, pointer arguments for the input/output functions `sprintf/printf/vprintf/vsprintf/sscanf/scanf`, which handle variable arguments, are handled as near pointers. Function pointers cannot be used.

When using function pointers, or when using far pointers, use `printf_f` and it will be necessary to cast all of the variable argument pointers to far pointers.

When the large model is specified, pointer arguments for the input/output functions `sprintf/printf/vprintf/vsprintf/sscanf/scanf`, which handle variable arguments, are handled as far pointers.

- When the small model and medium model are specified, pointer arguments for the special functions `va_start/va_starttop/va_arg/va_end`, which handle variable arguments, are handled as near pointers. Function pointers cannot be used.

## 6.6 Character/String Functions

The following functions are available as character/string functions.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">isalpha</a>	Judges if a character is an alphabetic character (A to Z, a to z)
<a href="#">isupper</a>	Judges if a character is an uppercase alphabetic character (A to Z)
<a href="#">islower</a>	Judges if a character is a lowercase alphabetic character (a to z)
<a href="#">isdigit</a>	Judges if a character is a numeric (0 to 9)
<a href="#">isalnum</a>	Judges if a character is an alphanumeric character (0 to 9, A to Z, a to z)
<a href="#">isxdigit</a>	Judges if a character is a hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, A to F, a to f)
<a href="#">isspace</a>	Judges if a character is a whitespace character (whitespace, tab, carriage return, line feed, vertical, tab, form feed)
<a href="#">ispunct</a>	Judges if a character is a printable character other than a whitespace character or alphanumeric character
<a href="#">isprint</a>	Judges if a character is a printable character
<a href="#">isgraph</a>	Judges if a character is a printable character other than whitespace
<a href="#">iscntrl</a>	Judges if a character is a control character
<a href="#">isascii</a>	Judges if a character is an ASCII code
<a href="#">toupper</a>	Converts a lowercase alphabetic character to uppercase
<a href="#">tolower</a>	Converts an uppercase alphabetic character to lowercase
<a href="#">toascii</a>	Converts the input to an ASCII code
<a href="#">_toupper</a>	Subtracts "a" from the input character and adds "A"
<a href="#">toup</a>	
<a href="#">_tolower</a>	Subtracts "A" from the input character and adds "a"
<a href="#">tolow</a>	

**isalpha**

Judges if *c* is an alphabetic character (A to Z, a to z)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalpha (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>c</i> :</p> <p>Character to be judged</p>	<p>If character <i>c</i> is included in alphabetic character (A to Z or a to z) :</p> <p style="text-align: center;">1</p> <p>If character <i>c</i> is not included in alphabetic character (A to Z or a to z) :</p> <p style="text-align: center;">0</p>

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in alphabetic character (A to Z or a to z), 1 is returned.
- In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isupper**

Judges if *c* is an uppercase alphabetic character (A to Z)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isupper (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the uppercase letters (A to Z) : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the uppercase letters (A to Z) : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in uppercase letters character (A to Z), 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**islower**

Judges if *c* is an lowercase alphabetic character (a to z)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int islower (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the lowercase letters (a to z) : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the lowercase letters (a to z) : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the lowercase letters (a to z), 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isdigit**

Judges if *c* is a numeric (0 to 9)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isdigit (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the numeric characters (0 to 9) : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the numeric characters (0 to 9) : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the numeric characters (0 to 9), 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isalnum**

Judges if *c* is an alphanumeric character (0 to 9, A to Z, a to z)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalnum (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the alphanumeric characters (0 to 9 and A to Z or a to z) : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the alphanumeric characters (0 to 9 and A to Z or a to z) : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the alphanumeric characters (0 to 9 and A to Z or a to z), 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isxdigit**

Judges if *c* is a hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, A to F, a to f)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isxdigit (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9 and A to F or a to f) : 1  If character <i>c</i> is not included in the hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9 and A to F or a to f) : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9 and A to F or a to f), 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isspace**

Judges if *c* is a whitespace character (space, tab, carriage return, line feed, vertical, tab, form feed)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isspace (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the whitespace characters : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the whitespace characters : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the whitespace characters (space, tab, carriage return, line feed, vertical, tab, form feed), 1 is returned.
- In other cases, 0 is returned.

**ispunct**

Judges if *c* is a printable character other than a whitespace character or alphanumeric character

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int ispunct (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the printable characters except whitespace and alphanumeric characters : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the printable characters except whitespace and alphanumeric characters : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the printable characters except whitespace and alphanumeric characters, 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isprint**

Judges if *c* is a character is a printable character

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isprint (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the printable characters : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the printable characters : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the printable characters, 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isgraph**

Judges if *c* is a printable character other than whitespace

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isgraph (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the printable nonblank characters : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the printable nonblank characters : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the printable nonblank character, 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**iscntrl**

Judges if *c* is a control character

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int iscntrl (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the control characters : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the control characters : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the control characters, 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**isascii**

Judges if *c* is an ASCII code

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isascii(int c);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be judged	If character <i>c</i> is included in the ASCII code set : 1 If character <i>c</i> is not included in the ASCII code set : 0

**[Description]**

- If character *c* is included in the ASCII code set, 1 is returned.  
In other cases, 0 is returned.

**toupper**

Converts a lowercase alphabetic character to uppercase

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int toupper (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<code>c</code> : Character to be converted	If <code>c</code> is a convertible character : uppercase equivalent of <code>c</code>  If not convertible : <code>c</code>

**[Description]**

- The `toupper` function checks to see if the argument is a lowercase letter and if so converts the letter to its uppercase equivalent.

**tolower**

Converts an uppercase alphabetic character to lowercase

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int tolower (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>c</i> :</p> <p>Character to be converted</p>	<p>If <i>c</i> is a convertible character :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">lowercase equivalent of <i>c</i></p> <p>If not convertible :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>c</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The tolower function checks to see if the argument is a uppercase letter and if so converts the letter to its lowercase equivalent.

**toascii**

Converts the input to an ASCII code

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int toascii (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be converted	Value obtained by converting the bits outside the ASCII code range of "c" to 0.

**[Description]**

- The toascii function converts the bits (bits 7 to 15) of "c" outside the ASCII code range of "c" (bits 0 to 6) to "0" and returns the converted bit value.

**\_toupper**

Subtracts "a" from "c" and adds "A" to the result  
(\_toupper is exactly the same as toupper)

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int _toupper (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
c : Character to be converted	Value obtained by adding "A" to the result of subtraction "c" - "a"

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Description]**

- The \_toupper function is similar to toupper except that it does not test to see if the argument is a lowercase letter.

**toup**

Subtracts "a" from "c" and adds "A" to the result  
(\_toupper is exactly the same as toup)

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int toup (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
c : Character to be converted	Value obtained by adding "A" to the result of subtraction "c" - "a"

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Description]**

- The toup function is similar to \_toupper except that it tests to see if the argument is a lowercase letter.

**\_tolower**

Subtracts "A" from "c" and adds "a" to the result  
(\_tolower is exactly the same as the tolow)

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int _tolower (int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
c : Character to be converted	Value obtained by adding "a" to the result of subtraction "c" - "A"

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Description]**

- The \_tolower function is similar to tolow, except it does not test to see if the argument is an uppercase letter.

**tolower**

Subtracts "A" from "c" and adds "a" to the result  
(\_tolower is exactly the same as the tolow)

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <ctype.h>
int tolow (int c);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
c : Character to be converted	Value obtained by adding "a" to the result of subtraction "c" - "A"

**Remark** a: Lowercase; A: Uppercase

**[Description]**

- The tolow function is similar to \_tolower, except it tests to see if the argument is an uppercase letter.

## 6.7 Program Control Functions

The following program control functions are available.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">setjmp</a>	Saves the environment at the time of the call
<a href="#">longjmp</a>	Restores the environment saved with setjmp

**setjmp**

Saves the environment at the time of the call

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <setjmp.h>
int setjmp (jmp_buf env) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>env</i> : Array to which environment information is to be saved	If called directly : 0 If returning from the corresponding longjmp : Value given by " <i>val</i> " or 1 if " <i>val</i> " is 0.

**[Description]**

- The setjmp, when called directly, saves saddr area, SP, and the return address of the function that are used as HL register or register variables to *env* and returns 0.

**longjmp**

Restores the environment saved with setjmp

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <setjmp.h>
void longjmp (jmp_buf env, int val) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>env</i> :</p> <p>Array to which environment information was saved by setjmp</p> <p><i>val</i> :</p> <p>Return value to setjmp</p>	<p>longjmp will not return because program execution resumes at statement next to setjmp that saved environment to "<i>env</i>".</p>

**[Description]**

- The longjmp restores the saved environment to *env* (HL register, saddr area and SP that are used as register variables). Program execution continues as if the corresponding setjmp returns *val* (however, if *val* is 0, 1 is returned).

## 6.8 Special Functions

The following special functions are available.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">va_start</a>	Settings for processing variable arguments
<a href="#">va_starttop</a>	Settings for processing variable arguments
<a href="#">va_arg</a>	Processes variable arguments
<a href="#">va_end</a>	Indicates the end of processing variable arguments

**va\_start**

Settings for processing variable arguments (macro)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_start (va_list ap, parmN) ;
```

**Remark** va\_list is defined as typedef by stdarg.h.

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>ap</i> :</p> <p>Variable to be initialized so as to be used in va_arg and va_end</p> <p><i>parmN</i> :</p> <p>The argument before variable argument</p>	<p>None</p>

**[Description]**

- In the va\_start macro, its argument *ap* must be a va\_list type (char \* type) object.
- A pointer to the next argument of *parmN* is stored in *ap*.
- *parmN* is the name of the last (right-most) parameter specified in the function's prototype.
- If *parmN* has the register storage class, proper operation of this function is not guaranteed.
- If *parmN* is the first argument, this function may not operate normally (use va\_starttop instead).

**va\_starttop**

Settings for processing variable arguments (macro)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_starttop (va_list ap, parmN) ;
```

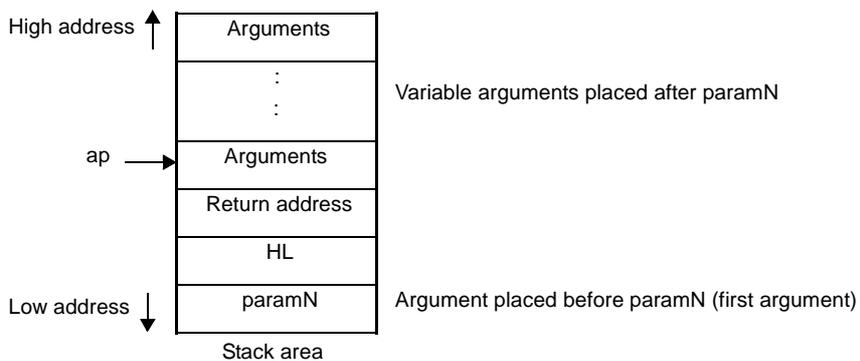
**Remark** va\_list is defined as typedef by stdarg.h.

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>ap</i> :</p> <p>Variable to be initialized so as to be used in va_arg and va_end</p> <p><i>parmN</i> :</p> <p>The argument before variable argument</p>	<p>None</p>

**[Description]**

- *ap* must be a va\_list type object.
- A pointer to the next argument of *parmN* is stored in *ap*.
- *parmN* is the name of the right-most and first parameter specified in the function's prototype.
- If *parmN* has the register storage class, this function may not operate normally.
- If *parmN* is an argument other than the first argument, this function may not operate normally.



**va\_arg**

Processes variable arguments (macro)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdarg.h>
type va_arg (va_list ap, type) ;
```

**Remark** va\_list is defined as typedef by stdarg.h.

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>ap</i> :</p> <p>Variable to process an argument list</p> <p>type :</p> <p>Type to point the relevant place of variable argument (type is a type of variable length; for example, int type if described as va_arg (va_list ap, int) or long type if described as va_arg (va_list ap, long) )</p>	<p>Normal case :</p> <p>Value in the relevant place of variable argument</p> <p>If <i>ap</i> is a null pointer :</p> <p>0</p>

**[Description]**

- In the va\_arg macro, its argument *ap* must be the same as the va\_list type object initialized with va\_start (no guarantee for the other normal operation).
- va\_arg returns value in the relevant place of variable arguments as a type of type.  
The relevant place is the first of variable arguments immediately after va\_start and next proceeded in each va\_arg.
- If the argument pointer *ap* is a null pointer, the va\_arg returns 0 (of type type).
- With the RL78,78K0R C compiler, when specifying a pointer as an argument list, the near data pointers (2-byte length) must be specified when the medium model is used, and the far data pointers (4-byte length) must be specified when the large model is used.  
The function pointer length is fixed to 4 bytes in both models, but the pointer length in each model must be specified as a 2- or 4-byte length when specifying the pointer as an argument list.

**va\_end**

Indicates the end of processing variable arguments (macro)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_end (va_list ap) ;
```

**Remark** va\_list is defined as typedef by stdarg.h.

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>ap</i> : Variable to process the variable number of arguments	None

**[Description]**

- The va\_end macro sets a null pointer in the argument pointer *ap* to inform the macro processor that all the parameters in the variable argument list have been processed.

## 6.9 Input and Output Functions

The following input and output functions are available.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">sprintf</a>	Writes data to a string according to a format
<a href="#">sscanf</a>	Reads data from the input string according to a format
<a href="#">printf</a>	Outputs data to SFR according to a format
<a href="#">scanf</a>	Reads data from SFR according to a format
<a href="#">vprintf</a>	Outputs data to SFR according to a format
<a href="#">vsprintf</a>	Writes data to a string according to a format
<a href="#">getchar</a>	Reads one character from SFR
<a href="#">gets</a>	Reads a string
<a href="#">putchar</a>	Outputs one character to SFR
<a href="#">puts</a>	Outputs a string
<a href="#">__putc</a>	Outputs one character to opaque

**sprintf**

Writes data to a string according to a format

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int sprintf (char *s, const char *format, ...);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the string into which the output is to be written</p> <p><i>format</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the string which indicates format commands</p> <p>... :</p> <p>Zero or more arguments to be converted</p>	<p>Number of characters written in <i>s</i> (Terminating null character is not counted.)</p>

**[Description]**

- If there are fewer actual arguments than the formats, the proper operation is not guaranteed. In the case that the formats are run out despite the actual arguments still remain, the excess actual arguments are only evaluated and ignored.
- `sprintf` converts zero or more arguments that follow *format* according to the format command specified by *format* and writes (copies) them into the string *s*.
- Zero or more format commands may be used. Ordinary characters (other than format commands that begin with a % character) are output as is to the string *s*. Each format command takes zero or more arguments that follow *format* and outputs them to the string *s*.
- Each format command begins with a % character and is followed by these:

**(1) Zero or more flags (to be explained later) that modify the meaning of the format command****(2) Optional decimal integer which specify a minimum field width**

If the output width after the conversion is less than this minimum field width, this specifier pads the output with blanks or zeros on its left. (If the left-justifying flag "-" (minus) sign follows %, zeros are padded out to the right of the output.) The default padding is done with spaces. If the output is to be padded with 0s, place a 0 before the field width specifier. If the number or string is greater than the minimum field width, it will be printed in full even by overrunning the minimum.

- Optional precision (number of decimal places) specification (.integer)
  - With d, i, o, u, x, and X type specifiers, the minimum number of digits is specified.
  - With s type specifier, the maximum number of characters (maximum field width) is specified.
  - The number of digits to be output following the decimal point is specified for e, E, and f conversions. The number of maximum effective digits is specified for g and G conversions.
  - This precision specification must be made in the form of (.integer). If the integer part is omitted, 0 is assumed to have been specified.
  - The amount of padding resulting from this precision specification takes precedence over the padding by the field width specification.

- Optional h, l and L modifiers

The h modifier instructs the sprintf function to perform the d, i, o, u, x, or X type conversion that follows this modifier on short int or unsigned short int type. The h modifier instructs the sprintf function to perform the n type conversion that follows this modifier on a pointer to short int type.

The l modifier instructs the sprintf function to perform the d, i, o, u, x, or X type conversion that follows this modifier on long int or unsigned long int type. The h modifier instructs the sprintf function to perform the n type conversion that follows this modifier on a pointer to long int type.

For other type specifiers, the h, l or L modifier is ignored.

- Character that specifies the conversion (to be explained later)

In the minimum field width or precision (number of decimal places) specification, \* may be used in place of an integer string. In this case, the integer value will be given by the int argument (before the argument to be converted).

Any negative field width resulting from this will be interpreted as a positive field that follows the - (minus) flag. All negative precision will be ignored.

The following flags are used to modify a format command:

Flag	Contents
-	The result of a conversion is left-justified within the field.
+	The result of a signed conversion always begins with a + or - sign.
space	If the result of a signed conversion has no sign, space is prefixed to the output. If the + (plus) flag and space flag are specified at the same time, the space flag will be ignored.
#	The result is converted in the "assignment form". In the o type conversion, precision is increased so that the first digit becomes 0. In the x or X type conversion, 0x or 0X is prefixed to a nonzero result. In the e, E, and f type conversions, a decimal point is forcibly inserted to all the output values (in the default without #, a decimal point is displayed only when there is a value to follow). In the g and G type conversions, a decimal point is forcibly inserted to all the output values, and truncation of 0 to follow will not be allowed (in the default without #, a decimal point is displayed only when there is a value to follow. The 0 to follow will be truncated). In all the other conversions, the # flag is ignored.
0	The result is left padded with zeros instead of spaces. The 0 flag is ignored when it is specified together with the "-" flag. The 0 flag is ignored in d, i, o, u, x, and X conversions when the precision is specified.

The format codes for output conversion specifications are as follows:

Format Code	Contents
d, i	Converts int argument to signed decimal format.
o	Converts int argument to signed decimal format.
u	Converts int argument to unsigned octal format.
x	Converts int argument to unsigned hexadecimal format (with lowercase letters abcdef).
X	Converts int argument to unsigned hexadecimal format (with uppercase letters ABCDEF).

With d, i, o, u, x and X type specifiers, the minimum number of digits (minimum field width) of the result is specified. If the output is shorter than the minimum field width, it is padded with zeros.

If no precision is specified, 1 is assumed to have been specified.

Nothing will appear if 0 is converted with 0 precision.

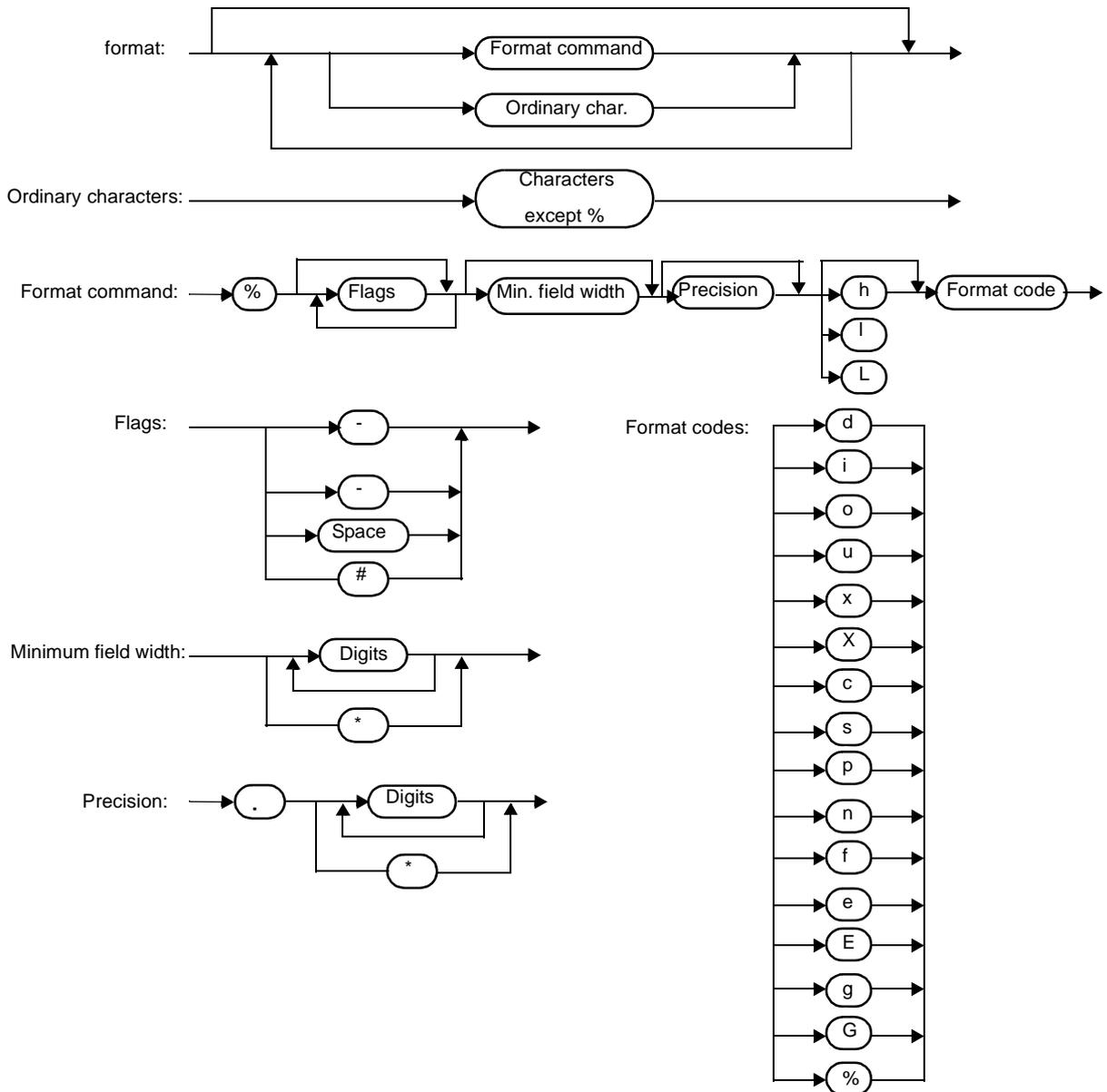
Precision Code	Contents
f	Converts double argument as a signed value with [-] <i>ddd.dddd</i> format. <i>ddd</i> is one or more decimal number(s). The number of digits before the decimal point is determined by the absolute value of the number, and the number of digits after the decimal point is determined by the required precision. When the precision is omitted, it is interpreted as 6.
e	Converts double argument as a signed value with [-] <i>d.ddd e [sign] ddd</i> format. <i>d</i> is 1 decimal number, and <i>ddd</i> is one or more decimal number(s). <i>ddd</i> is exactly a 3- digit decimal number, and the sign is + or -. When the precision is omitted, it is interpreted as 6.
E	The same format as that of e except E is added instead of e before the exponent.
g	Uses whichever shorter method of f or e format when converting double argument based on the specified precision. e format is used only when the exponent of the value is smaller than -4 or larger than the specified number by precision. The following 0 are truncated, and the decimal point is displayed only when one or more numbers follow.
G	The same format as that of g except E is added instead of e before the exponent.
c	Converts int argument to unsigned char and writes the result as a single character.
s	The associated argument is a pointer to a string of characters and the characters in the string are written up to the terminating null character (but not included in the output). If precision is specified, the characters exceeding the maximum field width will be truncated off the end. When the precision is not specified or larger than the array, the array must include a null character.
p	The associated argument is a pointer to void and the pointer value is displayed in unsigned hexadecimal 4 digits (with 0s prefixed to less than a 4-digit pointer value). The large model is displayed in unsigned hexadecimal 8 digits (with 0 padded in dominance 2-digits and 0s prefixed to less than a 6-digit pointer value). The precision specification if any will be ignored.
n	The associated argument is an integer pointer into which the number of characters written thus far in the string "s" is placed. No conversion is performed.
%	Prints a % sign. The associated argument is not converted (but the flag and minimum field width specifications are effective).

- Operations for invalid conversion specifiers are not guaranteed.
  - When the actual argument is a union or a structure, or the pointer to indicate them (except the character type array in % s conversion or the pointer in % p conversion), operations are not guaranteed.
  - The conversion result will not be truncated even when there is no field width or the field width is small. In other words, when the number of characters of the conversion result are larger than the field width, the field is extended to the width that includes the conversion result.
  - The formats of the special output character string in %f, %e, %E, %g, %G conversions are shown below.
 

non-numeric	->	"(NaN)"
+∞	->	"(+INF)"
-∞	->	"(-INF)"
- sprintf writes a null character at the end of the string s. (This character is included in the return value count.)

The syntax of *format* commands is illustrated below.

Figure 6-2. Syntax of *format* Commands



- With the RL78,78K0R C compiler, the near data pointers (2-byte length) must be specified when the medium model is used, and the far data pointers (4-byte length) must be specified when the large model is used for conversion specifiers s, p, and n that specify pointers as arguments.

The function pointer length is fixed to 4 bytes in both models, but the pointer length in each model must be specified as a 2- or 4-byte length when using the pointer as an argument.

**sscanf**

Reads data from the input string according to a format

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int sscanf (const char *s, const char *format, ...);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the input string</p> <p><i>format</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the string which indicates the input format commands</p> <p>... :</p> <p>Pointer to object in which converted values are to be stored, and zero or more arguments</p>	<p>If the string <i>s</i> is empty:</p> <p>-1</p> <p>If the string <i>s</i> is not empty :</p> <p>Number of assigned input data items</p>

**[Description]**

- sscanf inputs data from the string pointed to by *s*. The string pointed to by *format* specifies the input string allowed for input.
- Zero or more arguments after *format* are used as pointers to an object. *format* specifies how data is to be converted from the input string.
- If there are insufficient arguments to match the format commands pointed to by *format*, proper operation by the compiler is not guaranteed. For excessive arguments, expression evaluation will be performed but no data will be input.
- The control string pointed to by *format* consists of zero or more format commands which are classified into the following 3 types:
  - 1 : Whitespace characters (one or more characters for which isspace becomes true)
  - 2 : Non-whitespace characters (other than %)
  - 3 : Format specifiers
- Each format specifier begins with the % character and is followed by these:

**(1) Optional \* character which suppresses assignment of data to the corresponding argument**

**(2) Optional decimal integer which specifies a maximum field width**

**(3) Optional h, l or L modifier which indicates the object size on the receiving side**

If *h* precedes the *d*, *i*, *o*, or *x* format specifier, the argument is a pointer to not int but short int. If *l* precedes any of these format specifiers, the argument is a pointer to long int.

Likewise, if *h* precedes the *u* format specifier, the argument is a pointer to unsigned short int. If *l* precedes the *u* format specifier, the argument is a pointer to unsigned long int.

If *l* precedes the conversion specifier *e*, *E*, *f*, *g*, *G*, the argument is a pointer to double (a pointer to float in default without *l*). If *L* precedes, it is ignored.

**Remark** Conversion specifier: character to indicate the type of corresponding conversion (to be mentioned later)

- sscanf executes the format commands in "*format*" in sequence and if any format command fails, the function will terminate.

- (1) A white-space character in the control string causes sscanf to read any number (including zero) of whitespace character up to the first non-white-space character (which will not be read). This white-space character command fails if it does not encounter any non-white-space character.
- (2) A non-white-space character causes sscanf to read and discard a matching character. This command fails if the specified character is not found.
- (3) The format commands define a collection of input streams for each type specifier (to be detailed later). The format commands are executed according to the following steps:
  - (a) The input white-space characters (specified by isspace) are skipped over, except when the type specifier is [, c, or n.
  - (b) The input data items are read from the string "s", except when the type specifier is n. The input data items are defined as the longest input stream of the first partial stream of the string indicated by the type specifier (but up to the maximum field width if so specified). The character next to the input data items is interpreted as not have been read. If the length of the input data items is 0, the format command execution fails.
  - (c) The input data items (number of input characters with the type specifier n) are converted to the type specified by the type specifier except the type specifier %. If the input data items do not match with the specified type, the command execution fails. Unless assignment is suppressed by \*, the result of the conversion is stored in the object pointed to by the first argument which follows "*format*" and has not yet received the result of the conversion.

The following type specifiers are available:

Conversion Specifier	Contents
d	Converts a decimal integer (which may be signed). The corresponding argument must be a pointer to an integer.
l	Converts an integer (which may be signed). If a number is preceded by 0x or 0X, the number is interpreted as a hexadecimal integer. If a number is preceded by 0, the number is interpreted as an octal integer. Other numbers are regarded as decimal integers. The corresponding argument must be a pointer to an integer.
o	Converts an octal integer (which may be signed). The corresponding argument must be a pointer to an integer.
u	Converts an unsigned decimal integer. The corresponding argument must be a pointer to an unsigned integer.
x	Converts a hexadecimal integer (which may be signed).

Conversion Specifier	Contents
e, E, f, g, G	<p>Floating point value consists of optional sign (+ or -), one or more consecutive decimal number(s) including decimal point, optional exponent (e or E), and the following optional signed integer value.</p> <p>When overflow occurs as a result of conversion, or when underflow occurs with the conversion result <math>\pm \infty</math>, non-normalized number or <math>\pm 0</math> becomes the conversion result.</p> <p>The corresponding argument is a pointer to float.</p>
s	<p>Input a character string consisting of a non-blank character string.</p> <p>The corresponding argument is a pointer to an integer. 0x or 0X can be allocated at the first hexadecimal integer.</p> <p>The corresponding argument must be a pointer an array that has sufficient size to accommodate this character string and a null terminator.</p> <p>The null terminator will be automatically added.</p>
[	<p>Inputs a character string consisting of expected character groups (called a scanset).</p> <p>The corresponding argument must be a pointer to the first character of an array that has sufficient size to accommodate this character string and a null terminator.</p> <p>The null terminator will be automatically added.</p> <p>The format commands continue from this character up to the closing square bracket ( ) ). The character string (called a scanlist) enclosed in the square brackets constitutes a scanset except when the character immediately after the opening square bracket is a circumflex ( ^ ). When the character is a circumflex, all the characters other than a scanlist between the circumflex and the closing square bracket constitute a scanset. However, when a scanlist begins with [ ] or [^], this closing square bracket is contained in the scanlist and the next closing square list becomes the end of the scanlist.</p> <p>A hyphen (-) at other than the left or right end of a scanlist is interpreted as the punctuation mark for hyphenation if the character at the left of the range specifying hyphen (-) is not smaller than the right-hand character in ASCII code value.</p>
c	<p>Inputs a character string consisting of the number of characters specified by the field width. (If the field width specification is omitted, 1 is assumed.)</p> <p>The corresponding argument must be a pointer to the first character of an array that has sufficient size to accommodate this character string.</p> <p>The null terminator will not be added.</p>
p	<p>Reads an unsigned hexadecimal integer.</p> <p>The corresponding argument must be a pointer to void pointer.</p>
n	<p>Receives no input from the string s.</p> <p>The corresponding argument must be a pointer to an integer. The number of characters that are read thus far by this function from the string "s" is stored in the object that is pointed to by this pointer.</p> <p>The %n format command is not included in the return value assignment count.</p>
%	<p>Reads a % sign.</p> <p>Neither conversion nor assignment takes place.</p>

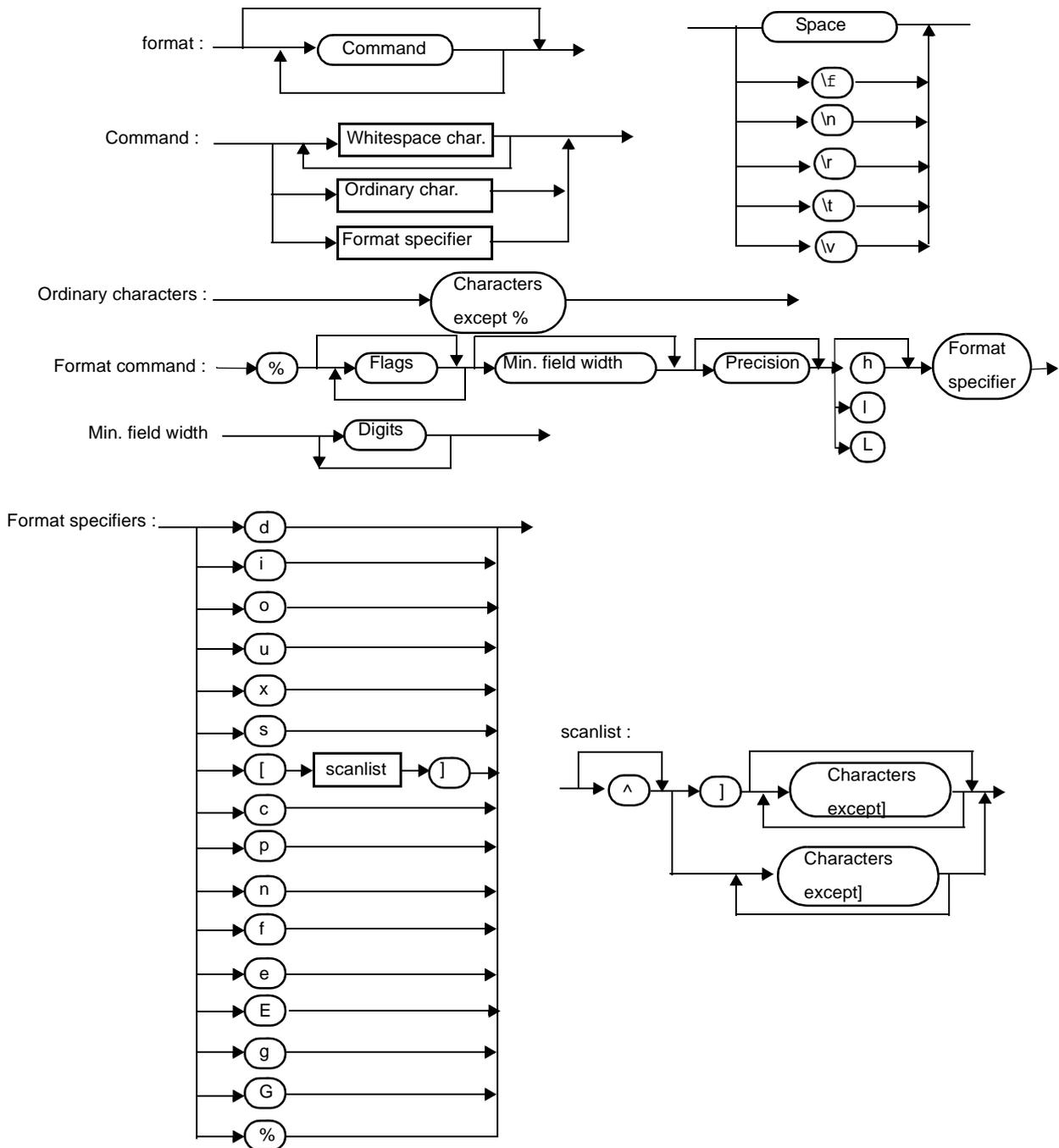
If a format specification is invalid, the format command execution fails.

If a null terminator appears in the input stream, sscanf will terminate.

If an overflow occurs in an integer conversion (with the d, i, o, u, x, or p format specifier), high-order bits will be truncated depending on the number of bits of the data type after the conversion.

The syntax of *format* commands is illustrated below.

Figure 6-3. Syntax of *format* Commands



- With the RL78,78K0R C compiler, the near data pointers (2-byte length) must be specified when the medium model is used, and the far data pointers (4-byte length) must be specified when the large model is used for conversion specifiers s, p, and n that specify pointers as arguments. The function pointer length is fixed to 4 bytes in both models, but the pointer length in each model must be specified as a 2- or 4-byte length when using the pointer as an argument.

**printf**

Outputs data to SFR according to a format

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int printf (const char *format, ...);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>format</i> : Pointer to the character string that indicates the output ... : 0 or more arguments to be converted	Number of character output to s (the null character at the end is not counted)

**[Description]**

- (0 or more) arguments following the *format* are converted and output using the putchar function, according to the output conversion specification specified in the *format*.
- The output conversion specification is 0 or more directives. Normal characters (other than the conversion specification starting with %) are output as is using the putchar function. The conversion specification is output using the putchar function by fetching and converting the following (0 or more) arguments.
- Each conversion specification is the same as that of the sprintf function.

**scanf**

Reads data from SFR according to a format

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int scanf (const char *format, ...);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>format</i> : Pointer to the character string to indicate input conversion specification  ... : Pointer (0 or more) argument to the object to assign the converted value	When the character string s is not null :  Number of input items assigned

**[Description]**

- Performs input using getchar function. Specifies input string permitted by the character string *format* indicates. Uses the argument after the *format* as the pointer to an object. *format* specifies how the conversion is performed by the input string.
- When there are not enough arguments for the *format*, normal operation is not guaranteed. When the argument is excessive, the expression will be evaluated but not input.
- *format* consists of 0 or more directives. The directives are as follows.
  - 1 : One or more null character (character that makes isspace true)
  - 2 : Normal character (other than %)
  - 3 : Conversion indication
- If a conversion ends with a input character which conflicts with the input character, the conflicting input character is rounded down. The conversion indication is the same as that of the sscanf function.

**vprintf**

Outputs data to SFR according to a format

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int vprintf (const char *format, va_list p) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>format</i> : Pointer to the character string that indicates output conversion specification	Number of output characters (the null character at the end is not counted)
<i>p</i> : Pointer to the argument list	

**[Description]**

- The argument that the pointer of the argument list indicates is converted and output using putchar function according to the output conversion specification specified by the *format*.
- Each conversion specification is the same as that of sprintf function.

**vsprintf**

Writes data to a string according to a format

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int vsprintf (char *s, const char *format, va_list p) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s</i> :                      Pointer to the character string that writes the output</p> <p><i>format</i> :                      Pointer to the character string that indicates output conversion specification</p> <p><i>p</i> :                      Pointer to the argument list</p>	<p>Number of characters output to <i>s</i> (the null character at the end is not counted)</p>

**[Description]**

- Writes out the argument that the pointer of argument list indicates to the character strings which *s* indicates according to the output conversion specification specified by *format*.
- The output specification is the same as that of *sprintf* function.

**getchar**

Reads one character from SFR

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int getchar (void) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
None	A character read from SFR

**[Description]**

- Returns the value read from SFR symbol P0 (port 0).
- Error check related to reading is not performed.
- To change SFR to read, it is necessary either that the source be changed to be re-registered to the library or that the user create a new getchar function.

**gets**

Reads a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
char *gets (char *s) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p>s :</p> <p>Pointer to input character string</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>s</p> <p>If the end of the file is detected without reading a character :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- Reads a character string using the getchar function and stores in the array that s indicates.
- When the end of the file is detected (getchar function returns -1) or when a line feed character is read, the reading of a character string ends. The line feed character read is abandoned, and a null character is written at the end of the character stored in the array in the end.
- When the return value is normal, it returns s.
- When the end of the file is detected and no character is read in the array, the contents of the array remains unchanged, and a null pointer is returned.

**putchar**

Outputs one character to SFR

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int putchar (int c);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be output	Character to have been output

**[Description]**

- Writes the character specified by *c* to the SFR symbol P0 (port 0) (converted to unsigned char type).
- Error check related to writing is not performed.
- To change SFR to write, it is necessary either that the source is changed and re-registered to the library or the user create a new putchar function.

**puts**

Outputs a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int puts (const char *s) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<b>s :</b> Pointer to an output character string	Normal : 0 When putchar function returns -1 : -1

**[Description]**

- Writes the character string indicated by *s* using putchar function, a line feed character is added at the end of the output.
- Writing of the null character at the end of the character string is not performed.
- When the return value is normal, 0 is returned, and when putchar function returns -1, -1 is returned.

**\_\_putc**

Outputs one character to opaque

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdio.h>
int      __putc ( int c, void *opaque ) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>c</i> : Character to be output <i>opaque</i> : Pointer to a character output destination	Character to have been output

**[Description]**

- The `__putc` function writes the character specified by *c* (by converting it into the unsigned char type) to the destination indicated by *opaque*. The destination indicated by *opaque* is incremented by 1 byte.
- If *opaque* is 0, the `putc` function is called and the return value of the `putc` function is returned.

### 6.10 Utility Functions

The following utility functions are available.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">atoi</a>	Converts a decimal integer string to int
<a href="#">atol</a>	Converts a decimal integer string to long
<a href="#">strtol</a>	Converts a string to long
<a href="#">strtoul</a>	Converts a string to unsigned long
<a href="#">calloc</a>	Allocates an array's region and initializes it to zero
<a href="#">free</a>	Releases a block of allocated memory
<a href="#">malloc</a>	Allocates a block
<a href="#">realloc</a>	Re-allocates a block
<a href="#">abort</a>	Abnormally terminates the program
<a href="#">atexit</a>	Registers a function to be called at normal termination
<a href="#">exit</a>	Terminates the program
<a href="#">abs</a>	Obtains the absolute value of an int type value
<a href="#">labs</a>	Obtains the absolute value of a long type value
<a href="#">div</a>	Performs int type division, obtains the quotient and remainder
<a href="#">ldiv</a>	Performs long type division, obtains the quotient and remainder
<a href="#">brk</a>	Sets the break value
<a href="#">sbrk</a>	Increases/decreases the break value
<a href="#">atof</a>	Converts a decimal integer string to double
<a href="#">strtod</a>	Converts a string to double
<a href="#">itoa</a>	Converts int to a string
<a href="#">ltoa</a>	Converts long to a string
<a href="#">ultoa</a>	Converts unsigned long to a string
<a href="#">rand</a>	Generates a pseudo-random number
<a href="#">srand</a>	Initializes the pseudo-random number generator state
<a href="#">bsearch</a>	Binary search
<a href="#">qsort</a>	Quick sort
<a href="#">strbrk</a>	Sets the break value
<a href="#">strsbrk</a>	Increases/decreases the break value
<a href="#">strtoa</a>	Converts int to a string
<a href="#">strltoa</a>	Converts long to a string
<a href="#">strultoa</a>	Converts unsigned long to a string

**atoi**

Converts a decimal integer string to int

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int atoi (const char *nptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>nptr</i> :</p> <p>String to be converted</p>	<p>If converted properly :</p> <p>int value</p> <p>If positive overflow occurs :</p> <p>INT_MAX (32,767)</p> <p>If negative overflow occurs :</p> <p>INT_MIN (-32,768)</p> <p>If the string is invalid :</p> <p>0</p>

**[Description]**

- The atoi function converts the first part of the string pointed to by pointer *nptr* to an int value. The atoi function skips over zero or more white-space characters (for which isspace becomes true) from the beginning of the string and converts the string from the character next to the skipped white-spaces to an integer (until other than digits or a null character appears in the string). If no digits to convert is found in the string, the function returns 0.
- If an overflow occurs, the function returns INT\_MAX (32,767) for positive overflow and INT\_MIN (-32,768) for negative overflow.

**atol**

Converts a decimal integer string to long

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long int atol (const char *nptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>nptr</i> :</p> <p>String to be converted</p>	<p>If converted properly :</p> <p>long int value</p> <p>If positive overflow occurs :</p> <p>LONG_MAX (2,147,483,647)</p> <p>If negative overflow occurs :</p> <p>LONG_MIN (-2,147,483,648)</p> <p>If the string is invalid :</p> <p>0</p>

**[Description]**

- The atol function converts the first part of the string pointed to by pointer *nptr* to a long int value. The atol function skips over zero or more white-space characters (for which isspace becomes true) from the beginning of the string and converts the string from the character next to the skipped white-spaces to an integer (until other than digits or null character appears in the string). If no digits to convert is found in the string, the function returns 0.
- If an overflow occurs, the function returns LONG\_MAX (2,147,483,647) for positive overflow and LONG\_MIN (-2,147,483,648) for negative overflow.

**strtol**

Converts a string to long

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long int strtol (const char *nptr, char **endptr, int base) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>nptr</i> : String to be converted	If converted properly : long int value
<i>endptr</i> : Pointer storing pointer pointing to unrecognizable block	If positive overflow occurs : LONG_MAX (2,147,483,647)
<i>base</i> : Base for number represented in the string	If negative overflow occurs : LONG_MIN (-2,147,483,648)
	If not converted : 0

**[Description]**

- The strtol function decomposes the string pointed by pointer *nptr* into the following 3 parts:

- (1) **String of whitespace characters that may be empty (to be specified by isspace)**
- (2) **Integer representation by the *base* determined by the value of *base***
- (3) **String of one or more characters that cannot be recognized (including null terminators)**

**Remark** The strtol function converts the part (2) of the string into an integer and returns this integer value.

- A *base* of 0 indicates that the *base* should be determined from the leading digits of the string. A leading 0x or 0X indicates a hexadecimal number; a leading 0 indicates an octal number; otherwise, the number is interpreted as decimal. (In this case, the number may be signed).
- If the *base* is 2 to 36, the set of letters from a to z or A to Z which can be part of a number (and which may be signed) with any of these bases are taken to represent 10 to 35.  
A leading 0x or 0X is ignored if the *base* is 16.
- If *endptr* is not a null pointer, a pointer to the part (3) of the string is stored in the object pointed to by *endptr*.
- If the correct value causes an overflow, the function returns LONG\_MAX (2,147,483,647) for the positive overflow or LONG\_MIN (-2,147,483,648) for the negative overflow depending on the sign and sets errno to ERANGE (2).
- If the string (2) is empty or the first non-white-space character of the string (ii) is not appropriate for an integer with the given *base*, the function performs no conversion and returns 0. In this case, the value of the string *nptr* is stored in the object pointed to by *endptr* (if it is not a null string). This holds true with the bases 0 and 2 to 36.

**strtoul**

Converts a string to unsigned long

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned long int strtoul (const char *nptr, char **endptr, int base) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>nptr</i> : String to be converted	If converted properly : unsigned long
<i>endptr</i> : Pointer storing pointer pointing to unrecognizable block	If overflow occurs : ULONG_MAX (4,294,967,295U)
<i>base</i> : Base for number represented in the string	If not converted : 0

**[Description]**

- The strtoul function decomposes the string pointed by pointer *nptr* into the following 3 parts:

- (1) **String of white-space characters that may be empty (to be specified by isspace)**
- (2) **Integer representation by the *base* determined by the value of *base***
- (3) **String of one or more characters that cannot be recognized (including null terminators)**

**Remark** The strtoul function converts the part (2) of the string into a unsigned integer and returns this unsigned integer value.

- A *base* of 0 indicates that the *base* should be determined from the leading digits of the string. A leading 0x or 0X indicates a hexadecimal number; a leading 0 indicates an octal number; otherwise, the number is interpreted as decimal.
- If the *base* is 2 to 36, the set of letters from a to z or A to Z which can be part of a number (and which may be signed) with any of these bases are taken to represent 10 to 35. A leading 0x or 0X is ignored if the *base* is 16.
- If *endptr* is not a null pointer, a pointer to the part (3) of the string is stored in the object pointed to by *endptr*.
- If the correct value causes an overflow, the function returns ULONG\_MAX (4,294,967,295U) and sets errno to ERANGE (2).
- If the string (2) is empty or the first non-white-space character of the string (2) is not appropriate for an integer with the given *base*, the function performs no conversion and returns 0. In this case, the value of the string *nptr* is stored in the object pointed to by *endptr* (if it is not a null string). This holds true with the bases 0 and 2 to 36.

**calloc**

Allocates an array's region and initializes it to zero

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void * calloc (size_t nmemb, size_t size);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>nmemb</i> : Number of members in the array	If the requested size is allocated : Pointer to the beginning of the allocated area
<i>size</i> : Size of each member	If the requested size is not allocated : Null pointer

**[Description]**

- The calloc function allocates an area for an array consisting of n number of members (specified by *nmemb*), each of which has the number of bytes specified by *size* and initializes the area (array members) to zero.
- Returns the pointer to the beginning of the allocated area if the requested *size* is allocated.
- Returns the null pointer if the requested *size* is not allocated.
- The memory allocation will start from a break value and the address next to the allocated space will become a new break value. If the new break value is an odd number, the calloc function corrects it to be an even number. See "[brk](#)" for break value setting with the memory function brk.
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the calloc\_n and calloc\_f functions are not available.

**free**

Releases a block of allocated memory

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void free (void *ptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>ptr</i> : Pointer to the beginning of block to be released	None

**[Description]**

- The free function releases the allocated space (before a break value) pointed to by *ptr*. (The malloc, calloc, or realloc called after the free will give you the space that was freed earlier.)
- If *ptr* does not point to the allocated space, the free will take no action. (Freeing the allocated space is performed by setting *ptr* as a new break value.)
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the free\_n and free\_f functions are not available.

**malloc**

Allocates a block

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *malloc (size_t size) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>size</i> : Size of memory block to be allocated	If the requested size is allocated : Pointer to the beginning of the allocated area  If the requested size is not allocated : Null pointer

**[Description]**

- The malloc function allocates a block of memory for the number of bytes specified by *size* and returns a pointer to the first byte of the allocated area.
- If memory cannot be allocated, the function returns a null pointer.
- This memory allocation will start from a break value and the address next to the allocated area will become a new break value. If the new break value is an odd number, the malloc function corrects it to be an even number. See "[brk](#)" for break value setting with the memory function brk.
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the malloc\_n and malloc\_f functions are not available.

**realloc**

Re-allocates a block

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void * realloc (void *ptr, size_t size) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>ptr</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the beginning of block previously allocated</p> <p><i>size</i> :</p> <p>New size to be given to this block</p>	<p>If the requested size is reallocated :</p> <p>Pointer to the beginning of the reallocated space</p> <p>If <i>ptr</i> is a null pointer :</p> <p>Pointer to the beginning of the allocated space</p> <p>If the requested <i>size</i> is not reallocated or "<i>ptr</i>" is not a null pointer :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- The realloc function changes the size of the allocated space (before a break value) pointed to by *ptr* to that specified by *size*. If the value of *size* is greater than the size of the allocated space, the contents of the allocated space up to the original size will remain unchanged. The realloc function allocates only for the increased space. If the value of *size* is less than the size of the allocated space, the function will free the reduced space of the allocated space.
- If *ptr* is a null pointer, the realloc function will newly allocate a block of memory of the specified *size* (same as malloc).
- If *ptr* does not point to the block of memory previously allocated or if no memory can be allocated, the function executes nothing and returns a null pointer.
- Reallocation will be performed by setting the address of *ptr* plus the number of bytes specified by *size* as a new break value. If the new break value is an odd number, the realloc function corrects it to be an even number.
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the realloc\_n and realloc\_f functions are not available.

**abort**

Abnormally terminates the program

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void abort (void) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
None	No return to its caller.

**[Description]**

- The abort function loops and can never return to its caller.
- The user must create the abort processing routine.

**atexit**

Registers a function to be called at normal termination

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int atexit (void (*func) (void) );
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>func</i> : Pointer to function to be registered	If function is registered as wrap-up function : 0 If function cannot be registered : 1

**[Description]**

- The atexit function registers the wrap-up function pointed to by *func* so that it is called without argument upon normal program termination by calling exit or returning from main.
- Up to 32 wrap-up functions may be established. If the wrap-up function can be registered, atexit returns 0. If no more wrap-up function can be registered because 32 wrap-up functions have already been registered, the function returns 1.

**exit**

Terminates the program

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void exit (int status) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>status</i> : Status value indicating termination	exit can never return.

**[Description]**

- The exit function causes immediate, normal termination of a program.
- This function calls the wrap-up functions in the reverse of the order in which they were registered with atexit.
- The exit function loops and can never return to its caller.
- The user must create the exit processing routine.

**abs**

Obtains the absolute value of an int type value

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int abs (int j) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>j</i> : Any signed integer for which absolute value is to be obtained	If <i>j</i> falls within $-32,767 \leq j \leq 32,767$ : Absolute value of <i>j</i> If <i>j</i> is $-32,768$ : $-32,768$ (0x8000)

**[Description]**

- The abs returns the absolute value of its int type argument.
- If *j* is  $-32,768$ , the function returns  $-32,768$ .

**labs**

Obtains the absolute value of a long type value

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long int labs (long int j) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>j</i> : Any signed integer for which absolute value is to be obtained	If <i>j</i> falls within $-2,147,483,647 \leq j \leq 2,147,483,647$ : Absolute value of <i>j</i> If the value of <i>j</i> is $-2,147,483,648$ : $-2147483,648$ (0x80000000)

**[Description]**

- The labs returns the absolute value of its long type argument.
- If the value of *j* is  $-2,147,483,648$ , the function returns  $-2,147,483,648$ .

**div**

Performs int type division, obtains the quotient and remainder

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
div_t div (int numer, int denom) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>numer</i> : Numerator of the division  <i>denom</i> : Denominator of the division	Quotient to the quot element and the remainder to the rem element of div_t type member

**[Description]**

- The div function performs the integer division of numerator divided by denominator.
- The absolute value of quotient is defined as the largest integer not greater than the absolute value of *numer* divided by the absolute value of *denom*. The remainder always has the same sign as the result of the division (plus if *numer* and *denom* have the same sign; otherwise minus).
- The remainder is the value of  $numer - denom * quotient$ .
- If *denom* is 0, the quotient becomes 0 and the remainder becomes *numer*.  
 In case of RL78 mounted expansion instructions
  - If *denom* is 0
    - The quotient becomes -1 (FFFFH) at  $numer \geq 0$ ,
    - The quotient becomes 1 at  $numer < 0$  and the remainder becomes *numer*.
- If *numer* is -32,768 and *denom* is -1, the quotient becomes -32,768 and the remainder becomes 0.

**ldiv**

Performs long type division, obtains the quotient and remainder

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
ldiv_t ldiv (long int numer, long int denom) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>numer</i> : Numerator of the division  <i>denom</i> : Denominator of the division	Quotient to the quot element and the remainder to the rem element of ldiv_t type member

**[Description]**

- The ldiv function performs the long integer division of numerator divided by denominator.
- The absolute value of quotient is defined as the largest long int type integer not greater than the absolute value of *numer* divided by the absolute value of *denom*. The remainder always has the same sign as the result of the division (plus if *numer* and *denom* have the same sign; otherwise minus).
- The remainder is the value of  $numer - denom * quotient$ .
- If *denom* is 0, the quotient becomes 0 and the remainder becomes *numer*.  
 In case of RL78 mounted expansion instructions
  - If *denom* is 0
    - The quotient becomes -1 (FFFFFFFFH) at  $numer \geq 0$ ,
    - The quotient becomes 1 at  $numer < 0$  and the remainder becomes *numer*.
- If *numer* is -2,147,483,648 and *denom* is -1, the quotient becomes -2,147,483,648 and the remainder becomes 0.

**brk**

Sets the break value

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int brk (char *endds) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>endds</i> : Break value to be set block to be released	If converted properly : 0 If break value cannot be changed : -1

**[Description]**

- The brk function sets the value given by *endds* as a break value (the address next to the end address of an allocated block of memory).
- If *endds* is outside the permissible address range, the function sets no break value and sets *errno* to ENOMEM (3).
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the brk\_n and brk\_f functions are not available.

**sbrk**

Increases/decreases the break value

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *sbrk (int incr );
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>incr</i> :</p> <p>Value (bytes) by which set break value is to be incremented/decremented.</p>	<p>If converted properly :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Old break value</p> <p>If old break value cannot be incremented or decremented :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">-1</p>

**[Description]**

- The sbrk function increments or decrements the set break value by the number of bytes specified by *incr*. (Increment or decrement is determined by the plus or minus sign of *incr*.)
- If an odd number is specified for *incr*, the sbrk function corrects it to be an even number.
- If the incremented or decremented break value is outside the permissible address range, the function does not change the original break value and sets errno to ENOMEM (3).
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the sbrk\_n and sbrk\_f functions are not available.

**atof**

Converts a decimal integer string to double

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
double atof (const char *nptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>nptr</i> :</p> <p>String to be converted</p>	<p>If converted properly :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Converted value</p> <p>If positive overflow occurs :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">HUGE_VAL (with sign of overflowed value)</p> <p>If negative overflow occurs :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">0</p> <p>If the string is invalid :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">0</p>

**[Description]**

- The atof function converts the string pointed to by pointer *nptr* to a double value. The atof function skips over zero or more whitespace characters (for which isspace becomes true) from the beginning of the string and converts the string from the character next to the skipped whitespaces to a floating point number (until other than digits or a null character appears in the string).
- A floating point number is returned when converted properly.
- If an overflow occurs on conversion, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of the overflowed value is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If valid digits are deleted due to an underflow or an overflow, a non-normalized number and +0 are returned respectively, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If conversion cannot be performed, 0 is returned.

**strtod**

Converts a string to double

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
double strtod (const char *nptr, char **endptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>nptr</i> : String to be converted  <i>endptr</i> : Pointer storing pointer pointing to unrecognizable block	If converted properly : Converted value  If positive overflow occurs : HUGE_VAL (with sign of overflowed value)  If negative overflow occurs : 0  If the string is invalid : 0

**[Description]**

- The strtod function converts the string pointed to by pointer *nptr* to a double value.  
 The strtod function skips over zero or more white-space characters (for which isspace becomes true) from the beginning of the string and converts the string from the character next to the skipped white-spaces to a floating-point number (until other than digits or null character appears in the string).  
 If a character string starts with a character that does not satisfy this format, scanning is terminated. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, a pointer that starts with a character that may be a blank is stored in *endptr*.
- A floating-point number is returned when converted properly.
- If an overflow occurs on conversion, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of the overflowed value is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If valid digits are deleted due to an underflow or an overflow, a non-normalized number and +0 are returned respectively, and ERANGE is set to errno. In addition, *endptr* stores a pointer for next character string at that time.
- If conversion cannot be performed, 0 is returned.

**itoa**

Converts int to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *itoa (int value, char *string, int radix);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>value</i> : String to which integer is to be converted	If converted properly : Pointer to the converted string  If not converted properly : Null pointer
<i>string</i> : Pointer to the conversion result	
<i>radix</i> : Base of output string	

**[Description]**

- The itoa, ltoa, and ultoa functions all convert the integer value specified by *value* to its string equivalent which is terminated with a null character and store the result in the area pointed to by "*string*".
- The *base* of the output string is determined by *radix*, which must be in the range 2 through 36. Each function performs conversion based on the specified *radix* and returns a pointer to the converted string. If the specified *radix* is outside the range 2 through 36, the function performs no conversion and returns a null pointer.

**ltoa**

Converts long to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *ltoa (long value, char *string, int radix);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>value</i> : String to which integer is to be converted	If converted properly : Pointer to the converted string  If not converted properly : Null pointer
<i>string</i> : Pointer to the conversion result	
<i>radix</i> : Base of output string	

**[Description]**

- The itoa, ltoa, and ultoa functions all convert the integer value specified by *value* to its string equivalent which is terminated with a null character and store the result in the area pointed to by "*string*".
- The *base* of the output string is determined by *radix*, which must be in the range 2 through 36. Each function performs conversion based on the specified *radix* and returns a pointer to the converted string. If the specified *radix* is outside the range 2 through 36, the function performs no conversion and returns a null pointer.

**ultoa**

Converts unsigned long to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *ultoa (unsigned long value, char *string, int radix) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>value</i> :</p> <p>String to which integer is to be converted</p> <p><i>string</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the conversion result</p> <p><i>radix</i> :</p> <p>Base of output string</p>	<p>If converted properly :</p> <p>Pointer to the converted string</p> <p>If not converted properly :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- The itoa, ltoa, and ultoa functions all convert the integer value specified by *value* to its string equivalent which is terminated with a null character and store the result in the area pointed to by "*string*".
- The *base* of the output string is determined by *radix*, which must be in the range 2 through 36. Each function performs conversion based on the specified *radix* and returns a pointer to the converted string. If the specified *radix* is outside the range 2 through 36, the function performs no conversion and returns a null pointer.

**rand**

Generates a pseudo-random number

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>  
int rand (void) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
None	Pseudorandom integer in the range of 0 to RAND_MAX

**[Description]**

- Each time the rand function is called, it returns a pseudorandom integer in the range of 0 to RAND\_MAX.

**srand**

Initializes the pseudo-random number generator state

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void srand (unsigned int seed );
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>seed</i> : Starting value for pseudorandom number generator	None

**[Description]**

- The `srand` function sets a starting value for a sequence of random numbers. *seed* is used to set a starting point for a progression of random numbers that is a return value when `rand` is called. If the same *seed* value is used, the sequence of pseudorandom numbers is the same when `srand` is called again.
- Calling `rand` before `srand` is used to set a *seed* is the same as calling `rand` after `srand` has been called with *seed* = 1. (The default *seed* is 1.)

**bsearch**

Binary search

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *bsearch (const void *key, const void *base, size_t nmemb, size_t size,
              int (*compare) (const void *, const void *) );
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>key</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to key for which search is made</p> <p><i>base</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to sorted array which contains information to search</p> <p><i>nmemb</i> :</p> <p>Number of array elements</p> <p><i>size</i> :</p> <p>Size of an array</p> <p><i>compare</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to function used to compare 2 keys</p>	<p>If the array contains the key :</p> <p>Pointer to the first member that matches "<i>key</i>"</p> <p>If the key is not contained in the array :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- The bsearch function performs a binary search on the sorted array pointed to by *base* and returns a pointer to the first member that matches the key pointed to by *key*. The array pointed to by *base* must be an array which consists of *nmemb* number of members each of which has the size specified by *size* and must have been sorted in ascending order.
- The function pointed to by *compare* takes 2 arguments (*key* as the 1st argument and array element as the 2nd argument), compares the 2 arguments, and returns:
  - Negative value if the 1st argument is less than the 2nd argument
  - 0 if both arguments are equal
  - Positive integer if the 1st argument is greater than the 2nd argument

**qsort**

Quick sort

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void qsort (void *base, size_t nmemb, size_t size, int (*compare) (const void *, const void *) );
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>base</i> : Pointer to array to be sorted <i>nmemb</i> : Number of members in the array <i>size</i> : Size of an array member <i>compare</i> : Pointer to function used to compare 2 keys	None

**[Description]**

- The qsort function sorts the members of the array pointed to by *base* in ascending order.  
 The array pointed to by *base* consists of *nmemb* number of members each of that has the size specified by *size*.
- The function pointed to by *compare* takes 2 arguments (array elements 1 and 2), compares the 2 arguments, and returns:
  - The array element 1 as the 1st argument and array element 2 as the 2nd argument
    - Negative value if the 1st argument is less than the 2nd argument
    - 0 if both arguments are equal
    - Positive integer if the 1st argument is greater than the 2nd argument
- If the 2 array elements are equal, the element nearest to the top of the array will be sorted first.

**strbrk**

Sets the break value

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int strbrk (char *ends) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>ends</i> : Break value to set	Normal : 0 When a break value cannot be changed : -1

**[Description]**

- Sets the value given by *ends* to the break value (the address following the address at the end of the area to be allocated).
- When *ends* is out of the permissible range, the break value is not changed. ENOMEM(3) is set to *errno* and -1 is returned.
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the *strbrk\_n* and *strbrk\_f* functions are not available.

**strsbrk**

Increases/decreases the break value

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *strsbrk (int incr ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>incr</i> : Amount to increase/decrease a break value	Normal : Old break value When a break value cannot be increased/decreased : -1

**[Description]**

- *incr* byte increases/decreases a break value (depending on the sign of *incr*).
- When the break value is out of the permissible range after increasing/decreasing, a break value is not changed. ENOMEM(3) is set to *errno*, and -1 is returned.
- Since the areas to be allocated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler exist in the internal RAM, argument *ptr* is always the near pointer. Therefore, the *strsbrk\_n* and *strsbrk\_f* functions are not available.

**strtoa**

Converts int to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *strtoa (int value, char *string, int radix) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>value</i> : String to be converted  <i>string</i> : Pointer to the conversion result  <i>radix</i> : Radix to specify	Normal : Pointer to the converted character string  Others : Null pointer

**[Description]**

- Converts the specified numeric value *value* to the character string that ends with a null character, and the result will be stored to the area specified with *string*. The conversion is performed by the *radix* specified, and the pointer to the converted character string will be returned.
- *radix* must be the value range between 2 to 36. In other cases, the conversion is not performed and a null pointer is returned.

**strltoa**

Converts long to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *strltoa (long value, char *string, int radix) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>value</i> : String to be converted  <i>string</i> : Pointer to the conversion result  <i>radix</i> : Radix to specify	Normal : Pointer to the converted character string  Others : Null pointer

**[Description]**

- Converts the specified numeric value *value* to the character string that ends with a null character, and the result will be stored to the area specified with *string*. The conversion is performed by the *radix* specified, and the pointer to the converted character string will be returned.
- *radix* must be the value range between 2 to 36. In other cases, the conversion is not performed and a null pointer is returned.

**strultoa**

Converts unsigned long to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
char *strultoa (unsigned long value, char *string, int radix) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>value</i> :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">String to be converted</p> <p><i>string</i> :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Pointer to the conversion result</p> <p><i>radix</i> :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Radix to specify</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Pointer to the converted character string</p> <p>Others :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- Converts the specified numeric value *value* to the character string that ends with a null character, and the result will be stored to the area specified with *string*. The conversion is performed by the *radix* specified, and the pointer to the converted character string will be returned.
- *radix* must be the value range between 2 to 36. In other cases, the conversion is not performed and a null pointer is returned.

### 6.11 String and Memory Functions

The following character string and memory functions are available.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">memcpy</a>	Copies a buffer for the specified number of characters
<a href="#">memmove</a>	Copies a buffer for the specified number of characters
<a href="#">strcpy</a>	Copies a string
<a href="#">strncpy</a>	Copies the specified number of characters from the start of a string
<a href="#">strcat</a>	Appends a string to a string
<a href="#">strncat</a>	Appends the specified number of characters of a string to a string
<a href="#">memcmp</a>	Compares the specified number of characters of two buffers
<a href="#">strcmp</a>	Compares two strings
<a href="#">strncmp</a>	Compares the specified number of characters of two strings
<a href="#">memchr</a>	Searches for the specified string in the specified number of characters of a buffer
<a href="#">strchr</a>	Searches for the specified character from within a string and returns the location of the first occurrence
<a href="#">strrchr</a>	Searches for the specified character from within a string and returns the location of the last occurrence
<a href="#">strspn</a>	Obtains the length from the start of a segment composed of only the characters included in the specified string within the string being searched
<a href="#">strcspn</a>	Obtains the length from the start of a segment composed of characters other than those included in the specified string within the string being searched
<a href="#">strpbrk</a>	Obtains the position of the first occurrence of any character in the specified string within the string being searched
<a href="#">strstr</a>	Obtains the position of the first occurrence of the specified string within the string being searched
<a href="#">strtok</a>	Decomposing character string into a string consisting of characters other than delimiters.
<a href="#">memset</a>	Initializes the specified number of characters of a buffer with the specified character
<a href="#">strerror</a>	Returns a pointer to the area that stores the error message string which corresponds to the specified error number
<a href="#">strlen</a>	Obtains the length of a string
<a href="#">strcoll</a>	Compares two strings based on region specific information
<a href="#">strxfrm</a>	Transforms a string based on region specific information

**memcpy**

Copies a buffer for the specified number of characters

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
void *memcpy (void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> : Pointer to object into which data is to be copied</p> <p><i>s2</i> : Pointer to object containing data to be copied</p> <p><i>n</i> : Number of characters to be copied</p>	<p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The memcpy function copies *n* number of consecutive bytes from the object pointed to by *s2* to the object pointed to by *s1*.
- If  $s2 < s1 < s2 + n$  (*s1* and *s2* overlap), the memory copy operation by memcpy is not guaranteed (because copying starts in sequence from the beginning of the area).

**memmove**

Copies a buffer for the specified number of characters (Even if the buffer overlaps, the function performs memory copying properly)

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
void *memmove (void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> : Pointer to object into which data is to be copied</p> <p><i>s2</i> : Pointer to object containing data to be copied</p> <p><i>n</i> : Number of characters to be copied</p>	<p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The memmove function also copies *n* number of consecutive bytes from the object pointed to by *s2* to the object pointed to by *s1*.
- Even if *s1* and *s2* overlap, the function performs memory copying properly.

**strcpy**

Copies a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strcpy (char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> : Pointer to copy destination array</p> <p><i>s2</i> : Pointer to copy source array</p>	<p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The strcpy function copies the contents of the character string pointed to by *s2* to the array pointed to by *s1* (including the terminating character).
- If  $s2 < s1 < (s2 + \text{Character length to be copied})$ , the behavior of strcpy is not guaranteed (as copying starts in sequence from the beginning, not from the specified string).

**strncpy**

Copies the specified number of characters from the start of a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strncpy (char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to copy destination array</p> <p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to copy source array</p> <p><i>n</i> :</p> <p>Number of characters to be copied</p>	<p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The strncpy function copies up to the characters specified by *n* from the string pointed to by *s2* to the array pointed to by *s1*.
- If  $s2 < s1 < (s2 + \text{Character length to be copied or minimum value of } s2 + n - 1)$ , the behavior of strncpy is not guaranteed (as copying starts in sequence from the beginning, not from the specified string).
- If the character string pointed to by *s2* is less than the number of characters specified by *n*, the strncpy function copies characters up to the terminating null character, and appends null characters until the number of copied characters reaches *n*.

**strcat**

Appends a string to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strcat (char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to a string to which a copy of another string (<i>s2</i>) is to be concatenated</p> <p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to a string, copy of which is to be concatenated to another string (<i>s1</i>)</p>	<p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The strcat function concatenates a copy of the string pointed to by *s2* (including the null terminator) to the string pointed to by *s1*. The null terminator originally ending *s1* is overwritten by the first character of *s2*.
- When copying is performed between objects overlapping each other, the operation is not guaranteed.

**strncat**

Appends the specified number of characters of a string to a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strncat (char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to a string to which a copy of another string (<i>s2</i>) is to be concatenated</p> <p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to a string, copy of which is to be concatenated to another string (<i>s1</i>)</p> <p><i>n</i> :</p> <p>Number of characters to be concatenated</p>	<p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The strncat function concatenates not more than the characters specified by *n* of the string pointed to by *s2* (excluding the null terminator) to the string pointed to by *s1*. The null terminator originally ending *s1* is overwritten by the first character of *s2*.
- If the string pointed to by *s2* has fewer characters than specified by *n*, the strncat function concatenates the string including the null terminator. If there are more characters than specified by *n*, the *n* character section is concatenated starting from the top.
- The null terminator must always be concatenated.
- When copying is performed between objects overlapping each other, the operation is not guaranteed.

**memcmp**

Compares the specified number of characters of two buffers

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
int memcmp (const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>s1</i> : Pointers to 2 data objects to be compared <i>s2</i> : Pointers to 2 data objects to be compared <i>n</i> : Number of characters to compare	If the <i>n</i> characters of both <i>s1</i> and <i>s2</i> are compared and found to be the same : 0 If the <i>n</i> characters of both <i>s1</i> and <i>s2</i> are compared and found to be different : Value differences that converted the initial differing characters into int ( <i>s1</i> letters - <i>s2</i> letters )

**[Description]**

- The memcmp function uses the *n* characters to compare the objects indicated by both *s1* and *s2*.
- The memcmp function returns 0, when the *n* characters of both *s1* and *s2* are compared and found to be the same.
- The memcmp function returns the value differences (*s1* letters - *s2* letters) that converted the initial differing characters into int if, the *n* characters of both *s1* and *s2* are compared and found to be different.

**strcmp**

Compares two strings

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
int strcmp (const char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> : Pointer to one string to be compared</p> <p><i>s2</i> : Pointer to the other string to be compared</p>	<p>If <i>s1</i> is equal to <i>s2</i> : 0</p> <p>If <i>s1</i> is less than or greater than <i>s2</i> : Value differences that converted the initial differing characters into int (<i>s1</i> letters - <i>s2</i> letters)</p>

**[Description]**

- The strcmp function uses to compare the character strings indicated by both *s1* and *s2*.
- If *s1* is equal to *s2*, the function returns 0. If *s1* is less than or greater than *s2*, the strcmp function returns the value differences (*s1* letters - *s2* letters) that converted the initial differing characters into int.

**strncmp**

Compares the specified number of characters of two strings

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
int strncmp (const char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>s1</i> : Pointer to one string to be compared <i>s2</i> : Pointer to the other string to be compared <i>n</i> : Number of characters to compare	If the <i>n</i> characters of both <i>s1</i> and <i>s2</i> are compared and found to be the same : 0 If the <i>n</i> characters of both <i>s1</i> and <i>s2</i> are compared and found to be different : Value differences that converted the initial differing characters into int ( <i>s1</i> letters - <i>s2</i> letters)

**[Description]**

- The strncmp function uses the *n* characters to compare the objects indicated by both *s1* and *s2*.
- The strncmp function returns 0, when the *n* characters of both *s1* and *s2* are compared and found to be the same. The strncmp function returns the value differences (*s1* letters - *s2* letters) that converted the initial differing characters into int if, the *n* characters of both *s1* and *s2* are compared and found to be different.

**memchr**

Searches for the specified string in the specified number of characters of a buffer

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
void *memchr (const void *s, int c, size_t n);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s</i> : Pointer to objects in memory subject to search</p> <p><i>c</i> : Character to be searched</p> <p><i>n</i> : Number of bytes to be searched</p>	<p>If <i>c</i> is found : Pointer to the first occurrence of <i>c</i></p> <p>If <i>c</i> is not found : Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- The memchr function first converts the character specified by *c* to unsigned char and then returns a pointer to the first occurrence of this character within the *n* number of bytes from the beginning of the object pointed to by *s*.
- If the character is not found, the function returns a null pointer.

**strchr**

Searches for the specified character from within a string and returns the location of the first occurrence

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strchr (const char *s, int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to string to be searched</p>	<p>If <i>c</i> is found in <i>s</i> :</p> <p>Pointer indicating the first occurrence of <i>c</i> in string <i>s</i></p>
<p><i>c</i> :</p> <p>Character specified for search</p>	<p>If <i>c</i> is not found in <i>s</i> :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- The strchr function searches the string pointed to by *s* for the character specified by *c* and returns a pointer to the first occurrence of *c* (converted to char type) in the string.
- The null terminator is regarded as part of the string.
- If the specified character is not found in the string, the function returns a null pointer.

**strrchr**

Searches for the specified character from within a string and returns the location of the last occurrence

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strrchr (const char *s, int c) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<b>s :</b> Pointer to string to be searched	If <b>c</b> is found in <b>s</b> : Pointer indicating the last occurrence of <b>c</b> in string <b>s</b>
<b>c :</b> Character specified for searches	If <b>c</b> is not found in <b>s</b> : Null pointer

**[Description]**

- The `strrchr` function searches the string pointed to by `s` for the character specified by `c` and returns a pointer to the last occurrence of `c` (converted to `char` type) in the string.
- The null terminator is regarded as part of the string.
- If no match is found, the function returns a null pointer.

**strspn**

Obtains the length from the start of a segment composed of only the characters included in the specified string within the string being searched

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
size_t strspn (const char *s1, const char *s2);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>s1</i> : Pointer to string to be searched  <i>s2</i> : Pointer to string whose characters are specified for match	Length of substring of the string <i>s1</i> that is made up of only those characters contained in the string <i>s2</i>

**[Description]**

- The strspn function returns the length of the substring of the string pointed to by *s1* that is made up of only those characters contained in the string pointed to by *s2*. In other words, this function returns the index of the first character in the string *s1* that does not match any of the characters in the string *s2*.
- The null terminator of *s2* is not regarded as part of *s2*.

**strcspn**

Obtains the length from the start of a segment composed of characters other than those included in the specified string within the string being searched

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
size_t strcspn (const char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>s1</i> : Pointer to string to be searched  <i>s2</i> : Pointer to string whose characters are specified for match	Length of substring of the string <i>s1</i> that is made up of only those characters not contained in the <i>s2</i>

**[Description]**

- The strcspn function returns the length of the substring of the string pointed to by *s1* that is made up of only those characters not contained in the string pointed to by *s2*. In other words, this function returns the index of the first character in the string *s1* that matches any of the characters in the string *s2*.
- The null terminator of *s2* is not regarded as part of *s2*.

**strpbrk**

Obtains the position of the first occurrence of any character in the specified string within the string being searched

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strpbrk (const char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to string to be searched</p> <p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to string whose characters are specified for match</p>	<p>If any match is found :</p> <p>Pointer to the first character in the string <i>s1</i> that matches any character in the string <i>s2</i></p> <p>If no match is found :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- The strpbrk function returns a pointer to the first character in the string pointed to by *s1* that matches any character in the string pointed to by *s2*.
- If none of the characters in the string *s2* is found in the string *s1*, the function returns a null pointer.

**strstr**

Obtains the position of the first occurrence of the specified string within the string being searched

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strstr (const char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to string to be searched</p> <p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to specified string</p>	<p>If <i>s2</i> is found in <i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to the first appearance in the string <i>s1</i> of the string <i>s2</i></p> <p>If <i>s2</i> is not found in <i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Null pointer</p> <p>If <i>s2</i> is a null string :</p> <p>Value of <i>s1</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The strstr function returns a pointer to the first appearance in the string pointed to by *s1* of the string pointed to by *s2* (except the null terminator of *s2*).
- If the string *s2* is not found in the string *s1*, the function returns a null pointer.
- If the string *s2* is a null string, the function returns the value of *s1*.

**strtok**

Obtains the length of a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strtok (char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to string from which tokens are to be obtained or null pointer</p> <p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to string containing delimiters of token</p>	<p>If it is found :</p> <p>Pointer to the first character of a token</p> <p>If there is no token to return :</p> <p>Null pointer</p>

**[Description]**

- A token is a string consisting of characters other than delimiters in the string to be specified.
- If *s1* is a null pointer, the string pointed to by the saved pointer in the previous strtok call will be decomposed. However, if the saved pointer is a null pointer, the function returns a null pointer without doing anything.
- If *s1* is not a null pointer, the string pointed to by *s1* will be decomposed.
- The strtok function searches the string pointed to by *s1* for any character not contained in the string pointed to by *s2*. If no character is found, the function changes the saved pointer to a null pointer and returns it. If any character is found, the character becomes the first character of a token.
- If the first character of a token is found, the function searches for any characters contained in the string *s2* after the first character of the token. If none of the characters is found, the function changes the saved pointer to a null pointer. If any of the characters is found, the character is overwritten by a null character and a pointer to the next character becomes a pointer to be saved.
- The function returns a pointer to the first character of the token.

**memset**

Initializes the specified number of characters of a buffer with the specified character

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
void *memset (void *s, int c, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s</i> : Pointer to object in memory to be initialized</p> <p><i>c</i> : Character whose value is to be assigned to each byte</p> <p><i>n</i> : Number of bytes to be initialized</p>	<p>Value of <i>s</i></p>

**[Description]**

- The memset function first converts the character specified by *c* to unsigned char and then assigns the value of this character to the *n* number of bytes from the beginning of the object pointed to by *s*.

**strerror**

Returns a pointer to the area that stores the error message string which corresponds to the specified error number

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
char *strerror (int errnum) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<i>errnum</i> : Error number	If message associated with error number exists : Pointer to string describing error message If no message associated with error number exists : Null pointer

**[Description]**

- The `strerror` function returns the following values associated with the value of *errnum*.

Value of <i>errnum</i>	Return Value
0	Pointer to the string "Error 0"
1 (EDOM)	Pointer to the string "Argument too large"
2 (ERANGE)	Pointer to the string "Result too large"
3 (ENOMEM)	Pointer to the string "Not enough memory"
Others	Null pointer

- Error message strings are allocated in a far area, so the return value is always a far pointer. This is why there are no `strerror_n/strerror_f` functions.

**strlen**

Obtains the length of a string

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
size_t strlen (const char *s) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
s : Pointer to character string	Length of string s

**[Description]**

- The strlen function returns the length of the null terminated string pointed to by s.

**strcoll**

Compares two strings based on region specific information

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
int strcoll (const char *s1, const char *s2) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> : Pointer to comparison character string</p> <p><i>s2</i> : Pointer to comparison character string</p>	<p>When character strings <i>s1</i> and <i>s2</i> are equal : 0</p> <p>When character strings <i>s1</i> and <i>s2</i> are different : The difference between the values whose first different characters are converted to int (character of <i>s1</i> - character of <i>s2</i>)</p>

**[Description]**

- The RL78,78K0R C compiler does not support operations specific to cultural sphere.  
The operations are the same as that of strcmp.

**strxfrm**

Transforms a string based on region specific information

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <string.h>
size_t strxfrm (char *s1, const char *s2, size_t n) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>s1</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to a compared character string</p>	<p>Returns the length of the character string of the result of the conversion (does not include a character string to indicate the end).</p> <p>If the returned value is <i>n</i> or more, the contents of the array indicated by <i>s1</i> is undefined.</p>
<p><i>s2</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to a compared character string</p>	
<p><i>n</i> :</p> <p>Maximum number of characters to <i>s1</i></p>	

**[Description]**

- The RL78,78K0R C compiler does not support operations specific to cultural sphere.

The operations are the same as those of the following functions.

```
strncpy (s1, s2, c) ;
return (strlen (s2) ) ;
```

## 6.12 Mathematical Functions

The following mathematical functions are available.

Function Name	Purpose
acos	Finds acos
asin	Finds asin
atan	Finds atan
atan2	Finds atan2
cos	Finds cos
sin	Finds sin
tan	Finds tan
cosh	Finds cosh
sinh	Finds sinh
tanh	Finds tanh
exp	Finds the exponential function
frexp	Finds mantissa and exponent part
ldexp	Finds $x * 2^{\text{exp}}$
log	Finds the natural logarithm
log10	Finds the base 10 logarithm
modf	Finds the decimal and integer parts
pow	Finds yth power of x
sqrt	Finds the square root
ceil	Finds the smallest integer not smaller than x
fabs	Finds the absolute value of floating point number x
floor	Finds the largest integer not larger than x
fmod	Finds the remainder of x/y
matherr	Obtains the exception processing for the library handling floating point numbers
acosf	Finds acos
asinf	Finds asin
atanf	Finds atan
atan2f	Finds atan of y/x
cosf	Finds cos
sinf	Finds sin
tanf	Finds tan
coshf	Finds cosh
sinhf	Finds sinh
tanhf	Finds tanh
expf	Finds the exponential function
frexpf	Finds mantissa and exponent part

Function Name	Purpose
ldexpf	Finds $x * 2 ^ \text{exp}$
logf	Finds the natural logarithm
log10f	Finds the base 10 logarithm
modff	Finds the decimal and integer parts
powf	Finds yth power of x
sqrtf	Finds the square root
ceilf	Finds the smallest integer not smaller than x
fabsf	Finds the absolute value of floating point number x
floorf	Finds the largest integer not larger than x
fmodf	Finds the remainder of x/y

**acos**

Finds acos

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double acos (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
x : Numeric value to perform operation	When $-1 \leq x \leq 1$ : acos of x When $x < -1, 1 < x, x = \text{NaN}$ : NaN

**[Description]**

- Calculates acos of  $x$  (range between 0 and  $\pi$ ).
- In the case of the definition area error of  $x < -1, 1 < x$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set.
- When  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.

**asin**

Finds asin

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double asin (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>When <math>-1 \leq x \leq 1</math> :</p> <p>asin of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; -1, 1 &lt; x, x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = -0</math> :</p> <p>-0</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates asin (range between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$ ) of *x*.
- In the case of area error of  $x < -1, 1 < x$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- When *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- When *x* is -0, -0 is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of conversion, a non-normalized number is returned.

**atan**

Finds atan

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double atan (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>atan of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = -0 :</p> <p>-0</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates atan (range between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$ ) of *x*.
- When *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- When *x* is -0, -0 is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of conversion, a non-normalized number is returned.

**atan2**

Finds atan of y/x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double atan2 (double y, double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><b>x :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><b>y :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal : atan of y/x</p> <p>When both x and y are 0 or y/x is the value that cannot be expressed, or either x or y is NaN and both x and y are <math>\pm \infty</math> : NaN</p> <p>When underflow occurs : Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- atan (range between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ ) of y/x is calculated.
- When both x and y are 0 or y/x is the value that cannot be expressed, or when both x and y are infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If either x or y is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, non-normalized number is returned.

**cos**

Finds cos

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double cos (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>cos of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, when <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates cos of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If the absolute value of *x* is extremely large, the result of an operation becomes an almost meaningless value.

**sin**

Finds sin

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double sin (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>sin of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, when <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates sin of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.
- If the absolute value of *x* is extremely large, the result of an operation becomes an almost meaningless value.

**tan**

Finds tan

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double tan (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>tan of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math>, <math>x = \pm \infty</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates tan of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.
- If the absolute value of *x* is extremely large, the result of an operation becomes an almost meaningless value.

**cosh**

Finds cosh

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double cosh (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>cosh of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = ± ∞:</p> <p>+∞</p> <p>When overflow occurs</p> <p>HUGE_VAL (with the sign of the overflown value)</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates cosh of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, a positive infinite value is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with a positive sign is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.

**sinh**

Finds sinh

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double sinh (double x);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>sinh of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = ±∞ :</p> <p>±∞</p> <p>When overflow occurs :</p> <p>HUGE_VAL (with the sign of the overflowed value)</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>±0</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates sinh of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is ±∞, ±∞ is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of the overflowed value is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, +0 is returned.

**tanh**

Finds tanh

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double tanh (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><math>x</math> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>tanh of <math>x</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm \infty</math> :</p> <p><math>\pm 1</math></p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p><math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates tanh of  $x$ .
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $\pm \infty$ ,  $\pm 1$  is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**exp**

Finds the exponential function

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double exp (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Exponent function of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = +∞ :</p> <p>+∞</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = -∞ :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p> <p>When annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When overflow occurs :</p> <p>HUGE_VAL (with positive sign)</p>

**[Description]s**

- Calculates exponent function of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is +∞, +∞ is returned.
- If *x* is -∞, +0 is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, non-normalized number is returned.
- If annihilation of valid digits due to underflow occurs as a result of operation, +0 is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with a positive sign is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.

**frexp**

Finds mantissa and exponent part

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double frexp (double x, int *exp) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><i>exp</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to store exponent part</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Mantissa of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, <i>x</i> = ± ∞:</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = ± 0 :</p> <p>± 0</p>

**[Description]**

- Divide a floating point number *x* to mantissa *m* and exponent *n* such as  $x = m * 2 ^ n$  and returns mantissa *m*.
- Exponent *n* is stored where the pointer *exp* indicates. The absolute value of *m*, however, is 0.5 or more and less than 1.0.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned and the value of *\*exp* is 0.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned, and EDOM is set to *errno* with the value of *\*exp* as 0.
- If *x* is ± 0, ± 0 is returned and the value of *\*exp* is 0.

**ldexp**

Finds  $x * 2^{exp}$

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double ldexp (double x, int exp) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> : Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><i>exp</i> : Exponentiation</p>	<p>Normal : <math>x * 2^{exp}</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> : NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm \infty</math> : <math>\pm \infty</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \pm 0</math> : <math>\pm 0</math></p> <p>When overflow occurs : HUGE_VAL (with the sign of the overflowed value)</p> <p>When underflow occurs : Non-normalized number</p> <p>When annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow : <math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates  $x * 2^{exp}$ .
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $\pm \infty$ ,  $\pm \infty$  is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $\pm 0$ ,  $\pm 0$  is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with the overflowed value is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, non-normalized number is returned.
- If annihilation of valid digits due to underflow occurs as a result of operation,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**log**

Finds the natural logarithm

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double log (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Natural logarithm of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; 0</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = 0</math> :</p> <p><math>-\infty</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p><math>+\infty</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Finds natural logarithm of *x*.
- In the case of area error of  $x < 0$ , NaN is returned, EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x = 0$ ,  $-\infty$  is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is  $+\infty$ ,  $+\infty$  is returned.

**log10**

Finds the base 10 logarithm

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double log10 (double x);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>ithm with 10 of <i>x</i> as the base</p> <p>When <math>x &lt; 0</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = 0</math> :</p> <p><math>-\infty</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p><math>+\infty</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Finds logarithm with 10 of *x* as the base.
- In the case of area error of  $x < 0$ , NaN is returned, EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x = 0$ ,  $-\infty$  is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is  $+\infty$ ,  $+\infty$  is returned.

**modf**

Finds the decimal and integer parts

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double modf (double x, double *iptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><i>iptr</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to integer part</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Fraction part of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> is non-numeric or infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> is <math>\pm 0</math> :</p> <p><math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Divides a floating point number *x* to fraction part and integer part
- Returns fraction part with the same sign as that of *x*, and stores the integer part to the location indicated by the pointer *iptr*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned and stored to the location indicated by the pointer *iptr*.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and stored to the location indicated by the pointer *iptr*, and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x = \pm 0$ ,  $\pm 0$  is stored to the location indicated by the pointer *iptr*.

**pow**

Finds yth power of x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double pow (double x, double y) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><b>x :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><b>y :</b> Multiplier</p>	<p>Normal : <math>x^y</math></p> <p>Either when <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> or <math>y = \text{NaN}</math>,  <math>x = +\infty</math> and <math>y = 0</math>,  <math>x &lt; 0</math> and <math>y \neq \text{integer}</math>,  <math>x &lt; 0</math> and <math>y = \pm \infty</math>,  <math>x = 0</math> and <math>y \leq 0</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When overflow occurs : HUGE_VAL (with the sign of overflown value)</p> <p>When underflow occurs : Non-normalized number</p> <p>When annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow : <math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates  $x^y$ .
- When  $x = \text{NaN}$  or  $y = \text{NaN}$ , NaN is returned.
- Either when  $x = \pm \infty$  and  $y = 0$ ,  $x < 0$  and  $y \neq \text{integer}$ ,  $x < 0$  and  $y = \pm \infty$  or  $x = 0$  and  $y \leq 0$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of overflown value is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs, a non-normalized number is returned.
- If annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**sqrt**

Finds the square root

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double sqrt (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>When <math>x \geq 0</math> :</p> <p>Square root of <math>x</math></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; 0</math> :</p> <p>0</p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm 0</math> :</p> <p><math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates the square root of  $x$ .
- In the case of area error of  $x < 0$ , 0 is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $\pm 0$ ,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**ceil**

Finds the smallest integer not smaller than x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double ceil (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p>x :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>The minimum integer no less than x</p> <p>When x is non-numeric or when x is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When x = -0 :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When the minimum integer no less than x cannot be expressed :</p> <p>x</p>

**[Description]**

- Finds the minimum integer no less than x.
- If x is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If x is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If x is -0, +0 is returned.
- If the minimum integer no less than x cannot be expressed, x is returned.

**fabs**

Finds the absolute value of floating point number  $x$

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double fabs (double  $x$ ) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
$x$ : Numeric value to find the absolute value	Normal : Absolute value of $x$ When $x = \text{NaN}$ : NaN When $x = -0$ : +0

**[Description]**

- Finds the absolute value of  $x$ .
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $-0$ ,  $+0$  is returned.

**floor**

Finds the largest integer not larger than x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double floor (double x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p>x :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>The maximum integer no more than x</p> <p>When x is non-numeric or when x is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When x = -0 :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When the maximum integer no more than x cannot be expressed :</p> <p>x</p>

**[Description]**

- Finds the maximum integer no more than x.
- If x is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If x is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If x is -0, +0 is returned.
- If the maximum integer no more than x cannot be expressed, x is returned.

**fmod**

Finds the remainder of x/y

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
double fmod (double x, double y)
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><b>x :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><b>y :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal : Remainder of x/y</p> <p>When x is non-numeric or y is non-numeric, when y is <math>\pm 0</math>, when x is <math>\pm \infty</math> : NaN</p> <p>When <math>x \neq \infty</math> and <math>y = \pm \infty</math> : x</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates the remainder of x/y expressed with  $x - i * y$ . i is an integer.
- If  $y \neq 0$ , the return value has the same sign as that of x and the absolute value is less than that of y.
- If x is non-numeric or y is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If y is  $\pm 0$  or  $x = \pm \infty$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If y is infinite, x is returned unless x is infinite.

**matherr**

Obtains the exception processing for the library handling floating point numbers

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
void matherr (struct exception *x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<pre>struct exception {     int    type ;     char   *name ; }  type :     Numeric value to indicate arithmetic exception name :     Function name</pre>	None

**[Description]**

- When an exception is generated, matherr is automatically called in the standard library and run-time library that deal with floating-point numbers.
  - When called from the standard library, EDOM and ERANGE are set to errno.
- The following shows the relationship between the arithmetic exception type and errno.

Type	Arithmetic Exception	Value Set to errno
1	Underflow	ERANGE
2	Annihilation	ERANGE
3	Overflow	ERANGE
4	Zero division	EDOM
5	Inoperable	EDOM

Original error processing can be performed by changing or creating matherr.

- The argument is always a near pointer, because it points to an exception structure in internal RAM. This is why there are no matherr\_n/matherr\_f functions.

**acosf**

Finds acos

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float acosf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>When <math>-1 \leq x \leq 1</math> :</p> <p>acos of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; -1, 1 &lt; x, x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates acos (range between 0 and  $\pi$ ) of *x*.
- In the case of definition area error of  $x < -1, 1 < x$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.

**asinf**

Finds asin

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float asinf (float x);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><math>x</math> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>When <math>-1 \leq x \leq 1</math> :</p> <p>asin of <math>x</math></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; -1, 1 &lt; x, x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = -0</math> :</p> <p>-0</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates asin (range between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$ ) of  $x$ .
- In the case of definition area error of  $x < -1, 1 < x$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x = -0$ , -0 is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.

**atanf**

Finds atan

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float atanf (float x);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>atan of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = -0 :</p> <p>-0</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates atan (range between  $-\pi/2$  and  $+\pi/2$ ) of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* = -0, -0 is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.

**atan2f**

Finds atan of y/x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float atan2f (float y, float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><b>x :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><b>y :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal : atan of y/x</p> <p>When both <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> are 0 or a value whose <i>y/ x</i> cannot be expressed, or either <i>x</i> or <i>y</i> is NaN, both <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> are infinite : NaN</p> <p>When underflow occurs : Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates atan (range between  $-\pi$  and  $+\pi$ ) of  $y/x$ .
- When both *x* and *y* are 0 or the value whose  $y/x$  cannot be expressed, or when both *x* and *y* are infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- When either *x* or *y* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.

**cosf**

Finds cos

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float cosf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>cos of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates cos of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If the absolute value of *x* is extremely large, the result of an operation becomes an almost meaningless value.

**sinf**

Finds sin

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float sinf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">sin of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">NaN</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates sin of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.
- If the absolute value of *x* is extremely large, the result of an operation becomes an almost meaningless value.

**tanf**

Finds tan

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float tanf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>tan of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates tan of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, a non-normalized number is returned.
- If the absolute value of *x* is extremely large, the result of an operation becomes an almost meaningless value.

**coshf**

Finds cosh

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float coshf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">cosh of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">+∞</p> <p>When overflow occurs :</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">HUGE_VAL (with positive sign)</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates cosh of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is infinite, positive infinite value is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with a positive sign is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.

**sinhf**

Finds sinh

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float sinhf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>sinh of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = ± ∞:</p> <p>± ∞</p> <p>When overflow occurs :</p> <p>HUGE_VAL (with a sign of the overflowed value)</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>± 0</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates sinh of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is ± ∞, ± ∞ is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of overflowed value is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, ± 0 is returned.

**tanhf**

Finds tanh

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float tanhf (float x);
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><math>x</math> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>tanh of <math>x</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm \infty</math> :</p> <p><math>\pm 1</math></p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p><math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates tanh of  $x$ .
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $\pm \infty$ ,  $\pm 1$  is returned.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**expf**

Finds the exponential function

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float expf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Exponent function of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = +∞:</p> <p>+∞</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = -∞ :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When overflow occurs :</p> <p>HUGE_VAL (with positive sign)</p> <p>When underflow occurs :</p> <p>Non-normalized number</p> <p>When annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow :</p> <p>+0</p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates exponent function of *x*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is +∞, +∞ is returned.
- If *x* is -∞, +0 is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with a positive sign is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, non-normalized number is returned.
- If annihilation of effective digits occurs due to underflow as a result of operation, +0 is returned.

**frexpf**

Finds mantissa and exponent part

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float frexpf (float x, int *exp) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><i>exp</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to store exponent part</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Mantissa of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math>, <math>x = \pm \infty</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm 0</math> :</p> <p><math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Divides a floating-point number *x* to mantissa *m* and exponent *n* such as  $x = m * 2 ^ n$  and returns mantissa *m*.
- Exponent *n* is stored in where the pointer *exp* indicates. The absolute value of *m*, however, is 0.5 or more and less than 1.0.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned and the value of \**exp* is 0.
- If *x* is  $\pm \infty$ , NaN is returned, and EDOM is set to *errno* with the value of \**exp* as 0.
- If *x* is  $\pm 0$ ,  $\pm 0$  is returned and the value of \**exp* is 0.

**ldexpf**

Finds  $x * 2^{exp}$

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float ldexpf (float x, int exp) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> : Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><i>exp</i> : Exponentiation</p>	<p>Normal : <math>x * 2^{exp}</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> : NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm \infty</math> : <math>\pm \infty</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \pm 0</math> : <math>\pm 0</math></p> <p>When overflow occurs : HUGE_VAL (with the sign of overflown value)</p> <p>When underflow occurs : Non-normalized number</p> <p>When annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow : <math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates  $x * 2^{exp}$ .
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned. If  $x$  is  $\pm \infty$ ,  $\pm \infty$  is returned. If  $x$  is  $\pm 0$ ,  $\pm 0$  is returned.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of overflown value is returned and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs as a result of operation, non-normalized number is returned .
- If annihilation of valid digits due to underflow occurs as a result of operation,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**logf**

Finds the natural logarithm

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float logf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Natural logarithm of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; 0</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = 0</math> :</p> <p><math>-\infty</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> is infinite :</p> <p><math>+\infty</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Finds natural logarithm of *x*.
- In the case of area error of  $x < 0$ , NaN is returned, and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x = 0$ ,  $-\infty$  is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is  $+\infty$ ,  $+\infty$  is returned.

**log10f**

Finds the base 10 logarithm

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float log10f (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Logarithm with 10 of <i>x</i> as the base</p> <p>When <math>x &lt; 0</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = 0</math> :</p> <p><math>-\infty</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = +\infty</math> :</p> <p><math>+\infty</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Finds logarithm with 10 of *x* as the base.
- In the case of area error of  $x < 0$ , NaN is returned, and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x = 0$ ,  $-\infty$  is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If *x* is  $+\infty$ ,  $+\infty$  is returned.

**modff**

Finds the decimal and integer parts

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float modff (float x, float *iptr) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> : Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><i>iptr</i> : Pointer to integer part</p>	<p>Normal : Fraction part of <i>x</i></p> <p>When <i>x</i> = NaN, <i>x</i> is infinite : NaN</p> <p>When <i>x</i> = ± 0 : ± 0</p>

**[Description]**

- Divides a floating point number *x* to fraction part and integer part.
- Returns fraction part with the same sign as that of *x*, and stores integer part to location indicated by the pointer *iptr*.
- If *x* is non-numeric, NaN is returned and stored location indicated by the pointer *iptr*.
- If *x* is infinite, NaN is returned and stored location indicated by the pointer *iptr*, and EDOM is set to errno.
- If *x* = ± 0, ± 0 is returned and stored location indicated by the pointer *iptr*.

**powf**

Finds yth power of x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float powf (float x, float y) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><b>x :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><b>y :</b> Multiplier</p>	<p>Normal : <math>x^y</math></p> <p>Either when  <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> or <math>y = \text{NaN}</math>  <math>x = +\infty</math> and <math>y = 0</math>  <math>x &lt; 0</math> and <math>y \neq \text{integer}</math>,  <math>x &lt; 0</math> and <math>y = \pm \infty</math>  <math>x = 0</math> and <math>y \leq 0</math> :                      NaN</p> <p>When overflow occurs :                      HUGE_VAL (with the sign of overflown value)</p> <p>When underflow occurs :                      Non-normalized number</p> <p>When annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow :  <math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates  $x^y$ .
- When  $x = \text{NaN}$  or  $y = \text{NaN}$ , NaN is returned.
- Either when  $x = +\infty$  and  $y = 0$ ,  $x < 0$  and  $y \neq \text{integer}$ ,  $x < 0$  and  $y = \pm \infty$ , or  $x = 0$  and  $y \leq 0$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If overflow occurs as a result of operation, HUGE\_VAL with the sign of overflown value is returned, and ERANGE is set to errno.
- If underflow occurs, a non-normalized number is returned.
- If annihilation of valid digits occurs due to underflow,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**sqrtf**

Finds the square root

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float sqrtf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>x</i> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>When <math>x \geq 0</math> :</p> <p>Square root of <math>x</math></p> <p>When <math>x &lt; 0</math> :</p> <p>0</p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math> :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = \pm 0</math> :</p> <p><math>\pm 0</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates the square root of  $x$ .
- In the case of area error of  $x < 0$ , 0 is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is  $\pm 0$ ,  $\pm 0$  is returned.

**ceilf**

Finds the smallest integer not smaller than  $x$

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float ceilf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><math>x</math> :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>The minimum integer no less than <math>x</math></p> <p>When <math>x = \text{NaN}</math>, <math>x</math> is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When <math>x = -0</math> :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When the minimum integer no less than <math>x</math> cannot be expressed :</p> <p><math>x</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Finds the minimum integer no less than  $x$ .
- If  $x$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $x$  is -0, +0 is returned.
- If  $x$  is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If the minimum integer no less than  $x$  cannot be expressed,  $x$  is returned.

**fabsf**

Finds the absolute value of floating point number x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float fabsf (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p>x :</p> <p>Numeric value to find the absolute value</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>Absolute value of x</p> <p>When x is non-numeric :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When x = -0 :</p> <p>+0</p>

**[Description]**

- Finds the absolute value of x.
- If x is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If x is -0, +0 is returned.

**floor**

Finds the largest integer not larger than x

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float floor (float x) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p>x :</p> <p>Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal :</p> <p>The maximum integer no more than x</p> <p>When x = NaN, x is infinite :</p> <p>NaN</p> <p>When x = -0 :</p> <p>+0</p> <p>When the maximum integer no more than x cannot be expressed :</p> <p>x</p>

**[Description]**

- Finds the maximum integer no more than x.
- If x is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If x is infinite, NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If x is -0, +0 is returned.
- If the maximum integer no more than x cannot be expressed, x is returned.

**fmodf**

Finds the remainder of x/y

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <math.h>
float fmodf (float x, float y) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><b>x :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p> <p><b>y :</b> Numeric value to perform operation</p>	<p>Normal : Remainder of x/y</p> <p>When <math>y</math> is <math>\pm 0</math> or <math>x</math> is <math>\pm \infty</math>, When <math>x</math> is non-numeric or <math>y</math> is non-numeric : NaN</p> <p>When <math>x \neq \infty</math> and <math>y = \pm \infty</math> : <math>x</math></p>

**[Description]**

- Calculates the remainder of x/y expressed with  $x - i * y$ .  $i$  is an integer.
- If  $y \neq 0$ , the return value has the same sign as that of  $x$  and the absolute value is less than  $y$ .
- If  $y$  is  $\pm 0$  or  $x = \pm \infty$ , NaN is returned and EDOM is set to errno.
- If  $x$  is non-numeric or  $y$  is non-numeric, NaN is returned.
- If  $y$  is infinite,  $x$  is returned unless  $x$  is infinite.

### 6.13 Diagnostic Function

The following diagnostic function is available.

Function Name	Purpose
<a href="#">__assertfail</a>	Supports the assert macro

**\_\_assertfail**

Supports the assert macro

**[Syntax]**

```
#include <assert.h>
int __assertfail (char * __msg, char * __cond, char * __file, int __line) ;
```

**[Argument(s)/Return value]**

Argument	Return Value
<p><i>__msg</i> :</p> <p>Pointer to character string to indicate output conversion specification to be passed to printf function</p> <p><i>__cond</i> :</p> <p>Actual argument of assert macro</p> <p><i>__file</i> :</p> <p>Source file name</p> <p><i>__line</i> :</p> <p>Source line number</p>	<p>Undefined</p>

**[Description]**

- A `__assertfail` function receives information from assert macro (see [6.3.13 assert.h](#)), calls printf function, outputs information, and calls abort function.
- An assert macro adds diagnostic function to a program.

When an assert macro is executed, if `p` is false (equal to 0), an assert macro passes information related to the specific call that has brought the false value (actual argument text, source file name, and source line number are included in the information. The other two are the values of macro `__FILE__` and `__LINE__`, respectively) to `__assertfail` function.

**6.14 Library Stack Consumption List**

This section explains the number of stacks consumed for each function in the libraries.

**6.14.1 Standard libraries**

The number of stacks consumed for each standard library stack function is displayed in the tables below.

**(1) ctype.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
isalpha	0	0
isupper	0	0
islower	0	0
isdigit	0	0
isalnum	0	0
isxdigit	0	0
isspace	0	0
ispunct	0	0
isprint	0	0
isgraph	0	0
iscntrl	0	0
isascii	0	0
toupper	0	0
tolower	0	0
toascii	0	0
_toupper	0	0
toup	0	0
_tolower	0	0
tolow	0	0

**(2) setjmp.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
setjmp	4	4
longjmp	2	2

**(3) stdarg.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
va_arg	0	0

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
va_start	0	0
va_starttop	0	0
va_end	0	0

**(4) stdio.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
printf	58 (130) <sup>Note 1</sup>	58 (140) <sup>Note 1</sup>
sscanf	294 (332) <sup>Note 1</sup> (350) <sup>Note 2</sup>	294 (340) <sup>Note 1</sup> (358) <sup>Note 2</sup>
printf	70 (128) <sup>Note 1</sup>	74 (138) <sup>Note 1</sup>
scanf	308 (330) <sup>Note 1</sup> (348) <sup>Note 2</sup>	312 (338) <sup>Note 1</sup> (356) <sup>Note 2</sup>
vprintf	70 (128) <sup>Note 1</sup>	76 (140) <sup>Note 1</sup>
vsprintf	58 (130) <sup>Note 1</sup>	58 (140) <sup>Note 1</sup>
getchar	0	0
gets	8	14
putchar	0	0
puts	6	10
__putc	4	4

**Notes 1.** Values in parentheses are for when the version that supports floating-point numbers is used.

- 2.** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs in the version that supports floating-point numbers.

**(5) stdlib.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
atoi	4	4
atol	10	10
strtol	18	18
strtoul	18	18
calloc	12	12
free	8	8
malloc	6	6
realloc	12	12
abort	0	0
atexit	0	0
exit	6 + n <sup>Note 1</sup>	6 + n <sup>Note 1</sup>
abs	0	0

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
labs	0	0
div	6 (2) <sup>Note 2</sup> (0) <sup>Note 3</sup>	6 (2) <sup>Note 2</sup> (0) <sup>Note 3</sup>
ldiv	18 (8) <sup>Note 2</sup> (4) <sup>Note 3</sup>	18 (8) <sup>Note 2</sup> (4) <sup>Note 3</sup>
brk	0	0
sbrk	2	2
atof	46 (64) <sup>Note 4</sup>	46 (64) <sup>Note 4</sup>
strtod	46 (64) <sup>Note 4</sup>	48 (66) <sup>Note 4</sup>
itoa	10	10
ltoa	16	16
ultoa	16	16
rand	18 (14) <sup>Note 5</sup> (14) <sup>Note 3</sup>	18 (14) <sup>Note 5</sup> (14) <sup>Note 3</sup>
srand	0	0
bsearch	36 + n <sup>Note 6</sup>	40 + n <sup>Note 6</sup>
qsort	16 + n <sup>Note 7</sup>	18 + n <sup>Note 7</sup>
strbrk	0	0
strsbrk	2	2
strtoa	10	10
strltoa	16	16
strultoa	16	16

- Notes**
1. n is the total stack consumption among external functions registered by the atexit function.
  2. Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier/divider is used.
  3. Values in the parentheses are for RL78 mounted expansion instructions.
  4. Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs in the version that supports floating-point numbers.
  5. Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier, multiplier/divider is used.
  6. n is the stack consumption of external functions called from bsearch.
  7. n is (X+ (stack consumption of external functions called from qsort) ) - (1 + (number of recursive calls) ).  
 When using a library shared by small model and medium model : X = 38  
 When using a library shared by large model : X = 40

**(6) string.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
memcpy	4	8
memmove	4	6
strcpy	2	6
strncpy	4	10
strcat	2	6

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
strncat	4	8
memcmp	2	4
strcmp	2	2
strncmp	2	2
memchr	2	4
strchr	4	2
strrchr	4	6
strspn	4	6
strcspn	4	4
strpbrk	4	6
strstr	4	8
strtok	4	4
memset	4	6
strerror	0	0
strlen	0	0
strcoll	2	2
strxfrm	4	4

**(7) math.h**

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
acos	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
asin	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
atan	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
atan2	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
cos	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>
sin	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>
tan	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>
cosh	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>
sinh	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>
tanh	40 (58) <sup>Note</sup>	40 (58) <sup>Note</sup>
exp	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
frexp	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	4 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
ldexp	0 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	0 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
log	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
log10	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
modf	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	4 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
pow	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
sqrt	22 (40) <sup>Note</sup>	22 (40) <sup>Note</sup>
ceil	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
fabs	0	0
floor	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
fmod	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
matherr	0	0
acosf	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
asinf	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
atanf	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
atan2f	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
cosf	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>
sinf	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>	28 (46) <sup>Note</sup>
tanf	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>
coshf	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>
sinhf	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>	34 (52) <sup>Note</sup>
tanhf	40 (58) <sup>Note</sup>	40 (58) <sup>Note</sup>
expf	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
frexpf	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	4 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
ldexpf	0 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	0 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
logf	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
log10f	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
modff	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	4 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
powf	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>	30 (48) <sup>Note</sup>
sqrtf	22 (40) <sup>Note</sup>	22 (40) <sup>Note</sup>
ceilf	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
fbsf	0	0
floorf	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>
fmodf	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>	2 (16) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

#### (8) assert.h

Function Name	Shared by Small Model and Medium Model	Shared by Large Model
__assertfail	82 (140) <sup>Note</sup>	92 (156) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when the printf version that supports floating-point numbers is used.

**6.14.2 Runtime libraries**

The number of stacks consumed for each runtime library function is shown in the tables below.

**(1) Increment**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
Isinc	0
Iuinc	0
finc	16 (34) <sup>Note</sup>
Isincr	0
Iuincr	0
fincr	16 (34) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

**(2) Decrement**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
Isdec	0
Iudec	0
fdec	16 (34) <sup>Note</sup>
Isdecr	0
Iudecr	0
fdecr	16 (34) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

**(3) Sign reverse**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
Isrev	2
Iurev	2
frev	0
Isrevr	2
Iurevr	2
frevr	0

**(4) 1's complement**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
Iscom	0

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lucom	0
lscmr	0
lucomr	0

**(5) Logical negation**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lsnot	0
lunot	0

**(6) Multiplication**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
csmul	0
cumul	0
ismul	4 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
iumul	4 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
ismul	8 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lumul	8 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
fmul	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (10) <sup>Note 2</sup> (26) <sup>Note 3</sup>
iumulr	4 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
ismulr	8 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lumulr	8 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
fmulr	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (10) <sup>Note 2</sup> (26) <sup>Note 3</sup>

- Notes 1.** Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier, multiplier/divider is used.  
**2.** Values in the parentheses are for RL78 mounted expansion instructions.  
**3.** Values in the parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

**(7) Division**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
cdiv	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (10) <sup>Note 2</sup>
cudiv	2 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
isdiv	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (8) <sup>Note 2</sup>
iudiv	6 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lsdiv	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (12) <sup>Note 2</sup>
ludiv	6 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (6) <sup>Note 2</sup>
fddiv	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (14) <sup>Note 2</sup> (26) <sup>Note 3</sup>
csdivr	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (10) <sup>Note 2</sup>
cudivr	2 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>

Function Name	Stack Consumption
isdivr	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (8) <sup>Note 2</sup>
iudivr	6 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lsdivr	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (12) <sup>Note 2</sup>
ludivr	6 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (6) <sup>Note 2</sup>
fdivr	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (14) <sup>Note 2</sup> (26) <sup>Note 3</sup>

- Notes**
1. Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier/divider is used.
  2. Values in the parentheses are for RL78 mounted expansion instructions.
  3. Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs .

### (8) Remainder arithmetic

Function Name	Stack Consumption
csrem	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (10) <sup>Note 2</sup>
curem	2 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
isrem	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (8) <sup>Note 2</sup>
iurem	6 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lsrem	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (12) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lurem	6 (12) <sup>Note 1</sup> (6) <sup>Note 2</sup>
csremr	8 (10) <sup>Note 1</sup> (10) <sup>Note 2</sup>
curemr	2 (4) <sup>Note 1</sup> (4) <sup>Note 2</sup>
isremr	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (8) <sup>Note 2</sup>
iuremr	6 (2) <sup>Note 1</sup> (2) <sup>Note 2</sup>
lsremr	12 (8) <sup>Note 1</sup> (12) <sup>Note 2</sup>
luremr	6 (12) <sup>Note 1</sup> (6) <sup>Note 2</sup>

- Notes**
1. Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier/divider is used.
  2. Values in the parentheses are for RL78 mounted expansion instructions.

### (9) Addition

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lsadd	0
luadd	0
fadd	8 (26) <sup>Note</sup>
lsaddr	0
luaddr	0
faddr	8 (26) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

**(10) Subtraction**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
Issub	2
Iusub	2
fsub	8 (26) <sup>Note</sup>
Issubr	2
Iusubr	2
fsubr	8 (26) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

**(11) Left shift**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lslsh	4
lulsh	4
lslshr	4
lulshr	4

**(12) Right shift**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lsrsh	4
lursh	4
lsrshr	4
lurshr	4

**(13) Compare**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
cscmp	0
iscmp	0
lscmp	2
lucmp	2
fcmp	4 (24) <sup>Note</sup>
cscmpr	0
iscmpr	0
lscmpr	2
lucmpr	2
fcmpr	4 (24) <sup>Note</sup>

**Note** Values in parentheses are for when an operation exception occurs.

**(14) Bit AND**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lsband	0
luband	0
lsbandr	0
lubandr	0

**(15) Bit OR**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lsbor	0
lubor	0
lsborr	0
luborr	0

**(16) Bit XOR**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lsbxor	0
lubxor	0
lsbxorr	0
lubxorr	0

**(17) Conversion from floating point number**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
ftols	6
ftolu	6
ftolsr	6
ftolur	6

**(18) Conversion to floating point number**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
lstof	6
lutof	6
lstofr	6
lutofr	6

**(19) Conversion from bit**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
btol	0
btolr	0

**(20) Startup routine**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
cstart	4

**(21) Flash startup routine**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
cstarte	4

**(22) Main for boot**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
boot_main	0

**(23) Pre- and post-processing of function**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
hdwinit	0
cprep3	Size of base pointer + first argument + register variables + automatic variables
cdisp3	0
cpre3e	Size of base pointer + first argument + register variables + automatic variables
cdis3e	0

**(24) Initialization**

Function Name	Stack Consumption
stkinit	0

**(25) BCD-type conversion**

Function Name	Purpose
bcdtob	6
btobcd	6
bcdtow	6
wtobcd	8
bbcd	6

## (26) Auxiliary

Function Name	Stack Consumption
indao	0
ifdao	0
inado	0
ifado	0
Ind0	2
lfd0	2
In0d	0
lf0d	0
Ind0o	2
lfd0o	2
In0do	0
lf0do	0
df1in	0
df1de	0
dn4in	0
dn4ip	4
df4in	0
df4ip	4
dn4ino	0
dn4ipo	4
df4ino	0
df4ipo	4
dn4de	0
dn4dp	4
df4de	0
df4dp	4
dn4deo	0
dn4dpo	4
df4deo	0
df4dpo	4
divuw	6 (2)Note 1 (4)Note 2
divuwr	6 (2)Note 1 (4)Note 2
mulsw	14 (10)Note 3 (2)Note 4 (2)Note 2
muluw	14 (10)Note 3 (2)Note 4 (2)Note 2
macsw	22 (18)Note 3 (2)Note 4 (6)Note 2
macuw	22 (18)Note 3 (2)Note 4 (6)Note 2

- Notes**
1. Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier/divider is used.
  2. Values in the parentheses are for RL78 mounted expansion instructions.
  3. Values in the parentheses are for when a multiplier, multiplier/divider is used.
  4. Values in the parentheses are for when a sum-of-products calculator is used.

### 6.15 List of Maximum Interrupt Disabled Times for Libraries

For libraries that use a multiplier, multiplier/divider, sum-of-products calculator, a period of time during which an interrupt is disabled is provided in order that the contents of the operation are not destroyed during an interrupt.

The maximum interrupt disabled times for libraries that use a multiplier, multiplier/divider, sum-of-products calculator are shown below.

No periods during which an interrupt is disabled are provided for libraries that do not use a multiplier, multiplier/divider, sum-of-products calculator.

In case of RL78 mounted expansion instructions : The interrupt disabled time of library function @@macuw and @@macsw is 17 clocks. No periods during which an interrupt is disabled are provided about other library functions.

**Table 6-2. Maximum Interrupt Disabled Time (Number of Clocks) for Libraries**

Classification	Function Name	Maximum Interrupt Disabled Time			Remark
		When a multiplier is used	When a multiplier/divider is used	When a sum-of-products calculator is used	
Multiplication	@@ismul	12	12	12	Performs multiplication between signed int data
	@@iumul	12	12	12	Performs multiplication between unsigned int data
	@@lsmul	24	24	24	Performs multiplication between signed long data
	@@lumul	24	24	24	Performs multiplication between unsigned long data
	@@fmul	23	23	23	Performs multiplication between float data
	@@iumulr	12	12	12	Performs multiplication between unsigned int data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@lumulr	24	24	24	Performs multiplication between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@lsmulr	24	24	24	Performs multiplication between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@muluw	24	24	14	Performs multiplication between unsigned int data (A result, unsigned long)
	@@mulsw	24	24	16	Performs multiplication between signed int data (A result, signed long)

Classification	Function Name	Maximum Interrupt Disabled Time			Remark
		When a multiplier is used	When a multiplier/divider is used	When a sum-of-products calculator is used	
	@@fmulr	23	23	23	Performs multiplication between float data(A result, signed long)
Division	@@cdivr	-	40	40	Performs division between unsigned char data
	@@csdivr	-	40	40	Performs division between signed char data
	@@idivr	-	39	39	Performs division between unsigned int data
	@@isdivr	-	39	39	Performs division between signed int data
	@@ldivr	-	43	43	Performs division between unsigned long data
	@@lsdivr	-	43	43	Performs division between signed long data
	@@fdivr	-	44	44	Performs division between float data
	@@cdivr	-	40	40	Performs division between unsigned char data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@csdivr	-	40	40	Performs division between signed char data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@idivr	-	39	39	Performs division between unsigned int data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@isdivr	-	39	39	Performs division between signed int data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@ldivr	-	43	43	Performs division between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@lsdivr	-	43	43	Performs division between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@fdivr	-	44	44	Performs division between float data(for allocation to RAM)

Classification	Function Name	Maximum Interrupt Disabled Time			Remark
		When a multiplier is used	When a multiplier/divider is used	When a sum-of-products calculator is used	
Remainder arithmetic	@@curem	-	40	40	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned char data
	@@csrem	-	40	40	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed char data
	@@iurem	-	39	39	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned int data
	@@isrem	-	39	39	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed int data
	@@lurem	-	43	43	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned long data
	@@lsrem	-	43	43	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed long data
	@@curemr	-	40	40	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned char data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@csremr	-	40	40	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed char data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@iuremr	-	39	39	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned int data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@isremr	-	39	39	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed int data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@luremr	-	43	43	Performs remainder arithmetic between unsigned long data (for allocation to RAM)
	@@lsremr	-	43	43	Performs remainder arithmetic between signed long data (for allocation to RAM)
Sum-of-products calculation	@@macuw Note 1	24	24	21	unsigned int x unsigned int + unsigned long
	@@macsw Note 1	24	24	21	signed int x signed int + signed long
Auxiliary	@@divuw	-	43	43	divuw instruction compatibility
	@@divuwr	-	43	43	divuw instruction compatibility (for allocation to RAM)
stdio.h	printf	-	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	Outputs data to SFR
	sprintf	-	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	Writes data to a string
	vprintf	-	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	Outputs data to SFR
	vsprintf	-	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	43 <sup>Note 2</sup>	Writes data to a string

Classification	Function Name	Maximum Interrupt Disabled Time			Remark
		When a multiplier is used	When a multiplier/divider is used	When a sum-of-products calculator is used	
stdlib.h	div	-	41	41	Performs int type division
	ldiv	-	46	46	Performs long type division
	rand	24	24	24	Uses @@lumul
	qsort	12	12	12	Uses @@lumul

- Notes 1.** The maximum interrupt disabled time in case of RL78 mounted expansion instructions is 17 clocks.  
**2.** Values in parentheses are for when the version that supports floating-point numbers is used.

### 6.16 Batch Files for Update of Startup Routine and Library Functions

The RL78,78K0R C compiler provides batch files for updating a portion of the standard library functions and the startup routine. The batch files in the bat folder are shown in the table below.

**Table 6-3. Batch Files for Updating Library Functions**

Batch File	Application
mkstup.bat	Updates the startup routine (cstart*.asm). When changing the startup routine, perform assembly using this batch file.
reprom.bat	Updates the firmware ROMization termination routine (rom.asm). When changing rom.asm, update the library using this batch file.
repgetc.bat	Updates the getchar function. The default assumption sets P0 of the SFR to the input port. When it is necessary to change this setting, change the defined value of EQU of PORT in getchar.asm and update the library using this batch file.
reputc.bat	Updates the putchar function. The default assumption sets P0 of the SFR to the output port. When it is necessary to change this setting, change the defined value of EQU of PORT in getchar.asm and update the library using this batch file.
reputcS.bat	Updates the putchar function to SM+ for 78K0R for C compiler-compatibility. When it is necessary to check the output of the putchar function using the SM+ for 78K0R for C compiler, update the library using this batch file.
repsele.bat	Saves/restores the reserved area of the compiler (_@KREGxx) as part of the save/restore processing of the setjmp and longjmp functions (the default assumption is to not save/restore). Update the library using this batch file when the -qr option is specified.
repseleN.bat	Does not save/restore the reserved area of the compiler (_@KREGxx) as part of the save/ restore processing of the setjmp and longjmp functions (the default assumption is to not save/ restore). Update the library using this batch file when the -qr option is not specified.
repvect.bat	Updates the address value setting processing of the branch table of the interrupt vector table allocated in the flash area (vect*.asm). The default assumption sets the top address of the flash area branch table to 2000H. When it is necessary to change this setting, change the defined value of EQU of ITBLTOP in vect.inc and update the library using this batch file.
repmul.bat	Updates the multiplier library.

Batch File	Application
repmuldiv.bat	Updates the multiplier/divider library.
repmac.bat	Updates the sum-of-products calculator library.
repmac_rl78.bat	Updates the multiply/divide/multiply & accumulate instructions use library (RL78 mounted expansion instructions).

### 6.16.1 Using batch files

Use the batch files in the subfolder bat.

Because these files are the batch files used to activate the assembler and librarian, the assembler etc. bundled to CubeSuite+ are necessary. Before using the batch files, set the folder that contains the RL78,78K0R assembler execution format file using the environment variable PATH.

Create a subfolder (lib) of the same level as bat for the batch files and put the post-assembly files in this subfolder. When a C startup routine or library is installed in a subfolder lib that is the same level as bat, these files are overwritten.

Files assembled with the batch files are output to Src\cc78k0r\lib. Copy these files to the lib78k0r directory before linking.

To use the batch files, move the current folder to the subfolder bat and execute each batch file. To perform execution, the following parameters are necessary.

Product type = chiptype (classification of target chip)  
f1166a0 : uPD78F1166\_A0etc.

Specify it as follows when change pass of the device file.

```
Batch-file-name device-type -ypass-name
```

The following is an illustration of how to use each batch file.

#### (1) Startup routine

```
mkstup chiptype
```

Example below.

```
mkstup f1166a0
```

#### (2) Firmware ROMization routine update

```
reprom chiptype
```

Example below.

```
reprom f1166a0
```

**(3) getchar function updat**

```
regetc chiptype
```

Example below.

```
repgetc f1166a0
```

**(4) putcharfunction update**

```
reputc chiptype
```

Example below.

```
reputc f1166a0
```

**(5) putchar function (SM78K0R-supporting) update**

```
reputcs chiptype
```

Example below.

```
reputcs f1166a0
```

**(6) setjmp/longjmp function update (with restore/save processing)**

```
repselo chiptype
```

Example below.

```
repselo f1166a0
```

**(7) setjmp/longjmp function update (without restore/save processing)**

```
repselon chiptype
```

Example below.

```
repselon f1166a0
```

**(8) Interrupt vector table update**

```
repvect chiptype
```

Example below.

```
repvect f1166a0
```

**(9) Multiplier use library update**

```
repmul.bat chiptype
```

The example updated for UPD78F1235\_64 is shown below.

```
repmul.bat f123564
```

Below is updated.

```
src\cc78k0r\lib\cl0rxm.lib  
cl0rxme.lib  
cl0rxl.lib  
cl0rxle.lib
```

**(10) Multiplier/divider use library update**

```
repmuldiv.bat chiptype
```

The example updated for UPD78F1235\_64 is shown below.

```
repmuldiv.bat f123564
```

Below is updated.

```
src\cc78k0r\lib\cl0rdm.lib  
cl0rdme.lib  
cl0rdl.lib  
cl0rdle.lib
```

**(11) Sum-of-products calculator use library update**

```
repmac.bat chiptype
```

The example updated for UPD78F1070\_64 is shown below.

```
repmac.bat f107064
```

Below is updated.

```
src\cc78k0r\lib\cl0ram.lib  
cl0rame.lib  
cl0ral.lib  
cl0rale.lib
```

**(12) Multiply/Divide/Multiply & Accumulate instructions use library update**

```
repmac_r178.bat chiptype
```

The example updated for R5F104LE is shown below.

```
repmac_r178.bat f104le
```

Below is updated.

```
src\cc78k0r\lib\cl78m.lib  
cl78me.lib  
cl78l.lib  
cl78le.lib
```

CHAPTER 7 STARTUP

This chapter explains the startup routine.

7.1 Function Overview

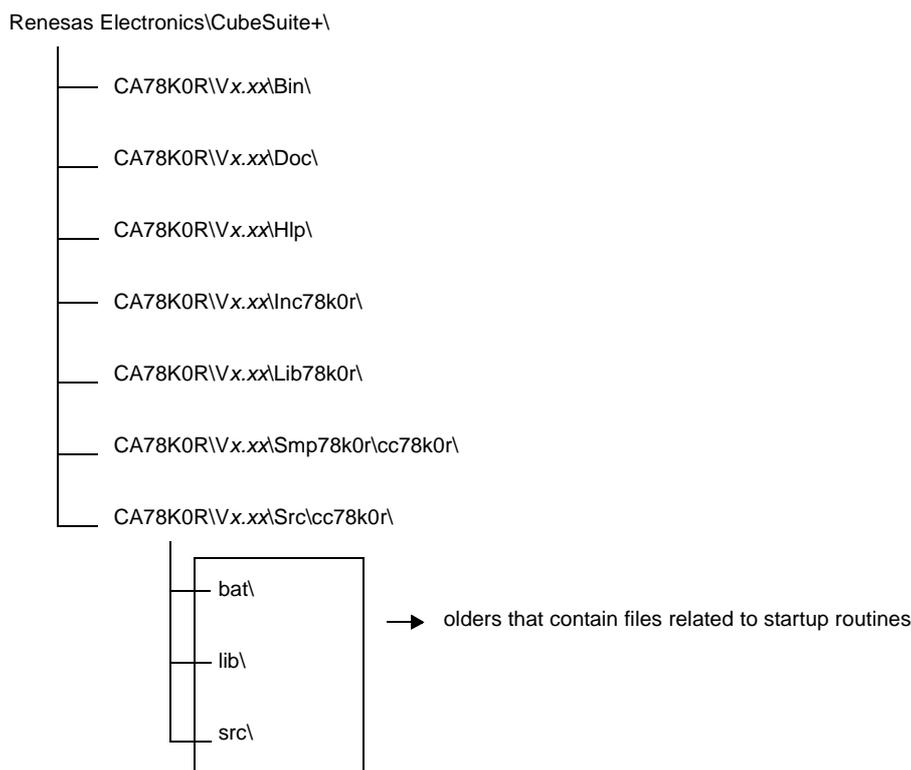
To execute a C language program, a program is needed to handle ROMization for inclusion in the system and to start the user program (main function). This program is called the startup routine.

To execute a user program, a startup routine must be created for that program. The CA78K0R provides standard startup routine object files, which carry out the processing required before program execution, and the startup routine source files (assembly source), which the user can adapt to the system. By linking the startup routine object file to the user program, an executable program can be created without requiring the user to write an original execution preprocessing routine.

This chapter describes the contents and uses of the startup routine and explains how to adapt it for your system.

7.2 File Organization

The files related to a startup routine are stored in the folder Src\cc78k0r of the C compiler package.



The contents of the folders under Src\cc78k0r are shown next.

## 7.2.1 "bat" folder contents

Batch file in this folder cannot be used in the IDE.

Use these batch files only when a source file, such as for the startup routine, must be modified.

**Table 7-1. "bat" Folder Contents**

Batch File Name	Explanation
mkstup.bat	Assemble batch file for startup routine
reprom.bat	Batch file for updating rom.asm <sup>Note 1</sup>
repgetc.bat	Batch file for updating getchar.asm
repputc.bat	Batch file for updating putchar.asm
repputcs.bat	Batch file for updating _putchar.asm
repsele.bat	Batch file for updating setjmp.asm and longjmp.asm (the compiler reserved area is saved) <sup>Note 2</sup>
repselel.bat	Batch file for updating setjmp.asm, longjmp.asm (the compiler reserved area is not saved) <sup>Note 2</sup>
repvect.bat	Batch file for updating vect*.asm
repmul.bat	Batch file for updating multiplier library
repmuldiv.bat	Batch file for updating multiplier/divider library
repmac.bat	Batch file for updating sum-of-products calculator library
repmac_r178.bat	Batch file for updating multiply/divide/multiply & accumulate instructions use library

**Notes 1.** Since ROMization routines are in the library, the library is also updated by this batch file.

2. setjmp and longjmp functions that save the compiler reserved area (saddr area secured for KREGxx, etc.), and setjmp and longjmp functions that do not save the compiler reserved area (only registers are saved) are created.

7.2.2 "lib" folder contents

The lib folder contains the object files that were assembled from the source files of the startup routine and libraries. These object files can be linked with programs for any RL78,78K0R target device. If code modifications are not especially needed, link the default object files as is. The object files are overwritten when batch file mkstup.bat, which is provided by the CA78K0R, is executed.

Table 7-2. "lib" folder Contents

File Name			File Role
Normal	Boot Area	Flash Area	
cl0rm.lib	cl0rm.lib	cl0rme.lib	Library (runtime and standard libraries) <sup>Note 1</sup>
cl0rl.lib	cl0rl.lib	cl0rle.lib	
cl0rmf.lib	cl0rmf.lib	cl0rmfe.lib	
cl0rlf.lib	cl0rlf.lib	cl0rlfe.lib	
cl0rxm.lib	cl0rxm.lib	cl0rxme.lib	
cl0rdm.lib	cl0rdm.lib	cl0rdme.lib	
cl0ram.lib	cl0ram.lib	cl0rame.lib	
cl0rxl.lib	cl0rxl.lib	cl0rxle.lib	
cl0rdl.lib	cl0rdl.lib	cl0rdle.lib	
cl0ral.lib	cl0ral.lib	cl0rale.lib	
cl78m.lib	cl78m.lib	cl78me.lib	
cl78l.lib	cl78l.lib	cl78le.lib	
cl78mf.lib	cl78mf.lib	cl78mfe.lib	
cl78lf.lib	cl78lf.lib	cl78lfe.lib	
s0rm.rel	s0rmb.rel	s0rme.rel	Object files for startup routines <sup>Note 2</sup>
s0rml.rel	s0rmlb.rel	s0rmlle.rel	
s0rl.rel	s0rlb.rel	s0rle.rel	
s0rll.rel	s0rllb.rel	s0rllle.rel	

Notes 1. The rule for naming libraries is given below.

```
lib78k0r\cl<line><mul><model><float><flash>.lib
```

<line>

- 0r : RL78 non-mounted expansion instructions/78K0R
- 78 : RL78 mounted expansion instructions

<mul>

- None : Standard library
- x : Multiplier used
- d : Multiplier/divider used
- a : Sum-of-products calculator used

<model>

- m : Small model or medium model
- l : Large model

*<float>*

- None : Standard library and runtime library (floating point library is not used)
- f : For floating point library

*<flash>*

- None : For normal/boot area
- e : For flash memory area

2. The rule for naming startup routines is given below.

```
lib78k0r\s0r<model><lib><flash>.rel
```

*<model>*

- m : Medium model (can also be used for specifying the small model)
- l : Large model

*<lib>*

- None : When standard library functions are not used
- l : When standard library functions are used

*<flash>*

- None : Normal
- b : For boot area
- e : For flash memory area

The RL78,78K0R C compiler libraries are compatible with the following multiplier, multiplier/divider devices.

Library for RL78 mounted expansion instructions support RL78 expansion instructions.

Library for RL78 non-mounted expansion instructions/78K0R support multiplier, multiplier/divider, sum-of-products calculator.

m being interrupted so that they are not corrupted.

See "6.15 [List of Maximum Interrupt Disabled Times for Libraries](#)" regarding library functions and interrupt disable times.

For multiplier, multiplier/divider, sum-of-products calculator and RL78 expanded instructions are mounted or not mounted, see to user's manual of each product.

### 7.2.3 "src" folder contents

The src folder contains the assembler source files of the startup routines, ROM routines, error processing routines, and standard library functions (a portion). If the source must be modified to conform to the system, the object files for linking can be created by modifying this assembler source and using a batch file in the bat folder to assemble.

**Table 7-3. "src" Folder Contents**

Startup Routine Source File Name	Explanation
cstart.asm <sup>Note</sup>	Source file for startup routine (when standard library is used)
cstartn.asm <sup>Note</sup>	Source file for startup routine (when standard library is not used)
rom.asm	Source file for ROMization routine
_putchar.asm	_putchar function
putchar.asm	putchar function
getchar.asm	getchar function
longjmp.asm	longjmp function
setjmp.asm	setjmp function
vectxx.asm	Vector source for each interrupt (xx : vector address)
def.inc	For setting library according to type
macro.inc	Macro definition for each typical pattern
vect.inc	Start address of flash memory area branch table
library.inc	Selection of library assigned to boot area explicitly
imul.asm, lmul.asm, mulsw.asm, muluw.asm	Function for multiplier, multiplier/divider libraries
csdiv.asm, cudiv.asm, csrem.asm, curem.asm, isdiv.asm, iudiv.asm, isrem.asm, iurem.asm, lsdiv.asm, ludiv.asm, lsrem.asm, lurem.asm, divuw.asm, div.asm, ldiv.asm	Function for multiplier/divider libraries
macsw.asm, macuw.asm	Function for sum-of-products calculation, sum-of-products instructions libraries

**Note** A file name with "n" added is a startup routine that does not have standard library processing. Use only if the standard library will not be used. Additionally, boot area startup routines are named cstartb\*.asm, and flash area startup routines are named cstarte\*.asm.

### 7.3 Batch Files

This section explains batch files.

#### 7.3.1 Batch files for creating startup routines

The mkstup.bat in the bat folder is used to create the object file of a startup routine.

The assembler in the CA78K0R is required for mkstup.bat. Therefore, if PATH is not specified, specify it before running the batch file.

How to use this file is described next.

- Execute the following command line in the Src\cc78k0r\bat folder containing mkstup.bat.

```
mkstup device-typeNote
```

**Note** See the user's manual of the target device or "Functions Supported by CubeSuite+".

An example of use is described next.

- This example creates a startup routine to use when the target device is the uPD78F1166\_A0.

```
mkstup f1166a0
```

The mkstup.bat batch file stores the new startup routine so as to overwrite the object files of the startup routine in the lib folder at the same level as the bat folder.

The startup routine that is required to link object files is output to each folder.

The names of the object files created in lib are shown below.

```
lib  — s0rm.rel
      s0rmb.rel
      s0rme.rel
      s0rml.rel
      s0rmlb.rel
      s0rmle.rel
      s0rl.rel
      s0rlb.rel
      s0rle.rel
      s0rll.rel
      s0rllb.rel
      s0rllle.rel
```

## 7.4 Startup Routines

This section explains startup routines.

A startup routine makes the preparations needed to execute the C source program written by the user. By linking it to a user program, a load module file that achieves the objective of the program can be created.

### (1) Function

Memory initialization, ROMization for inclusion in a system, and the entry and exit processes for the C source program are performed.

- Initialization of memory

The saddr area, stack area, and external variables that do not have initial values are initialized.

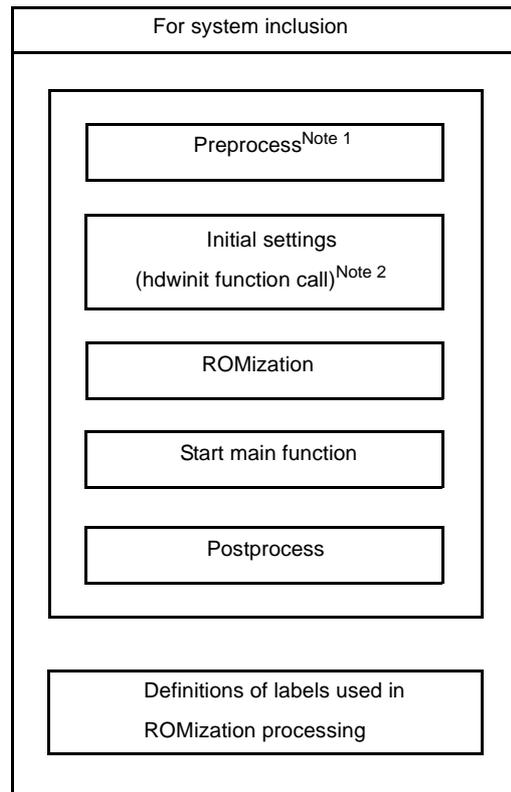
- ROMization

The initial values of the external variables, static variables, and sreg variables defined in the C source program are located in ROM. However, the variable values cannot be rewritten; only placed in ROM as is. Therefore, the initial values located in ROM must be copied to RAM. This process is called ROMization. When a program is written to ROM, it can be run by a microcontroller.

### (2) Configuration

The figure below shows the programs related to the startup routines and their configurations.

**Figure 7-1. Programs Related to Startup Routines and Their Configurations**



**Notes 1.** If the standard library is used, the processing related to the library is performed first. Startup routine source files that do not have an "n" appended at the end of their file names are processed in relation to the standard library. Files with the appended "n" are not processed.

- The `hdwinit` function is a function created as necessary by the user as a function to initialize peripheral devices (sfr). By creating the `hdwinit` function, the timing of the initial settings can be accelerated (the initial settings can be made in the main function). If the user does not create the `hdwinit` function, the process returns without doing anything.

`cstart.asm` and `cstartn.asm` have nearly identical contents.

The table below shows the differences between `cstart.asm` and `cstartn.asm`.

Type of Startup Routine	Uses Library Processing
<code>cstart.asm</code>	Yes
<code>cstartn.asm</code>	No

### (3) Uses of startup routines

The table below lists the names of the object files for the source files provided by the CA78K0R.

File Type	Source File	Object File
Startup routine	<code>cstart*.asm</code> <sup>Note 1, 2</sup>	<code>sOr*.rel</code> <sup>Note 2, 3, 4</sup>
ROMization file	<code>rom.asm</code>	Included in library

**Notes 1.** \*: If the standard library is not used, "n" is added. If the standard library is used, "n" is not added.

**2.** \*: "b" is added for boot area startup routines, and "e" for flash area startup routines.

**3.** \*: If a fixed area in the standard library is used, "l" is added.

**4.** \*: If the small model or medium model is specified, "m" is added. If the large model is specified, "l" is added.

Even when using the small model or medium model, use the startup routine to which "l" is added if variables are allocated in the far area.

**Remark** `rom.asm` defines the label indicating the final address of the data copied by ROMization.

The object file generated from `rom.asm` is included in the library.

#### 7.4.1 Preprocessing

Sample program (`cstart.asm`) preprocessing will now be explained.

**Remark** `cstart` is called in the format with `_@` added to its head.

```

NAME      @cstart

$INCLUDE ( def.inc )                               ; (1)
$INCLUDE ( macro.inc )                             ; (2)

BRKSW     EQU 1      ; brk, sbrk, calloc, free, malloc, realloc function use
EXITSW    EQU 1      ; exit, atexit function use
RANDSW    EQU 1      ; rand, srand function use
DIVSW     EQU 1      ; div function use
LDIVSW    EQU 1      ; ldiv function use
FLOATSW   EQU 1      ; floating point variables use
    
```

```

STRTOKSW EQU 1 ; strtok function use

PUBLIC _@cstart, _@cend ; (3)

$_IF ( BRKSW )
PUBLIC _@BRKADR, _@MEMTOP, _@MEMBTM
:
$ENDIF

EXTRN _main, _@STBEG, _hdwinit, _@MAA ; (4)
$_IF ( EXITSW )
EXTRN _exit
$ENDIF

; (5)
EXTRN _?R_INIT, _?RLINIT, _?R_INIS, _?DATA, _?DATAL, _?DATS
@@DATA DSEG BASEP ; near ; (6)

$_IF ( EXITSW )
_@FNCTBL : DS 4 * 32
_@FNCENT : DS 2
:
_@MEMTOP : DS 32
_@MEMBTM :
$ENDIF

```

**(1) Including include files**

def.inc -> For settings according to the library type.

macro.inc -> Macro definitions for typical patterns.

**(2) Library switch**

If the standard libraries listed in the comments are not used, by changing the EQU definition to 0, the space secured for the processing of unused libraries and for use by the library can be conserved. The default is set to use everything (In a startup routine without library processing, this processing is not performed).

**(3) Symbol definitions**

The symbols used when using the standard library are defined.

**(4) External reference declaration of symbol for stack resolution**

The public symbol (\_@STBEG) for stack resolution is an external reference declaration.

\_@STBEG has the value of the last address in the stack area + 1.

\_@STBEG is automatically generated by specifying the symbol generation option (-s) for stack resolution in the linker. Therefore, always specify the -s option when linking. In this case, specify the name of the area used in the stack. If the name of the area is omitted, the RAM area is used, but the stack area can be located anywhere by creating a link directive file. For memory mapping, see the user's manual of the target device.

An example of a link directive file is shown below. The link directive file is a text file created by the user in an ordinary editor (for details about the description method, see "7.6 Coding Examples").

**Example** When -sSTACK is specified in linking

Create lk78k0r.dr (link directive file). Since ROM and RAM are allocated by default operations by referencing the memory map of the target device, it is not necessary to specify ROM and RAM allocations unless they need to be changed.

For link directives, see lk78k0r.dr in the Smp78k0r\CA78K0R folder.

```

                First address  Size
                |              |
memory  SDR      : ( 0xFFE20h, 0000098h )
memory  STACK    : ( 0xxxxxxh, 0xxxxxxh ) <- Specify the first address and size here,
                                                then specify lk78k0r.dr with the -d
                                                linker option.78k0r
                                                (Example: -dlk78k0r.dr)
merge  @@INIS    : = SDR
merge  @@DATS    : = SDR
merge  @@BITS    : = SDR

```

#### (5) External reference declaration of labels for ROMization processing

The labels for ROMization processing are defined in the postprocessing section.

#### (6) Securing area for standard library

The area used when using the standard library is secured.

### 7.4.2 Initial settings

The initial settings for a sample program (cstart.asm) will now be explained.

```

@@VECT00      CSEG  AT      0                      ; (1)
              DW      @_cstart

@@LCODE CSEG  BASE
_@cstart :
  SEL      RB0                      ; (2)
  MOV      A, #_@MAA                ; (3)
  MOV1     CY, A.0
  MOV1     MAA, CY
  MOVW     SP, #LOWW _@STBEG         ; SP <-stack begin address ; (4)
  CALL    !!_hdwinit                ; (5)
  :
$_IF ( BRKSW OR EXITSW OR RANDSW OR FLOATSW )
  CLRW     AX
$ENDIF
  :

```

**(1) Reset vector setting**

The segment of the reset vector table is defined as follows. The first entry address of the startup routine is set.

@@VECT00	CSEG	AT	0000H
	DW	__cstart	

**(2) Register bank setting**

Register bank R0 is set as the work register bank.

**(3) Mirror area setting**

The mirror area is set.

Regarding the mirror area, see to the user's manual of the target device.

**(4) Stack pointer (SP) setting**

\_\_STBEG is set in the stack pointer.

\_\_STBEG is automatically generated by specifying the symbol generation option (-s) for stack resolution in the linker.

**(5) Hardware initialization function call**

The hdwinit function is created when needed by the user as the function for initializing peripheral devices (SFR).

By creating this function, initial settings can be made to match the user's objectives.

If the user does not create the hdwinit function, the process returns without doing anything.

**(6) ROMization processing**

The ROMization processing in cstart.asm will now be described.

```

; copy external variables having initial value
$_IF ( _ESCOPY )
    MOV     ES, #HIGHW __R_INIT
$ENDIF

    MOVW   HL, #LOWW __R_INIT
    MOVW   DE, #LOWW __INIT
    BR     $LINIT2

LINIT1 :
$_IF ( _ESCOPY )
    MOV     A, ES : [HL]
$ELSE
    MOV     A, [HL]
$ENDIF

    MOV     [DE], A
    INCW   HL
    INCW   DE

LINIT2 :
    MOVW   AX, HL
    CMPW   AX, #LOWW __?R_INIT
    BNZ    $LINIT1

```

In ROMization processing, the initial values of the external variables and the sreg variables stored in ROM are copied to RAM. The variables to be processed have the 4 types (a) to (d) shown in the following example.

```

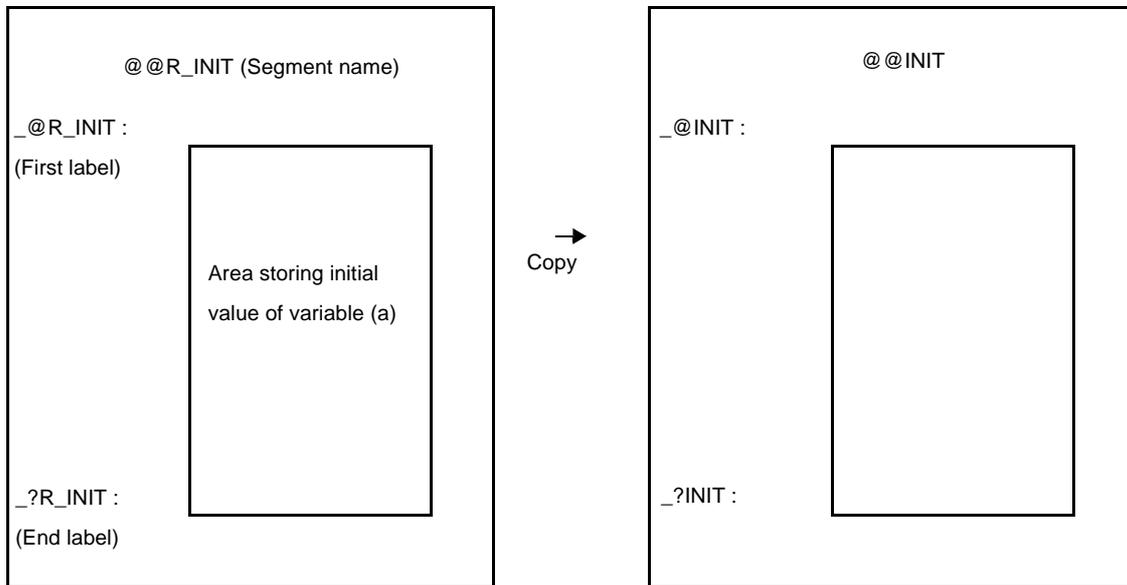
char    c = 1 ;           (a) External variable with initial value
int     i ;              (b) External variable without initial valueNote
__sreg int    si = 0 ;   (c) sreg variable with initial value
__sreg char   sc ;      (d) sreg variable without initial valueNote

void main ( void ) {
    :
}
    
```

**Note** External variables without initial value and sreg variables without initial value are not copied, and zeros are written directly to RAM.

- The figure below shows ROMization processing for external variable (a) with an initial value. The initial value of the variable (a) is placed in the @@R\_INIT segment of ROM by the RL78,78K0R C compiler. The ROMization processing copies this value to the @?INIT segment in RAM (the same processes are performed for the variable (c)).

**Figure 7-2. ROMization Processing for External Variable with Initial Value**



- The first and end labels in the @@R\_INIT segment are defined by @\_R\_INIT and \_?R\_INIT. The first and end labels in the @?INIT segment are defined by @\_INIT and \_?INIT.
- The variables (b) and (d) are not copied, but zeros are written directly in the predetermined segment in RAM. The table below shows the segment names of the ROM areas where the variables (a) to (c) are placed, and the first and end labels of the initial values in each segment.

Variable Type	Segment	First Label	End Label
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to near area)	@@R_INIT	_@R_INIT	_?R_INIT

Variable Type	Segment	First Label	End Label
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to far area)	@@RLINIT	@@RLINIT	@@RLINIT
sreg variable with initial value(c)	@@R_INIS	@@R_INIS	@@R_INIS

The table below shows the segment names of the RAM areas where the variables (a) to (d) are placed, and the first and end labels of the initial values in each segment.

Variable Type	Segment	First Label	End Label
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to near area)	@@INIT	@@INIT	@@INIT
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to far area)	@@INITL	@@INITL	@@INITL
External variable without initial value (b) (when allocated to near area)	@@DATA	@@DATA	@@DATA
External variable without initial value (b) (when allocated to far area)	@@DATAL	@@DATAL	@@DATAL
sreg variable with initial value (c)	@@INIS	@@INIS	@@INIS
sreg variable without initial value (d)	@@DATS	@@DATS	@@DATS

### 7.4.3 main function startup and postprocessing

Starting the main function and postprocessing in a sample program (cstart.asm) will now be described.

```

CALL    !!_main          ; main ( ) ;          ; (1)
$_IF ( EXITSW )
    CLRW    AX
    CALL    !!_exit      ; exit ( 0 ) ;        ; (2)
$ENDIF

BR      $$

;
_@cend :

; (3)

@@R_INIT CSEG    UNIT64KP
_@R_INIT :
@@RLINIT CSEG    UNIT64KP
_@RLINIT :
@@R_INIS CSEG    UNIT64KP
_@R_INIS :
@@INIT   DSEG    BASEP
_@INIT   :
@@INITL  DSEG    UNIT64KP
_@INITL  :
@@DATA   DSEG    BASEP
_@DATA   :
@@DATA1  DSEG    UNIT64KP
_@DATA1  :
@@INIS   DSEG    SADDRP
_@INIS   :
@@DATS   DSEG    SADDRP
_@DATS   :
@@CALT   CSEG    CALLT0
@@CNST   CSEG    MIRRORP
@@CNSTL  CSEG    PAGE64KP
@@BITS   BSEG

;

END

```

#### (1) Starting the main function

The main function is called.

#### (2) Starting the exit function

When exit processing is needed, the exit function is called.

#### (3) Definitions of segments and labels used in ROMization processing

The segments and labels used for each variable (1) to (4) (see "(6) ROMization processing") in ROMization processing are defined. A segment indicates the area that stores the initial value of each variable. A label indicates the first address in each segment.

The ROMization processing file rom.asm will now be described. The rom.asm relocatable object file is in the library.

```

NAME      @rom
;
PUBLIC   __?R_INIT, __?RLINIT, __?R_INIS
PUBLIC   __?INIT, __?INITL, __?DATA, __?DATAL, __?INIS, __?DATS
;
@@R_INIT      CSEG      UNIT64KP                ; (4)
__?R_INIT :
@@RLINIT      CSEG      UNIT64KP
__?RLINIT :
@@R_INIS      CSEG      UNIT64KP
__?R_INIS :
@@INIT        DSEG      BASEP
__?INIT :
@@INITL       DSEG      UNIT64KP
__?INITL :
@@DATA        DSEG      BASEP
__?DATA :
@@DATAL       DSEG      UNIT64KP
__?DATAL :
@@INIS        DSEG      SADDRP
__?INIS :
@@DATS        DSEG      SADDRP
__?DATS :
;
END

```

#### (4) Definition of labels used in ROMization processing

The labels used for each variable (1) to (4) (see "(6) ROMization processing") in ROMization processing are defined. These labels indicate the last address of the segment storing the initial value of each variable.

If multiple user libraries exist and mutual references exist between the object module files belonging to these libraries, do not change the module names "@rom" and "@rome" of the CA78K0R terminal module.

If the terminal module name is changed, it may not link in the end.

## 7.5 ROMization Processing in Startup Routine for Flash Area

The startup routines for flash differ with the ordinary startup routines as follows.

**Table 7-4. ROM Area Section for Initialization Data**

Variable Type	Segment	First Label	End Label
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to near area)	@ER_INIT CSEG UNIT64KP	E@R_INIT	E?R_INIT
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to far area)	@ERLINIT CSEG UNIT64KP	E@RLINIT	E?RLINIT
sreg variable with initial value(c)	@ER_INIS CSEG UNIT64KP	E@R_INIS	E?R_INIS

**Table 7-5. RAM Area Section of Copy Destination**

Variable Type	Segment	First Label	End Label
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to near area)	@EINIT DSEG BASEP	E@INIT	E?INIT
External variable with initial value (a) (when allocated to far area)	@EINITL DSEG UNIT64KP	E@INITL	E?INITL
External variable without initial value (b) (when allocated to near area)	@EDATA DSEG BASEP	E@DATA	E?DATA
External variable without initial value (b) (when allocated to far area)	@EDATAL DSEG UNIT64KP	E@DATAL	E?DATAL
sreg variable with initial value (c)	@EINIS DSEG SADDRP	E@INIS	E?INIS
sreg variable without initial value (d)	@EDATS DSEG SADDRP	E@DATS	E?DATS

- In the startup routine, the following labels are added at the head of each segment in ROM area and RAM area.

E@R\_INIT, E@R\_INIS, E@INIT, E@DATA, E@INIS, E@DATS, E@INITL, E@DATAL

Furthermore, the following labels are added if the large model is specified or variables are allocated in the far area.

E@RLINIT, E@INITL, E@DATAL

- In the terminal module, the following labels are added at the terminal of each segment in ROM area and RAM area.

E?R\_INIT, E?R\_INIS, E?INIT, E?DATA, E?INIS, E?DATS, E?RLINIT, E?INITL, E?DATAL

- The startup routine copies the contents from the first label address of each segment in ROM area to the end label address -1, to the area from the first label address of each segment in RAM area

- Zeros are embedded from E@DATA to E?DATA, and from E@DATS to E?DATS.

- Furthermore, zeros are embedded from E@DATAL to E?DATAL if the large model is specified or variables are allocated to the far area

**7.6 Coding Examples**

The startup routines provided by the CA78K0R can be revised to match the target system actually being used. The essential points about revising these files are explained in this section.

**7.6.1 Essential points about revising startup routine**

The essential points about revising a startup routine source file will now be explained. After revising, use the batch file mkstup.bat in the Src\cc78k0r\bat folder to assemble the revised source file (cstart\*.asm) (\*:alphanumeric symbols).

**(1) Symbols used in library functions**

If the library functions listed in the table below are not used, the symbols corresponding to each function in the startup routine (cstart.asm) can be deleted. However, since the exit function is used in the startup routine, @\_FNCTBL and @\_FNCENT cannot be deleted (if the exit function is deleted, these symbols can be deleted). The symbols in the unused library functions can be deleted by changing the corresponding library switch.

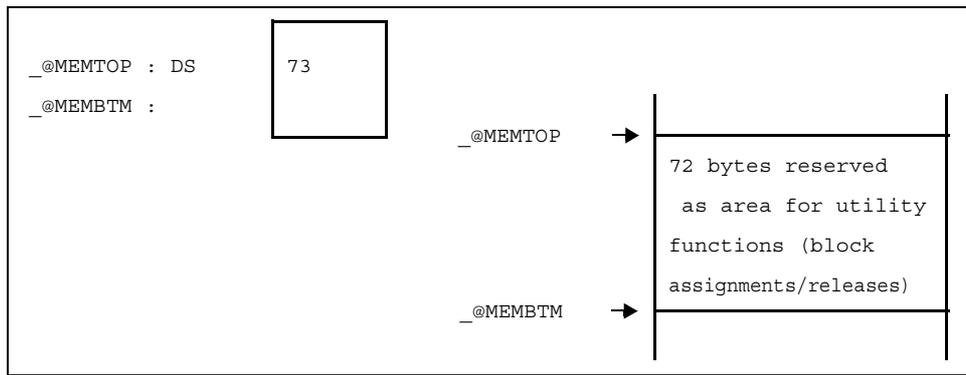
Library Function Name	Symbols Used
brk	_errno
sbrk	_@MEMTOP
malloc	_@MEMBTM
calloc	_@BRKADR
realloc	
free	
exit	_@FNCTBL
atexit	_@FNCENT
rand	_@SEED
srand	
div	_@DIVR
ldiv	_@LDIVR
strtok	_@TOKPTR
atof	_errno
strtod	
strtol	
strtoul	
Mathematical function	
Floating-point runtime library	

**(2) Areas that are used for utility functions (block assignments/releases)**

If the size of the area used by a utility function (block assignment/release) is defined by the user, this is set as in the following example.

**Example** If you want to reserve 72 bytes for use by utility functions (block assignments/releases), make the following changes to the initial settings of the startup routine.

Figure 7-3. Startup Routine Initial Settings Example

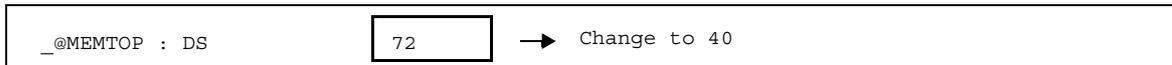


Add one byte to the area size to be secured and then specify the value in the startup routine. In the above example, 73 bytes are secured in the startup routine, but up to 72 bytes can actually be secured for utility functions.

If the specified size is too big to be stored in the RAM area, errors may occur when linking.

In this case, decrease the size specified as shown below, or avoid by correcting the link directive file. For correction of the link directive file, see "5.3.2 When using the compiler".

**Example** To decrease the specified size



### 7.6.2 When using RTOS

The RI78V4 and RL78,78K0R C compiler provide sample programs for initialization routines (assembler format). When using the RI78V4 and RL78,78K0R C compiler in combination, initialization routines for both tools must therefore be modified.

## CHAPTER 8 ROMIZATION

ROMization refers to the process of placing initial values, such as those for initialized external variables, into ROM and then copying them to RAM when the system is executed.

The CA78K0R provides startup routines with built-in program ROMization processing, saving the trouble of writing a routine for romization processing at startup.

For information about the startup routines, see "[7.4 Startup Routines](#)".

The method for performing program ROMization is as follows.

During ROMization the startup routine, object module files and libraries are linked. The startup routine initializes the object program.

**(1) s0r\*.rel**

Startup routine (ROMization compatible).

The copy routine for the initialization data is included, and the beginning of the initial data is indicated. The label "\_@cstart" (symbol) is added to the start address.

**(2) c10r\*.lib**

Library included with the CA78K0R

The library files of the C compiler include the following library types.

- Runtime library

"@@" is added to the beginning of the symbol for runtime library names. For special libraries cprep and cdisp, however, "\_@" is added to the beginning of the symbol.

- Standard library

"\_" is added to the beginning of the symbol for standard library names.

**(3) \*.lib**

User-created library

"\_" is added to the beginning of the symbol.

**Caution** The CA78K0R provides several types of startup routines and libraries. See "[CHAPTER 7 STARTUP](#)" regarding startup routines. See "[7.2.2 "lib" folder contents](#)" regarding libraries.

## CHAPTER 9 REFERENCING COMPILER AND ASSEMBLER

This chapter describes how to link a program written in assembly language.

If a function called from a C source program is written in another language, both object modules are linked by the linker. This chapter describes the procedure for calling a program written in another language from a program written in the C language, and the procedure for calling a program written in the C language from a program written in another language.

Using the CA78K0R to interface with another language is described in the following order:

- [Accessing Arguments and Automatic Variables](#)
- [Storing Return Values](#)
- [Calling C Language Routines from Assembly Language](#)
- [Calling Assembly Language Routines from C Language](#)
- [Referencing Variables Defined in C Language from Assembly Language](#)
- [Referencing Variables Defined in Assembly Language from C Language](#)
- [Points of Caution for Calling Between C Language Routines and Assembler Functions](#)

### 9.1 Accessing Arguments and Automatic Variables

For details on the assignment of argument and automatic variables, see "[3.3.2 Ordinary function call interface](#)". Register HL is used as a base pointer for accessing arguments and automatic variables stored in a stack.

### 9.2 Storing Return Values

See "[3.3.1 Return values](#)".

### 9.3 Calling C Language Routines from Assembly Language

This section describes the procedure for calling functions written in C language from assembly language routines.

#### 9.3.1 Calling C language routine from assembly language program

The procedure for calling a function written in the C language from an assembly language routine is as follows.

- (a) **Save the C work registers (AX, BC, and DE).**
- (b) **Place the arguments on the stack.**
- (c) **Call the C language routine.**
- (d) **Increment the value of the stack pointer (SP) by the number of bytes of arguments.**
- (e) **Reference the return value of the C language routine (in BC or DE and BC).**

- This is an example of an assembly language program.

```

$PROCESSOR ( F1166A0 )

        NAME      FUNC2
        EXTRN     _CSUB
        PUBLIC    _FUNC2

@@CODE  CSEG
_FUNC2 :
        movw     ax, #20H      ; set 2nd argument ( j )
        push    ax            ;
        movw     ax, #21H      ; set 1st argument ( i )
        call    !_CSUB        ; call "CSUB ( i, j )"
        pop     ax            ;
        ret
        END

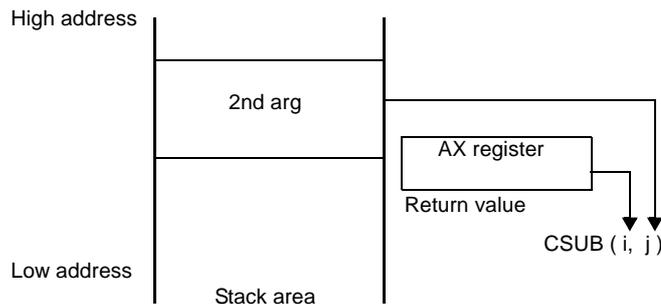
```

**(1) Saving the work registers (AX, BC, and DE)**

The 3 register pairs of AX, BC, and DE are used in the C language. Their values are not restored when returning. Therefore, if the values in registers are needed, they are saved on the calling side. Save or restore the registers before or after an argument pass code. The HL register is always saved on the side of the C language when it is used in the C language.

**(2) Stacking arguments**

Any arguments are placed on the stack. The following figure shows argument passing.

**Figure 9-1. Argument Passing****(3) Calling a C language routine**

A CALL instruction calls a C language routine. If the C language routine is a "callt" function, the callt instruction performs the call, and if it is a "callf" function, the callf instruction performs it.

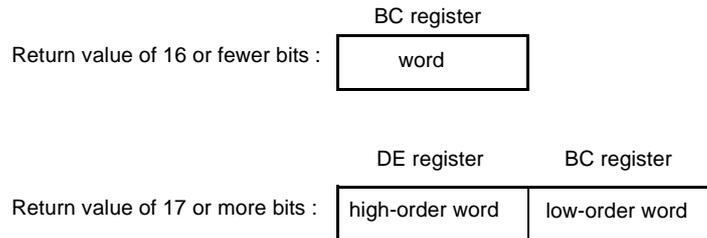
**(4) Restoring the stack pointer (SP)**

The stack pointer is restored by the number of bytes that hold the arguments.

**(5) Referencing the return value (BC and DE)**

The return value from the C language is returned as follows.

Figure 9-2. Referencing Return Values



## 9.4 Calling Assembly Language Routines from C Language

This section shows examples of default procedures.

Calling an assembly language routine from the C language is described as follows.

- [C language routine calling procedure](#)
- [Saving data from assembly language routine and returning](#)

### 9.4.1 C language routine calling procedure

The following is a C language program example that calls an assembly language routine.

```
extern int    FUNC ( int, long ) ;    /* Function prototype */

void main ( void ) {
    int      i, j ;
    long     l ;

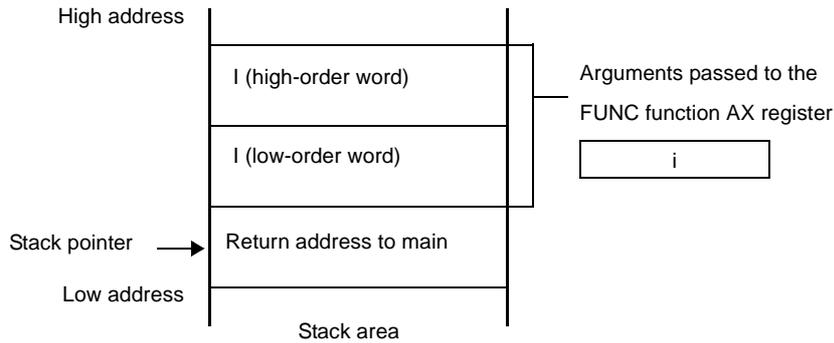
    l = 0x54321 ;
    i = 1 ;
    j = FUNC ( i, l ) ;              /* Function call */
}
```

In this program example, the interface and control flow with the program that is executing are as follows.

- (a) **Placing the first argument passed from the main function to the FUNC function in the register, and the second and subsequent arguments on the stack.**
- (b) **Passing control to the FUNC function by using the CALL instruction.**

The next figure shows the stack immediately after control moves to the FUNC function in the above program example.

Figure 9-3. Stack Immediately After Function Is Called



#### 9.4.2 Saving data from assembly language routine and returning

The following processing steps are performed in the FUNC function called by the main function.

- (1) Save the base pointer, saddr area for register variable.
- (2) Copy the stack pointer (SP) to the base pointer (HL).
- (3) Perform the processing in the FUNC function.
- (4) Set the return value.
- (5) Restore the saved register.
- (6) Return to the main function.

An example of an assembly language program is explained next.

```

$PROCESSOR ( F1166A0 )

        PUBLIC  _FUNC
        PUBLIC  _DT1
        PUBLIC  _DT2

@@DATA  DSEG    BASEP
_DT1 :   DS      ( 2 )
_DT2 :   DS      ( 4 )

@@CODE  CSEG
_FUNC :
        PUSH   HL           ; save base pointer      (1)
        PUSH   AX
        MOVW   HL, SP       ; copy stack pointer   (2)
        MOVW   AX, [HL]     ; arg1
        MOVW   !_DT1, AX    ; move 1st argument ( i )
        MOVW   AX, [HL + 10] ; arg2

```

```

MOVW    !_DT2 + 2, AX
MOVW    AX, [HL + 8]    ; arg2
MOVW    !_DT2, AX      ; move 2nd argument ( 1 )
MOVW    BC, #0AH      ; set return value      (4)
POP     AX
POP     HL              ; restore base pointer  (5)
RET                                           ;      (6)
END
    
```

**(1) Saving base pointer and work register**

A label with "\_" is prefixed to the function name written in the C source. Base pointers and work registers are saved with the same name as function names written inside the C source.

After the label is specified, the HL register (base pointer) is saved.

In the case of programs generated by the C compiler, other functions are called without saving the `saddr` area for register variables. Therefore, if changing the values of these registers for functions that are called, be sure to save the values beforehand. However, if register variables are not used on the call side, saving the `saddr` area for register variables is not required.

**(2) Copying to base pointer (HL) of stack pointer (SP)**

The stack pointer (SP) changes due to "PUSH, POP" inside functions. Therefore, the stack pointer is copied to register "HL" and used as the base pointer of arguments.

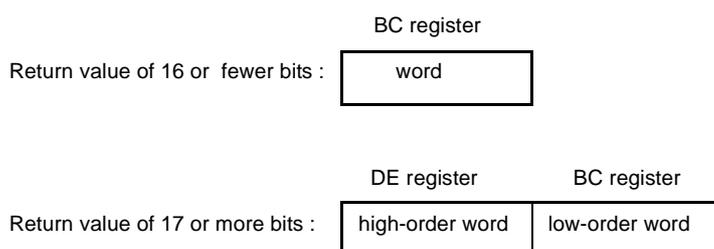
**(3) Basic processing of FUNC function**

After processing steps (1) and (2) are performed, the basic processing of called functions is performed.

**(4) Setting the return value**

If there is a return value, it is set in the "BC" and "DE" registers. If there is no return value, setting is unnecessary.

**Figure 9-4. Setting Return Value**

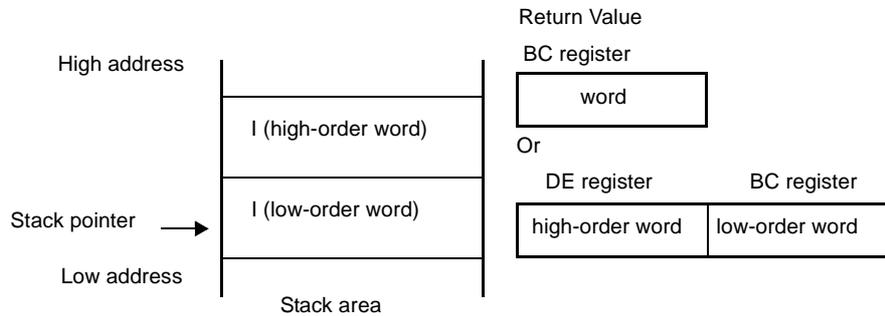


**(5) Restoring the registers**

Restore the saved base pointer and work register.

## (6) Returning to the main function

Figure 9-5. Returning to Main Function



## 9.5 Referencing Variables Defined in C Language from Assembly Language

If external variables defined in a C language program are referenced in an assembly language routine, the extern declaration is used.

Underscores "\_" are added to the beginning of the variables defined in the assembly language routine.

A C language program example is shown below.

```
extern void    subf ( void ) ;

char    c = 0 ;
int     i = 0 ;

void main ( void ) {
    subf ( ) ;
}
```

The following occurs in the assembler.

```
$_PROCESSOR ( F1166A0 )

    PUBLIC  _subf
    EXTRN  _c
    EXTRN  _i

@@CODE  CSEG
_subf :
    MOV    !_c, #04H
    MOVW   AX, #07H
    MOVW   !_i, AX
    RET
    END
```

### 9.6 Referencing Variables Defined in Assembly Language from C Language

Variables defined in assembly language are referenced from the C language in this way.

A C language program example is shown below.

```
extern char    c ;
extern int    i ;

void    subf ( void ) {
    c = ' A ' ;
    i = 4 ;
}
```

The following occurs in the RL78,78K0R assembler.

```
NAME    ASMSUB

PUBLIC  _i
PUBLIC  _c

ABC     DSEG    BASEP
_i :    DW      0
_c :    DB      0
        END
```

### 9.7 Points of Caution for Calling Between C Language Routines and Assembler Functions

- "\_"(underscore)

The RL78,78K0R C compiler adds an underscore "\_" (ASCII code "5FH" ) to external definitions and reference names of the object modules to be output.

In the next C program example, "b = FUNC(a, c);" is taken as "a reference to the external name \_FUNC".

```
extern int    FUNC ( int, long ) ;    /* Function prototype */

void main ( void ) {
    int    a, b ;
    long   c ;

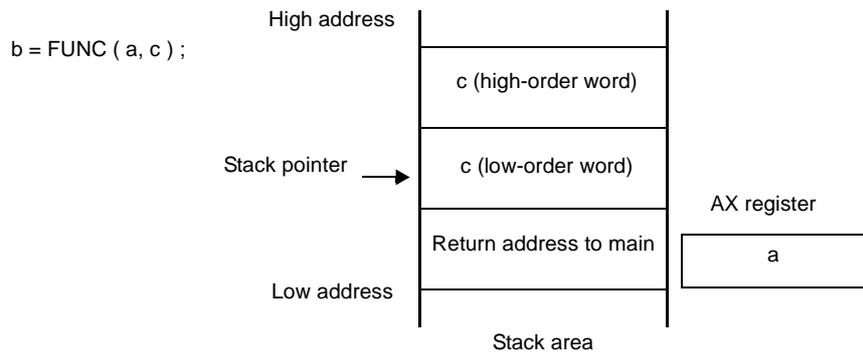
    c = 0x54321 ;
    a = c ;
    b = FUNC ( a, c ) ;                /* Function call */
}
```

The routine name is written as "\_FUNC" in RL78,78K0R assembler.

- Argument positions on the stack

The arguments placed on the stack are placed from the postfix argument to the prefix argument in the direction from the High address to the Low address.

Figure 9-6. Argument Positions on Stack



## CHAPTER 10 CAUTIONS

This chapter explains points of caution when coding.

**(1) Kanji code (2-byte code) classification**

To use a source containing SJIS or EUC code, specify sjis or euc for the environmental variable LANG78K, or select SJIS or EUC for the "Kanji Code of Source" option.

If the specified Japanese character encoding scheme differs from the encoding scheme used in the source, an error might occur during building, or some of the code might be incorrectly processed as comments.

**(2) Include files**

Functions (except declarations) defined within include files cannot be expanded in the C source.

If definitions are made within an include file, unwanted effects such as definition lines not being displayed correctly may occur at the time of debugging.

**(3) When outputting assembler source**

When there are assembly language descriptors such as #asm blocks or \_\_asm statements within the C source program, the load module file creation sequence occurs in the order of: compile, assemble, link.

As in cases where there are assembly language descriptors, when assembling by outputting the assembler source first without outputting objects directly with the RL78,78K0R C compiler, observe the following points of caution.

- If it is necessary to define symbols within #asm blocks (the area between #asm and #endasm), or within \_\_asm statements, use symbols beginning with ?L (e.g. ?L@01, ?L@sym, etc.). However, do not define these symbols externally (via PUBLIC declaration). Furthermore, segments cannot be defined within #asm blocks or \_\_asm statements. If symbols beginning with the ?L character sequence are not used, a fatal error (F2114) will be output during assembly.
- When using variables set to extern in the C source inside of #asm blocks, if there is no reference within other parts written in C then the EXTRN is not generated and a link error occurs. Therefore, the EXTRN should be done within the #asm block when not referencing with C.
- When modifying a segment name with a #pragma section command, do not designate the segment name to be the same as the primary name of the source file name. An error (F2106) will be output during assembly.

**(4) Link directive file creation**

When linking objects generated by the RL78,78K0R C compiler, if using a region other than the ROM or RAM memory of the target device, or if you want to specify any address to allocate code or data, create a link directive file and specify linker option-d when linking.

See "[CHAPTER 5 LINK DIRECTIVE SPECIFICATIONS](#)" or the lk.dr (under the smp folder) included with the C compiler regarding the method for creating link directive files.

**Example** Allocating an initial value null external variable (other than an sreg variable) to external memory in a C source file.

**(a) Modify the section name used for initial value null external variable at the head of the C source.**

```
#pragma section @@DATA1 EXTDATA
:
```

**Caution** To initialize or ROMize the modified segment, do so by modifying the startup routine.

**(b) Create the lk78k0r.dr link directive file.**

```
memory EXTRAM : ( 040000H, 1000H )
merge  EXTDATA : = EXTRAM
```

Pay attention to the following points when creating link directive files.

- When linking, if using stack resolution symbol creation designation option -s, it is recommended to secure the stack region with the link directive file's memory directive, and explicitly define the name of the secured stack region. If the region name is excluded, RAM memory (except for SFR memory) will be used as the stack region.

**Example** When the link directive file lk78k0r.dr has been added to.

```
memory EXTRAM : ( 040000H, 1000H )
memory STK    : ( 0FB000H, 100H )
merge  EXTDATA : = EXTRAM
```

The command line is as follows.

```
C>lk78k0r s0rml.rel prime.rel -bcl0rm.lib -sSTK -dlk78k0r.dr
```

- When linking to the defined memory region, the following link error may be output.

```
RA78K0R error E3206 : Segment 'xxx' can't allocate to memory-ignored.
```

This means that the specified segment cannot be allocated due to insufficient space in the specified memory region.

The method for dealing with this is divided broadly into the following 3 steps.

**<1> Investigate the size of the segment that cannot be allocated (see the .map file).**

**However, depending on the type of segment specified by the error, the method for investigating the segment size differs as follows.**

- For segments automatically generated at time of compiling  
Investigate the segment size in the map file created from linking.
- For user-created segments  
Investigate the size of the segment which was not allocated in the assembly list file (.prn).

**<2> Based on the segment size found above, increase the memory size where the segment will be allocated with the directive file.****<3> Specify option -d for the directive file specification and link.****(5) When using the va\_start macro**

Because the offset of the first argument differs depending on the function, operation of the va\_start macro defined in stdarg.h is not guaranteed.

Use the macro accordingly as follows.

- When specifying the first argument, use the va\_starttop macro.

**(6) Regarding the startup routines and libraries**

- Use the same startup routine and library version offered as the version of the execute form file (cc78k0r.exe) being used.
- In floating-point compatible sprintf, vprintf and vsprintf for the, values below the accuracy level of the "%f", "%e", "%E", "%g" and "%G" specified conversion results are rounded down. Additionally, "%f" conversion occurs even if the "%g" and "%G" specified conversion results are above the accuracy level.  
In floating-point compatible sscanf and scanf, if no valid character is read at "%f", "%e", "%E", "%g" and "%G" specification then the conversion result will be +0, and if "±" is the only character recognized then the conversion result will be ± 0.

**(7) When ROMization is performed**

ROMization is the process of allocating an initial value such as an external variable with an initial value to ROM then copying it to RAM when the system is executed. The RL78,78K0R C compiler by default generates code to be ROMized. Therefore it is necessary to link to a start-up routine that includes ROMization processing when linking.

ROMization processing of far memory is not included in the startup routines for small and medium models. When a variable has been allocated to far memory using the \_\_far modifier, use a large model startup routine.

The CA78K0R offers the following startup routines, all of which include ROMization processing.

If using flash memory self overwrite mode, please see "(3) Uses of startup routines".

When not using C standard library memory	s0rm.rel, s0rl.rel
When using C standard library memory	s0rml.rel, s0rll.rel

A usage example is shown below.

The -s option is a stack symbol (\_@STBEG, \_@STEND) automatically generated option.

```
C>lk78k0r s0rl.rel sample.rel -s -bc10rxm.lib -bc10rm.lib -osample.lmf
```

sample.rel	User programmed object module file
s0rl.rel	Startup routine
cl0rxm.lib	Multiplier library
cl0rdm.lib	Multiplier/divider library
cl0rm.lib	Runtime library, standard library

- Caution 1. Be sure to link the startup routine first.**
2. **When creating user-generated libraries, separate them from the libraries provided by CA78K0R, and specify them ahead of the CA78K0R libraries when linking.**
  3. **Do not add user functions to the CA78K0R libraries**
  4. **When a floating-point library (cl0r\*f.lib) is used, it is also necessary to link to the normal library (cl0r\*.lib).**

**Example** When using floating-point compatible sprintf, sscanf, printf, scanf, vprintf and vsprintf.

```
-bmylib.lib -bc10rmf.lib -bc10rm.lib
```

**Example** When using `sprintf`, `scanf`, `printf`, `scanf`, `vprintf` and `vscanf` not compatible with floating point.

```
-bmylib.lib -bc10rm.lib -bc10rmf.lib
```

### (8) Prototype declaration

In a function prototype declaration, if the function type is not specified, an error (E0301, E0701) results.

```
f ( void ) ;    /* E0301 : Syntax error */
                /* E0701 : External definition syntax */
```

In such a case, specify the function type.

```
int    f ( void ) ;
```

### (9) Error message output

Outside the function, if there is a spelling error in the keyword at the beginning of a line, the display position of the error line may be shifted or an improper error may be output.

```
extren int    i ;                /* extern is misspelled. An error does not occur here.*/
/* comment */
void    f ( void ) ;
[EOF]                                /* Error such as E0712 */
```

### (10) Comment input in the preprocessor directive

If a comment is inserted at the beginning or in the middle of a preprocessor directive in the function form macro row, an error occurs (E0803, E0814, E0821, etc.).

```
/* com1 */    #pragma    sfr                /* E0803 */
/* com2 */    #define    ONE    1          /* E0803 */
#define        /* com3 */    TWO    2      /* E0814 */
#ifdef        /* com4 */    ANSI_C        /* E0814 */

/* com5 */    #endif
#define        SUB ( p1, /* com6 */ p2 ) p2 = p1 /* E0821 */
```

In such a case, insert the comment after the preprocessor directive.

```
#pragma    sfr                /* com1 */
#define    ONE    1          /* com2 */
#define    TWO    2          /* com3 */
#ifdef    ANSI_C            /* com4 */

#endif                /* com5 */
#define    SUB ( p1, p2 ) p2 = p1 /* com6 */
```

**(11) Tag usage for structure, union and enum**

In the function prototype declaration, if (structure, union and enum) tags are used before they are defined, a warning occurs if conditions (a) below are met, and an error occurs if conditions (b), (c) below are met.

- (a) If the tag is used to define the pointers to structure and union in the argument declaration, a warning (W0411, W0412, W0510) occurs when the function is called.**

```
void    func ( int, struct st ) ;

struct st {
    char    memb1 ;
    char    memb2 ;
} st[ ] = {
    { 1, ' a ' }, { 2, ' b ' }
} ;

void    caller ( void ) {
    /* W0510 Pointer mismatch */
    func ( sizeof ( st ) / sizeof ( st[0] ), st ) ;
}
```

- (b) If the tag is used to designate structure, union and enum types for the return value declaration and argument statement, an error (E0737) will occur.**

```
/* E0737 Undeclared structure/union/enum tag */
void    func1 ( int, struct st ) ;
/* E0737 Undeclared structure/union/enum tag */
struct st    func2 ( int ) ;
struct st {
    char    memb1 ;
    char    memb2 ;
} ;
```

In such a case, first define the structure, union and enum tags.

- (c) In the member of a structure declaration, if the self-referential structure member having a type qualified to be "const", "volatile", and etc. is designated more than 2, an error (E0719) will occur.**

```
struct st {
    const struct st*    a ;
    const struct st*    b ;
};
```

In such a case, designate the type qualified of "const", "volatile" after the member's type declaration.

```

struct st {
    struct st    const* a ;
    struct st    const* b ;
};

```

**(12) Initializing arrays, structures and unions within a function**

Within a function, array, structure and union initialization cannot be performed using other than a static variable address, constant, and character string

```

void f ( void ) ;

void f ( void ) {
    char *p, *p1, *p2 ;
    char *ca[3] = { p, p1, p2 } ; /* Error( E0750 ) */
}

```

In such a case, enter an assignment statement and substitute it in place of initialization.

```

void f ( void ) ;

void f ( void ) {
    char *ca[3] ;
    char *p, *p1, *p2 ;
    ca[0] = p ; ca[1] = p1 ; ca[2] = p2 ;
}

```

**(13) Structure-returning functions**

When a function returns the structure itself, if an interrupt occurs during return processing of the return value and during interrupt processing the same function is called, the return value after completion of interrupt processing will be invalid.

```

struct str {
    char c ;
    int i ;
    long l ;
} st ;

struct str func ( ) {
    /* Interrupt occurrence */
    :
}

void main ( ) {
    st = func ( ) ; /* Interrupt occurrence */
}

```

During the processing excerpt above, if the func function is called at the interrupt destination, st may break down.

**(14)Memory initialization directives**

If memory initialization directives DB, DW and DG are input with the data segment (DSEG), the object code will be output, but a warning (W4301) will occur at the object converter. This is because code exists at an address other than the ROM region (the coding region).

If ROM code is called (operations called across processing and tape-out) in this state, an error occurs.

**(15)Memory directives**

The default memory region name of each device cannot be erased.

Set the memory size for default memory names not being used to 0.

However, some segments may be assigned to the default regions, so be careful when modifying region names.

See the user manual of each device regarding default memory region names.

**(16)Segment names**

When inputting a segment name, do not give a segment a name that is the same as the primary name of the source file name. Abort error F2106 will occur at assembly.

**(17)EQU definition of SFR name**

An SFR name can be designated in the operand of an EQU directive, but if the name of an SFR outside the saddr area is designated an assemble error will occur.

**(18)Specifying section start addresses**

The size of a section that specifies a start address with a #pragma section directive is always an even number.

**(19)Bit fields**

Bit fields with type signed are handled as unsigned bit fields.

**(20)Output conversion on I/O functions in the standard libraries**

When output conversion is performed for the printf, sprintf, vprintf, and vsprintf functions, operation will become illegal under the following conditions.

- (a) If precision is specified as ".2" for the d, i, o, u, x or X conversion specifier, the 0 flag will not be ignored.**

**Example**

```
#include <stdio.h>
void func ( )
{
    printf("%04.2d\n", 77);
}
```

Illegal operation: "0077"

Correct operation: " 77"

(b) For the the g, and G conversion specifiers, the result is "specified precision + 1".

**Example**

```
#include <stdio.h>
void func ( )
{
    printf("%.2g", 12.3456789);
}
```

Illegal operation: "12.3"

Correct operation: "12"

**(21)The size minimum value (-32768) of types int/short**

The size of the minimum value (-32768) of types int/short is 4. Write as (-32767-1).

**Example**

```
int    x;
void func ( )
{
    x = sizeof(-32768);
}
```

Illegal operation: The value of x is 4

Correct operation: The value of x is 2

**(22)The type of the identifier in a function definition**

Because argument promotion is not performed for the type of an identifier in a function definition, the parameter type and the type of the identifier in the function definition do not match, thus causing the E0747 error.

Make sure that the types of the parameter and of the identifier in the function definition match.

**Example**

```
int    fn_char ( int );
int    fn_char ( c )
char   c;
{
    return 98;
}
```

**(23) In an identifier list in a function definition**

In an identifier list in a function definition, a parameter that is not declared is not handled as type int, thus causing the E0706 error.

Declare all parameters in a function definition.

**Example**

```
void func ( x1, x2, f, x3, lp, fp )
int      (*fp) ( );
long     *lp;
float    f;
{
    :
}
```

**(24) The "#" operator**

Expansion will not be performed correctly under either of the following conditions.

**(a) [""] cannot be expanded correctly with the # operator, causing a compile-time error.**

Example for condition 1:

**Example** for condition 1:

```
#include <string.h>
#define str ( a ) ( # a )
int      x;
void func ( )
{
    if (strcmp(str(''), "\") == 0) x++;
}
```

Illegal operation: Compile-time error

Correct operation: if (strcmp( "\", "\") == 0) x++;

**(b) Macros that contain a # operator and a nested structure cannot be expanded correctly.****Example** for condition 2:

```
#define str ( a ) #a
#define xstr ( a ) str ( a )
#define EXP 1
char    *p;
void func ( )
{
    p = xstr(12EEXP);
}
```

Illegal operation: "p = ("12E1");"

Correct operation: "p = ("12EEXP");"

**(25) The preprocessing directive #line**

When the #line preprocessor directive is used, debugging information in the assembler source will be invalid. Assembling this assembler source will cause an error (E2201).

**Example**

```
#include <stdio.h>
void main ( void )
{
    int    a;
    #line 1 "test_line"
    a = 3;
    printf("__FILE__ = %s, __LINE__ = %d\n", __FILE__, __LINE__);
}
```

You can avoid this by doing either of the following:

- Use the object module file.
- Use assembler source without outputting debugging information.

**(26) The variable/function information file generator**

By substituting the callt function for certain functions, the functions are excluded the optimization subroutine pattern. As a result, the code volume may increase.

Comment-out the functions subject to callt function substitution in the variable/function information file.

**(27) System call for RTOS**

If #pragma rtos\_task is not described in the C source, ext\_tsk is not recognized as a system call for RTOS. Therefore, the error message "E0778: Cannot call ext\_tsk in interrupt function" is not output even if ext\_tsk is called from an interrupt handler for RTOS.

You can avoid this by doing either of the following:

- Describe #pragma rtos\_task in the C source to clearly specify using a task.
- Do not describe calling ext\_tsk from an interrupt handler for RTOS.

**(28) Prototype declaration of a variables/functions information file**

When the -ma option is specified, if a function whose arguments lack type declarations for formal arguments is called, and the arguments have function addresses for which callt allocation is specified in the variables/functions information file, then the program may behave incorrectly due to inconsistent function interfaces.

**Example**

```
int    func_c ( )          /* callt in .vfi */
{
    return 0;
}
void func ( )
{
    func2 ( func_c ) ;    /* W0553 */
}
int    func2 ( int ( *p ) ( void ) )
{
    return 1;
}

- Variables/functions information file
[callt]
    func_c, , , ,
```

If the above conditions are met, then the compiler outputs warning W0553. Include type declarations for formal arguments in the function-call prototype declaration. Alternatively, comment out the callt specification in the variables/functions information file for function names in the function-parameter code.

**(29)#pragma section directive of a variables/functions information file**

When the -ma option is specified, allocating variables and functions to the callt table area or saddr area in a section defined by a #pragma section directive specified with an AT start address may cause incorrect behavior.

**Example**

```
#pragma section @@DATA @FCDATA AT 0FCF00H
#define dn1l ( * ( int * ) 0xfcfc00 )
int    __near nil;                               /* sreg in .vfi */
__sreg int    x1, x2;
void func ( )
{
    x1 = nil;
    x2 = dn1l;
}
void main ( )
{
    nil = 0x10;
    func ( );
}

- Variables/functions information file
[sreg]
    nil,,,
```

VF78KOR does not specify sreg/callt for variables and functions in sections defined by #pragma section directives with AT start addresses specified. When editing the variables/functions information file, do not specify allocation to the callt table area or saddr area for the above functions and variables.

**(30) Outout warnings of a variable/functions information file**

When specifying the -ma option, a warning may be output when the address of a function allocated to the callt table area via a variables/functions information file is handled.

**Example** when the memory model is the medium or large model

```

void f1 ( void ( *fp ) ( ) )
{
}
void f2 ( void )
{
}
void ( *fp1 ) ( void ) ;
void ( *fp2 ) ( void ) ;
void func ( void )
{
    f1 ( f2 ) ;                /* W0510: Pointer mismatch in function */
    f1 ( ( void ( * ) ( ) ) f2 ) ; /* Cast OK */
    fp1 = f2;                  /* W0416: Illegal type and size (far/near)
                               pointer combination */
    fp2 = ( void ( * ) ( ) ) f2; /* Cast OK */
}

- Variables/functions information file
[callt]
    f2,,,,

```

This will not cause any problems with program behavior.

If you wish to suppress this warning, perform a cast in code that handles function pointers.

**(31)-ma option specification**

If a comma (",") is included in the folder name or file name of the file specified by the -ma option, the compiler cannot recognize the file appropriately because it regards a comma as a delimiter.

Do not include a comma in a folder name or file name.

**(32) Strtod function library**

If a floating-point number having three or more digit characteristic is described in a character string to be passed to the strtod function, then no overflow processing will be performed because of an operation error in the abnormality processing system.

**Example**

```
char    *endptr;
double  result;
result = strtod ( "-5E+2000", &endptr );    /* Casts the characteristic on its own */
```

Although values in the range from 1.17549435E-38F to 3.40282347E+38F can be described by CA78K0R for both the float type and the double type, the system reads the above description as "-5E+20" because CA78K0R has read the characteristic for only two digits.

For the character string to be passed to the strtod function, describe a value that can be represented.

**(33) A highest-order address of the function pointer  $\pm$  offset**

If, in passing to the pointer the address of the function pointer  $\pm$  offset with the function pointer casted to the data pointer, the address goes beyond the 64 KB boundary due to the addition/subtraction of the offset, carry/borrow may not be taken into account upon setting the highest-order address.

**Example**

```
extern void vg ( ), void ng ( );
void func ( void )
{
    :
}
void main ( )
{
    unsigned long  *p = ( unsigned long * ) func - 1;
    if ( p == ( ( unsigned long * ) func - 1 ) )
        vg ( );
    else
        ng ( );
}
```

No data can be allocated beyond the 64 KB boundary.

**(34) \_rcopy function**

Do not call \_rcopy function in the hdwinit function called by the start-up routine.

**(35) @EBASE segment**

Specify to arrange the @EBASE segment in ROM area on the flash side with the directive file when the E3206 error is output to the @EBASE segment by the linker.

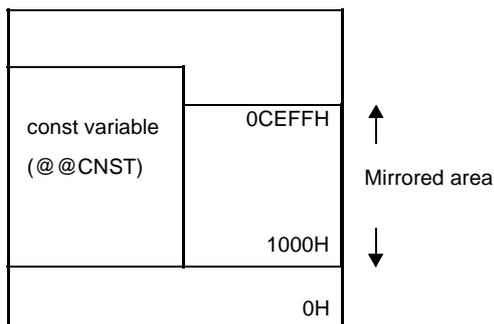
**(36) const variables allocated in the mirrored area**

If an @@CNST section for variables such as const is allocated by using a directive, it is allocated according to the directive even if the section exceeds the boundary of the mirrored area. In such a case, append the far qualifier to any variable allocated in the area outside the mirrored area.

```

-----*.dr-----
MEMORY ROM      : (0H, 1000H)
MEMORY ROMX    : (1000H, 3F000H)
MERGE @@CNST   := ROMX
    
```

Example:UPD78F166 (MAA=0)



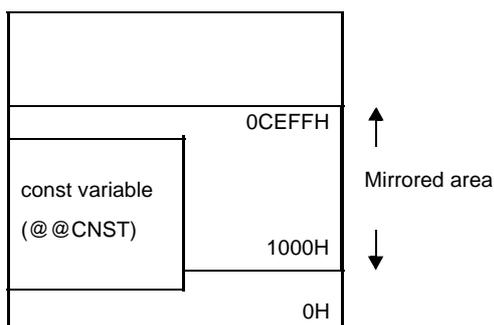
When the const variables are allocated as show in a following chart, append the far qualifier on the const variable that outside the mirrored area.

Directive specify @@CNSTL as follows.

```

-----*.dr-----
MERGE @@CNSTL  : AT (0F00H)
    
```

Example:UPD78F166 (MAA=0)



**(37) On-chip debug area**

When the segment of on-chip debug area cannot , the following arrangement errors are output.

```
RA78K0R error E3212: Default segment can't allocate to memory - ignored
                        Segment '?CSEGOB0' at C0H-4H
```

```
RA78K0R error E3212: Default segment can't allocate to memory - ignored
                        Segment '?OCDSTAD' at CEH-AH
```

```
RA78K0R error E3212: Default segment can't allocate to memory - ignored
                        Segment '??OCDROM' at FC00H-200H
```

When using an on-chip debug function, allocate the area for on-chip debugging by a directive-file to be able to arrange the monitor area for on-chip debugging.

**(38) Boot-flash re-link function**

When it use the re-link function, do not specify merge directive to the segment in input a load module file (LMF).

**(39) "#pragma section" specification**

It is likely to become an error for the following conditions.

- There is "#pragma section" specification for @@CNST in C source. It is addressing in the section name.
- In the reference to the array, when the offset part is a description of ["unsigned type variable" - "constant"], and the value in which the constant is pulled from "top address of the array or the pointer" becomes it besides the mirror area, it is likely to become an assembly time with the error.

**Example**

```
unsigned char    uc;
unsigned int     ui = 0x3;

#pragma section @@CNST CNEAR AT 1000H
const unsigned char cuc = 10, cuc2 = 20, uca[10] = {0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9};

void func()
{
    uc = *((uca - 3) + ui);    /* ERROR */
}
```

Divide the expression as follows.

```
unsigned char    uc, *tmp;

/* uc = *((uca - 3) + ui);    ERROR */

    tmp = uca - 3;
    uc = *(tmp + ui);
```

**(40) Data flash area****(a) Allocating data to the data flash area**

Allocate data to the data flash area in the following way.

**Example** R5F100LE

Assembler source

```
PUBLIC  data_flash

FLDAT  DSEG      AT 0F1000H
data_flash:  DB 11H, 22H, 33H, 44H

END
```

Link directive file

```
MEMORY DATFL      (0F1000H, 1000H)
```

**(b) Note on the data flash area**

The CA78K0R does not output code to the data flash area.

Use assembler code for access to the data flash area.

In the case of C source code, proceed with access in 8-bit data.

**(41) External bus interface**

The external memory of devices equipped with an external bus interface is not supported.

When external memory is used in the 8-bit bus mode, use assembler code for access.

In the case of C source code, proceed with access in 8-bit data. The standard library cannot be used for access.

**(42) Re-linking**

When "Setting variable/function allocating option" is enabled by re-linking, an unintended function may be the target of the function call leading to an error in linkage.

In this case, disable "Setting variable/function allocating option".

**(43) Libraries that use the multiplier and divider or multiply-and-accumulator**

In calculations, multiplication libraries treat the value of the multiplication/division control register (MDUC) as that in the MCU's reset state.

Division and multiply-and-accumulation libraries without the multiplication sets the MDUC register as the respective modes at the library or in the intrinsic function. After the operation has been completed, the library functions return the MDUC to the multiplication mode (which is the default mode setting, i.e. that in the MCU's reset state).

For this reason, we do not recommend using user-program code to change the value of the MDUC.

If you wish to change its value, be sure to restore it to 00H (the default value) before any multiplication.

Also be sure to disable interrupts before changing the value of the MDUC or restoring it to its default state.

**(44) Attempting to compile empty source code**

Attempting to compile the following types of source code will lead to an error (E0301 or E0701).

- Empty source
- Source code consisting only of comments
- Code in which all lines are disabled by preprocessing directives

If you wish to compile such files, declare a dummy prototype as follows.

```
extern void    dummy(void);
```

**(45) The "##" operator**

The "##" operator may prevent correct expansion and lead to a compilation error.

**Example**

```
#define NUM(a)  0x##a
```

In the example shown above, the error can be avoided by changing 0x##a to 0x0##a.

APPENDIX A ROMIZATION PROCESSOR

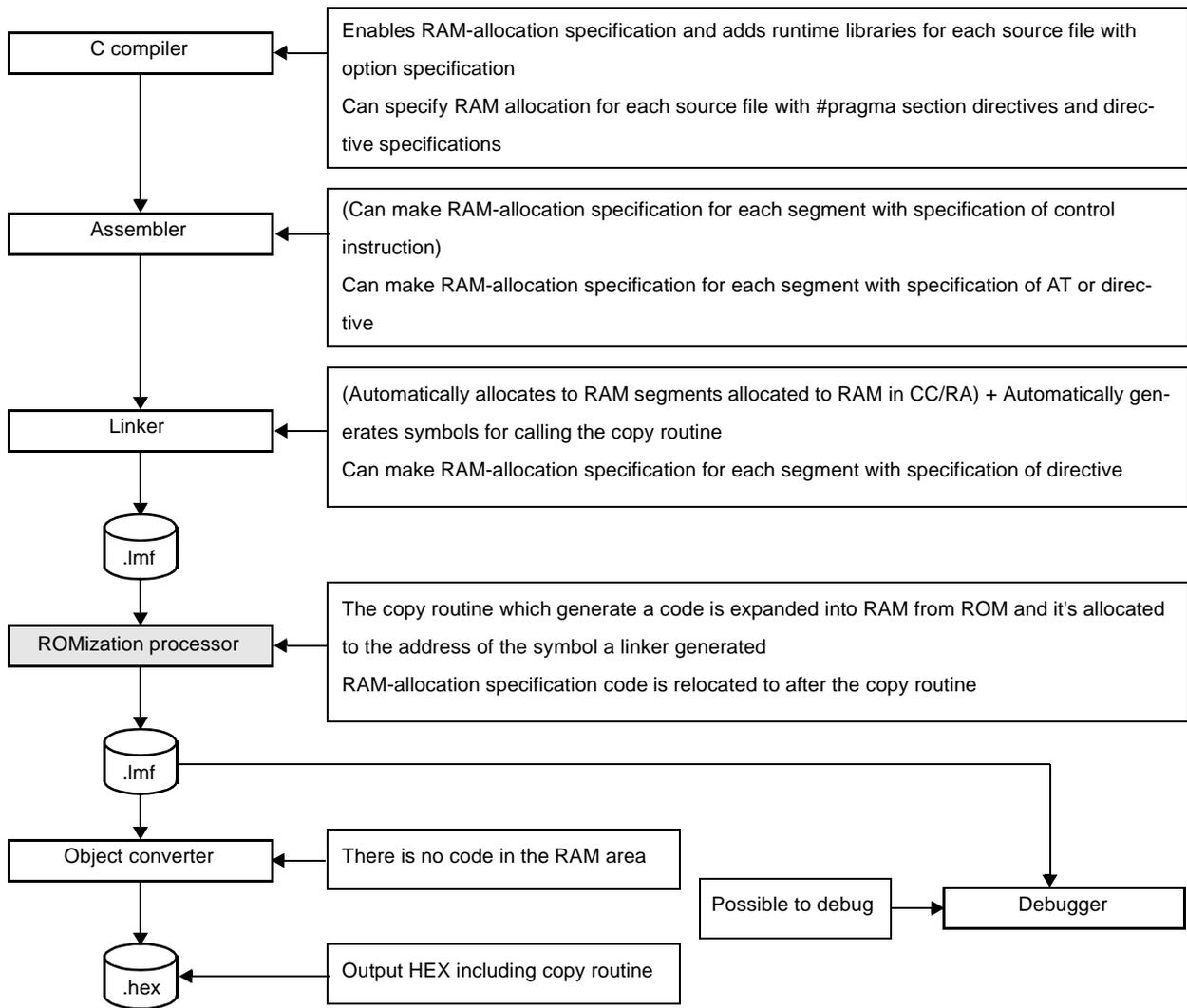
This section describes ROMization using the ROMization processor.

A.1 Overview

The ROMization processor can specify RAM allocation without changing the C source, in order to allocate a portion of a program to the RAM area for execution.

The overall sequence is as follows.

Figure A-1. Creating a ROMization Object



## A.2 Procedure for Creating ROMization Load Module

This section describes the procedure for creating a ROMization load module.

### (1) Call the copy function

In the program, perform prototype declaration as follows:

```
int  __rcopy(int) ;
```

and calling the copy function as follows:

```
__rcopy(n) ;
```

expands the segment of ROMized segment number  $n$  into RAM.

### (2) Specify the ROMization target segment/ allocation of the copy function

The ROMization target function<sup>Note 1</sup> and address at which to allocate the copy function<sup>Note 2</sup> are determined automatically.

When linking, if there is a ROMization target segment, then the address to which to allocate the copy function is determined automatically, and the symbol "\_\_rcopy" is defined at that address.

#### (a) Directly specify address to which to allocate the copy function

When linking, if there is a ROMization target segment, and there is the necessary free space for ROMization processing at the address specified by the address-specification option for the copy function (-rc), then the symbol "\_\_rcopy" is defined at that address.

#### (b) Specify the ROMization target directly

When linking, if there is a ROMization target segment within the range specified by the ROMization area specification option (-ra), then the address to which to allocate the copy function is determined automatically, and the symbol "\_\_rcopy" is defined at that address.

**Notes 1.** The target area is the internal RAM area defined in the device file.

**2.** The copy function is read from the "\_\_rcopy.rel" file, and linked to the output file.

## APPENDIX B WINDOW REFERENCE

This section describes the window, panel, and dialog boxes related to coding.

**B.1 Description**

Below is a list of the window, panel, and dialog boxes related to coding.

**Table B-1. List of Window/Panel/Dialog Boxes**

Window/Panel/Dialog Box Name	Function Description
<a href="#">Editor panel</a>	This panel is used to display and edit files.
<a href="#">Encoding dialog box</a>	This dialog box is used to select a file-encoding.
<a href="#">Bookmarks dialog box</a>	This dialog box is used to display and delete bookmarks.
<a href="#">Go to Line dialog box</a>	This dialog box is used to move the caret to a specified source line.
<a href="#">Print Preview window</a>	This window is used to preview the source file before printing.
<a href="#">Open File dialog box</a>	This dialog box is used to open a file.

**Editor panel**

This panel is used to display and edit files.

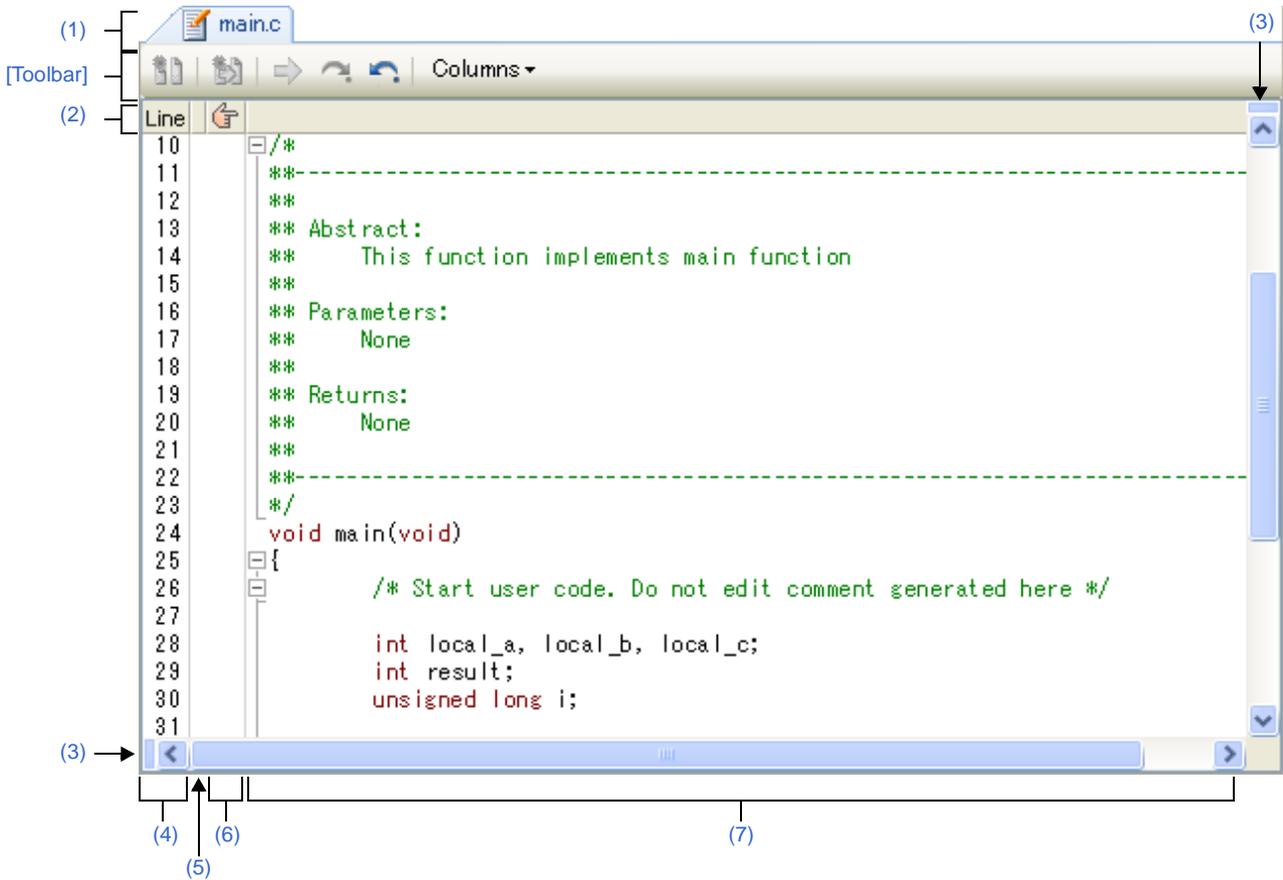
When opened the file encoding and newline code is automatically detected and retained when it is saved. You can open a file with a specific encoding selected in the [Encoding dialog box](#). If the encoding and newline code is specified in the Save Settings dialog box then the file is saved with those settings.

This panel can be opened multiple times (max. 100 panels).

- Cautions 1.** When a project is closed, all of the Editor panels displaying a file being registered in the project are closed.
- 2.** When a file is excluded from a project, the Editor panel displaying the file is closed.

**Remark** This panel can be zoomed in and out by  in the tool bar, or by moving the mouse wheel forward or backward while holding down the [Ctrl] key.

**Figure B-1. Editor Panel**



The following items are explained here.

- [\[How to open\]](#)
- [\[Description of each area\]](#)
- [\[Toolbar\]](#)
- [\[\[File\] menu \(Editor panel-dedicated items\)\]](#)
- [\[\[Edit\] menu \(Editor panel-dedicated items\)\]](#)
- [\[\[Window\] menu \(Editor panel-dedicated items\)\]](#)
- [\[Context menu\]](#)

**[How to open]**

- On the Project Tree panel, double click a file.
- On the Project Tree panel, select a source file, and then select [Open] from the context menu.
- On the Project Tree panel, select a source file, and then select [Open with Internal Editor...] from the context menu.
- On the Project Tree panel, select [Add] >> [Add New File...] from the context menu, and then create a text file or source file.

**[Description of each area]**

**(1) Title bar**

The name of the open text file or source file is displayed.

Marks displayed at the end of the file name indicate the following:

Mark	Description
*	The text file has been modified since being opened.
(Read only)	The opened text file is read only.

**(2) Column header**

The title of each column on the Editor panel is displayed (hovering the mouse cursor over this area displays the title name).

Display	Title Name	Description
Line	Line	Displays line numbers (see "(4) <a href="#">Line number area</a> ").
(No display)	Selection	The display is colored to reflect the state in terms of saving of the state of editing (see "(5) <a href="#">Selection area</a> ").
	Main	Displays bookmarks (see "(6) <a href="#">Main area</a> ").

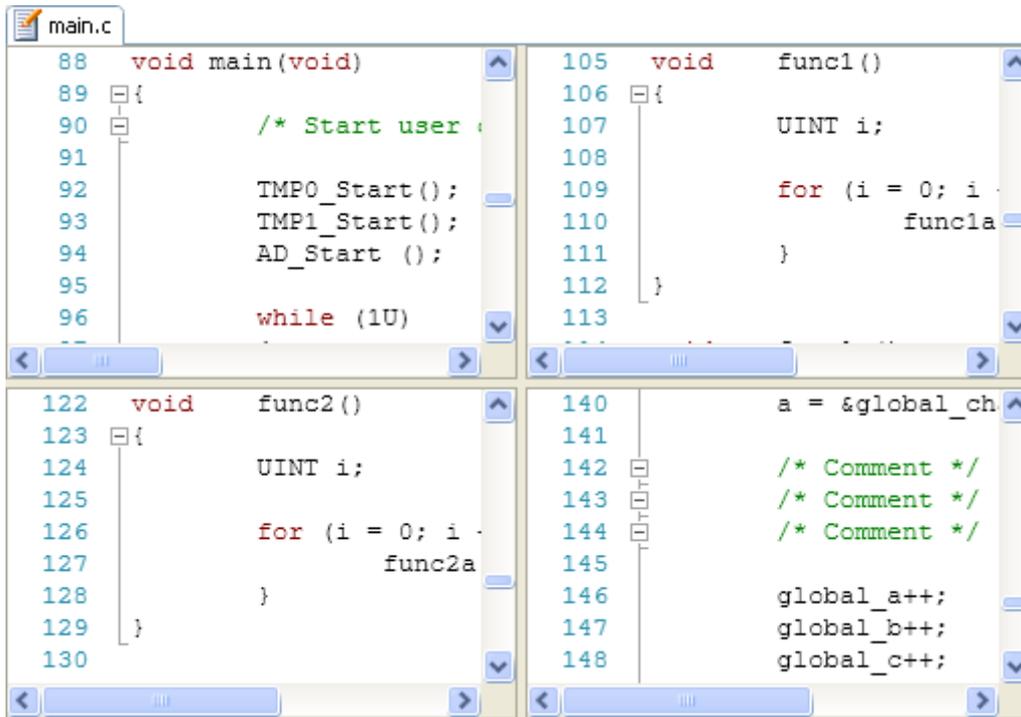
**Remark** Show/hide of the column header can be switched by the setting of the toolbar.

**(3) Splitter bars**

You can split the Editor panel by using the horizontal and vertical splitter bars within the view. This panel can be split up to two times vertically, and two times horizontally.

- To split this panel, drag the splitter bar down or to the right to the desired position, or double-click any part of the splitter bar.
- To remove the split, double-click any part of the splitter bar.

Figure B-2. Editor Panel (Vertical/Horizontal Two-way Split View)

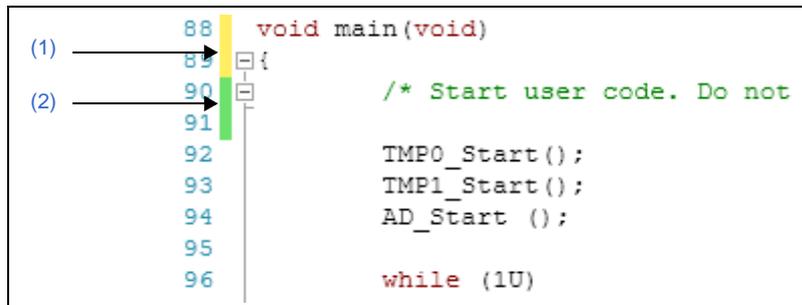


**(4) Line number area**

This area displays the line number of the opened text file or source file.

**(5) Selection area**

On each line there is an indicator that shows the line modification status.



(1)		This means new or modified line but unsaved.
(2)		This means new or modified line and saved. To erase this mark, close the panel, and then open this source file again.

**(6) Main area**

Bookmarks (  ) that have been registered are displayed.

```

24 | void main(void)
25 | {
26 |     /* Start user code. Do not edit comment generated here */
27 |
28 |     int local_a, local_b, local_c;
29 |     int result;
30 |     unsigned long i;
    
```

**(7) Characters area**

This area displays character strings of text files and source files and you can edit it. This area has the following functions.

**(a) Character editing**

Characters can be entered from the keyboard. Various shortcut keys can be used to enhance the edit function.

**Remark** The following items can be customized by setting the Option dialog box.

- Display fonts
- Tab interval
- Show or hide white space marks (blank symbols)
- Colors of reserved words and comments

**(b) Code outlining**

This allows you to expand and collapse source code blocks so that you can concentrate on the areas of code which you are currently modifying or debugging. This is only available for only C source file and .h file types. This is achieved by clicking the plus and minus symbols to the left of the Characters area. Types of source code blocks that can be expanded or collapsed are:

Open and close braces ('{' and '}')	 { ... }
Multi-line comments ('/*' and '*/')	 /* */
Pre-processor statements ('if', 'elif', 'else', 'endif')	 #if[Preprocessor block]  #elif[Preprocessor block]  #else[Preprocessor block] #endif

**(c) Highlighting the current line**

By selecting the [Enable line highlight for current] check box in the [General - Text Editor] category of the Option dialog box, the line at the current caret position can be displayed within a rectangle (the rectangle color depends on the highlight color in the [General - Font and Color] category of the same dialog box above).

**Figure B-3. Highlighting Current Line**

```

11 |
12 | void main(int args)
13 | {
14 |     gc_pe1 = 0x12;
    
```

**(d) Emphasizing brackets**

The bracket that corresponds to a bracket at the caret position is shown emphasized. Supported types of brackets vary with the file type.

File Type	Types of Brackets
C or Python	( and ), { and }, [ and ]
HTML or XML	< and >

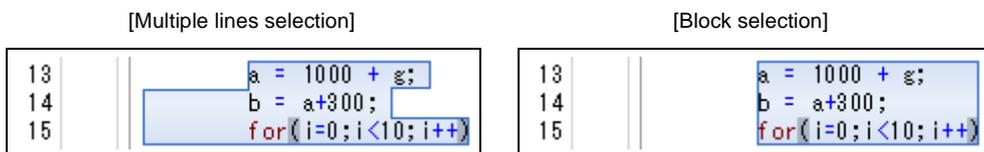
**Remark** When CubeSuite+ emphasizes the corresponding bracket, it does not consider those within comments, character constants, character strings, or string constants. For this reason, if the bracket at the position of the caret is within a comment, character constant, character string, or string constant, CubeSuite+ may emphasize a bracket that is not actually the corresponding bracket.

**(e) Multiple lines selection and block selection**

You can select multiple lines or a block that consists of multiple lines by any one of the following methods.

- Multiple lines selection:
  - Drag the left-mouse button
  - Press the [Right], [Left], [Up] or [Down] key while holding down the [Shift] key
- Block selection:
  - Drag the left-mouse button while holding down the [Alt] key
  - Press the [Right], [Left], [Up] or [Down] key while holding down the [Alt] + [Shift] key

**Figure B-4. Multiple Lines Selection and Block Selection**



**Caution** The information on bookmarks is not included in the selected contents.

**Remark** Editing of the selected contents can be done by using [Cut], [Copy], [Paste], or [Delete] from the [Edit] menu.

**(f) Jump to functions**

It automatically recognizes the currently selected characters or the word at the caret position as the function name and jumps to the line of the target function.

Select [Jump to Function] from the context menu after moving the caret to the target function on the source text.

Note that this function is available only when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The type of the project specified as the active project is "Application".
- The target function resides in an active project (A jump to a static function cannot be made when disconnected from the debug tool).
- A file with the symbol information is selected for the [Download files] property (when the file is in the format other than the load module file, the setting for downloading the symbol information is required). In case it is disconnected from the debug tool, the above file is specified as the first file in the [Download files] property.

**(g) Tag jump**

If the information of a file name, a line number and a column number exists in the line at the caret position, selecting [Tag Jump] from the context menu opens the file in the Editor panel and jumps to the corresponding line and the corresponding column (if the target file is already opened in the Editor panel, you can jump to the panel).

**(h) Registration of bookmarks**

By clicking the  button on the bookmark toolbar or selecting [Bookmark] >> [Toggle Bookmark] from the context menu on this area, a bookmark can be registered to the line at the caret position.

**(i) File monitor**

If the contents of the currently displayed file is changed (including renaming or deleting) without using CubeSuite+, a message will appear asking you whether you wish to update the file or not.

**[Toolbar]**

	Toggles between normal (default) and mixed display mode, as the display mode of this panel. Note that this item is enabled only when connected to the debug tool and the downloaded source file is opened in this panel.
	Toggles between source (default) and instruction level, as the unit in which the program is step-executed. Note that this item is enabled only when connected to the debug tool and the mixed display mode is selected.
	Displays the current PC position. Note that this item is enabled only when connected to the debug tool.
	Forwards to the position before operating [Context menu] >> [Back To Last Cursor Position]. Note that this item is disabled when connected to the debug tool and the mixed display mode is selected.
	Goes back to the position before operating [Context menu] >> [Jump to Function]. Note that this item is disabled when connected to the debug tool and the mixed display mode is selected.
Columns	The following items are displayed to show or hide the columns or marks on this panel. Remove the check to hide the items (all the items are checked by default). This setting is reflected in all the Editor panels.
Line Number	Shows or hides line number area.
Selection	Shows or hides selection area.
Main	Shows or hides main area.
Column Header	Shows or hides column header.

**[[File] menu (Editor panel-dedicated items)]**

The following items are exclusive for the [File] menu in the Editor panel (other items are common to all the panels).

Close <i>file name</i>	Closes the currently editing the Editor panel. When the contents of the panel have not been saved, a confirmation message is shown.
Save <i>file name</i>	Overwrites the contents of the currently editing the Editor panel. Note that when the file has never been saved or the file is read only, the same operation is applied as the selection in [Save <i>file name</i> As...].
Save <i>file name</i> As...	Opens the Save As dialog box to newly save the contents of the currently editing the Editor panel.
<i>file name</i> Save Settings...	Opens the Save Settings dialog box to change the encoding and newline code of the current focused source file in the currently editing Editor panel.
Print...	Opens the Print dialog box of Windows for printing the contents of the currently editing the Editor panel.
Print Preview	Opens the <a href="#">Print Preview window</a> to preview the file contents to be printed.

**[[Edit] menu (Editor panel-dedicated items)]**

The following items are exclusive for the [Edit] menu in the Editor panel (all other items are disabled).

Undo	Cancels the previous operation on the Editor panel and restores the characters and the caret position (max 100 times).
Redo	Cancels the previous [Undo] operation on the Editor panel and restores the characters and the caret position.
Cut	Cuts the selected characters and copies them to the clip board. If there is no selection, the entire line is cut.
Copy	Copies the contents of the selected range to the clipboard as character string(s). If there is no selection, the entire line is copied.
Paste	Inserts (insert mode) or overwrites (overwrite mode) the characters that are copied on the clip board into the caret position. When the contents of the clipboard are not recognized as characters, the operation is invalid. The mode selected for the current source file is displayed on the status bar.
Delete	Deletes one character at the caret position. When there is a selection area, all the characters in the area are deleted.
Select All	Selects all the characters from the beginning to the end in the currently editing text file.
Find...	Opens the Find and Replace dialog box with selecting [Quick Find] tab.
Replace...	Opens the Find and Replace dialog box with selecting [Quick Replace] tab.
Go To...	Opens the <a href="#">Go to Line dialog box</a> to move the caret to the specified line.
Bookmark	Displays a cascading menu for bookmarks.
Toggle Bookmark	Registers a bookmark to the line at the current caret position. If a bookmark is already being registered to the line, then the bookmark will be deleted.
Next Bookmark	Moves the caret to the bookmark position that registered next, in the active Editor panel. After moving to the last bookmark, the caret moves to the line specified in the first bookmark.

Previous Bookmark	Moves the caret to the bookmark position that registered previously, in the active Editor panel. After moving to the first bookmark, the caret moves to the line specified in the last bookmark.
Clear All Bookmarks	Deletes all bookmarks currently being registered, in the active Editor panel.
List Bookmarks...	Opens the <a href="#">Bookmarks dialog box</a> to list bookmarks currently being registered.
Outlining	Displays a cascading menu for controlling expand and collapse states of source file outlining (see "(b) <a href="#">Code outlining</a> ").
Collapse to Definitions	Collapses all nodes that are marked as implementation blocks (e.g. function definitions).
Toggle Outlining Expansion	Toggles the current state of the innermost outlining section in which the cursor lies when you are in a nested collapsed section.
Toggle All Outlining	Toggles the collapsed state of all outlining nodes, setting them all to the same expanded or collapsed state. If there is a mixture of collapsed and expanded nodes, all nodes will be expanded.
Stop Outlining	Stops code outlining and remove all outlining information from source files.
Start Automatic Outlining	Starts automatic code outlining and automatically displayed in supported source files.
Advanced	Displays a cascading menu for performing an advanced operation for the Editor panel.
Increase Line Indent	Increases the indentation of the current cursor line by one tab.
Decrease Line Indent	Decreases the indentation of the current cursor line by one tab.
Uncomment Lines	Removes the first set of line-comment delimiters from the start of the current cursor line, appropriate to the current language (e.g. C++). This operation will only be available when the language of the current source file has line-comment delimiters specified (e.g. C++).
Comment Lines	Places line-comment delimiters at the start of the current cursor line, appropriate to the current language (e.g. C++). This operation will only be available when the language of the current source file has line-comment delimiters specified (e.g. C++).
Convert Tabs to Spaces	Converts all tabs on the current cursor line into spaces.
Convert Spaces to Tabs	Converts each set of consecutive space characters on the current line to tab characters, but only for those sets of spaces that are at least equal to one tab size.
Tabify Selected Lines	Tabifies the current line, causing all spaces at the start of the line (prior to any text) to be converted to tabs where possible.
Untabify Selected Lines	Untabifies the current line, causing all tabs at the start of the line (prior to any text) to be converted to spaces.
Make Uppercase	Converts all letters within the selection to uppercase.
Make Lowercase	Converts all letters within the selection to lowercase.
Toggle Character Casing	Toggles the character cases (uppercase / lowercase) of all letters within the selection.
Capitalize	Capitalizes the first character of every word within the selection.
Delete Horizontal Whitespace	Deletes any excess white space either side of the cursor position, leaving only one whitespace character remaining. If there the cursor is within a word or not surrounded by whitespace, this operation will have no effect.
Trim Trailing Whitespace	Deletes any trailing whitespace that appears after the last non-whitespace character on the cursor line.
Delete Line	Completely delete the current cursor line.
Duplicate Line	Duplicates the cursor line, inserting a copy of the line immediately after the cursor line.
Delete Blank Lines	Deletes the line at the cursor if it is empty or contains only whitespace.

**[[Window] menu (Editor panel-dedicated items)]**

The following items are exclusive for the [Window] menu in the Editor panel (other items are common to all the panels).

Split	Splits the active Editor panel horizontally. Only the active Editor panel can be split. Other panels will not be split. A panel can be split up to two times.
Remove Split	Removes the split view of the Editor panel.

**[Context menu]**

[Title bar area]

Close Panel	Close the currently selected panel.
Close All but This	Except for the currently selected panel, close all other panels being displayed in the same panel display area as the selected panel.
Save <i>file name</i>	Saves the contents of the file.
Copy Full Path	Copies the absolute path of the file to the clipboard.
Open Containing Folder	Opens the folder where the text file is saved in Explorer.
New Horizontal Tab Group	The area for the display of active panels is evenly divided into two areas in the horizontal direction, and the panels are displayed as a new group of tabbed pages. Only one panel is active in the new group. The area may be divided into up to four panels.  This item is not displayed in the following cases. - Only one panel is open. - The group has already been divided in the vertical direction. - The group has already been divided into four panels.
New Vertical Tab Group	The area for the display of active panels is evenly divided into two areas in the vertical direction, and the panels are displayed as a new group of tabbed pages. Only one panel is active in the new group. The area may be divided into up to four panels.  This item is not displayed in the following cases. - Only one panel is open. - The group has already been divided in the horizontal direction. - The group has already been divided into four panels.
Go to Next Tab Group	When the display area is divided in the horizontal direction, this moves the displayed panel to the group under that displaying the selected panel.  When the display area is divided in the vertical direction, this moves the displayed panel to the group to the right of that displaying the selected panel.  This item is not displayed if there is no group in the given direction.
Go to Previous Tab Group	When the display area is divided in the horizontal direction, this moves the displayed panel to the group over that displaying the selected panel.  When the display area is divided in the vertical direction, this moves the displayed panel to the group to the left of that displaying the selected panel.  This item is not displayed if there is no group in the given direction.

[Characters area]

Cut	Cuts the selected character string and copies it to the clipboard. If there is no selection, the entire line is cut.
-----	---

Copy	Copies the contents of the selected range to the clipboard as character string(s). If there is no selection, the entire line is copied.
Paste	Inserts (insert mode) or overwrites (overwrite mode) the characters that are copied on the clip board into the caret position. When the contents of the clipboard are not recognized as characters, the operation is invalid. The mode selected for the current source file is displayed on the status bar.
Find...	Opens the Find and Replace dialog box with selecting [Quick Find] tab.
Go To...	Opens the <a href="#">Go to Line dialog box</a> to move the caret to the specified line.
Jump to Function	Jumps to the function that is selected or at the caret position regarding the selected characters and the words at the caret position as functions (see "(f) <a href="#">Jump to functions</a> ").
Tag Jump	Jumps to the corresponding line and column in the corresponding file if the information of a file name, a line number and a column number exists in the line at the caret position (see "(g) <a href="#">Tag jump</a> ").
Bookmark	Displays a cascading menu for bookmarks.
Toggle Bookmark	Registers a bookmark to the line at the current caret position. If a bookmark is already being registered to the line, then the bookmark will be deleted.
Next Bookmark	Moves the caret to the bookmark position that registered next, in the active Editor panel. After moving to the last bookmark, the caret moves to the line specified in the first bookmark.
Previous Bookmark	Moves the caret to the bookmark position that registered previously, in the active Editor panel. After moving to the first bookmark, the caret moves to the line specified in the last bookmark.
Clear All Bookmarks	Deletes all bookmarks currently being registered, in the active Editor panel.
List Bookmarks...	Opens the <a href="#">Bookmarks dialog box</a> to list bookmarks currently being registered.
Advanced	Displays a cascading menu for performing an advanced operation for the Editor panel.
Increase Line Indent	Increases the indentation of the current cursor line by one tab.
Decrease Line Indent	Decreases the indentation of the current cursor line by one tab.
Uncomment Lines	Removes the first set of line-comment delimiters from the start of the current cursor line, appropriate to the current language (e.g. C++). This operation will only be available when the language of the current source file has line-comment delimiters specified (e.g. C++).
Comment Lines	Places line-comment delimiters at the start of the current cursor line, appropriate to the current language (e.g. C++). This operation will only be available when the language of the current source file has line-comment delimiters specified (e.g. C++).
Convert Tabs to Spaces	Converts all tabs on the current cursor line into spaces.
Convert Spaces to Tabs	Converts each set of consecutive space characters on the current line to tab characters, but only for those sets of spaces that are at least equal to one tab size.
Tabify Selected Lines	Tabifies the current line, causing all spaces at the start of the line (prior to any text) to be converted to tabs where possible.
Untabify Selected Lines	Untabifies the current line, causing all tabs at the start of the line (prior to any text) to be converted to spaces.
Make Uppercase	Converts all letters within the selection to uppercase.
Make Lowercase	Converts all letters within the selection to lowercase.
Toggle Character Casing	Toggles the character cases (uppercase / lowercase) of all letters within the selection.

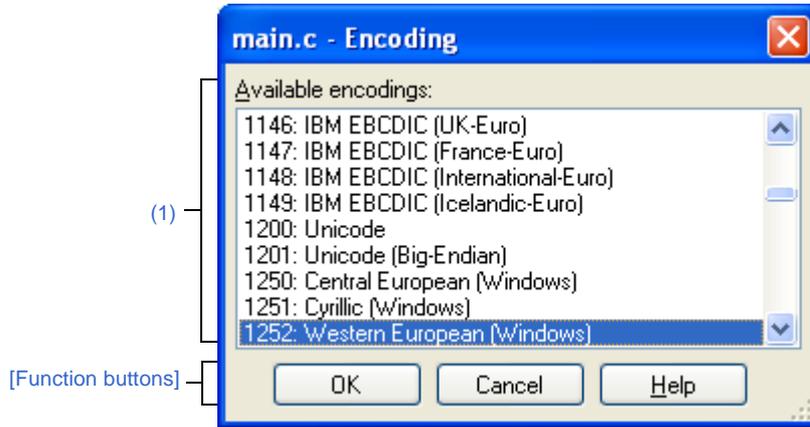
Capitalize	Capitalizes the first character of every word within the selection.
Delete Horizontal Whitespace	Deletes any excess white space either side of the cursor position, leaving only one whitespace character remaining. If there the cursor is within a word or not surrounded by whitespace, this operation will have no effect.
Trim Trailing Whitespace	Deletes any trailing whitespace that appears after the last non-whitespace character on the cursor line.
Delete Line	Completely delete the current cursor line.
Duplicate Line	Duplicates the cursor line, inserting a copy of the line immediately after the cursor line.
Delete Blank Lines	Deletes the line at the cursor if it is empty or contains only whitespace.

**Encoding dialog box**

This dialog box is used to select a file-encoding.

**Remark** The target file name is displayed on the title bar.

**Figure B-5. Encoding Dialog Box**



The following items are explained here.

- [How to open]
- [Description of each area]
- [Function buttons]

**[How to open]**

- From the [File] menu, open the [Open File dialog box](#) by selecting [Open with Encoding...], and then click the [Open] button in the dialog box.

**[Description of each area]**

**(1) [Available encodings] area**

Select the encoding to be set from this area.  
The encoding of the selected file is selected by default.

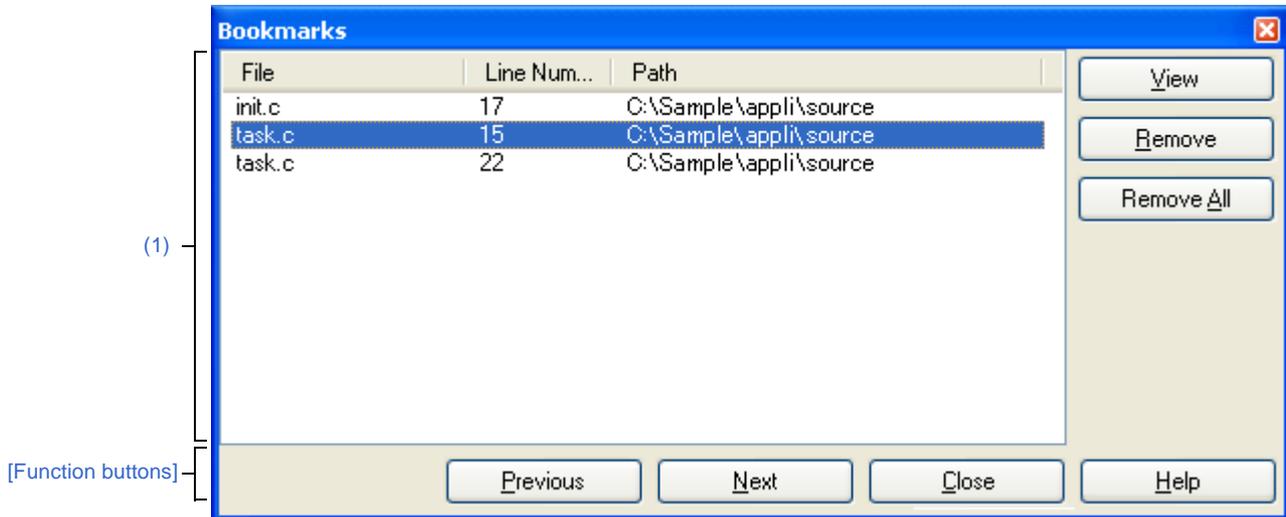
**[Function buttons]**

Button	Function
OK	Opens the selected file in the <a href="#">Open File dialog box</a> using a selected file encoding.
Cancel	Not open the selected file in the <a href="#">Open File dialog box</a> and closes this dialog box.
Help	Displays the help for this dialog box.

## Bookmarks dialog box

This dialog box is used to display the position where a bookmark is to be set or to delete a bookmark.

Figure B-6. Bookmarks Dialog Box



The following items are explained here.

- [How to open]
- [Description of each area]
- [Function buttons]

### [How to open]

- On the toolbar, click the .
- From the [Edit] menu, select [Bookmark] >> [List Bookmarks...].
- On the Editor panel, select [Bookmark] >> [List Bookmarks...] from the context menu.

### [Description of each area]

#### (1) Bookmark list area

Display a list of bookmarks that have been registered.

The bookmarks are listed alphabetically by [File]. Bookmarks in the same file are listed in line number order.

When a bookmark is added to the Editor panel, a bookmark function is added.

In the bookmark list area, double-clicking on a line moves a caret to the corresponding position for the bookmark.

#### (a) [File]

Display a file name (without any path) registered as a bookmark.

#### (b) [Line Number]

Display a line number registered as a bookmark.

#### (c) [Path]

Display a file path registered as a bookmark.

(d) Buttons

View	Moves a caret to the selected position for the bookmark. However, this button is disabled when no bookmark is selected, two or more bookmarks are selected, or no bookmark is registered.
Remove	Removes a selected bookmark. When two or more bookmarks are selected, all of those selected are removed. However, this button is disabled when no bookmark is selected or no bookmark is registered.
Remove All	Removes all the registered bookmarks. This button is disabled when no bookmark is registered.

**Caution** The registered bookmarks are not removed even if the Editor panel is closed. However, when the Editor panel is closed without saving after a file is newly created, the registered bookmarks are removed.

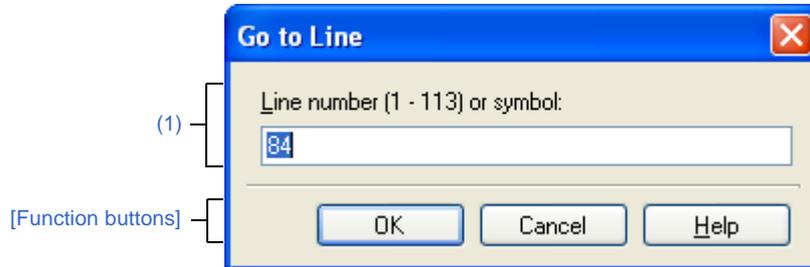
[Function buttons]

Button	Function
Previous	Moves a caret to the position of the bookmark previous to the selected bookmark. This button is disabled in the following cases. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- A bookmark shown in the first line has been selected.</li> <li>- No bookmark is selected.</li> <li>- Two or more bookmarks are selected.</li> <li>- No bookmark is registered.</li> <li>- Only one bookmark is registered.</li> </ul>
Next	Moves a caret to the position of the bookmark next to the selected bookmark. This button is disabled in the following cases. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- A bookmark shown in the last line has been selected.</li> <li>- No bookmark is selected.</li> <li>- Two or more bookmarks are selected.</li> <li>- No bookmark is registered.</li> <li>- Only one bookmark is registered.</li> </ul>
Close	Closes this dialog box.
Help	Displays the help for this dialog box.

**Go to Line dialog box**

This dialog box is used to move the caret to a specified line number, symbol, or address.

**Figure B-7. Go to Line Dialog Box**



The following items are explained here.

- [How to open]
- [Description of each area]
- [Function buttons]

**[How to open]**

- From the [Edit] menu, select [Go To...].
- On the [Editor panel](#), select [Go To...] from the context menu.

**[Description of each area]**

**(1) [Line number (*valid line range*) or symbol] area**

"(*valid line range*)" shows the range of valid lines in the current file.

Specify the line number, symbol, or address that you want to move the caret to.

By default, the number of the line where the caret is currently located in the [Editor panel](#) is displayed.

- Remarks 1.** When a symbol (function name and variable name) is specified, building must have been completed.  
The cross reference information must also be output. In the property panel of the build tool in use, after selecting the setting to output cross reference information ([Common Options] tab >> [Output File Type and Path] category >> [Output cross reference information] property >> [Yes (-Xcref)]), execute a build.
- 2.** When an address is specified, building must have been completed.  
An address can be specified with a hexadecimal starting with "0x" or "0X". A decimal is interpreted as a line number.

**[Function buttons]**

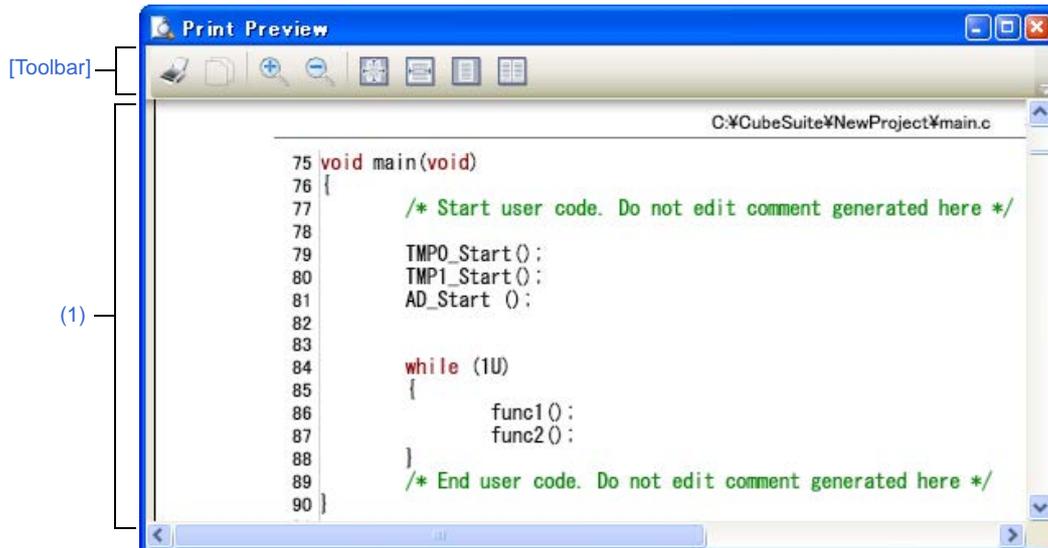
Button	Function
OK	Places the caret at the start of the specified source line.
Cancel	Cancels the jump and closes this dialog box.
Help	Displays the help for this dialog box.

## Print Preview window

This window is used to preview the file currently being displayed in the [Editor panel](#) before printing.

**Remark** This window can be zoomed in and out by moving the mouse wheel forward or backward while holding down the [Ctrl] key.

Figure B-8. Print Preview Window



The following items are explained here.

- [\[How to open\]](#)
- [\[Description of each area\]](#)
- [\[Toolbar\]](#)
- [\[Context menu\]](#)

### [How to open]

- Focus the [Editor panel](#), and then select [Print Preview] from the [File] menu.

### [Description of each area]

#### (1) Preview area

This window displays a form showing a preview of how and what is printed.

The file name (fully qualified path) and the page number are displayed at the page header and page footer.

The display differs according to whether the debug tool is or is not connected, and when it is connected, to whether the display is in normal display mode or mixed display mode. Note, however, that columns that are hidden on the [Editor panel](#) are not displayed (these columns are not printed).

When the outline setting is in used and the collapsed section mark of an outline (see "(b) [Code outlining](#)") is displayed in a print preview, the lines in the collapsed section are also displayed.

[Toolbar]

	Opens the Print dialog box provided by Windows to print the current <a href="#">Editor panel</a> as shown by the print preview form.
	Copies the selection into the clipboard.
	Increases the size of the content.
	Decreases the size of the content.
	Displays the preview at 100-percent zoom (default).
	Fits the preview to the width of this window.
	Displays the whole page.
	Displays facing pages.

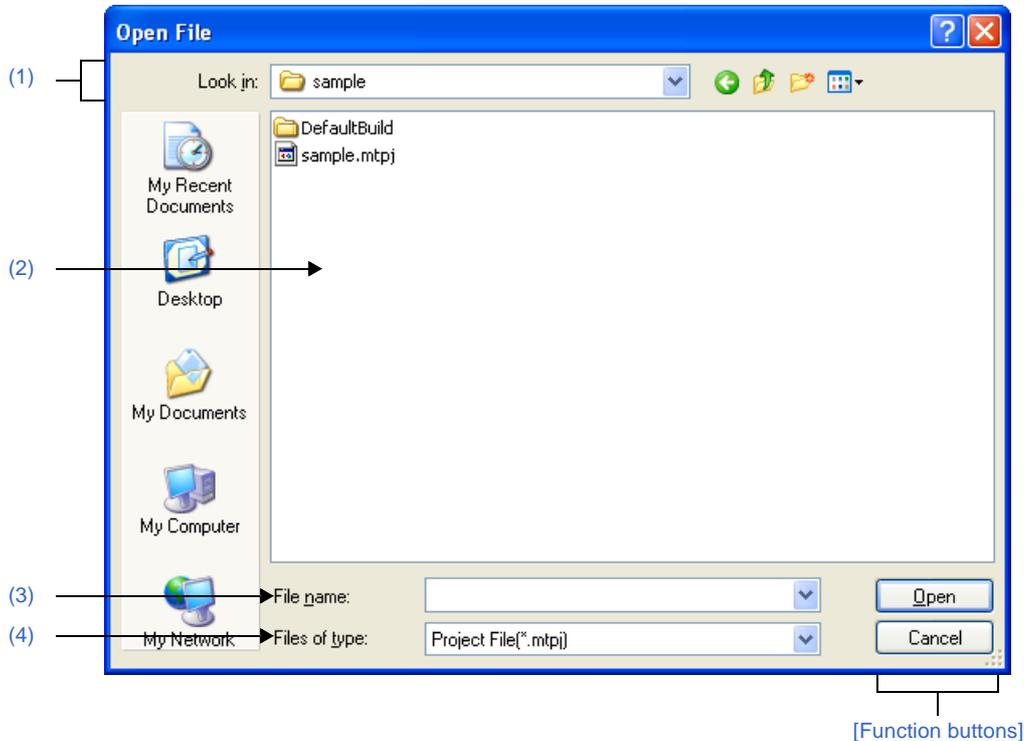
[Context menu]

Increase Zoom	Increases the size of the content.
Decrease Zoom	Decreases the size of the content.

## Open File dialog box

This dialog box is used to open a file.

Figure B-9. Open File Dialog Box



The following items are explained here.

- [How to open]
- [Description of each area]
- [Function buttons]

### [How to open]

- From the [File] menu, select [Open File...] or [Open with Encoding...].

### [Description of each area]

#### (1) [Look in] area

Select the folder that the file you want to open exists.

When you first open this dialog box, the folder is set to "C:\Documents and Settings \user-name\My Documents".

The second and subsequent times, this defaults to the last folder that was selected.

#### (2) List of files area

File list that matches to the selections in [Look in] and [Files of type] is shown.

#### (3) [File name] area

Specify the file name that you want to open.

**(4) [Files of type] area**

Select the type of the file you want to open.

All files (*.*)	All formats
Project File (*.mtpj)	Project file
Project File for e2 studio (*.rcpc)	Project file for e <sup>2</sup> studio
Project File for CubeSuite (*.cspj)	Project file for CubeSuite
Workspace File for HEW (*.hws)	Workspace file for HEW
Project File for HEW (*.hwp)	Project file for HEW
Workspace File for PM+ (*.prw)	Workspace file for PM+
Project File for PM+ (*.prj)	Project file for PM+
C source file (*.c)	C language source file
Header file (*.h; *.inc)	Header file
Text file (*.txt)	Text format

**[Function buttons]**

Button	Function
Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When this dialog box is opened by [Open File...] from the [File] menu Opens the specified file.</li> <li>- When this dialog box is opened by [Open File with Encoding...] from the [File] menu Opens the <a href="#">Encoding dialog box</a>.</li> </ul>
Cancel	Closes this dialog box.

## APPENDIX C INDEX

**Symbols**

#asm - #endasm ... 83  
 #pragma bcd ... 131  
 #pragma BRK ... 100  
 #pragma DI ... 97  
 #pragma directive ... 65  
 #pragma div ... 126  
 #pragma EI ... 97  
 #pragma ext\_func ... 152  
 #pragma HALT ... 100  
 #pragma inline ... 161  
 #pragma interrupt ... 88  
 #pragma mac ... 128  
 #pragma mul ... 124  
 #pragma name ... 121  
 #pragma NOP ... 100  
 #pragma opc ... 134  
 #pragma rot ... 122  
 #pragma rtos\_interrupt ... 136  
 #pragma rtos\_task ... 141  
 #pragma section ... 109  
 #pragma sfr ... 78  
 #pragma STOP ... 100  
 #pragma vect ... 88  
 ?A0nnnnn ... 207  
 ?BSEG ... 208  
 ?CSEG ... 208  
 ?CSEGB ... 208  
 ?CSEGFx ... 208  
 ?CSEGMIP ... 208  
 ?CSEGOB0 ... 208  
 ?DSEGP64 ... 208  
 ?DSEGSi ... 208  
 ?DSEGT0 ... 208  
 ?DSEGU64 ... 208  
 ?DSEGUP ... 208  
 ?DSEG ... 208  
 ?DSEGBP ... 208

?DSEGP64 ... 208  
 ?DSEGS ... 208  
 ?DSEGSP ... 208  
 ?DSEGU64 ... 208  
 ?DSEGUP ... 208  
 @\_BRKADR ... 810  
 @\_DIVR ... 810  
 @\_FNCENT ... 810  
 @\_FNCTBL ... 810  
 @\_LDIVR ... 810  
 @\_MEMBTM ... 810  
 @\_MEMTOP ... 810  
 @\_SEED ... 810  
 @\_STBEG ... 802, 804  
 @\_TOKPTR ... 810

**Numerics**

0b ... 119

**A**

abort ... 679  
 abs ... 682  
 absolute address allocation specification ... 69, 163  
 absolute assembler ... 11  
 absolute segment ... 199, 270  
 absolute term ... 254  
 acos ... 727  
 acosf ... 750  
 ADDRESS ... 208  
 ADDRESS term ... 257  
 aggregate type ... 62  
 allocating ROM data specification ... 69, 175  
 alphabetic characters ... 205  
 alphanumeric characters ... 204  
 AND operator ... 227  
 ANSI ... 63  
 area reservation directives ... 295  
 arithmetic operator ... 217

- array type ... 61  
 asin ... 728  
 asinf ... 751  
 \_\_asm ... 83  
 ASM statement ... 67, 83  
 assemble target type specification control instruction ... 337  
 assemble termination directive ... 334  
 assembler options ... 336  
 assembly language ... 10  
 assembly list control instructions ... 353  
 assert ... 621  
 assert.h ... 778  
 \_\_assertfail ... 773  
 AT ... 597  
 AT relocation attribute ... 273, 277, 282  
 atan ... 729  
 atan2 ... 730  
 atan2f ... 753  
 atanf ... 752  
 atexit ... 680  
 atof ... 688  
 atoi ... 671  
 atol ... 672
- B**
- backward reference ... 266  
 BASE relocation attribute ... 273  
 BASEP relocation attribute ... 277  
 BCD operation function ... 68, 131  
 binary ... 210  
 binary constant ... 68, 119  
 BIT ... 208  
 bit field ... 102  
 bit field declaration ... 67, 68, 102, 104  
 bit segment ... 199, 270  
 bit symbol ... 260  
 bit type variable ... 67, 80  
 BITPOS operator ... 250  
 Bookmarks dialog box ... 854  
 \_\_boolean ... 80  
 boolean type variable ... 67, 80  
 BR directive ... 315  
 branch instruction automatic selection directives ... 314  
 BRK ... 100  
 brk ... 686  
 bsearch ... 695  
 BSEG directive ... 281  
 byte separation operator ... 240
- C**
- C language ... 10  
 CALL directive ... 317  
 calloc ... 675  
 \_\_callt ... 70  
 callt ... 70  
 callt function ... 67, 70  
 CALLT0 relocation attribute ... 273  
 ceil ... 745  
 ceilf ... 768  
 changing compiler output section name ... 68, 109  
 char type ... 58  
 character set ... 204  
 character string constant ... 210  
 character type ... 61  
 CLRB ... 476  
 CLRW ... 484  
 code segment ... 199, 270  
 comment field ... 212, 413  
 compiler output section name is changed ... 109  
 COMPLETE ... 597  
 concatenation ... 412  
 COND control instruction ... 364  
 conditional assembly control instructions ... 376  
 constant ... 210  
 control instructions ... 336  
 cos ... 731  
 cosf ... 754  
 cosh ... 734  
 coshf ... 757  
 CPU control instruction ... 67, 100  
 cross-reference list output specification control

- instructions ... 344
  - CSEG directive ... 272
  - cstart\*.asm ... 801
  - cstart.asm ... 798, 801
  - cstartn.asm ... 798, 801
  - ctype.h ... 615, 774
- D**
- data insertion function ... 68, 134
  - data segment ... 199, 270
  - DATAPOS operator ... 249
  - DB directive ... 296
  - DBIT directive ... 304
  - DEBUG control instruction ... 340
  - debug information output control instructions ... 339
  - DEBUGA control instruction ... 342
  - decimal ... 210
  - DG directive ... 300
  - DGL control instruction ... 406
  - DGS control instruction ... 406
  - DI ... 97
  - directive file ... 592
  - directives ... 269
  - \_\_directmap ... 163
  - div ... 684
  - division function ... 68, 126
  - DS directive ... 302
  - DSEG directive ... 276
  - DW directive ... 298
- E**
- Editor panel ... 842
  - EI ... 97
  - EJECT control instruction ... 354
  - ELSE control instruction ... 390
  - \_ELSEIF control instruction ... 387
  - ELSEIF control instruction ... 384
  - Encoding dialog box ... 853
  - END directive ... 335
  - ENDIF control instruction ... 394
  - ENDM directive ... 332
  - enumeration type ... 58
  - EQ operator ... 231
  - EQU directive ... 289
  - \_errno ... 810
  - errno.h ... 617
  - error.h ... 617
  - EUC ... 86
  - exit ... 681
  - EXITM directive ... 329
  - exp ... 737
  - expf ... 760
  - EXTBIT directive ... 308
  - external reference term ... 254
  - EXTRN directive ... 306
  - ext\_tsk ... 141
- F**
- fabs ... 746
  - fabsf ... 769
  - \_\_far ... 167
  - FIXED relocation attribute ... 273
  - flash area allocation method ... 68, 145
  - flash area branch table and flash area allocation ... 68, 146
  - float.h ... 619
  - floating point type ... 59
  - floor ... 747
  - floorf ... 770
  - fmod ... 748
  - fmodf ... 771
  - FORMFEED control instruction ... 371
  - forward reference ... 266
  - free ... 676
  - frexp ... 738
  - frexpf ... 761
  - function of function call from boot area to flash area ... 68, 152
  - function type ... 62
- G**
- GE operator ... 234

GEN control instruction ... 360  
 general register ... 211  
 general register pairs ... 211  
 getchar ... 665  
 gets ... 666  
 global symbol ... 410  
 Go to Line dialog box ... 856  
 GT operator ... 233

**H**

HALT ... 100  
 hardware initialization function ... 804  
 hdwinit function ... 800, 804  
 header file ... 615  
 hexadecimal ... 210  
 HIGH operator ... 241  
 HIGHW operators ... 244  
 how to use the saddr area ... 67, 74  
 how to use the sfr area ... 67, 78

**I**

\_IF control instruction ... 381  
 IF control instruction ... 377  
 INCLUDE control instruction ... 350  
 include control instruction ... 349  
 incomplete type ... 61  
 integer type ... 58  
 \_\_interrupt ... 95  
 interrupt function ... 67, 88, 97  
 interrupt function qualifier ... 67, 95  
 interrupt handler for RTOS ... 68, 136  
 interrupt handler qualifier for RTOS ... 68, 139  
 \_\_interrupt\_brk ... 95  
 IRP directive ... 327  
 IRP-ENDM block ... 327  
 isalnum ... 629  
 isalpha ... 625  
 isascii ... 636  
 iscntrl ... 635  
 isgraph ... 634  
 islower ... 627

isprint ... 633  
 ispunct ... 632  
 isspace ... 631  
 isupper ... 626  
 isxdigit ... 630  
 itoa ... 690  
 IXRAM relocation attribute ... 273

**K**

Kanji (2-byte character) ... 67, 86  
 Kanji code control instruction ... 402  
 KANJICODE control instruction ... 403

**L**

label ... 206  
 labs ... 683  
 LALIGN ... 597  
 LANG78K ... 86  
 ldexp ... 739  
 ldexpf ... 762  
 ldiv ... 685  
 LE operator ... 236  
 LENGTH control instruction ... 374  
 limits.h ... 618  
 link directive ... 592, 598, 802  
 linkage directives ... 305  
 LIST control instruction ... 356  
 LOCAL directive ... 322  
 local symbol ... 410  
 log ... 740  
 log10 ... 741  
 log10f ... 764  
 logf ... 763  
 logic operator ... 225  
 longjmp ... 646  
 LOW operator ... 242  
 LOWW operators ... 245  
 LT operator ... 235  
 ltoa ... 691

**M**

macro ... 407

- macro definition ... 407
  - MACRO directive ... 320
  - macro directives ... 319
  - macro expansion ... 409
  - macro name ... 206
  - macro operator ... 412
  - malloc ... 677
  - MASK operator ... 251
  - math.h ... 619, 777
  - matherr ... 749
  - memchr ... 712
  - memcmp ... 709
  - memcpy ... 703
  - memmove ... 704
  - MEMORY ... 597
  - memory directive ... 593
  - memory initialization directives ... 295
  - memory manipulation function ... 69, 161
  - memory model ... 62
  - memory model specification ... 69, 172
  - memory space ... 63
  - memset ... 720
  - MERGE ... 597
  - method of int expansion limitation of argument/return value ... 68, 158
  - mi0 ... 157
  - mi1 ... 157
  - MIRHW operators ... 246
  - MIRLW operators ... 247
  - mirror source area specification ... 68, 157
  - MIRRORP relocation attribute ... 273
  - mkstup.bat ... 795, 799
  - ml ... 172
  - mm ... 172
  - mnemonic field ... 209, 413
  - MOD operator ... 222
  - modf ... 742
  - modff ... 765
  - modular programming ... 11
  - module header ... 198
  - module name ... 206
  - module name changing function ... 68, 121
  - module tail ... 199
  - MOV ... 469
  - MOVS ... 477
  - MOVW ... 479
  - ms ... 172
  - multiplication function ... 68, 124
- N**
- name ... 206
  - NAME directive ... 313
  - NE operator ... 232
  - \_\_near ... 167
  - near/far area specification ... 69, 167
  - NOCOND control instruction ... 365
  - NODEBUG control instruction ... 341
  - NODEBUGA control instruction ... 343
  - NOFORMFEED control instruction ... 372
  - NOGEN control instruction ... 362
  - NOLIST control instruction ... 358
  - NONE ... 86
  - NOP ... 100
  - NOSYMLIST control instruction ... 348
  - NOT operator ... 226
  - NOXREF control instruction ... 346
  - NUMBER ... 208
  - NUMBER term ... 257
  - numeric constant ... 210
- O**
- object module name declaration directive ... 312
  - octal ... 210
  - ONEW ... 483
  - \_\_OPC ... 134
  - Open File dialog box ... 859
  - operand ... 261, 266
  - operand field ... 209, 413
  - operator ... 214
  - OPT\_BYTE relocation attribute ... 273
  - optimized branching directive ... 18
  - OR operator ... 228

- ORG directive ... 285
- other operator ... 252
- P**
- PAGE64KP relocation attribute ... 273, 277
- pow ... 743
- powf ... 766
- Print Preview window ... 857
- printf ... 661
- PROCESSOR control instruction ... 338
- PUBLIC directive ... 310
- \_\_putc ... 669
- putchar ... 667
- puts ... 668
- Q**
- ql ... 70
- qsort ... 696
- R**
- RAM area allocation-specification control instruction ... 404
- RAM\_ALLOCATE control instruction ... 405
- rand ... 693
- rd ... 76
- realloc ... 678
- re-entrant ... 622
- referencing macro ... 408
- register ... 72
- register bank ... 62
- register bank is specified ... 88
- register variable ... 67, 72
- REGULAR ... 594, 596
- relocatable assembler ... 11
- relocatable term ... 254
- relocation attribute ... 254, 273, 277, 282
- repgetc.bat ... 795
- repmac.bat ... 795
- repmac\_rl78.bat ... 795
- repmul.bat ... 795
- repmuldiv.bat ... 795
- repputc.bat ... 795
- repputcs.bat ... 795
- reprom.bat ... 795
- repselo.bat ... 795
- repselon.bat ... 795
- REPT directive ... 325
- REPT-ENDM block ... 325
- repvect.bat ... 795
- RESET control instruction ... 400
- reset vector ... 804
- rf ... 175
- rn ... 175
- rolb ... 122
- rolw ... 122
- rom.asm ... 801
- ROMization ... 794, 812
- ROMization processing ... 804, 809
- ROMization routine ... 795
- rorb ... 122
- rorw ... 122
- rotate function ... 68, 122
- rs ... 77
- RTOS ... 63
- \_\_rtos\_interrupt ... 139
- runtime library ... 812
- S**
- s0r\*.rel ... 801
- SADDR relocation attribute ... 277
- SADDRP relocation attribute ... 277
- sbrk ... 687
- scanf ... 662
- section name related to ROMization ... 115
- SECUR\_ID relocation attribute ... 273
- segment ... 199
- segment definition directive ... 270
- segment location directive ... 595
- SEQUENT ... 597
- SET control instruction ... 398
- SET directive ... 293
- setjmp ... 645
- setjmp.h ... 616, 774

- sfr area ... 78
  - sfr variable ... 78
  - shift operator ... 237
  - SHL operator ... 239
  - SHR operator ... 238
  - signed integer type ... 58
  - sin ... 732
  - sinf ... 755
  - sinh ... 735
  - sinhf ... 758
  - SJIS ... 86
  - source module ... 198
  - special characters ... 205, 211
  - special function register ... 211
  - special operator ... 248
  - sprintf ... 653
  - sqrt ... 744
  - sqrtf ... 767
  - rand ... 694
  - \_\_sreg ... 74
  - sreg ... 74
  - sscanf ... 657
  - stack change specification ... 89
  - stack pointer ... 804
  - standard library ... 812
  - startup ... 794
  - startup routine ... 115, 789, 809, 821
  - statement ... 204
  - stdarg.h ... 616, 774
  - stddef.h ... 618
  - stdio.h ... 616, 775
  - stdlib.h ... 616, 775
  - STOP ... 100
  - strbrk ... 697
  - strcat ... 707
  - strchr ... 713
  - strcmp ... 710
  - strcoll ... 723
  - strcpy ... 705
  - strcspn ... 716
  - strerror ... 721
  - string.h ... 617, 776
  - strtoa ... 699
  - strlen ... 722
  - strltoa ... 700
  - strncat ... 708
  - strncmp ... 711
  - strncpy ... 706
  - strpbrk ... 717
  - strrchr ... 714
  - strsbrk ... 698
  - strspn ... 715
  - strstr ... 718
  - strtod ... 689
  - strtok ... 719
  - strtol ... 673
  - strtoul ... 674
  - structure type ... 62
  - strultoa ... 701
  - strxfrm ... 724
  - subroutine ... 407
  - SUBTITLE control instruction ... 368
  - sum-of-products calculation function ... 128
  - symbol ... 410
  - symbol attribute ... 208
  - symbol definition directives ... 288
  - symbol field ... 206, 413
  - SYMLIST control instruction ... 347
- T**
- TAB control instruction ... 375
  - tag jump ... 847
  - tan ... 733
  - tanf ... 756
  - tanh ... 736
  - tanhf ... 759
  - task ... 141
  - task for RTOS ... 68, 141
  - TITLE control instruction ... 366
  - toascii ... 639
  - TOL\_INF control instruction ... 406
  - tolow ... 643

\_tolower ... 642  
tolower ... 638  
toup ... 641  
\_toupper ... 640  
toupper ... 637

## U

ultoa ... 692  
union type ... 62  
UNIT relocation attribute ... 273, 277, 282  
UNIT64KP relocation attribute ... 273, 277  
UNITP relocation attribute ... 273, 277  
unsigned integer type ... 58  
usage with saddr automatic allocation option of external  
variables/external static variables ... 67, 76  
usage with saddr automatic allocation option of internal  
static variables ... 67, 77

## V

va\_arg ... 650  
va\_end ... 651  
va\_start ... 648  
va\_starttop ... 649  
vprintf ... 663  
vsprintf ... 664

## W

WALIGN ... 597  
WIDTH control instruction ... 373  
word separation operators ... 243

## X

XCH ... 473  
XCHW ... 482  
XOR operator ... 229  
XREF control instruction ... 345

## Z

-zb ... 158  
-zf ... 145  
-zt ... 146  
-zx ... 177

Revision Record

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.00	Dec 01, 2013	-	First Edition issued

---

CubeSuite+ V2.01.00 User's Manual:  
RL78,78K0R Coding

Publication Date: Rev.1.00 Dec 01, 2013

Published by: Renesas Electronics Corporation

---

**SALES OFFICES**

Renesas Electronics Corporation

<http://www.renesas.com>Refer to "<http://www.renesas.com/>" for the latest and detailed information.**Renesas Electronics America Inc.**2880 Scott Boulevard Santa Clara, CA 95050-2554, U.S.A.  
Tel: +1-408-588-6000, Fax: +1-408-588-6130**Renesas Electronics Canada Limited**1101 Nicholson Road, Newmarket, Ontario L3Y 9C3, Canada  
Tel: +1-905-898-5441, Fax: +1-905-898-3220**Renesas Electronics Europe Limited**Dukes Meadow, Millboard Road, Bourne End, Buckinghamshire, SL8 5FH, U.K  
Tel: +44-1628-651-700, Fax: +44-1628-651-804**Renesas Electronics Europe GmbH**Arcadiastrasse 10, 40472 Düsseldorf, Germany  
Tel: +49-211-65030, Fax: +49-211-6503-1327**Renesas Electronics (China) Co., Ltd.**7th Floor, Quantum Plaza, No.27 ZhiChunLu Haidian District, Beijing 100083, P.R.China  
Tel: +86-10-8235-1155, Fax: +86-10-8235-7679**Renesas Electronics (Shanghai) Co., Ltd.**Unit 204, 205, AZIA Center, No.1233 Lujiazui Ring Rd., Pudong District, Shanghai 200120, China  
Tel: +86-21-5877-1818, Fax: +86-21-6887-7858 / -7898**Renesas Electronics Hong Kong Limited**Unit 1601-1613, 16/F., Tower 2, Grand Century Place, 193 Prince Edward Road West, Mongkok, Kowloon, Hong Kong  
Tel: +852-2886-9318, Fax: +852 2886-9022/9044**Renesas Electronics Taiwan Co., Ltd.**13F, No. 363, Fu Shing North Road, Taipei, Taiwan  
Tel: +886-2-8175-9600, Fax: +886 2-8175-9670**Renesas Electronics Singapore Pte. Ltd.**80 Bendemeer Road, Unit #06-02 Hyflux Innovation Centre Singapore 339949  
Tel: +65-6213-0200, Fax: +65-6213-0300**Renesas Electronics Malaysia Sdn.Bhd.**Unit 906, Block B, Menara Amcorp, Amcorp Trade Centre, No. 18, Jln Persiaran Barat, 46050 Petaling Jaya, Selangor Darul Ehsan, Malaysia  
Tel: +60-3-7955-9390, Fax: +60-3-7955-9510**Renesas Electronics Korea Co., Ltd.**11F., Samik Laviel' or Bldg., 720-2 Yeoksam-Dong, Kangnam-Ku, Seoul 135-080, Korea  
Tel: +82-2-558-3737, Fax: +82-2-558-5141

CubeSuite+ V2.01.00